



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



3 3433 08155111 5







f-BWGD  
L35. H33

1. Coated  
2. Handwritten







*Chas. S.*  
\*Marion Eppley. Esq.

3 Nov 1913

Kurtz Eppley:  
Orange,

Box 645      New Jersey.

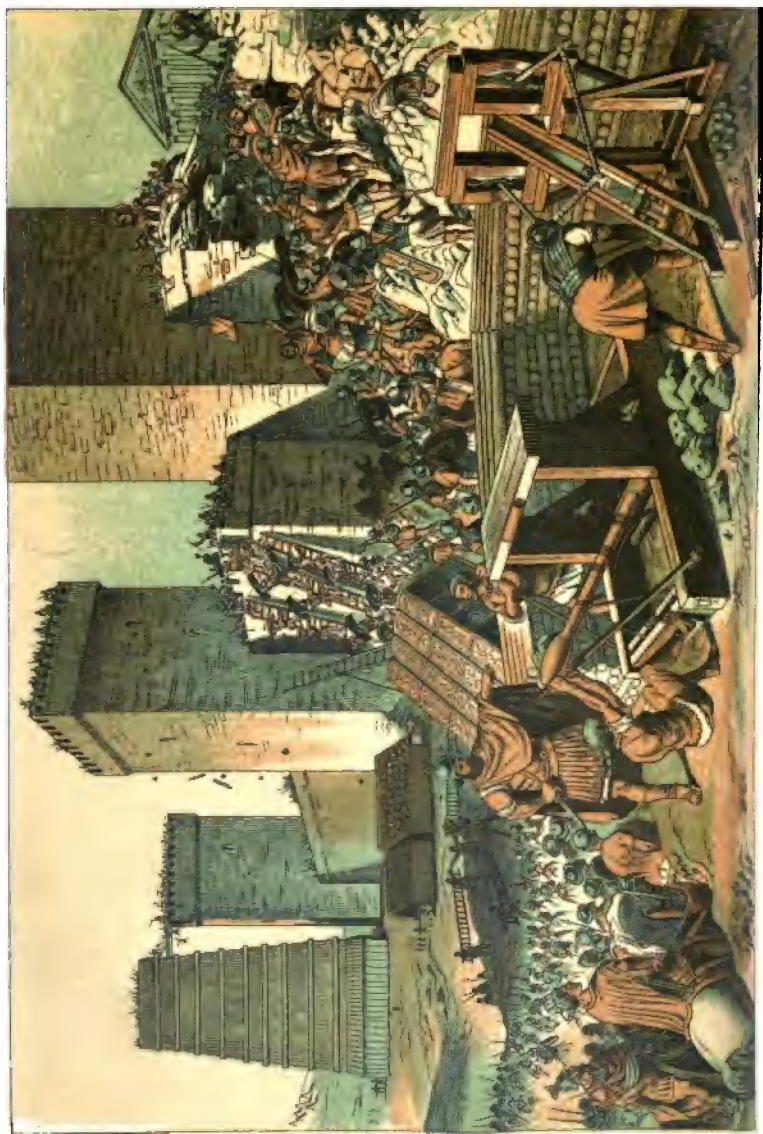




**THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY**

**ASTOR, LENOX AND  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS**

PLATE V.



1. *Stris Ambulatoria*

2. *Testudo Aristaria*

3. *Testudo*

4. *Onager*

5. *Ballista*

138  
117  
118/13

# CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES

ON THE

## GALLIC WAR

WITH

NOTES, DICTIONARY, AND A MAP OF GAUL.

BY

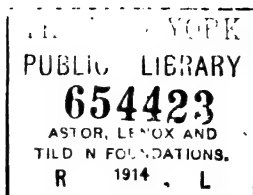
ALBERT HARKNESS, LL. D..

PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

*REVISED EDITION, ILLUSTRATED.*

NEW YORK ·· CINCINNATI ·· CHICAGO  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY.

FROM THE PRESS OF  
D. APPLETON & COMPANY.



How Many  
Stars

**COPYRIGHT, 1870, 1882, 1886,  
BY ALBERT HARKNESS.**

# P R E F A C E

## TO THE REVISED EDITION.

---

IN preparing a new edition of Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War, it has been the special aim of the editor to explain and illustrate with the requisite fulness the subject-matter treated by his author. When his first edition was published, the demand for small text-books compelled him to exclude from his pages much collateral information which, in the interest of the learner, he would gladly have admitted. The Commentaries portray the stirring events of military campaigns. To understand and appreciate them, the student needs to know something of the Roman mode of warfare, and especially of the organization and movement of armies in the time of Caesar. The present volume aims to furnish him the desired information, not in scattered notes, but in a connected treatise. In the preparation of this part of the work, the editor has not only availed himself of the leading ancient authorities on the subject, as Livy, Polybius, Vegetius, and



Hyginus, but he has also endeavored to profit by the recent researches of European scholars.

For the benefit of teachers who may be interested in the military system of the Romans, a list of the works cited in the foot-notes is inserted on page lxiii.

This edition is furnished with colored plates and other illustrations, in the best style of the art. In the plans of battles, the Romans are represented in red, while the hostile lines are in black. The learner thus sees at a glance the relation of the opposing forces to each other. The plates are based upon the labors of Napoleon III., Göler, and Rheinhard, while the other illustrations have been derived from various sources, though chiefly from Marquardt, Rückert, Rüstow, and Köchly.

In conclusion, the editor desires to express his special obligations to his son, Professor Albert G. Harkness, of Madison University, for important aid in the work of revision.

BROWN UNIVERSITY, *July*, 1886.

## PREFACE.

---

THIS edition of Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War is intended to follow the Latin Reader. It accordingly assumes that the student is already familiar with the regular forms and the general principles of the language; that he has acquired, by actual experience, some facility in translating; and that he is now prepared to enter with success upon the consecutive study of a Latin classic. Starting from this point, it aims to conduct him to a higher knowledge of the power and use of the Latin tongue, and to introduce him to an appreciative study of a standard literary work.

For the student who is just entering upon a course of study in Latin authors, no better work can be found than the Commentaries on the Gallic War. The purity of the style, the dramatic interest of the narrative, and the historical significance of the wonderful career of discovery and conquest which they record, all unite to render them at once attractive and valuable.

The Notes are intended to guide the faithful efforts of the student, and to prepare him for that course of direct instruction and illustration which belongs exclusively to the teacher. They aim to furnish such collat-

eral information as will enable the learner to understand and appreciate the stirring events recorded in the *Commentaries*, and such special aid as will enable him to surmount real and untried difficulties of construction and idiom. They will thus, it is hoped, render an acceptable service both to the instructor and the learner, by lightening the burden of the one, and by promoting the progress of the other.

The text is the result of a careful collation of the several editions most approved by European scholars. It is based, however, chiefly upon the critical labors of Schneider, Kraner, and Nipperdey, with constant reference to the authority of the best manuscripts, as presented in the works of those distinguished editors.

The outline of the *Life of Caesar*, prefixed to this edition, will furnish the student, it is hoped, much interesting information in regard to his author.

**BROWN UNIVERSITY, *February*, 1870.**

## LIFE OF CAESAR.

---

**GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR**, the author of the *Commentaries*, was born at Rome, on the 12th of July, 100 B. C. He belonged to the illustrious Julian family, whose ancient lineage tradition traced to the early kings of Rome and the immortal heroes of the *Iliad*. At the time of his birth, his uncle, Gaius Marius, the intrepid champion of the popular party, had just won immortal honors by his victories over the Cimbri and the Teutones, while Lucius Cornelius Sulla, destined to be the bitter opponent of Marius, and the most formidable obstacle to the career of Caesar, was rapidly rising to power and influence.

In youth, Caesar not unfrequently yielded to the fascinations of luxury and pleasure. He lived in a degenerate age, when the sterner virtues of the old Roman character were rapidly disappearing from the fashionable life of the day. By the death of his father, he was left an orphan at the age of sixteen; but his mother, Aurelia, a woman of rare gifts and of superior wisdom, superintended his education with the greatest care, and exerted a powerful influence in moulding his character, and in preparing him for the brilliant career of greatness and glory upon which he was so soon to enter. By his marriage with Cornelia, the daughter of Lucius Cornelius Cinna, a prominent leader of the popular party, he early incurred the deadly hatred of Sulla, who had just been raised to the dictatorship, and was already entering upon his terrible career of proscription and bloodshed. The relentless

dictator, by an act of tyranny in keeping with his general character, issued an order that all persons who had allied themselves by marriage with the party of Marius, should at once sever that alliance by divorce. Pompey and others, dreading the terrible vengeance of the despot, hastened to comply; but the youthful Caesar, taking counsel of his own dauntless spirit, and asserting his rights as a Roman citizen and a man, defied, with sovereign contempt, the mad edict of the tyrant. But he did it at his peril. He was at once deposed from the priestly office, to which he had been recently appointed, was deprived of his wife's dowry, and declared incapable of holding his own ancestral estates. Finding the hand of persecution heavy upon him, he left the city, and remained in concealment until the earnest solicitations of influential parties finally extorted from Sulla a reluctant pardon, accompanied by those memorable words, almost prophetic, "Be assured, friends, that he for whom you plead will one day ruin the cause for which we have fought; for in Caesar is many a Marius."

At the early age of twenty, Caesar distinguished himself, at the siege of Mitylenae, by gallant conduct in saving the life of a Roman soldier, and was rewarded by the praetor with the high honor of a civic crown.

On the death of Sulla, two years later, Caesar returned to Rome, and at once instituted prosecutions against Dolabella, and other influential partisan leaders, for crimes and misdemeanors committed under the administration of the dictator. His fearless defence of law, and his persuasive eloquence, attracted the attention of the people, who hailed the youthful orator as the champion of their imperilled rights. Encouraged by this success, Caesar determined to prepare himself, by a judicious course of study, for the attractive profession which seemed already to be opening before him a brilliant career of honor and influence. Accordingly, repairing to Rhodes, then the home of the most illustrious rhetoricians and philosophers, he placed himself under the instruction of that accomplished professor of eloquence, Apollonius Molo, the distinguished teacher of Cicero.

At the age of twenty-seven, Caesar was elected pontiff and military tribune; at thirty-two, quaestor; at thirty-five, aedile; at thirty-seven, grand pontiff; at thirty-eight, praetor, and at forty, consul.

In the capacity of curule aedile, one of the three highest civil officers known to the republic, Caesar, in accordance with Roman custom, entertained the people with public festivities and amusements. Under his administration, the Forum and the Capitol were magnificently decorated; the gladiatorial exhibitions displayed unwonted pomp, and the Roman games were celebrated with a splendor never before witnessed. At that moment, when all eyes were turned to him as the idol of the people, when the unprecedented splendor of his aedileship had won for him an unbounded personal influence, he resolved upon a bold stroke, both for himself and for his country. The popular cause had been for years without a leader. The terrible proscriptions of Sulla had silenced the friends of progress, and removed from the public gaze all memorials of their past successes and victories. Even the statues and trophies commemorative of the illustrious deeds of their favorite champion, Marius, had disappeared from the Capitol. But one morning the Romans awoke to find all these trophies restored to their former places. The unexpected sight filled the nobles with rage and terror, but awakened in the people glad memories of glory and liberty. The friends of progress gazed with joy upon these cherished memorials of their great champion, and hailed Caesar as his worthy successor. From that moment the aedile was their acknowledged head and leader.

The military career of Caesar dates from his appointment as proprætor of Spain. Though thirty-nine years of age, he was then, for the first time in his life, at the head of an army. He at once displayed the high qualities of a great commander, and won for himself an enviable military fame. The senate, though politically opposed to him, was compelled to acknowledge the greatness of his services, and in recognition of his brilliant achievements awarded him, by special decree, the honor of a triumph.



At the age of forty, Caesar, on his return from Spain, came forward as a candidate for the consulship, the highest civil office in the state. His towering ambition, his fearless independence, and his attachment to the popular cause, made him the recognized champion of the people; but he desired to win to his standard some of the illustrious men whose fame had given such prestige to the senatorial party. His efforts were not without success. Soon the three leading spirits of the age, Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus, made common cause, and, wielding a united influence, which was absolutely irresistible, assumed the control of the destinies of the republic.

Caesar was unanimously elected consul, and at once brought forward radical propositions for reform, which his colleague, Marcus Bibulus, opposed with great bitterness and vigor. But the contest was of short duration. Bibulus, finding himself no match for the determined reformer, after the most humiliating defeats, withdrew from all participation in the government, leaving Caesar the undisputed master of the situation. This fact gave rise to the playful remark that the two consuls for the year were Julius and Caesar.

Thus relieved from the factious opposition of his colleague, Caesar at once signalized his consulship by several bold and remarkable measures. He made himself the idol of the people by procuring the enactment of an agrarian law, by which twenty thousand families received allotments of public lands; he won the favor of the equestrian order by relieving it from an oppressive contract, and bound Pompey still more closely to his person and his destinies by giving him in marriage his accomplished daughter Julia, and by procuring for him the ratification of all his acts in Asia.

At the close of his term of office, Caesar was made proconsul of Gaul for a period of five years, which was afterwards extended to ten. His province, including Transalpine and Cisalpine Gaul, with Illyricum, opened to him a new career directly in the line of his aspiring ambition, his cherished hopes, and his lofty military genius; but that career was beset

with the most appalling difficulties and dangers. The Gauls were an energetic and warlike people. While Rome was yet in its infancy, they had scaled the Alps, taken possession of the fertile valley of the Po, and converted Northern Italy into a Gallic province. In the fourth century B. C., they suddenly passed the Apennines, descended upon Latium, won the victory of the Allia, and entering Rome in triumph, burned the greater portion of the city. Three centuries later the hordes of the Cimbri and Teutones, descending in their desolating march upon Southern Europe, threatened the very existence of the Roman republic. But at length the brilliant victories of Marius and other Roman generals checked the encroachments of these hardy nations of the north, and even made conquests on either side of the Alps.

When Caesar received his commission, Cisalpine Gaul had already, for a century and a half, been a Roman province; and even beyond the Alps, the colony of Narbo and the conquest of the Allobroges had led to the organization of a small Roman province.

Caesar arrived early in the spring of 58 B. C. in the province of Narbo. The warlike Helvetii, three hundred and fifty thousand in number, had burned their own towns and villages, and were already commencing their hostile movements; one hundred and fifty thousand Germans had crossed the Rhine, and established themselves in Gaul, and one hundred thousand more were preparing to follow their example. The countless hordes of the north were again in motion. Caesar saw the magnitude of the danger; he well knew that a reverse to his arms would be a crushing calamity to the republic and to all Italy. With a lively appreciation of the great trusts committed to his hands, he entered boldly upon a career of Transalpine conquest as complete as it was glorious. His genius speedily converted Gaul into one vast battle-field of victory and glory. His very first campaign was crowned with signal success. It not only annihilated the power of the Helvetii, and established the prestige of the Roman arms, but also humbled the haughty Ariovistus, and extended the Roman province to the banks

of the Rhine. His second campaign, scarcely less brilliant than the first, added Belgic Gaul to the Roman dominions, and assured the final triumph of his arms throughout the whole extent of Gaul.

The effect of these successes was felt on both sides of the Alps. One Gallic people after another presented to the conqueror their protestations of allegiance, while the tidings of victory filled Rome with joy and gladness. Political animosity was for the hour laid aside, and the Roman senate, Caesar's bitterest partisan foe, decreed a public thanksgiving for fifteen days in honor of the great achievements of the people's favorite.

But the Gauls, though repeatedly vanquished upon the field of battle, were not yet subjugated. Those hardy warriors loved liberty too well to bear with meekness any foreign rule. The spirit of revolt, ever rife among them, was moreover fostered by their warlike neighbors, the Britons and the Germans. But the decree had gone forth that Gaul should be subdued and Romanized. Accordingly Caesar gave himself, year after year, to the great work which had been committed to his hands. Twice he crossed the Rhine and struck terror into the hearts of the Germans; twice he stood upon the hitherto unknown soil of Britain; and when at length, after six years of toil and war, the conquest seemed almost complete, the Gauls rose in one final and desperate struggle for independence. Nations and tribes hitherto jealous and hostile to each other took their places side by side under one common standard, for one common cause.

Vercingetorix, the intrepid leader of the Gauls, at length established himself, with eighty thousand men, in the strongly fortified town of Alesia, the capital of the Mandubii. Caesar at once invested the city, and for forty days lay intrenched before it, between two concentric lines of almost impregnable works; but at length a mighty array of confederate Gauls, two hundred and fifty thousand strong, arrived in the rear of his intrenchments. A simultaneous assault was made upon the Roman lines, by the besieged on the one hand, and by the army of relief on the other. Utter de-

struction seemed inevitably to await Caesar and his cause; but the genius of the great commander rose with the magnitude of the occasion. Roman valor and discipline, inspired and guided by that genius, triumphed over all obstacles, and wrested victory from the hands of the enemy. A few days later, the despatches of Caesar announced to the Roman senate the fall of Alesia and the triumph of the Roman arms.

Another year of warfare followed, and the conquest of Gaul was complete. Eight years of heroic daring and bloody strife had added a mighty realm to the Roman dominions.

But already the question of the recall of Caesar was discussed in the senate, and a few months later, at the instance of Pompey, who had become his bitter rival, a decree was passed requiring him, under penalty of being declared a traitor to his country, to resign the governorship of both Gauls and disband his army. The news of this action reached Caesar at Ravenna, on the 10th of January, 49 B. C. Scarcely a day elapsed before his decision was made. With a single legion he crossed the Rubicon, the southern boundary of his province, and advanced into Italy. The prestige of his name gathered numerous recruits to his standard; town after town threw open its gates to the conqueror, and in sixty days after the edict of the senate declaring him a traitor to his country, the proscribed outlaw entered the capital the undisputed master of Italy. A bloodless victory and a triumphal march from the Rubicon to Rome, had accomplished one of the most remarkable revolutions recorded in the annals of the world.

The senatorial party, panic-stricken, had fled from the city in anticipation of the reënactment of the bloody scenes of proscription which had marked the triumphs of Marius and Sulla. But the magnanimity of Caesar disappointed both friends and foes. The frantic passion of the aristocracy, in their impotence and exile breathing out threats of proscription, contrasted strangely with the calm moderation of the victor in all the plenitude of his power.

During the next twelve months, by a series of rapid military movements, Caesar secured Sicily, the great granary of the republic, conquered the senatorial forces in Spain, and finally, at Pharsalia, achieved a decisive victory over Pompey and his entire army.

The remaining four years of Caesar's life were divided between military campaigns abroad and political reforms at home. We hear of him successively in Egypt, placing the disputed crown upon the head of Cleopatra; in Pontus, crushing the power of Pharnaces, and reporting his victory in those memorable words, "*Veni, vidi, vici*;" in Numidia, winning the signal victory of Thapsus; and finally in Spain, annihilating, in the desperate and bloody conflict at Munda, the last army which upheld the banner of Pompey. These varied military movements left him but little time for his contemplated work in the capital; yet the civil and political reforms which he actually accomplished, to say nothing of the magnificent schemes which he conceived, excite our wonder and admiration. With the comprehensive views of the true statesman, with marvellous power to arrange and organize, and with a keen perception of all the conditions of success, he entered with zeal upon the great work of reconstructing the Roman state. He corrected abuses, enriched the public treasury, reformed the calendar, equalized the public burdens, and strove in every way, as the head of a great nation, to give unity and symmetry to the new empire. But while he was yet in the midst of his wonderful career, with gigantic plans yet unaccomplished, designing men were plotting his ruin and his death. He had been loaded with titles and honors, and had been declared dictator for life; but his greatness had excited the envy of the nobles, while his insatiable ambition had awakened the fears of the people. He was suspected of aiming at the sceptre and the crown, and he paid the penalty with his life. He was assassinated in the senate house, on the 15th of March, 44 B. C.

Such was the tragic death of this remarkable man. He had achieved success in almost every field in which he had

been called upon to act. He was a great commander, an eloquent orator, an accomplished writer, and a consummate statesman. Some of the finest literary works of the age were the productions of his genius. They related to a variety of subjects, and embraced both prose and poetry. The Commentaries on the Gallic and the Civil War have been commended and admired in all ages. They will amply repay patient and careful study.





## THE

# MILITARY SYSTEM OF THE ROMANS.

---

1. THE Roman legion, *legio*, was an organized body of Roman soldiers. It contained originally 3,000 infantry and 300 cavalry; but its numerical strength was subsequently increased. In the time of Caesar it consisted entirely of heavy-armed infantry, and probably numbered from 3,500 to 5,000 men.<sup>1</sup>

### CAESAR'S ARMY IN GAUL.

2. Caesar's army in Gaul consisted of two distinct parts, the Roman legions and the auxiliaries.

1. The Roman legions consisted of heavy-armed soldiers.<sup>2</sup>

2. The auxiliaries,<sup>3</sup> consisting of foreign soldiers of various nationalities, served either as cavalry<sup>4</sup> or as light-armed infantry.<sup>5</sup>

3. The entire force at the command of Caesar during his Gallic campaigns seldom, if ever, exceeded 70,000 men. Beginning his work with a single legion, the tenth, afterwards so famous in the Gallic wars, he proceeded at once to raise re-enforcements, and soon found himself at the head of

---

<sup>1</sup> A legion whose numbers were fully up to the normal standard was called *legio plenissima* and probably contained about 5,000 men. Veteran legions weakened by losses in battle were considerably below this standard.

<sup>2</sup> In general, the legions were composed of Roman citizens.

<sup>3</sup> Some of these were armed, equipped, and disciplined according to the Roman method, while others retained their native arms.

<sup>4</sup> Caesar's cavalry was composed chiefly of Gauls; but it contained a few Germans and Spaniards.

<sup>5</sup> Of the auxiliary infantry, the Balearian archers and the Cretan slingers were the most noted.

an army consisting of six legions and a force of auxiliaries nearly 20,000 strong.

4. The numerical strength of Caesar's army varied somewhat from year to year; but he generally had in his service about 5,000 auxiliary cavalry and from 15,000 to 20,000 auxiliary infantry. The following is a general estimate of the forces at his command during the seven successive campaigns described in the *Commentaries*.

1. In campaign I., 58 B. C., six legions, and about 20,000 auxiliaries, — cavalry and infantry; in all, from 40,000 to 50,000 men.<sup>1</sup>

2. In campaigns II., III., and IV., 57, 56, and 55 B. C., eight legions, with the usual force of auxiliaries; in all, from 50,000 to 60,000 men.<sup>2</sup>

3. In campaign V., 54 B. C., eight and a half legions (subsequently reduced by losses to seven), with the usual force of auxiliaries; in all, from 50,000 to 60,000 men.<sup>3</sup>

4. In campaign VI., 53 B. C., ten legions, with the usual force of auxiliaries; in all, from 60,000 to 70,000 men.<sup>4</sup>

5. In campaign VII., 52 B. C., eleven legions, with about 25,000 or 30,000 auxiliaries; in all, not far from 70,000 men.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Caesar found the 10th legion in Gaul, brought the 7th, 8th, and 9th from their winter-quarters, and enrolled two new legions—the 11th and 12th—in Cisalpine Gaul. His auxiliaries consisted of 4,000 cavalry and a large force of light-armed infantry. The number of the latter, not definitely given in the *Commentaries*, has been variously estimated from 15,000 to 30,000. The estimate of Rheinhard is 15,000, that of General von Göler, 30,000.

<sup>2</sup> For the second campaign Caesar enrolled two new legions—the 13th and the 14th. These were added to the six already in his service.

<sup>3</sup> Napoleon III. accounts for the half legion by assuming that Caesar procured several separate cohorts to serve in his fleet in his second expedition into Britain. The five cohorts and almost the whole of the 14th legion were lost under Sabinus and Cotta, among the Eburones. See Book V., 37.

<sup>4</sup> In preparation for the sixth campaign, Caesar levied two new legions—the 14th and the 15th—and obtained another—the 1st—from Pompey. The 14th took the place of the 14th that was lost.

<sup>5</sup> Caesar entered upon the seventh campaign with ten legions; but another—the 6th—was added to the number in the course of the summer. These eleven legions were the 1st, 6th, 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, 12th, 13th, 14th, and 15th. During this campaign, Caesar probably had a larger force of auxiliaries than at any previous time, as he besought the Aedui to send him all their cavalry and 10,000 infantry, and demanded cavalry and light-armed infantry from subject states in Germany. Moreover, he speaks of 22 cohorts of auxiliaries, collected from the province by Lucius Caesar. See Book VII., 34 and 65.

## HISTORY OF THE ROMAN LEGION.

**5. The history of the Roman legion naturally divides itself into three periods.**

I. During the first period, the infantry of the legion in battle-array stood in the form of a solid phalanx, probably from six to eight ranks deep.<sup>1</sup> The division of cavalry, 300 in number, belonging to the legion, was generally stationed in front of the phalanx.

II. During the second period, the infantry of the legion was divided into thirty maniples,<sup>2</sup> or companies, which, in battle-array, were arranged in three lines, with intervals between them,<sup>3</sup> as follows :—

Hastati	- - - - -
Principes	- - - - -
Triarii	- - - - -

1. The soldiers in the first line were called *Hastati*; those in the second, *Principes*; and those in the third, *Triarii*.<sup>4</sup> The *Hastati* were comparatively young men, who had seen less service than the soldiers in either of the other lines; the *Principes* were in the full strength of mature manhood; while the *Triarii* were veterans in the service.

2. Each manipule in the legion consisted of two divisions, or companies, called centuries,<sup>5</sup> each nominally under the

<sup>1</sup> The unbroken front of this phalanx was probably about 1,500 feet long. Its original depth is not known, but Marquardt and Mommsen conjecture that it contained at first six ranks, Rüstow and Köchly that in its later form it contained eight ranks. Livy, I. 43, compares it to the famous Macedonian phalanx.

<sup>2</sup> The change from the phalanx to the legion of maniples is supposed to have been made in the early part of the fourth century before Christ. It is generally ascribed to Camillus, but see Fröhlich, *Kriegführung und Kriegskunst der Römer*. — Berlin : 1886.

<sup>3</sup> The interval was probably equal to the length of a maniple. The legion of maniples was, doubtless, somewhat slowly developed. The form here given is that described by Polybius. A legion, arranged in three lines, of 15 maniples each, is mentioned by Livy.

<sup>4</sup> The origin of these terms is doubtful; but it has been suggested that *Principes*, in its original application, probably designated the soldiers who were best armed and equipped; that *Hastati* was a general name for all the heavy-armed soldiers, though finally retained only by those in the first line, i. e., by the inexperienced soldiers; while the others had more specific and honorable titles; and finally, that the *Triarii*, derived from *tres*, were so called from their place in the third line, which was then the post of honor.

<sup>5</sup> The century (*centuria*), originally a hundred men, probably contained at this time from 60 to 80.

command of an officer, called centurion ; though the centurion of the right century generally led the whole maniples.<sup>1</sup> In active service, the two centuries stood side by side.

3. The quota of cavalry, 300 in number, due to each legion was stationed on the wings. It was divided into ten companies, called *turmae*, which were each sub-divided into three sections, called *decuriae*. Each *decuria* was under the command of a decurion.

III. During the third period, including the time of Caesar, the thirty maniples of the legion were combined into ten groups, of three maniples each.<sup>2</sup> To this new military body, formed by uniting three maniples, the name cohort was given. The legion thus changed ordinarily stood, when in battle-array, in three lines, with four cohorts in the first line, three in the second, and three in the third.<sup>3</sup>

#### PHALANX, MANIPLES, AND COHORTS.

6. The phalanx, though it could present a front like a wall to an advancing foe, was yet too unwieldy for the exigencies of the battle-field. To an attempt to remedy this defect the legion of maniples owed its origin ; but experience soon showed that the division had been carried too far, and that the maniples were too small a body to stand alone in the line of battle. Accordingly Marius, in reorganizing the army, proceeded at once to reunite every three maniples into a single company, called a cohort. The value of the change was soon apparent. The legion of cohorts, as organized by Marius, and perfected by later generals, while it avoided the special evils of the phalanx and of the legion of maniples, was found, in actual practice, to unite in a large measure the advantages of both.

7. The post of honor in the phalanx was awarded to wealth and station ; in the other forms of the legion, to military achievement and experience. In the legion of mani-

---

<sup>1</sup> He was called the first centurion (*centurio prior*): in his absence, the second centurion commanded.

<sup>2</sup> This change was made by Marius, about one hundred years before Christ.

<sup>3</sup> For a full account of this order of battle, see 28. In the time of Caesar the cavalry had ceased to form a part of the legion.

ples, however, the tried veterans were stationed in the third line as a reserve, to be summoned into action only in cases of special emergency; but in the legion of cohorts, they occupied the forefront, and received the first shock of battle.<sup>1</sup> The Romans had at length learned how much depended upon the first onset.

#### ARMS OF LEGIONARY SOLDIERS.

8. All legionary soldiers were armed with swords and with spears (*hastae*)<sup>2</sup> or javelins (*pila*). The defensive armor, both in the phalanx<sup>3</sup> and in the legion of maniples, consisted of a coat of mail, a helmet, greaves, and a shield.

9. In the time of Caesar, the essential articles in a soldier's equipment were as follows:—

1. A plain woollen tunic (*tunica*), with very short sleeves, which scarcely covered half of the upper arm. This was the main article of dress; it extended to the knee, and was girded about the loins.

2. A coat of mail (*lorica*). This was sometimes a simple coat of leather,<sup>4</sup> as represented on the light-armed soldiers in plate I.; and sometimes it was covered with metal, as seen in the figures of the legionaries in the same plate. Observe that flexible bands of steel or bronze encircle the waist; that similar bands extend over the shoulders; and that the upper part of the chest is protected by metallic plates.

3. A thick woollen cloak, or shawl, the *sagum*, sometimes worn by soldiers when not in action. It was thrown over the shoulders in such a manner as to leave the arms comparatively free. It was generally secured by a clasp.

The corresponding garment for the general and the

<sup>1</sup> In the legion of cohorts, the post of honor was the post of danger, while in the legion of maniples it was a place of comparative security.

<sup>2</sup> In the legion of maniples, the light-armed soldiers (*velites*), carried a very light spear (*hasta velitaris*).

<sup>3</sup> In the phalanx, only the front ranks appeared in full armor. The others, being exposed to less danger, dispensed with the coat of mail.

<sup>4</sup> This seems to have been made, originally, of strips of sole-leather put together in the most substantial manner. Moreover, a metallic breast-plate, 9 or 10 inches square, was sometimes worn under it.

higher officers was the *paludamentum*, which differed from the *sagum* in the fact that it was of larger size, of finer texture, and of more brilliant color. The *paludamentum* of the commander-in-chief was of purple. For the manner in which the *sagum* and the *paludamentum* were worn, see plates I. and II.

4. Sandals, or shoes. Of these, there were two or three varieties. The *solea* merely protected the sole of the foot; the *calceus* was an ordinary shoe; the *caliga* was a military shoe, or boot, which covered the whole foot and a part of the ankle. See plates.

5. A helmet, either of bronze (*cassis*), or of leather bound with bronze (*galea*). For the general form and style, see plates I., II., and III. The helmets of the higher officers were generally adorned with plumes of feathers or of horse-hair.<sup>1</sup>

6. Greaves of bronze (*ocreae*). Usually, however, only one was worn, as the left leg was sufficiently protected by the shield.<sup>2</sup>

7. A large rectangular shield, the *scutum*, four feet long and two and one-half wide, slightly curved, as seen in plate I., on the arm of one of the legionary soldiers. It was made of wood; but it was covered with leather, and was bound around the edges with iron. It was furnished with a metallic boss (*umbo*), a knob or projection, which not only imparted strength and beauty to the shield, but often caused missiles to glance off from it.<sup>3</sup>

Shields were ornamented with various devices, as winged thunderbolts, eagles, and laurel wreaths. The name of the soldier and the number of his cohort were sometimes inscribed on the inside.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Even soldiers of the rank and file are occasionally represented with plumes.

<sup>2</sup> Soldiers sometimes protected their legs, in cold weather, by wearing strips of cloth, *fasciae*, wound about them. In plate I., they are represented with tight-fitting breeches, *braccae*, reaching a little below their knees. Whether these were in use in the time of Caesar is very doubtful.

<sup>3</sup> For a general view of the arms of the cavalry and of the light-armed infantry, see plate I.

<sup>4</sup> Upon the march, the shield was protected from rain and dust by a leathern case drawn over it for the purpose. This was removed before going into battle. See Book II., 21.

PLATE I.



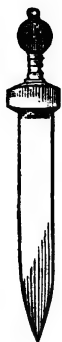
1. *Funditor.* 2. *Levis Armaturae Pedites.* 3. *Legionarii Milites.*  
4. *Sarcinae.* 5. *Equites.*



THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

8. The so-called Spanish sword (*gladius Hispanus*), the only sword used by the legions of Caesar. It had a two-edged pointed blade, about two feet long and almost four inches wide, well adapted both for thrusting and for striking, though ordinarily used for thrusting. It was generally worn on the right side, suspended from a belt (*balteus*) passing over the left shoulder, as seen in plate I.; but the higher officers wore it on the left side, suspended from a girdle (*cingulum*.) The sheath and hilt were sometimes richly ornamented.



Sword,  
*gladius*.



Sword  
in  
sheath.

9. A heavy javelin (*pilum*). This weapon, intended for hurling, not for thrusting, was about six feet and a half long.<sup>1</sup> It consisted of a wooden shaft, upwards of an inch thick and about four feet long, from which projected an iron, from two to three feet long, terminating in a steel head. The *pilum* and the sword were the weapons with which the Roman legions conquered the world.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The *pilum* as described by Polybius was 6 feet and 9 inches long, but, from researches recently made, it seems probable that the *pilum* in the time of Caesar was about 6 feet long. The shaft was either round or square. The momentum of the weapon, when hurled by the strong hand of a legionary soldier, was very great. It crushed through the shields of the enemy, and, bending under the weight of the blow, could be drawn out only with the greatest difficulty. In no event could it be hurled back upon the legions. It has been estimated that a *pilum* hurled with ordinary force would cut through an oak board half an inch thick, lined with sheet iron, and that it would undoubtedly penetrate both the shield and the coat of mail. For the effect of the *pilum*, see Book I., 25. For a full account of this weapon, see Marquardt, *Römische Staatsverwaltung*, vol. ii. pages 328 to 332; Jähns, *Geschichte des Kriegswesens*, pages 199 to 201; Guhl und Koner, *Das Leben der Griechen und Römer*, page 710; and Lindenschmit, *Tract und Bewaffnung des Römischen Heeres*.

<sup>2</sup> The corresponding weapons of the Gauls were the *gaesum* and the sword. The former was a heavy javelin or spear, used mostly as a missile. See Book III., 4.

The Gallic swords were very long, but without points; well adapted for striking but not for thrusting. Livy, XXII. 46, characterizes them as *gladii perlongi ac sine mucronibus*.

The Gallic helmet, with its large bushy plume, was intended to give the wearer the appearance of superhuman size. Sometimes, according to Diodorus, horns or frightful figures of beasts or birds projected above it.

The Gauls wore breastplates or coats of mail, and carried shields, which are described as very large (*vasta scuta*) though not very wide (*ad amplitudinem corporum parum lata*).

For the arms and the general appearance of Gallic soldiers, infantry and cavalry, see plate IV.

## MILITARY SERVICE.—PAY OF SOLDIERS.

10. Originally the Roman army was simply the state temporarily in arms. Each citizen armed and supported himself as he was merely doing his own work. Campaigns in those days were of short duration; and the citizen, after having discharged the duties of the soldier for a few weeks, returned to his home. Afterwards, military service was regarded as a tax which every citizen might occasionally be called upon to pay to the state, for the protection of life and property. But about 400 B. C., when Rome began to be involved in more protracted wars, a small allowance was made from the public treasury to furnish the army with supplies. In the time of Caesar, however, service in the army, which had previously been an occasional duty required of all citizens, had become a permanent profession. Young men of vigor and enterprise entered the army either to become professional soldiers or to qualify themselves for the high offices of state, for which only those were eligible who had served a definite number of campaigns. The soldiers received regular pay,<sup>1</sup> fully equal to that of laborers in Rome; while their perquisites, in the form of booty and presents, were by no means unimportant.

11. The soldiers received their pay once in four months, from which a small deduction<sup>2</sup> was made, for supplies furnished them by the state.<sup>3</sup>

12. The recruit was required to bring to the service a sound and vigorous body; but no definite stature seems to have been prescribed. He entered at once upon a long and severe course of professional training. The success of the Roman arms was due largely to discipline and military drill.

<sup>1</sup> The legionary soldier probably received, per annum, about 240 *denarii*, a little less than 50 dollars. The pay of the centurion was twice as much as that of the common soldier.

<sup>2</sup> The deduction in the time of Polybius was only one-thirtieth part of the pay, and though, in consequence of the higher price of grain, it was somewhat larger in the time of Caesar, it was still very inconsiderable. Thus the pay of a Roman soldier was much higher, relatively to the cost of living, than that of a soldier in a modern European army. The auxiliaries received army-rations, but their pay came from their own people.

<sup>3</sup> The regular allowance of wheat, per month, for each man in the rank and file was a bushel, 4 *modii*; for a centurion, two bushels. Supplies were furnished twice a month, half the monthly allowance at a time. For a discussion of the general subject of supplies for the army, and the pay of soldiers, see *Sonleitner, Abhandlung über die Heeresverwaltung der alten Römer*.

## THE LEGION IN THE TIME OF CAESAR.

13. In the time of Caesar, the regular or normal strength of a Roman legion when mustered into service was probably about 5,000 men.<sup>1</sup> The actual numerical strength of Caesar's legions in Gaul, after years of hard service, was, of course, far below this standard. Indeed, it is doubtful whether the muster-roll of some of the veteran legions in the later Gallic campaigns would much exceed 2,000. Rüstow estimates the average numerical strength of the legions in Gaul at 3,600.<sup>2</sup>

14. The legion consisted of ten cohorts. To understand, therefore, the organization and action of the legion as a whole, we must first get a clear idea of the size, form, and movements of the cohort, which is the tactical unit on which everything depends.

15. It seems safe to assume that the standard numerical strength of the cohort was about 500; but that the actual strength of Caesar's cohorts in Gaul did not upon the average much exceed 360.

16. It will be remembered that the cohort was formed by uniting three maniples, and that each maniple consisted of two centuries, each under the command of a centurion. When the cohort was in battle-array, the men probably stood in rank and file as follows :—

[illegible]

*Cohort in Line of Battle. Front 120 feet, depth 40 feet.*

<sup>1</sup> This is the estimate of Lange and of General von Göler. Mommsen estimates a full legion in the time of Marius at 6,000. Napoleon III. gives the same estimate for the legions engaged in the battle near Bibracte. For Caesar's account of this battle, see Book I., 24-26.

<sup>3</sup> Kraner's estimate is a little lower, from 3,000 to 3,600, and Mommsen's considerably higher, from 3,500 to 5,000.

17. Here I., II., and III. represent the three maniples united to form the cohort. Number I., on the right wing, is the veteran maniple of the cohort, and holds the post of honor; maniple II., in the centre, consists of soldiers who, though in mature manhood, have not yet attained the rank of veterans; while maniple III. contains those who have seen the least service of all. Originally, maniple I. was designated by the name *Triarii*, or *Pilani*; II., by the name *Principes*; and III., by the name *Hastati*<sup>1</sup>; but as these names do not occur in the Commentaries on the Gallic War, and as they have all lost their original signification,<sup>2</sup> the simple numerals, first, second, and third, seem to be the most appropriate designations of the maniples, especially as they indicate their true rank and order.

18. Each maniple contained 120 men, arranged in ten ranks of twelve men each.<sup>3</sup> The space allowed to a soldier was three feet wide and four feet deep.<sup>4</sup> The first five ranks formed the first century,<sup>5</sup> the last five the second century. The two centurions occupied positions at the right of the centuries which they commanded. For their use the space of four feet was left at the right of each maniple, as indicated in the figure under 16. The centurion at the extreme right in front was the chief centurion of the cohort. He not only led his own century, but was also charged with the general command of the entire cohort.

19. The length or front of the maniple, occupied as it was by twelve men and one centurion, was 40 feet,<sup>6</sup> while the depth, or file, occupied by ten men, was also 40 feet.<sup>6</sup> Thus the maniple was 40 feet square, and three such squares

<sup>1</sup> Thus it appears probable that Marius, in organizing the cohort, took one maniple from each of the three lines in which the legion had previously been marshalled for battle, naturally awarding the post of honor, on the right wing, to the veteran maniple, the *Triarii*, also called *Pilani*; the centre to the *Principes*, and the left wing to the *Hastati*. See 6.

<sup>2</sup> These ancient names could not fail to be misleading to the learner, if applied to the maniples in the cohort; as *Hastati*, for instance, means armed with the *hasta*, while the third maniple, to which it was applied, was armed not with the *hasta*, but with the *pilum*; again, *Principes* means holding the first place or rank, and yet the second maniple did not hold either the first place or the first rank.

<sup>3</sup> In other words, each rank contained 12 men, and each file 10.

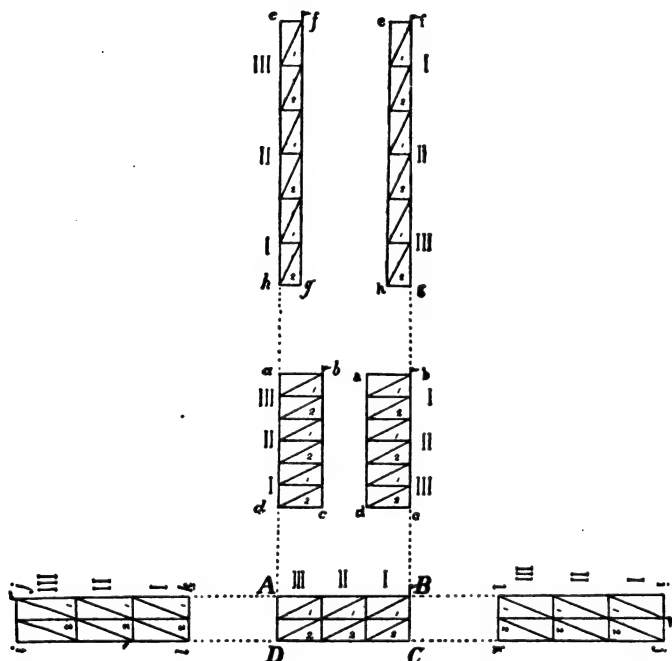
<sup>4</sup> That is, each file occupied 3 feet, and each rank 4 feet.

<sup>5</sup> The century, originally called *centuria*, is called *ordo* in the Commentaries

<sup>6</sup> That is  $12 \times 3 + 4 = 40$ , and  $10 \times 4 = 40$ .

placed side by side formed the cohort, which was accordingly 120 feet long and 40 deep.<sup>1</sup>

20. The following figure represents a cohort in various positions,<sup>2</sup> as in line of battle and on the march :—



1. ABCD represents a cohort 360 strong in line of battle.
2. abcd, the same cohort marching in column of centuries, with the first maniple in front.
3. abcd, the same column with the third maniple in front.
4. efgh, the cohort in column of centuries of half the usual width and twice the usual length, with the first maniple in front.
5. efgh, the same column with the third maniple in front.
6. ijkl, cohort in column of maniples, with the first maniple in front.
7. ijkl, the same column with the third maniple in front.

<sup>1</sup> The arrangement here given, in which the three maniples stand side by side in the cohort, while the second century stands directly behind the first in each maniple, has been quite generally accepted, but General von Göler places the two centuries, two ranks deep, side by side in the maniple, and stations the first maniple at the head of the cohort, the second directly behind the first, and the third directly behind the second.

<sup>2</sup> A rectangle with a diagonal across it may represent any company or body of

21. In 'abcd' and 'abcd,' the column is called a column of centuries, because it consists of the six centuries of the cohort, placed one directly behind another. The column thus formed was 40 feet wide and 120 feet long. The column of centuries was the usual order of march, and was formed from the line of battle in two ways, as follows:—

1. The right wing, or maniple I., marched straight forward; maniple II. fell directly in the rear of I., and maniple III. in the rear of II. This movement gives 'abcd,' already mentioned, as a cohort marching in column of centuries, with the right wing, or maniple I., in front.<sup>1</sup>

2. The left wing, or maniple III., marched straight forward, maniple II. fell directly in the rear of III., and maniple I. in the rear of II. This movement gives 'abcd,' a cohort marching in column of centuries with the left wing, or maniple III., in front.

22. It will be observed that the column of centuries is 40 feet wide, having exactly the width of a maniple. This seems to have been the favorite column on the march through an open country, or upon highways of sufficient width. Caesar's famous bridge over the Rhine was 40 feet wide, and thus exactly adapted to the width of an army marching in column of centuries. Many roads in Gaul, however, were not more than 15 or 20 feet wide. In what form could a Roman army march over such roads? In the regular column of centuries, the 60 men belonging to a century were arranged in 5 ranks of 12 men each; but the century was sometimes arranged in 10 ranks of 6 men each. Such an arrangement is represented in 'efgh.' Here each century, each maniple, and the entire cohort have only half the usual width, but twice the usual length. The column has only 6 men abreast, and is only 18 feet wide, or, including the centurion, 22 feet. By adopting a close order, the

---

soldiers, as a century, maniple, or cohort. In this figure it represents a century. The diagonal is drawn from the right of the front to the left of the rear.

<sup>1</sup> That is, the maniple which in battle-array formed the right wing of the cohort, became the head of the column.

width could be reduced in case of need to 18, or even 15 feet.<sup>1</sup>

23. In 'ijkl' and 'ijkl' the column is called a column of maniples, because it consists of the three maniples of the cohort placed one directly behind another. Here the two centuries of each maniple stand abreast. In 'ijkl' the cohort is said to be marching by the right flank, because in forming this column from the line of battle, each man turns, or faces to the right, and thus the file which formed the right flank in battle-array becomes the front rank of the column. In 'ijkl,' the cohort is said to be marching by the left flank, because in forming this column, each man turns or faces to the left.<sup>2</sup>

24. It will be observed that the column of maniples will be considerably longer than the column of centuries, as it contains more ranks.<sup>3</sup> In this column, each maniple, as it has 12 ranks, will be 48 feet long, or, if we allow 4 feet for the centurion, who probably kept his place at the head of his century, it will be 52 feet long. This gives 156 feet as the length of the cohort marching in a column of maniples. As this column was formed from the line of battle by simply facing to the right or left, the depth of the cohort, 40 feet, naturally became the width of the column, but in marching, as there were only 10 men abreast, the width was often reduced to 30 feet. Upon narrow roads the column of maniples, like the column of centuries, was sometimes reduced to one-half its usual width by doubling its length. Such a column had only 5 men abreast, and could without difficulty march over a road 15, or even 12, feet wide. In forming this column from the regular column of maniples, one of the two centuries in each maniple marched straight on while the other fell in its rear.

<sup>1</sup> The regular or normal width of Roman roads was 18 feet. See Jähns, *Geschichte des Kriegswesens*, page 304.

<sup>2</sup> When the cohort marches by the right flank, the right wing, or maniple I., becomes the head of the column; when it marches by the left flank, the left wing, or maniple III., becomes the head.

<sup>3</sup> The learner should carefully distinguish between a column of centuries, as seen in 'abcd' and 'abcd,' and a column of maniples, as seen in 'ijkl' and 'ijkl.' In the former, the column is an unbroken series of centuries, arranged one behind another; while in the latter, the two centuries of each maniple stand abreast.



25. The following summary gives the length and width of the cohort in different positions:—

	FRONT.	DEPTH.
1. Cohort in line of battle . . . . .	120 feet.	40 feet.
2. Cohort in column of centuries . . .	40 “	120 “
3. Cohort in column of centuries, with 6 files <sup>1</sup> . . . . .	18 to 22 “	240 “
4. Cohort in column of maniples <sup>2</sup> . . .	30 to 40 “	144 to 156 “
5. Cohort in column of maniples, with 5 files . . . . .	15 to 20 “	288 to 300 “

26. As an army on the march was liable to attack, it was often necessary to form the line of battle from the line of march. If the enemy appeared on the flank, this was most easily effected from the column of maniples marching in loose order, i.e., with 40 feet front. The simple command, “Halt, front,” was all that was needful.<sup>3</sup> If, however, the enemy appeared in front, the line of battle was most readily formed from the column of centuries.<sup>4</sup>

#### LEGION IN LINE OF BATTLE.

27. As a legion is only an aggregate of ten cohorts properly arranged, we may now apply to the legion what we have already learned in regard to the cohort. A legion in line of battle consists simply of ten cohorts, each in its proper position and in battle-array; a legion on the march, of ten cohorts marching in due order, and with the proper intervals between them.

28. But we have already learned<sup>5</sup> that in a legion in battle-array, the ten cohorts were arranged in three lines,

<sup>1</sup> The full allowance would be 22 feet, 18 for the 6 files, and 4 for the century, reduced in case of need to 18 or less.

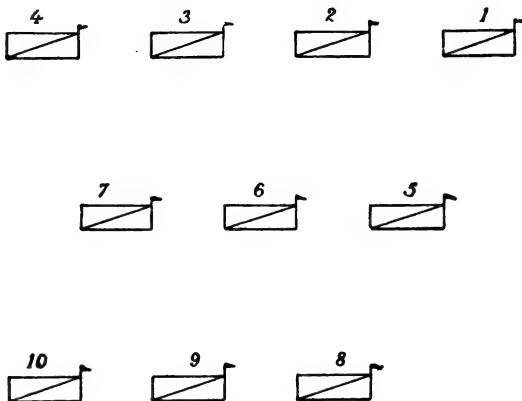
<sup>2</sup> In loose order, 40 feet; but this gives each man 4 feet; if we reduce the allowance to 3 feet, the front of the column becomes 30 feet.

<sup>3</sup> Thus if an enemy appeared on the right flank of a column of maniples, as represented by ‘ijkl,’ it was only necessary for each man to face to the right to place the cohort in line of battle; but if the enemy appeared on the left flank, it was of course necessary for the men to face to the left.

<sup>4</sup> Thus if the enemy appeared in front of the column of centuries represented by ‘abcd,’ maniple I. halted, maniple II. placed itself at the left of I., and maniple III. at the left of II..

<sup>5</sup> See 5, III.

with four cohorts in the first or front line, three in the second, and three in the third, as follows<sup>1</sup>:—

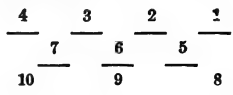


*Legion in Line of Battle.*

29. Observe that the cohorts are arranged with intervals between them, that the cohorts in the second line are directly behind the intervals in the first, and that the cohorts in the third line are directly behind the intervals in the second.<sup>2</sup> The cohorts are numbered from 1 to 10, according to the rank and military experience of the centurions and soldiers.<sup>3</sup> A position in the front line is more honorable than in either of the others, while in either line a position on the right wing is more honorable than on the left. The first cohort, holding the post of honor, is on the

<sup>1</sup> This order of battle is generally supposed to be the *acies triplex*, so often mentioned by Caesar, but General von Göler claims that the *acies triplex* refers, not to the three lines of cohorts, but to the three great divisions of an army, viz., the main body or the central division, and the two wings.

<sup>2</sup> As the third line was held as a reserve, and was not often called into action, the exact position of the cohorts seems not to have been as definitely determined as in the other lines. The order here given has been adopted from Rüstow. Göler arranges the cohorts as follows:—



<sup>3</sup> Thus promotions both of centurions and of men were from the tenth cohort to the ninth, from the ninth to the eighth, from the eighth to the seventh, and so on through all the cohorts to the first.

extreme right of the front line, while the tenth, holding the lowest rank in the legion, is on the extreme left of the third line.

30. The interval between the cohorts in each line was 120 feet, the length of a cohort, but the interval between the lines was probably 240 or 250 feet. Thus the front or length of a legion in battle-array was 840 feet,<sup>1</sup> while its depth from the front of the first line of cohorts to the rear of the third line was from 600 to 620 feet.<sup>1</sup>

31. When an army consisting of several legions was marshalled in order of battle, each legion was arranged in three lines, as already described, and the several legions were separated by intervals, probably varying in length with the nature of the ground, but seldom less than 120 feet, the length of a cohort. If we assume that this interval was 120 feet, we shall find that the front of Caesar's line of battle on the Axona, with six legions, was 5,640<sup>2</sup> feet and its depth, 600 feet. Thus the line of battle of an army of six legions, numbering in all about 25,000 men, was considerably more than a mile long and almost an eighth of a mile deep, and occupied upwards of 75 acres of ground.

#### OFFICERS IN A ROMAN ARMY.

32. In a Roman army engaged in an important work like the conquest of Gaul, the regular officers were the commander-in-chief, the lieutenant-generals, the quaestor, the military tribunes, the centurions, the praefects, and the decurions.

33. The commander-in-chief, called *dux belli* or *imperator*, had in his own province almost unlimited military power. He was clothed with the full measure of authority which belongs to a commander-in-chief in modern warfare.

34. The lieutenant-generals, *legati*, were the highest officers in the army under the commander-in-chief. They

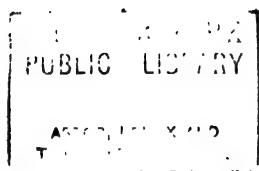
<sup>1</sup> The front, or length, of the legion was made up of the length of four cohorts and of three intervals, each 120 feet. It was therefore  $7 \times 120 = 840$  feet. The depth was made up of the depth of the three lines of cohorts, each 40 feet, and two intervals, each 240 or 250 feet, i.e., it was  $120 + 480$  or  $500 = 600$  or 620 feet.

<sup>2</sup> That is  $6 \times 840 + 5 \times 120 = 5,040 + 600 = 5,640$  feet.

PLATE II.



1. Imperator. 2. Legatus. 3. Centurio. 4. Lictor 5. Signiferi.  
6. Bucinator. 7. Tubicen. 8. Vexillum. 9. Aquila.



were all of senatorial rank and received their appointment from the senate. In the absence of the commander-in-chief, they assumed his duties. They were sometimes placed in command of important detachments detailed for special service. In the battle with Ariovistus, Caesar placed one of his legions under the command of his quaestor and each of the other five under the command of one of his lieutenants.

35. The quaestor had charge of the military chest, and was the quartermaster of the army. He had the rank of a lieutenant-general, *legatus*, and was sometimes entrusted with a command in battle.

36. The special officers of the separate legions were the military tribunes and the centurions.

37. Each legion had six military tribunes, *tribuni militum*, who formerly commanded in rotation, two at a time for a period of two months.<sup>1</sup> In the army in Gaul, however, the tribunes were mostly young men of wealth and social position whom Caesar, from personal friendship or political considerations, had selected from the equestrian order and placed upon his staff. They had little military experience or knowledge, and were accordingly incompetent to take the general command of a legion in battle,<sup>2</sup> though they were sometimes entrusted with the command of small detachments detailed for special service. In general, they administered the internal affairs of the legion. They served as staff-officers to the commander-in-chief and as adjutants to the lieutenant-generals and the quaestor.

38. Each legion had also 60 centurions.<sup>3</sup> These officers were in general men of large military experience, who had been promoted from the ranks, as a reward of good service. They were the real commanders, not only of centuries, but also of maniples and cohorts, and, in a certain sense, under the *legatus*, of the legion as a whole. The two centurions in each maniple differed from each other in rank; the first,

<sup>1</sup> The two tribunes commanded by turns, each for one day. See Marquardt, *Römische Staatsverwaltung*, Vol. II., p. 352; also Jähns, *Geschichte des Kriegswesens*, p. 225.

<sup>2</sup> See Book I., 39.

<sup>3</sup> According to Gölter, there were 120 centurions in each legion, but he includes in this number the 60 assistant centurions, called *optiones*.

called *centurio prior*, commanded the maniples, while the second, called *centurio posterior*, served as his adjutant. The first centurion of the first maniples commanded the cohort, and the first centurion of the first maniples of the first cohort, called *primi pili centurio*, or *primipilus*,<sup>1</sup> was the chief centurion of the legion, and had much to do with the general command.

39. The Romans in their military system seem to have aimed to stimulate ambition and reward fidelity. An enterprising recruit who on entering the service took his place at the very foot of the legion, in the second century of the third maniples of the tenth cohort, had before him a long career of advancement in the rank and file of the army, and if, by bravery and fidelity, he succeeded in attaining the coveted office of centurion, the prospect of promotion was still before him. He might hope to rise from maniples to maniples, and from cohort to cohort, until, in the end, having passed through all the grades of honor, he should become the chief centurion, the *primipilus* of the legion. This was the height of his ambition, the goal of his aspirations.

40. The exact order of promotion is still a disputed question. According to Rüstow, the six centurions of each cohort formed a separate class, the centurions of the first cohort forming the first class, those of the tenth cohort the tenth class. Thus there were ten classes, and each class contained six centurions.<sup>2</sup> This is probably the prevailing view among scholars.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See Book II., 25, and Book III., 5.

<sup>2</sup> To determine the rank of a centurion, we must know to which cohort he belonged, to which maniples in the cohort, and to which century in the maniples. Thus the full designation of his rank required the use of three separate titles: (1), an ordinal numeral, as *primus*, if he belonged to the first cohort, *secundus*, if he belonged to the second; (2), the word *pilus*, if he belonged to the first maniples in his cohort, *princeps*, if he belonged to the second, and *hastatus*, if he belonged to the third; and (3) *prior*, if he belonged to the first century in his maniples, and *posterior*, if he belonged to the second. Thus *primus pilus prior*, applied to a centurion, denotes that he commanded the first century of the first maniples of the first cohort, — in other words, that he was the chief centurion of the legion; *decimus hastatus posterior* denotes that he commanded the second century of the third maniples of the tenth cohort, i.e., that he was the lowest centurion in the legion, while *quintus princeps prior* denotes that he commanded the first century of the second maniples of the fifth cohort.

<sup>3</sup> According to Göler, however, the first centurion of each cohort belonged to the first class, the second to the second class, the third to the third class, and so

41. The centurions of the first class, called sometimes *primorum ordinum centuriones*, and sometimes simply *primi ordines*,<sup>1</sup> enjoyed certain honors and privileges not often accorded to the other centurions. As a general rule, they alone of the centurions were invited by the commander to seats in all councils of war<sup>2</sup> in company with the lieutenants and the military tribunes.

42. The praefects, *praefecti*, commanded divisions of auxiliaries, either infantry or cavalry. The praefects in the army of Caesar in Gaul were mostly young men who had seen little military service.<sup>3</sup>

43. The decurions commanded small companies of cavalry. Each company, or troop, called *turma*, numbering thirty horse, was divided into three sections, called *decuriae*, each under the command of a decurion; but the first, or senior, decurion commanded not only his own *decuria*, but also the entire *turma*.

#### ORDER OF MARCH.

44. The usual order of march was either the simple column, *agmen pilatum*, or the line of battle, *acies instructa*. The square, *agmen quadratum*, was resorted to only in extreme cases.

#### LEGIONS MARCHING IN COLUMN — *Agmen Pilatum*.

45. A cohort in column of centuries, as we have already seen (25), has a front of 40 feet, with a depth of 120 feet. If the column was formed from the right, the first cohort led, and was followed by the others in the order of their numbers, but if the column was formed from the left, the tenth cohort led and was followed by the others in the inverse order of their numbers, i.e., the ninth, eighth, etc.

---

on until all the centurions were classified. Thus each class consisted of ten centurions, one from each cohort, and there were as many classes as there were centurions in a cohort, i.e., there were six classes of the regular centurions. While, therefore, Rüstow divides the 60 regular centurions of a legion into ten classes, of six centurions each, Göler divides them into six classes, of ten each. In the same manner, Göler divides the 60 assistants or sub-centurions, *optiones*, into six classes, of ten each, making in all twelve classes.

<sup>1</sup> See Book V., 28 and 30; Book VI., 7.

<sup>2</sup> See Book I., 41, and Book V., 28.

<sup>3</sup> See Book I., 39.



46. On the march, the cohorts are supposed to have been separated from each other by an interval of 20 or 30 feet. Assuming an interval of 20 feet, we find that a legion, marching in column of centuries, with a front of 40 feet, was 1,400 feet long, and with a front of 20 feet, 2,600 feet long.<sup>1</sup>

47. In general, every Roman soldier carried his own personal baggage. The different articles, consisting of clothing, cooking utensils, and rations for one, two, or more weeks, weighing, probably, in the aggregate, from 30 to 50 pounds, were carefully put up in packages, *sarcinae*, and firmly secured to a rod, as represented in plate I. On the march, the rod was carried on the shoulder.<sup>2</sup>

48. The general baggage of the army, called *impedimenta*, comprising tents, tools, and supplies of various kinds, was carried by beasts of burden, *jumenta*. According to Rüstow's estimate,<sup>3</sup> the length of the baggage-train of a legion marching in a column of centuries of full width, was 650 feet, and that of a legion marching in a column of centuries of half the usual width, 1,300 feet.

49. We have just seen (46) that a legion without baggage-train, in a column of centuries of full width, was 1,400 feet long, and in a column of half the usual width, 2,600 feet long. Including the baggage-train, therefore, the entire length of the column of full width must have been about 2,050 feet, or two-fifths of a mile, and the entire length of the column of half the usual width, about 3,900 feet, or almost four-fifths of a mile.<sup>4</sup>

50. Before the battle of the Sabis, Caesar had eight legions on the march.<sup>5</sup> The length of a column of centuries, containing such a force, would be 16,400 feet, upwards

<sup>1</sup> The length of a column of full width was  $10 \times 120 \text{ feet} + 10 \times 20 \text{ feet} = 1,400 \text{ feet}$ , and the length of a column of half the usual width was  $10 \times 240 \text{ feet} + 10 \times 20 \text{ feet} = 2,600 \text{ feet}$ . This estimate includes the interval of 20 feet between the last cohort of the legion and the first cohort of the next.

<sup>2</sup> This arrangement for the convenience of the soldier, introduced by Marius, was called from him *mulus Marianus*, the "mule of Marius." It was simply a primitive knapsack.

<sup>3</sup> This estimate allows to each legion 520 beasts of burden, arranged in 65 full ranks, with 8 animals in a rank, and gives 10 feet to each rank.

<sup>4</sup> The column of maniples of any given force would be about one-fifth longer than the column of centuries.

<sup>5</sup> See Book II., 19 to 27.

of three miles, if the column was of full width; and 31,200 feet, upwards of six miles, if the column was of half the usual width.

### MARCHING IN LINE OF BATTLE—*Acies Instructa*.

51. A legion marching in line of battle was usually arranged in three parallel lines of cohorts; but these lines might be formed in two different ways, as follows:—

1. The three lines of cohorts which constituted the usual order of battle, the *triplex acies*, formed the three parallel columns. Thus cohorts 1, 2, 3, and 4 formed the first column, 5, 6, and 7 the second, and 8, 9, and 10 the third, as seen in figure 2, below.

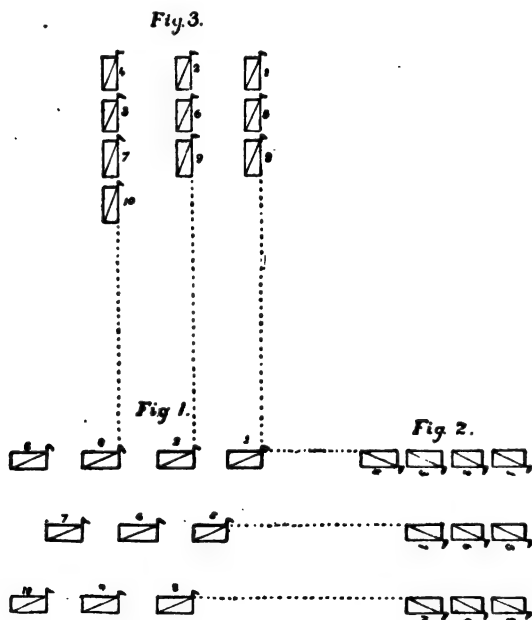


Figure 1 represents a legion in order of battle.

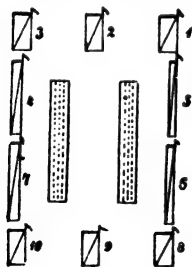
Figure 2, a legion marching in order of battle, with its cohorts in column of maniples.

Figure 3, a legion marching in order of battle, with its cohorts in column of centuries.

In forming these columns, each man faced to the right or left, and marched by the right or left flank. Each cohort marched in column of maniples. In an army of several legions, marching in this order, the second legion was placed directly in the rear of the first, the third directly in the rear of the second, and so on to the end of the column. Thus the whole army marched in three parallel columns of maniples. If the enemy appeared on either flank, the columns halted, each man faced to the right or left, as the case required, the cohorts separated, and the whole army was in battle-array. This order of march was usually adopted when the enemy was expected on the flank.

2. When the enemy was expected in front, the legion marched straight forward with its cohorts in column of centuries: the three cohorts on the right wing of the legion, viz., 1, 5, and 8, fell into line and formed the right column, the central cohorts, 2, 6, and 9, formed the middle column, and the left cohorts, 3, 4, 7, and 10, the left column, as seen in figure 3, above. In an army of several legions, marching in this order, the legions were all placed abreast, and there were three times as many columns as there were legions. Thus an army of 6 legions marched in 18 parallel columns. To form the line of battle from these columns, it was only necessary for each cohort to arrange its own maniples in order of battle, as already described (26, foot-note), and then take its proper station in the line.

52. The square, the *agmen quadratum*, was adopted on the march only in the presence of an overwhelming force of the enemy. In regard to its exact formation, there is some diversity of opinion. According to Rüstow, the ten cohorts of each legion formed a rectangle enclosing the baggage, as seen in the accompanying figure.



*Agmen Quadratum.*

Cohorts 1, 2, and 3, in column of centuries, formed the vanguard; cohorts 8, 9, and 10, also in column of centuries, formed the rear-guard; while 5 and 6, in columns of maniples of 5 files, formed the right wing, and 4 and 7, also in column of maniples with 5 files, formed the left wing.

53. In an army on the march, we recognize three parts, more or less distinct:—

1. The vanguard, the head of the column, *primum agmen*.<sup>1</sup>

2. The main body of the army, *exercitus, omnes copiae*.<sup>1</sup>

3. The rear-guard, the rear, *novissimum agmen*.<sup>1</sup>

54. The special organization of the different parts of the column, and indeed the entire order of march, depended largely upon the direction of the movement in relation to the enemy.

#### ORDER OF MARCH IN ADVANCING.

55. In advance movements in the Gallic campaigns, the vanguard of Caesar's army ordinarily consisted of cavalry and light-armed infantry, together with the tribunes, centurions, and legionaries entrusted with the duty of selecting and measuring off the ground for the camp. It was its special duty to reconnoitre the country, to take note of all hostile preparations, to gain tidings of the enemy,<sup>2</sup> and in due time to select a suitable place for the camp.

56. The main body of the army followed the van at a convenient distance. It marched in column of centuries, each legion with its baggage directly behind it; but the last legion probably detailed a few cohorts to protect its baggage, and in that event the cohorts thus detailed formed the rear-guard of the army. In this order of march, the legions, thus separated by their baggage, were exposed in case of an attack to great peril; they were accordingly said to be *impeditae*,<sup>3</sup> entangled or impeded by baggage, *impedimentum*.

57. In advancing in the presence of the enemy the legions marched either in column of centuries, with collected baggage, or in order of battle. With the first arrangement, the main body, consisting of three-fourths of all the legions, followed close upon the advance-guard, and was itself imme-

<sup>1</sup> For the use of these terms, see Book I., 15 and 23; Book II., 19 and 26.

<sup>2</sup> From the van, detachments of cavalry were sent out in various directions, sometimes to great distances. It was by means of such reconnoitring parties that Caesar obtained tidings of the movements of Ariovistus, while he was yet twenty-four miles distant. See Book I., 41.

<sup>3</sup> See Book III., 24.

diately followed by the collected baggage-train of the army. The few remaining legions formed the rear-guard of the column. In this order of march, the legions were comparatively ready for action, and were said to be *expeditae*, disentangled, or free from encumbrance;<sup>1</sup> but the individual soldiers were still *impediti*, and in case of an attack, they required time to dispose of their personal baggage,<sup>2</sup> to remove the coverings from their shields, to put on their helmets, to adjust their field-badges,<sup>3</sup> and, in a word, to prepare for action.<sup>4</sup> In such an emergency, it was the special duty of the advance-guard to secure for them the needful time by engaging the enemy, and thus retarding his movements.

58. Sometimes in advancing in the immediate presence of the enemy, if the ground permitted, the several legions marched abreast, each in three parallel columns in order of battle.<sup>5</sup> For the special formation and arrangement of the columns, see 51. In this order of march, every soldier, free from his baggage, and fully armed and equipped, was *expeditus*, ready for immediate action.

#### ORDER OF MARCH IN RETREAT.

59. The order of march in retreat was usually the simple column of centuries with collected baggage. The vanguard, consisting of a legion or more, started in advance, with the entire baggage-train of the army; at a suitable distance behind marched the other legions, followed by the rear-guard, consisting of cavalry, archers, and slingers.

60. In cases of extreme peril, the *agmen quadratum*, already explained (52), was adopted in retreat. In such an emergency, all the legions of the army were sometimes massed around their baggage in a single square or rectangle, and sometimes each legion enclosed its own baggage, as explained in 52. The cavalry, archers, and slingers, remaining outside of the squares, served as skirmishers.

<sup>1</sup> See Book II., 19; Book V., 2; Book VII., 40.

<sup>2</sup> See Book I., 24, *sarcinas in unum locum conferri*.

<sup>3</sup> See Book II., 21, *ad galeas induendas scutisque tegimenta detrudenda*; also *ad insignia accommodanda*.

<sup>4</sup> See Book VII., 18, *sarcinas conferri, arma expediti, jussit*.

<sup>5</sup> See Book IV., 14.

## ORDER OF MARCH IN FLANK MOVEMENTS.

61. Flank marches<sup>1</sup> were always made in order of battle. The legions generally marched in three columns of maniples. For the formation of these columns, see 51, 1. In an open country, the cavalry, archers, and slingers, marched on the flank toward the enemy, while the baggage-train was stationed on the other flank. In special cases, each legion was followed by its own baggage.

62. The day's march of a Roman army in the field began at four or five o'clock in the morning and continued till about mid-day. Most of the afternoon was occupied in fortifying the camp and in attending to various duties connected with camp-life. The distance usually accomplished in a day does not seem to have differed much from an ordinary day's march of modern armies. The average distance was probably about fifteen or sixteen miles. Forced marches (*magna itinera*) were, of course, much longer. In one instance,<sup>2</sup> Caesar marched about fifty miles in a little more than twenty-four hours; but this was an exceptional achievement, accomplished under the pressure of a military necessity.

## ROMAN CAMP.

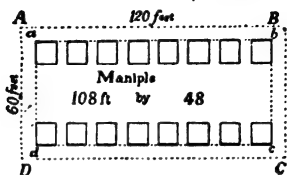
63. In the military history of Rome the camp has a degree of importance without a parallel in modern warfare. It was the soldier's home, a place of rest and security after the labors and dangers of the day; in it was the altar at which he worshipped. It was always fortified, even when intended for a single night. Indeed, it was like a fortified city, encompassed and protected by ramparts and a moat. A Roman general seldom went into battle without a fortified camp directly in the rear. In modern warfare, those who are defeated in battle are exposed to all the perils of a disorderly retreat; a Roman army, on the contrary, after a defeat, retired in comparative safety to a well fortified camp.

64. In the Roman camp, each legion, cohort, and maniple, had a definite space assigned to it; and this space was bounded on all sides by a street of greater or less width.

<sup>1</sup> An army is said to make a flank movement when it passes near the flank of the enemy or marches in a direction parallel to his line of march.

<sup>2</sup> See Book VII., 40 and 41.

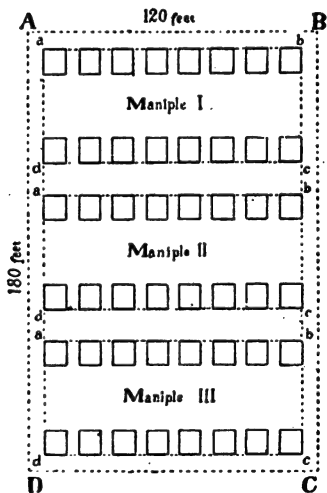
Each manipule occupied a rectangle 108 feet long and 48 feet wide, surrounded by a street 12 feet wide. Accordingly, the entire space assigned to a manipule, including half the width of the streets which separated it from the adjacent manipules, was 120 feet long and 60 feet wide, as seen in the accompanying figure.



ABCD, the entire space assigned to a manipule, including half the street.

abcd, the smaller rectangle, 108 feet long and 48 wide, actually occupied by the manipule. Along the side 'ab,' in this last rectangle, were placed eight tents for the first century; and along the side 'dc' eight tents for the second century. The tents were 10 feet square, and were separated from each other by intervals of 4 feet.<sup>1</sup> They were all placed with the front to the street; accordingly, the two rows faced in opposite directions. The beasts of burden were placed in the rear of the tents.

65. As a cohort contained three manipules, it would require for its accommodation three such rectangles as we have now described. Accordingly, the space occupied by a cohort in camp was 180 feet long and 120 wide, as seen in the accompanying figure.



Cohort in Camp.

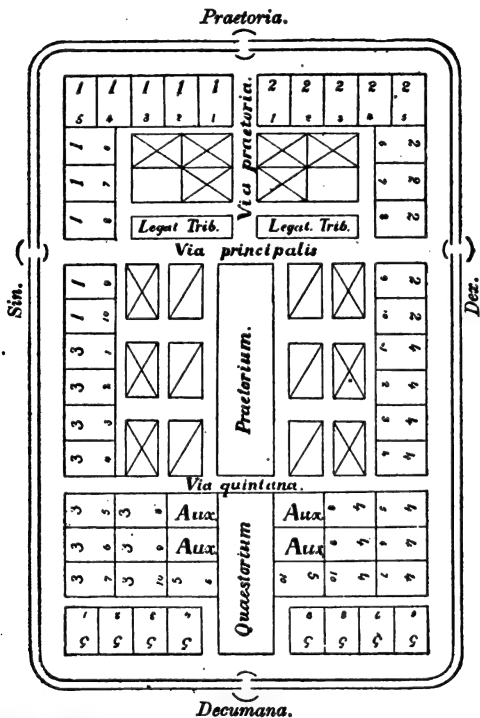
ABCD, the space occupied by one cohort, including one half the width of the streets which separate it from the other cohorts.

abcd, the space occupied by each manipule for tents, arms, and beasts of burden.

In the arrangement of the three manipules of the cohort, the first was placed nearest to the wall of the camp.

<sup>1</sup> The tents were covered with the skins of animals or with leather; hence the expression *sub pellibus*, in tents, in camp. See Book III., 29.

66. Ten rectangles, 180 feet long and 120 feet wide, would furnish quarters for a legion; fifty such rectangles for five legions; but a camp for a Roman army must provide quarters not only for the legions, but also for the auxiliaries. The following plan, taken, with slight modifications, from Rüstow, shows the general arrangement of a Roman camp for an army consisting of five legions, with the usual force of auxiliaries:—



Plan of a Roman Camp. Length, 2,100 feet. Width, 1,400 feet.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Roman camp was either a square, or a rectangle whose width was two-thirds of its length. The plan represents the latter form. The ancient authorities on the camp are Polybius, who lived in the second century, B.C., and a certain Hyginus, who, in the opinion of Marquardt, lived about the beginning of the third century, A.D.

The size of the camp must, of course, be adapted to the size of the army to be quartered in it. Rüstow gives the following formula to determine in feet the length and breadth of a camp for an army of any given size:—



1. There were four gates, one in each side: (1) the *Porta Praetoria*, in front, marked *Praetoria* in the plan; (2) the *Porta Decumana*, on the opposite side, marked *Decumana*; (3) the *Porta Principalis Dextra*, on the right side, marked *Dex.*; and (4) the *Porta Principalis Sinistra*, on the left side, marked *Sin.*<sup>1</sup>

2. *Legat. Trib.* = Legati et Tribuni.

3. *Aux.* = *Auxilia*.

4. The figure  $\boxed{X}$  represents the space occupied by cavalry.

5. The figure  $\boxed{I}$  the space occupied by the general and staff,<sup>2</sup> together with troops devoted to their personal service.

6. The figure  $\boxed{\phantom{X}}$  the space occupied by the archers and slingers.

7. The rectangles with numerals represent the spaces occupied by the separate cohorts.<sup>3</sup>

67. When a battle was anticipated, the camp was placed with its front to the enemy; in other cases, it faced in the direction in which the army was marching. It was divided internally into three nearly equal parts by the two principal streets, both parallel to the front — the *Via Principalis* and the *Via Quintana*. The first or front part was called the *Praetentura*, the second or middle part the *Latera praetorii*, and the third *Retentura*. The *Via Praetoria*, another important street, led from the *Porta Praetoria* to the *Via Principalis*, dividing the *Praetentura* into two equal parts. On a line with the *Via Praetoria* were situated (1), in the middle division of the camp, the *Praetorium*, — the headquarters of the army,<sup>4</sup> — and (2), in the *Retentura*, the

$$f = 200\sqrt{c} \quad \text{and} \quad s = 1\frac{1}{2} \text{ times } f.$$

In which  $f$  equals the length of the *front*,  $c$  the number of *cohorts* in the army, and  $s$  the length of the *side*.

The camp represented in the plan is intended to accommodate five legions, or fifty cohorts. Here  $c = 50$ . Hence  $f$  (the front) =  $200\sqrt{50} = 200 \times 7 = 1,400$  feet.  $s = 1\frac{1}{2}$  times 1,400 = 2,100 feet.

<sup>1</sup> Observe that the corners of the wall are rounded so as to be more easily defended.

<sup>2</sup> Except the lieutenants and tribunes.

<sup>3</sup> The upper numeral is the number of the legion; the lower numeral the number of the cohort. Thus  $\boxed{\begin{smallmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{smallmatrix}}$  represents the space occupied by the fifth cohort of the second legion.

<sup>4</sup> The *Praetorium* extended in length from the *Via Principalis* to the *Via Quintana*, and was from two hundred to three hundred feet wide. In it were the quarters of the general, the altars of the gods, and the tribunal, or judgment-seat, of the army.

*Quaestorium*, — the quarters of the quaestor and his staff.<sup>1</sup>

68. In the plan of the camp, observe (1) that between the wall and the tents was left an open space, probably from one hundred to two hundred feet wide, extending entirely around the camp, and (2) that the forces were distributed as follows:—

1. In the *Praetentura* were stationed (1), sixteen of the fifty cohorts; (2), the lieutenants and tribunes; (3), one-half of all the cavalry; and (4), all the archers and slingers.

2. In the *Middle Division* of the camp, called *Latere praetorii*, were stationed, besides the commander-in-chief, who occupied the *Praetorium* (1), twelve of the fifty cohorts; (2), one-half of all the cavalry; and (3), the entire staff of the commander-in-chief, except the lieutenants and the tribunes, together with the troops devoted to their personal service.

3. In the *Retentura* were stationed, in addition to the quaestor and his staff, (1) twenty-two of the fifty cohorts, and (2) the auxiliaries, except the cavalry, archers, and slingers.<sup>2</sup>

69. In a camp intended for winter-quarters, wooden huts, thatched with straw, took the place of ordinary tents, and sheds were erected to protect the beasts of burden from wind and weather. Moreover, the space allowed to the different parts of the army was doubtless somewhat more ample than in a summer camp.

70. The fortifications of the camp consisted of a wall, *vallum*, and a ditch, or fosse, *fossa*. The wall seems to have been ordinarily about 6 feet high, and 6 or 8 feet broad at the top, the ditch about 9 feet wide at the top, and 7 feet deep.<sup>3</sup> Doubtless, in fortifying a permanent camp, *castra stativa*, in a hostile country, the ditch was

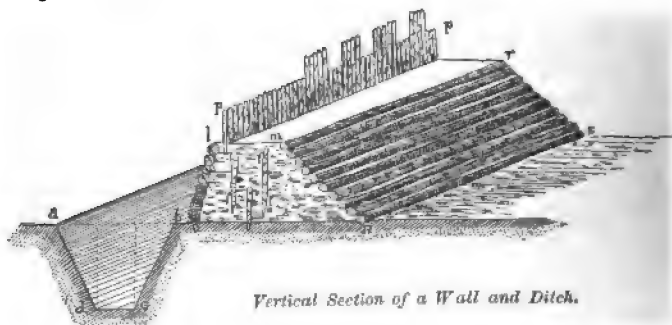
<sup>1</sup> The *Quaestorium* furnished quarters, not only for the quaestor and his staff, but, also, for foreign ambassadors, and for hostages and prisoners. In it were also stored the supplies and the booty.

<sup>2</sup> Observe in the internal arrangements of the camp that the auxiliaries, both cavalry and infantry, are stationed near the general and his staff, and that they are completely surrounded by the legionary soldiers.

<sup>3</sup> Vegetius, Book I., 24, says that the ordinary ditch was either 9 feet wide and 7 feet deep, or 12 feet wide and 9 feet deep. In these dimensions, it has been observed that the width, as 9 or 12, is divisible by 3, and that the depth is obtained by adding one to  $\frac{1}{3}$  of the width, as width 9, depth  $\frac{1}{3}$  of  $9 + 1 = 7$ , or

made wider and deeper, and the wall higher and broader.<sup>1</sup> It was sometimes surmounted with a breastwork of palisades, *lorica*,<sup>2</sup> and in special cases wooden towers were erected on it at convenient intervals. Each gate was probably 40 feet wide, and was defended within and without either by a transverse or by a tambour, as seen in the above plan.<sup>3</sup>

71. The following figure represents a vertical section of a wall and ditch, the former surmounted with a breastwork of palisades:—



abcd represents a ditch, *fossa fastigata*, 9 feet wide and 7 feet deep. lmno, a wall or rampart, *vallum*, 6 feet high, and 6 feet wide at the top, furnished with steps on the inside, i.e., on the side 'mrsn.' pp, palisades. ff, fascines imbedded in the work, to strengthen it.

width 12, depth  $\frac{2}{3}$  of  $12 + 1 = 9$ . Rüstow infers that these instances are illustrations of a law, and that having the width of any ditch, we can thus at once obtain the depth. As a matter of fact, Caesar generally gives only the width.

In opposition to the view of Rüstow, Göler thinks that the normal depth of a ditch, whatever its width, was 9 feet, and that Caesar specifies the depth only when it does not conform to the ordinary standard.

<sup>1</sup> It has been observed that when Caesar gives the height of a wall with the width of the accompanying ditch, as ditch 9 feet wide, wall 6 feet high; ditch 15 feet wide, wall 10 feet high; ditch 18 feet wide, wall 12 feet high, the height of the wall is  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the width of the ditch. This Rüstow believes to be the regular law. Indeed, some such relation as this between the dimensions of the ditch and the wall seems natural, as the earth thrown out of the former was used in constructing the latter.

<sup>2</sup> The breastwork was usually made by driving green stakes into the ground, and by binding them firmly together by intertwining their branches. The general height of the breastwork was four or five feet, but in some instances pinnacles, *pinnae*, projected above it two or three feet, as seen in the figure in 71.

<sup>3</sup> The Gauls and the Germans fortified their camps, not by permanent works like the Romans, but by arranging their chariots and wagons in a circle, and using them as a rampart. After a defeat, they often retreated to these temporary defences. See Book I., 26.

PLATE III.



1. *Materia ad Castra Munienda comportatur.* 2. *Captivi.*

THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

72. The side of the ditch nearest to the wall is called the *scarp*, and the opposite side, the *counterscarp*. A ditch with sloping sides, as in the figure, was called *fossa fastigata*; with vertical sides, *fossa directis lateribus*, and with sloping scarp but vertical counterscarp, *fossa punica*.<sup>1</sup>

73. The wall was constructed largely from the earth and stone taken from the ditch, but to give the structure greater firmness and strength, branches of trees, bushes, stakes, and fascines were imbedded in it. When the sides of the wall were quite steep, they were usually covered with sods or with brush in the form of fascines. Sometimes logs were used for the same purpose. Moreover, these logs and fascines could be arranged in steps, so that from within the bank or wall could be easily ascended. See figure in 71. The selection of the place for the camp was a duty which required skill, judgment, and experience.<sup>2</sup> Accordingly, this important trust was generally committed to a tribune, or to some other officer of the staff, at the head of a detachment of centurions and legionaries. They marched in advance of the main body of the army, under the protection of the vanguard, and were expected to have the outlines of the camp well defined on the arrival of the legions.

74. For Roman soldiers, marching through a hostile country, no small part of each day's work was the fortification of the camp, but they shrunk from no labor, and were scarcely less expert with the pick and the spade than with the spear and the sword. With such laborers, three or four hours, in the judgment of Rüstow, would be ample for the complete fortification of the camp.

75. But Roman camps in a hostile country were not only strongly fortified, but also carefully guarded. In cases requiring only ordinary vigilance, the duty of keeping guard during the night-watches was entrusted to five cohorts detailed for the purpose from different legions.

---

<sup>1</sup> The first form was generally used by Caesar, though the second also occurs. See Book VII., 72.

<sup>2</sup> It was of vital importance that the camp should be pitched, if possible, on a gently sloping hillside of sufficient extent, within easy reach of a good supply of wood and water. It was also important that it should not be near any hill from which an enemy could reconnoitre it, or near any dense forest in which he could be concealed.

The tattoo, the signal for setting the night-watches, was sounded at nightfall. A cohort was stationed at each gate, and sentinels were posted on every part of the wall. A fifth cohort was detailed for guard duty in the quarters of the general and quaestor, while every cohort had its own sentry. In cases of unusual peril, the guard was greatly strengthened; sometimes two or three cohorts guarded each gate.

As the night was divided into four equal watches, the guard was divided into four reliefs, each one of which was on duty during one-fourth of the night. The three reliefs not on duty slept upon their arms, as a sort of picket-guard.

76. The reveille was sounded at daybreak. If the march was to be resumed, three successive signals were sounded. At the first signal, the tents were struck; at the second, the beasts of burden received their loads; and at the third, the column moved. If, however, a battle was imminent, the march was not resumed; the tents were left standing, and the camp was committed to the care of a strong guard.<sup>1</sup> Then the soldiers, disencumbered of their knapsacks, and armed and equipped for action, truly *expediti*, marched out of the camp, and were at once marshalled in line of battle.

77. Roman generals made it an unfailing rule to take every possible advantage of position. For them an open plain was not a good battle-field. The Roman mode of attack required an elevated position, from which the heavy javelins could be hurled into the ranks of the enemy with the greatest effect.<sup>2</sup>

#### MILITARY STANDARDS AND MARTIAL MUSIC.

78. The general standard of the army was the banner, *vexillum*, of the commander-in-chief. When displayed from the general's tent in the Praetorium, it was a signal to

<sup>1</sup> This guard sometimes consisted of four or five cohorts, detailed from separate legions, and sometimes of one or more legions recently enrolled. See Book III., 26; Book II., 8.

<sup>2</sup> For Caesar's own description of his favorite position for marshalling his army for battle, see Book II., 8. From this description, we see how very important it was that the camp should be pitched upon a hillside of sufficient extent to enable the general to marshal his army for battle near his camp, if not in front of it.

prepare for immediate action, and when waved before the legions advancing in order of battle, it was the signal for the charge, *incursus*. It contained the name of the general and of the army, inscribed in large red letters on a white ground.

79. Each legion had its own standard, which was entrusted to the special care of the chief centurion, the *primipilus* of the legion.<sup>1</sup> It was an eagle of the size of a dove, generally of silver, though under the empire sometimes of gold. The eagle was represented with uplifted wings, as seen in plate II., 9. Sometimes a small banner, *vexillum*, on which was embroidered the number of the legion, was placed directly below the eagle.

80. The ten cohorts<sup>2</sup> of the legion had their special standards, *signa*,<sup>3</sup> which were of various forms, sometimes very simple<sup>4</sup> and sometimes more elaborate. For specimens of the latter, see plate II., 5.

81. The standards carried by the cavalry, by the light-armed infantry, and by detachments detailed for special service, were simple banners, *vexilla*.<sup>5</sup> For the general appearance, form, and size of the *vexilla*, see plate I., 5, and plate II., 8.<sup>6</sup>

82. The chief musical instrument in a Roman army, and indeed the only one mentioned in the Commentaries on the Gallic war, was the trumpet, *tuba*.<sup>7</sup> This was a wind instrument of brass in the form of a modern trumpet. The only musicians mentioned by Caesar, in either of his works,<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The loss of a standard was a calamity and a disgrace, both to the standard-bearer and to the legion.

<sup>2</sup> Göler thinks that the maniples had standards, and that the standard of the first maniple was also the standard of the entire cohort, but Rüstow rejects this view as utterly untenable.

<sup>3</sup> The general name for a standard was *signum*, and for a standard-bearer *signifer*, but the more specific names *aquila* and *aquilifer* were generally used to designate the standard and the standard-bearer of the legion. The bravest and strongest soldiers were selected as standard-bearers. See Book IV., 25; also *signiferi* in plate II., 5.

<sup>4</sup> A standard was sometimes simply the figure of an open hand upon a staff, and sometimes the figure of an animal, as a wolf or an ox.

<sup>5</sup> See Book VI., 36.

<sup>6</sup> Observe in plate II., 5, that one of the elaborate standards has a *vexillum* at the top.

<sup>7</sup> Göler thinks that every century had at least one *tuba*.

<sup>8</sup> See Book II., 20, Book VII., 47; and *Civil War*, Book II., 35,



are the *tubicines* and the *bucinatores*,<sup>1</sup> both of whom are represented with their instruments in plate II., 6 and 7; but the *lituus*, a modification of the trumpet, curved near the end, was doubtless used in the cavalry.<sup>2</sup>

### ROMAN MODE OF ATTACK.

83. When the Roman general had secured his favorite position on the gentle declivities of a range of hills with the enemy sufficiently near in the plain below, he ordered the signal to be sounded with the trumpet. The legions advanced slowly and steadily in order of battle until they were within five hundred or six hundred feet of the enemy, when the standard of the commander-in-chief was displayed, and the united blasts of the horn and the trumpet sounded the signal for the charge. From this point, the legions, with poised javelins in their front ranks, *pilis infestis*, advanced upon the run until the hostile lines were within forty or fifty feet of each other, when a salvo of javelins from the front of the legions carried consternation and death into the ranks of the opposing phalanx.<sup>3</sup> Then, with drawn swords, the Roman soldiers charged the broken ranks of the foe.<sup>4</sup>

84. Thus all along the front line a deadly conflict was waged hand to hand, — a series of duels, as Rüstow expresses it.<sup>5</sup> For the moment, it was of course impossible to

<sup>1</sup> It seems probable that the *bucinator* used not only the *bucina*, but also the *cornu*, the horn, a wind instrument made generally from the horn of a wild ox, and furnished with a silver mouth-piece, but sometimes made from brass. According to Göler, the various military evolutions were first signalled by the horn, and then proclaimed throughout the army by the trumpet. The *classicum*, which, on the field of battle, was the signal for the charge, was made by the united blasts of the horn and the trumpet.

<sup>2</sup> Lucan, *Pharsalia*, I., 237, characterizes the notes of the *lituus* and the *tuba* in these words: *stridor lituum clangorque tubarum*.

<sup>3</sup> The *pila* which penetrated the hostile shields often stuck fast in them, thus rendering the men unfit for action. Sometimes three or more shields in the dense phalanx were pinned together by these weapons. See Book I., 25.

<sup>4</sup> This onset of the Roman legions with *pilum* and sword has been compared to a volley of musketry, instantly followed by a bayonet-charge.

It is not probable that all the men in the front rank charged with the sword at the same time, as they stood too close together in rank and file to allow the free use of that weapon. Rüstow conjectures that the odd numbers in the front rank sprang forward, while the even numbers kept their places in the line, and that thus each man secured ample room for the charge.

<sup>5</sup> In this account of the Roman mode of attack, we have followed Rüstow.

PLATE IV.



*Galli. 1. Eques, 2. Pedes, 3. Signifer, 4. Dux.*

THE  
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

preserve unbroken ranks in the front of the cohorts thus engaged. Along the front line, the whole of the first century of each maniple participated, either directly or indirectly, in the terrible struggle. While the first two ranks bore the brunt of the battle, the other three, as opportunity offered, hurled their javelins over the heads of the combatants into the hostile ranks in the rear, and held themselves in readiness to rush to the relief of their companions in case of need. Meanwhile, the second century of each maniple, remaining firm and immovable, gave stability to the line.

85. Thus far the cohorts of the second line had taken no part in the battle; but soon they, too, were seen to be in motion, and, advancing quickly in battle-array through the intervals of the first line, they hurled their javelins into the ranks of the bewildered foe, and then with drawn swords rushed into the thickest of the fight. The exhausted cohorts, thus timely relieved, retired to reform their shattered line, and to recover breath and strength for a new onset. Thus the first and second lines continued the conflict, alternately relieving each other,<sup>1</sup> until the enemy, exhausted and demoralized, yielded to the repeated onsets of the Roman cohorts. The third line formed the reserve, and was summoned to the front only in cases of special need.<sup>2</sup>

#### ROMAN METHOD OF TAKING FORTIFIED PLACES.

86. The Romans recognized three different methods of taking fortified places:—

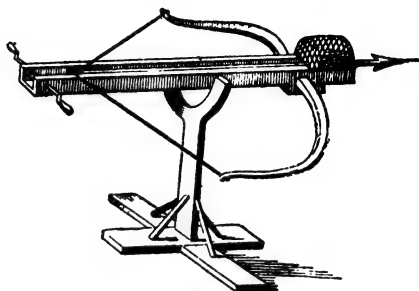
1. By Storm, Assault — *oppugnatio repentina*.
2. By Investment, Blockade — *obsidio*.
3. By Siege, with active operations — *oppugnatio operibus*.

<sup>1</sup> In the opinion of Rüstow, a line of Roman cohorts seldom remained in active conflict more than fifteen minutes at a time.

<sup>2</sup> The Gallic mode of conducting a battle was wholly unlike the Roman. The Gauls staked the issue largely on the first onset. Raising their fearful battle-cry, they advanced against the enemy in solid phalanx, and strove to overwhelm him by the mere momentum and weight of moving masses.

The unit in the German line of battle was the solid wedge, the *cuneus*, so celebrated in the early history of Germany. The different tribes were massed separately. The charge on the field of battle was an impetuous onset in masses. See Book I., 51.

87. In attacking fortified towns, the Romans often employed certain engines which corresponded to artillery in modern warfare. They were designated by the general name *tormenta*, from *torqueo*, to twist, as their motive power was derived from the torsion of firmly twisted ropes; but they were of several varieties.

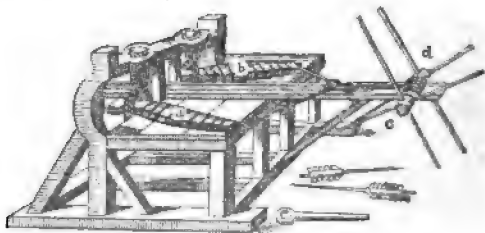


*Scorpion.*

1. The Scorpion—*scorpio*—was a large cross-bow, resting on a standard, as seen in the accompanying figure.

2. The Catapult—*catapulta*—was an engine for hurling heavy javelins or other missiles. This was also a modification of

the cross-bow; but the arms of the bow were straight sticks of timber, and its elasticity, or its power of recoil, was produced by the torsion of a large rope, or cable, made from hair or sinews twisted to the greatest possible tension.<sup>1</sup> The construction of the catapult, and the mode of working it, are seen in the following figure:—



*Catapult.*

<sup>1</sup> Only the very strongest hair was used for this purpose; and Jähns suggests that it was probably subjected to a special process to increase its strength. The sinews and tendons from the necks of bulls and from the legs of goats, were especially prized for this purpose.

Observe that the two sticks of timber, 'a' and 'b,' are inserted in two large ropes, or cables, and that their ends, like the ends of a bow, are connected together by a strong cord. In working the catapult, the middle of this cord was drawn back by means of a windlass, 'cd.' Practically, therefore, the catapult was a bow of immense power.

3. The *Ballista* was an engine for hurling balls, stones, and even heavy sticks of wood. In principle the motive power was the same as in the catapult, from which it differed mainly in the fact that it hurled missiles at an angle of 45 degrees. For the mode of working the *ballista*<sup>1</sup> see figure 5 in the foreground of plate V.

4. The *Onager* was a modification of the catapult. It had only one arm, and that arm worked vertically, while the arms of the catapult worked horizontally. See figure 4 in the foreground of plate V.<sup>2</sup>

88. The *Turris ambulatoria* was a movable tower, often used by the Romans in attacking fortified cities. It was, of course, of various sizes; but ordinarily it consisted of ten stories, and was about ninety feet high, twenty-five feet square at the base and twenty at the top.<sup>3</sup> Each story had an outer gallery, extending entirely around it. See plate V., 1.

89. The tower, which was moved forward by means of rollers worked from within, was supplied with one or more drawbridges, which, on being let down upon the wall, furnished the attacking party a passage to the enemy's works. The lower story was usually supplied with a battering-ram; while the upper stories were occupied with the engines of war—the *tormenta*. The *turris ambulatoria*, armed with the battering-ram and the *tormenta*, and well supplied with archers and slingers, was a movable battery of great power.

90. The *Vinea*, used to protect soldiers and workmen during siege operations, was a movable shed or arbor, resting on rollers. According to Vegetius, it was usually 16

<sup>1</sup> According to Rüstow und Köchly, Geschichte des griechischen Kriegswesens, Book IV., 3, the *ballista* had such remarkable projectile force that it threw heavy, missiles, on an average, a quarter of a mile, and that it sometimes reached twice that distance.

In the Commentaries on the Civil War, Book II., 2, Caesar tells us that beams, or poles, 12 feet long, pointed with iron, hurled from ballistae, passed through four rows of hurdles, probably in the form of *vineae* (90), or *plutei* (92), and planted themselves in the earth.

The *ballista* is sometimes compared to the modern mortar. It was capable of throwing missiles of great weight. Stones weighing from one hundred to one hundred and thirty pounds were at times hurled by it. See Rüstow und Köchly; also Schambach, Geschützverwendung bei den Römern.—Altenburg: 1883.

<sup>2</sup> Observe that the arm is drawn down by means of a windlass, and that it flies back with great violence as soon as it is released.

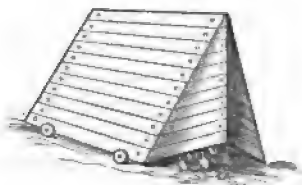
<sup>3</sup> Athenaeus, the author of a work, *περὶ Μηχανημάτων*, written, probably, about 200 B. C., mentions a tower 180 feet high and 35 feet square at the base.

feet long, 7 wide, and 8 high. The roof was of timber, or thick plank, supported by upright posts; the sides were of strong wicker-work. It was sometimes entirely open at both ends, and sometimes partially closed. The roof and sides were covered with raw hides, as a protection against fire.



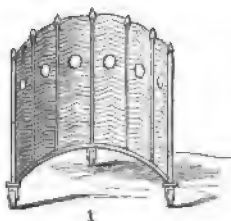
Vinea.

91. The *Musculus* was a variety of the *vinea*. It was of smaller size than the ordinary *vinea*, but of much greater strength, as it was intended to be used in the immediate vicinity of the enemy's works, especially to protect sappers and miners in undermining the wall.<sup>1</sup> See the accompanying figure.

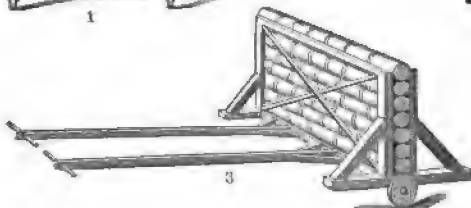


Musculus.

92. The *Pluteus* was a movable breastwork, or screen,



1



3

Plutei.

<sup>1</sup> Caesar, in his Commentaries on the Civil War, Book II., 10, has described the kind of *musculus* which he used in the siege of Massilia. It was so strong that blocks of stone hurled from the top of the wall fell harmless upon it. The roof was made of sticks of timber two feet thick, overlaid with brick and mortar, covered with raw hides.

resting on rollers. It was usually seven or eight feet in height, and was supplied with loop-holes, through which archers could discharge their arrows. It was of various forms, as seen in figures 1, 2, and 3.

93. The *Testudo arietaria*, also used in storming cities, consisted of a movable shed, like a *vinea*, in which was suspended a battering-ram (*aries*), in the form of a heavy stick of timber, from sixty to a hundred feet long, armed with a large head of bronze or iron. It was worked by men under the cover of the testudo, and was used to effect a breach in the wall. For the general appearance of this machine, and the mode of working it, see the *testudo arietaria* battering the tower in the background of plate V.<sup>1</sup>

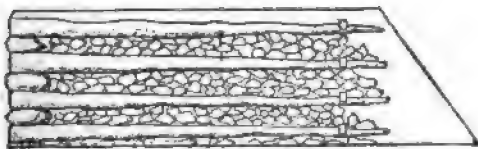
#### THE STORMING OF CITIES — *Oppugnatio repentina*.

94. This method of attack was usually adopted when there was a reasonable prospect of immediate success without great loss, especially in proceeding against cities which were well supplied with provisions, but were neither strongly garrisoned nor defended by formidable works.

95. Aided by his engines of war, a Roman general who could lead veteran legions to the attack sometimes found the capture of a walled town a comparatively easy task.

96. Archers and slingers, protected by *plutei*, and sharpshooters with *catapults* and *ballistae*, drove the enemy from his works. Some filled the moat, while others, under the cover of *musculi*, strove to undermine the wall, or to set fire to the gates; the tower was moved slowly forward, the battering-ram began its work; numerous storming columns,

<sup>1</sup> Caesar seems to have made little use of the battering-ram. The Gallic walls, according to his description, Book VII., 23, were so substantially constructed, of large beams, stones, and earth, that they could not be destroyed either by fire or by the battering-ram. The following figure is from Göler:—



*Vertical Section of Gallic Wall.*



forming the *testudo*, with their shields close-locked over their heads, as seen in plate V., advanced to the attack; the ladders were quickly applied; the sharpshooters, archers, and slingers, redoubled their efforts; the walls were scaled; the gates were thrown open, and the legions entered.

### INVESTMENT, BLOCKADE OF CITIES — *Obsidio.*

97. The Romans sometimes compelled hostile cities to surrender, by enclosing them so completely within a continuous line of strong fortifications, that neither supplies nor succor could reach them. This plan was adopted when the place was too strongly fortified and too strongly garrisoned to be taken by storm, especially if the population was large, and the supply of provisions limited. To ensure success, it was sometimes necessary to construct a second line of works at a suitable distance from the first, and outside of the investing army, as a precaution against attack from without, in case any attempt should be made to relieve the city.

The most remarkable instance mentioned in the Commentaries of this method of taking fortified towns, was the investment of Alesia. The town was garrisoned by a force of 80,000 Gauls; Caesar invested it, and for forty days he lay intrenched before it between two concentric lines of almost impregnable works; a mighty array of confederate Gauls, 250,000 strong, arrived in the rear of his intrenchments;



ab, Pinnæ.  
bc, Lorica, consisting of pilæ.

but Roman valor triumphed, and Alesia surrendered to the conqueror.

98. The works with which Caesar enclosed this stronghold of the Gauls were in some respects among the most remarkable mentioned in Roman history. The figure on the preceding page, from Napoleon and Göler, represents a vertical section of the inner line of works, called in modern phraseology, *contravallation*.<sup>1</sup>

#### SIEGE OF FORTIFIED PLACES — *Oppugnatio Operibus*.

99. With the Romans, a formal siege involved, not only the use of all the ordinary engines of war, but also the long and tedious labor of constructing an *agger*. It was resorted to only in difficult cases, when a simple investment would be inadequate and when a direct assault without special preparation would promise little success. The *agger* was a mound, or rampart, beginning several hundred feet from the wall of the besieged city, and extending directly toward it, until it finally reached and overtopped it, and thus furnished a broad highway, on which a storming column could advance directly to the highest part of the enemy's works.<sup>2</sup>

100. An *agger* of the ordinary dimensions, 400 or 500 feet long, 50 or 60 feet wide, and from 50 to 80 feet high,<sup>3</sup> required for its construction an enormous amount of timber, stones, earth, and brush. The trunks of trees from 20 to 40 feet in length, and from 1 to 2 feet in thickness, were of the first importance; indeed the words of Lucan must have been at times almost literally true<sup>4</sup>: —

“Procumbunt nemora et spoliantur robore silvae.”

<sup>1</sup> In modern phraseology, the inner line, or that which invests the city, is called *contravallation*, that outside of the investing army, *circumvallation*.

This line of works was 11 Roman miles in length, and 400 feet in width. Observe that on the side toward the city was a ditch 20 feet wide; that on the opposite side, 400 feet from this ditch, was a rampart 12 feet high, and that between these two points were arranged (1) two ditches, each 15 feet wide; (2) five rows of trunks of trees, with branches sharpened to a point, so planted in the earth that only the branches were in sight, called *cippi*; (3) eight rows of small pits 3 feet deep, each with a sharpened stake firmly set in its centre, called *lilia*, lilies, and (4) an indefinite number of short stakes entirely sunk in the earth, to which iron hooks were attached, called *stimuli*, spurs.

<sup>2</sup> In some cases the *agger* did not reach the top of the wall, but was surmounted by one or more towers, which, on being moved up to the enemy's works, secured the necessary height for the storming party.

<sup>3</sup> The *agger* at Avaricum was 80 feet high. See Book VII., 24.

<sup>4</sup> Lucan's *Pharsalia*, III., 395.

101. To aid the learner in understanding the more important steps in a formal siege, we add the following illustrations. Fig. 1, page lix, *Ground Plan of Siege Operations*.:—

1. ABCD represents the enemy's wall.
2. abcd, the space to be occupied by the agger.
3. mm, *musculi*, protecting laborers levelling the ground.
4. VV, the line of *vineae*, forming a covered way through which materials were brought for the agger.
5. PP, a line of *plutei*, protecting the men while building the first section of the agger.
6. TT, *turres ambulatores*, armed with *tormenta*, and supplied with archers and slingers.
7. pppp, a continuous line of *plutei*, nearly parallel to the enemy's wall, protecting archers and slingers.
8. vv, vv, two lines of *vineae*, parallel to the agger, forming each a covered way by which soldiers passed to the towers and to the lines of *plutei*.<sup>1</sup>
9. cdef, a horizontal section of a part of the first story of the agger, showing how the logs were arranged, with intervals between them, and in layers at right angles with each other, showing also an open gallery or way through the middle.

102. An agger, 80 feet in height, usually consisted of eight or ten stories. On each floor was an open gallery, or hall, 10 or 12 feet wide and 8 or 10 feet high, extending the whole length of the agger. The work of construction began at a distance of 400 or 500 feet from the enemy's wall, from which most of its defenders had been driven by the archers and slingers behind the line of *plutei*, and by the artillery-men in the towers. The materials were brought through the covered way formed by the line of *vineae* 'VV,' while those who were engaged in the actual work of construction were protected by the *plutei*, 'PP.' First, large logs were placed firmly upon the ground parallel to each other and at suitable intervals; upon these was placed a second layer of logs at right angles with them, as seen in figure 1. The open spaces between the logs were then filled with earth, stones, sods, brush, etc. Through the middle was left a passage, or open gallery, 10 or 12 feet wide, as stated above. The work continued in this way

<sup>1</sup> The line of *plutei*, parallel to the enemy's works, and the lines of *vineae* leading to it, are sometimes compared to the parallels and approaches in modern warfare.

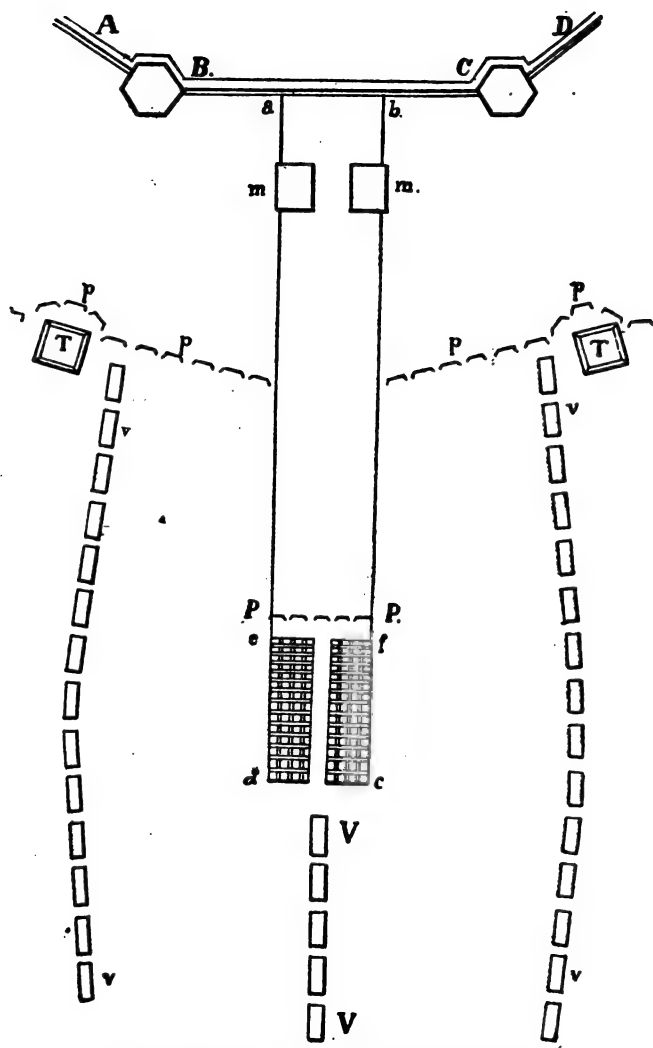


Figure 1. Ground Plan of Siege Operations.

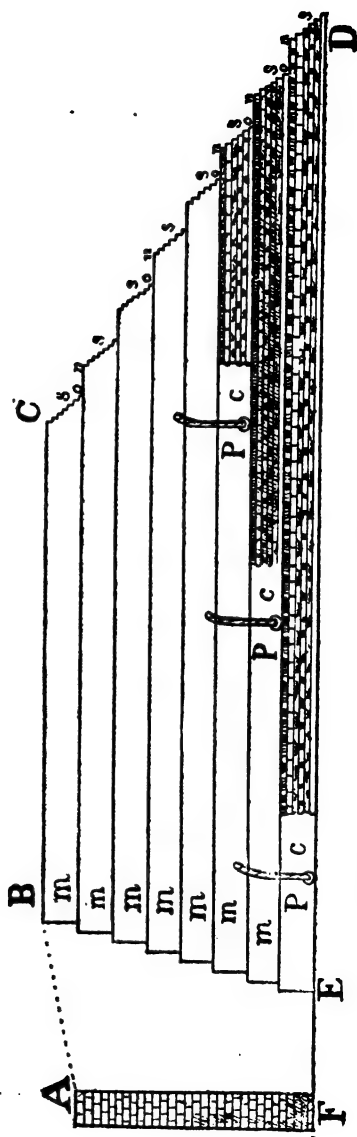


Figure 2. Vertical Section of an Agger in Process of Construction.

1. AF, represents the enemy's wall.
2. ABCDEF, section of the entire agger.
3. BCDE, part that may be regularly constructed.
4. AB EF, part especially exposed to the enemy's missiles, to be filled at last as best it may.
5. cs, part already constructed on the first, second, and third floors.
6. ms, a story with gallery, or hall, through its whole length.
7. s, stairs leading from one floor to another.
8. on, landing at the top of the stairs.
9. P, a line of *plutei* protecting the men at work.

until the sides reached the height of 8 or 10 feet, when the open passage was covered overhead with a layer of timbers placed across it. Thus was finished the first section of the first story of the agger.

103. The *plutei*, 'PP,' were next moved forward 30 or 40 feet, and under their protection the second section of the first story was constructed in the same style and manner as the first section.<sup>1</sup> A line of *plutei*, 'P,' as seen in figure 2, was then placed across the front of the second floor, and the building of the first section of the second story was begun. The materials were all brought through the *vineae* and up the stairs, 's,' to the landing, 'on,' which was a platform extending the whole width of the agger, thus affording easy access to the gallery, or hall, on the second floor.

104. As soon as the second section of the first story was finished, the *plutei* were again moved forward, and the third section was begun. At the same time, the *plutei* on the second floor, 'P,' in figure 2, were moved forward, and the second section of the second story was begun. *Plutei*, 'P,' were then placed on the third floor, and the first section of the third story was begun. This, like the second, was reached by stairs, leading to the landing, which furnished access to the hall, or passage, on this floor.

105. Thus the construction of the agger went on; one section after another was added, one story after another, until BCDE was finished.<sup>2</sup> The part nearest to the enemy, AB EF, still remained to be filled as best it might. Then through all the halls on the different floors were brought logs, stones, brush, fascines, sods, and the like, and were hurled into one confused mass, until the space was filled. The top of the heap was next hastily levelled off and made passable. The decisive moment, for which all this elaborate preparation had been made, had at length arrived. The archers and slingers redoubled their efforts, and the heavy

<sup>1</sup> The timber and other materials were brought first through the *vineae*, 'VV,' and then through the covered gallery in the first section.

<sup>2</sup> The enemy often attempted to prevent the completion of the agger, either by setting it on fire, or by undermining it (Book VII., 22 and 24); but, if he failed in this, he ordinarily lost courage, and surrendered before the completion of the works. Thus the Aduatuci surrendered when they saw the tower approaching the wall: see Book II., 31.

artillery swept the walls with its missiles, as the storming column advanced over the agger, and planted the Roman eagle upon the enemy's works.

### SHIPS OF WAR—*Naves Longae*.

106. Caesar had no organized navy during his Gallic campaigns, but he built ships as occasion required, and manned them with his legionary soldiers.<sup>1</sup> His veteran legions could fight either on land or sea.

107. The Roman ships of war were seven or eight times as long as they were wide, and were accordingly called *naves longae*, in distinction from the transports, *naves onerariae*,<sup>2</sup> which were much shorter in proportion to their width. They were armed in front with a formidable beak (*rostrum*), with which they often pierced and sunk the enemy's ships. Though provided with sails, they were propelled chiefly by oars. They carried the usual engines of war, the *tormenta*, were furnished with grappling-irons, and sometimes had towers on their decks. The most important varieties were the *triremes*,<sup>3</sup> with three banks of oars, and the *quinqueremes*, with five banks.<sup>4</sup> See plate VI.

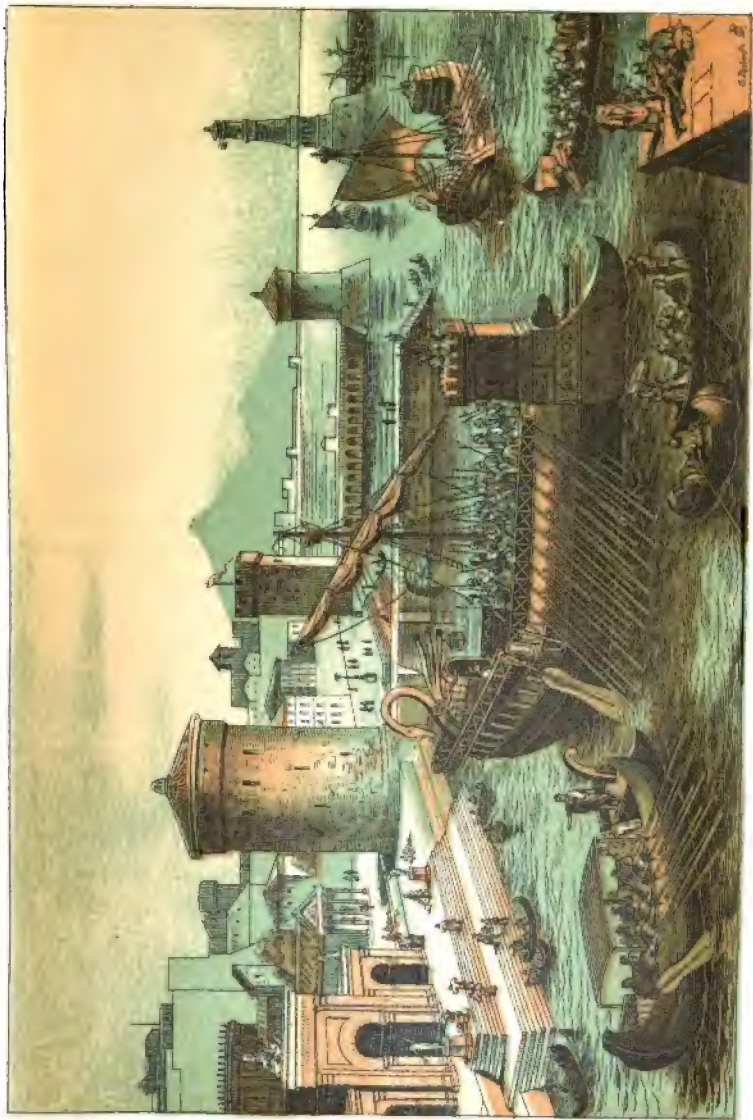
<sup>1</sup> Rowers and sailors could be readily obtained. See Book III., 9.

<sup>2</sup> The *naves onerariae* were transports, or ships of burden. They were four times as long as they were wide; they were propelled chiefly by means of sails, although supplied with oars to be used in case of need.

<sup>3</sup> According to Graser, a trireme was 149 feet long, with a deck 18 feet wide, and carried 232 tons burden. Without the use of sails, it had 24 horse-power, and its rate of speed was 10 knots an hour. The oars were arranged in tiers or banks, those in the upper bank being 13½ feet long, those in the middle bank 10½, and those in the lower bank 7½.

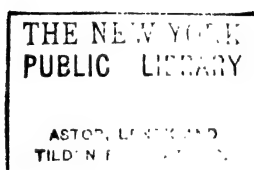
The regular complement of men for a *trireme* seems to have been 225, of whom 31 were officers and soldiers, 20 sailors, and 174 rowers; for a *quinquereme*, 375, of whom 310 were rowers; but we learn on the authority of Polybius that the Romans increased the number of soldiers, and that the *quinqueremes* in the Punic wars generally had each 120 soldiers on board.

<sup>4</sup> The *naves actuariae* and the *naves speculatariae*, also called (Book IV., 26) *speculataria navigia*, were small light vessels constructed for speed.



*Portus. — Naves longae.*





## TITLES OF WORKS CITED

### ON THE MILITARY SYSTEM OF THE ROMANS.

---

- FRÖHLICH, F. *Beiträge zur Geschichte der Kriegsführung und Kriegskunst der Römer.* Berlin, 1886.
- GÖLER, A. VON. *Caesars gallischer Krieg und das römische Kriegswesen.* Freiburg, 1884.
- GRASER, B. *De Veterum Re Navali.* Berolini.
- GUHL UND KONER. *Das Leben der Griechen und Römer nach antiken Bilderwerken.*
- HYGINUS. *Liber de munitionibus castrorum.*
- JÄHNS, M. *Handbuch einer Geschichte des Kriegswesens.* Leipzig, 1880.
- KÖCHLY UND RÜSTOW. *Griechische Kriegsschriftsteller.*
- LANGE, C. C. L. *Historia Mutationum Rei Militaris Romanorum.*
- LINDENSCHMIT, L. *Tracht und Bewaffnung des römischen Heeres.*
- LIVY, *The Works of.*
- MARQUARDT, J. *Römische Staatsverwaltung.*
- MOMMSEN, T. *History of Rome.*
- NAPOLÉON III. *History of Julius Caesar.*
- NISSEN, H. *Das Templum.*
- POLYBIUS, *The Works of.*
- RHEINHARD, H. *Caesaris Commentarii de Bello Gallico.* Stuttgart, 1885.
- RHEINHARD, H. *Griechische und römische Kriegsalterthümer.*
- RÜSTOW UND KÖCHLY. *Geschichte des griechischen Kriegswesens.*
- RÜSTOW, W. *Heerwesen und Kriegsführung Cäsars.*
- SONKLAR, R. A. *Abhandlung über die Heeresverwaltung der alten Römer.*
- SHAMBACH. *Einige Bemerkungen über die Geschützverwendung bei den Römern, besonders zur Zeit Caesars.* Altenburg, 1883.
- VEGETIUS. *Epitoma Rei Militaris.*



THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY



THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY  
ASTOR LENOX AND  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS  
100 N. 4TH ST.  
NEW YORK

THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY  
ASTOR LENOX AND  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS  
100 N. 4TH ST.  
NEW YORK

C. JULII CAESARIS

# COMMENTARI

DE

BELLO GALLICO.

## LIBER I.

L. GALLIA est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam, qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. 5 Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant, atque ea, quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, ~~important~~; proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibus- 10 cum continenter bellum gerunt; quā de causā Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere quotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum 15 est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumnā flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septemtriones. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; spectant 20 in septemtriones et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumnā flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam partem Oceani,

quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septemtriones.

II. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetōrix. Is, Marco Messālā et Marco Pisōne consūlibus, 5 regni cupiditate inductus conjuracionem nobilitatis fecit et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent; perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae imperio potiri. Id hoc facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci naturā Helvetii continentur; unā ex 10 parte flumine Rheno, latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germānis dividit; alterā ex parte, monte Jurā altissimo, qui est inter Sequānos et Helvetios; tertiā, lacu Lemannq et flumine Rhodāno, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus fiebat, ut et minus late vaga- 15 rentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quā de causā homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur. Pro multitudine autem hominum et pro gloriā belli atque fortitudinis, angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem millia passuum ducenta et 20 quadraginta, in latitudinem centum et octoginta patebant.

III. His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, constituerunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent, comparare; jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coēmere; sementes quam maximas facere, ut in 25 itinere copia frumenti suppeteret; cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt; in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetōrix deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civitates sus- 30 cepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castīco Catamantalēdis filio, Sequāno, cujus pater regnum in Sequānis multos annos obtinuerat et a senatu populi Romāni amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate suā occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgi Aeduo, fratri Divitiāci, 35 qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur, persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat. Perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis

imperium obtenturus esset; non esse dubium, quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent; se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliaturum confirmat. Hac oratione adducti inter se fidem et iusjurandum dant et, regno occupato, per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

IV. Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata. Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coegerunt. Damnatum poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur. Die constitutae causae dictionis Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum millia decem, undique coegit, et omnes clientes obaeratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit; per eos, ne causam diceret, se eripuit. Cum civitas ob eam rem incitata armis jus suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus coegerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

V. Post ejus mortem nihilo minus Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant. Ubi jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt; frumentum omne, praeterquam quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, ut, domum reditutionis spe sublata, paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre jubent. Persuadent Rauricis et Tulingis et Latovicis, finitimis, uti, eodem usi consilio, oppidis suis vicisque exustis, una cum iis profiscantur; Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant et in agrum Noricum transierant Noriamque oppugnant, receptos ad se socios sibi adiscunt.

VI. Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent: unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli carri ducerentur; mons autem altissimus impendebat, ut facile perpauci prohibere possent: alterum per provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod



inter fines Helvetiōrum et Allobrōgum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodānus fluit, isque nonnullis locis vado transitur. Extremum oppidum Allobrōgum est proximumque Helvetiōrum finibus Genāva. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios  
5 pertinet. Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros, quod nondum bono animo in populum Romānum viderentur, existimabant; vel vi coacturos, ut per suos fines eos, ire paterentur. Omnibus rebus ad profectionem comparatis, diem dicunt, quā die ad ripam Rhodāni omnes conveniant. Is dies erat  
10 ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles, Lucio Pisōne, Aulo Gabinio consulibus.

VII. Caesāri cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci, et, quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriorem  
15 contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnino in Galliā ulteriore legio una); pontem, qui erat ad Genāvam, jubet rescindi. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, nobilissimos civitatis, cujus legationis Namēius et Verudoctius principem  
20 locum obtinebant, qui dicerent, sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter haberent nullum; rogare, ut ejus voluntate id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenebat Lucium Cassium consulem occisum, exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub jugum missum, concedendum non putabat; neque homines inimico animo, datā facultate per provinciam itineris faciendi, temperaturos ab injuriā et maleficio existimabat. Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum  
25 milites, quos imperaverat, convenirent, legatis respondit, diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum; si quid vellent, ad Idus Apriles reverterentur.

VIII. Interea eā legione, quam secum habebat, militibusque, qui ex provinciā convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui  
85 in flumen Rhodānum influit, ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanōrum ab Helvetiis dividit, millia passuum decem novem murum, in altitudinem pedum sedecim, fossamque perducit. Eo opere perfecto praesidia disponit, castella

communit, quo facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere possit. Ubi ea dies, quam constituerat cum legatis, venit, et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat, se more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare, et, si vim facere conentur, prohibiturum ostendit. 5 Helvetii eā spe dejecti, navibus junctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdum, saepius noctu, si percurrere possent, conati, operis munitione et militum concursu et telis repulsi, hoc conatu destiterunt. 10

IX. Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua, Sequanis invitis, propter angustias ire non poterant. His cum suā sponte persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt, ut eo deprecatore a Sequanis impetrarent. Dumnorix gratiā et largitione apud Sequanos plurimum poterat, et Helvetiis erat amicus, quod ex eā civitate 15 Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat; et cupiditate regni adductus novis rebus studebat, et quam plurimas civitates suo sibi beneficio habere obstrictas volebat. Itaque rem suscipit et a Sequanis impetrat, ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti inter sese dent, perficit: Sequani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeant; Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuriā transeant. 20

X. Cæsari renuntiatur Helvetiis esse in animo per agrum Sequanorum et Aeduorum iter in Santonum fines facere, 25 qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in provinciā. Id si fieret, intelligebat magno cum periculo provinciae futurum, ut homines bellicosos, populi Romani inimicos, locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis finitimos haberet. Ob eas causas ei munitioni, quam fecerat, Titum Labienum legatum praefecit; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit duasque ibi legiones conscribit, et tres, quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit; et qua proximum iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi Cen- 30 trōnes et Graiocēli et Caturiges, locis superioribus occupatis, itinere exercitum prohibere conantur. Compluribus his proeliis pulsus, ab Ocēlo, quod est citerioris provinciae

extremum, in fines Vocontiōrum ulterioris provinciae die septimo pervenit; inde in Allobrōgum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodānum primi.

- 5 XI. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanōrum suas copias transduxerant, et in Aeduōrum fines pervenerant eorumque agros populabantur. Aedui, cum se suaeque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesārem mittunt rogatum auxilium: Ita se omni tempore de populo
- 10 Romāno meritos esse, ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostri agri vastari, liberi eorum in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint. Eodem tempore Aedui Ambarri, necessarii et consanguinei Aeduōrum, Caesārem certiore faciant, sese depopulatis agris non facile ab
- 15 oppidis vim hostium prohibere. Item Allobrōges, qui trans Rhodānum vicos possessionesque habebant, fugā se ad Caesārem recipiunt et demonstrant, sibi praeter agri solum nihil esse reliquū. Quibus rebus adductus Caesar non expectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortunis sociōrum
- 20 consumptis, in Santōnos Helvetii pervenirent.

- XII. Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduōrum et Sequanōrum in Rhodānum influit incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis, in utram partem fluat, judicari non possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintribus junctis transibant. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est, tres jam copiarum partes
- 25 Helvetios id flumen transduxisse, quartam vero partem citra flumen Arārim reliquam esse, de tertiā vigiliā cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos et
- 30 inopinantes aggressus magnam eorum partem concidit; reliqui fugae sese mandarunt atque in proximas silvas abdidērunt. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinū; nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quattuor pagos divisa est. Hic pagus unus, cum domo exisset patrum nostrorum memoriā,
- 35 Lucium Cassium consulem interfecerat et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat. Ita, sive casu, sive consilio deorum immortalium, quae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem populo Romāno intulerat, ea princeps poenas

persolvit. Quā in re Caesar non solum publicas, sed etiam privatas injurias ultus est, quod ejus soceri, Lucii Pisōnis, avum, Lucium Pisōnem legatum, Tigurinū eodem proelio, quo Cassium, interfecerant.

XIII. Hoc proelio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiōrum ut 5 consequi posset, pontem in Arāre faciendum curat atque ita exercitum transducit. Helvetii repentino ejus adventu commoti, cum id, quod ipsi diebus viginti aegerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, illum uno die fecisse intelligerent, legatos ad eum mittunt; cujus legationis Divico 10 princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiāno dux Helvetiōrum fuerat. ~~Is ita cum Caesare agit.~~ Si pacem populus Romānus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et 15 veteris incommodi populi Romāni et pristinae virtutis Helvetiōrum. Quod improvise unum pagum adortus esset, cum ii, qui flumen transissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtuti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret; se ita a patribus majoribusque 20 suis didicisse, ut magis virtute, quam dolo contenderent aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret, ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi Romāni et intereptione exercitus nomen caperet aut memoriam proderet.

XIV. His Caesar ita respondit: Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoriā teneret; atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romāni accidissent; qui si alicujus injuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo deceptum, quod neque commissum a se intelligeret, quare 30 timeret, neque sine causā timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod, eo invito, iter per provinciam per vim tentassent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoriam deponere posse? Quod suā victoriā 35 tam insolenter gloriarentur, quodque tam diu se impune injurias tulisse admirarentur, eodē pertinere. Consuesse enim deos immortales, quo gravius homines ex commuta-

tione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiore interdu res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea, quae polliceantur, facturos intelligat, et si  
5 Aeduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum. Divico respondit: Ita Helvetios a majoribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare, consue-  
rint; ejus rei populum Romanum esse testem. Hoc re-  
10 sponso dato discessit.

XV. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mil-  
lium, quem ex omni provinciâ et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit, qui videant, quas in partes  
15 hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen inse-  
cuti, alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium com-  
mittunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo proelio sublati Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere, nonnunquam ex  
20 novissimo agmine proelio nostros lacessere coeperunt. Caesar suos a proelio continebat ac satis habebat in praesentiâ hostem rapinis, pabulationibus, populationibusque prohibere. Ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt, uti inter novis-  
simum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius  
25 quinis aut senis millibus passuum interesset.

XVI. Interim quotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum, quod essent publice polliciti, flagitare; nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septemtrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli  
30 quidem satis magna copia suppetebat; eo autem frumento, quod flumine Arâre navibus subvexerat, propterea uti minus poterat, quod iter ab Arâre Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolebat. Diem ex die ducere Aedui; conferri, comportari, adesse dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit  
35 et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oportet, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his Divitiâco et Lisco, qui summo magistratui praeerat (quem Vergobrêtum appellant Aedui,

qui creatur annuus, et vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem), graviter eos accusat, quod, cum neque emi neque ex agris sumi posset, tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iis non sublevetur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum suscep- 5  
erit, multo etiam gravius, quod sit destitutus, queritur.

XVII. Tum demum Liscus oratione Caesāris adductus, quod antea tacuerat, proponit: Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim plus possint, quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiosā atque 10  
improbā oratione multitudinem deterrere, ne frumentum conferant, quod praestare debeant. Si jam principatum Galliae obtinere non possint, Gallōrum quam Romanōrum imperia praeferre, neque dubitare debere, quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romāni, una cum reliquā Galliā Aeduis 15  
libertatem sint erepturi. Ab iisdem nostra consilia, quaeque in castris gerantur, hostibus enuntiari; hos a se coerceri non posse. Quin etiam, quod necessario rem coactus Caesāri enuntiarit, intelligere sese, quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam diu potuerit, tacuisse. 20

XVIII. Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorīgem, Divitiāci fratrem, designari sentiebat; sed, quod pluribus praesentibus eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet; quaerit ex solo ea, quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab 25  
aliis quaerit; reperit esse vera: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audaciā, magnā apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratiā, cupidum rerum novarum: complures annos portoria reliquaue omnia Aeduōrum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod, illo licente, contra liceri 30  
audeat nemo. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse; magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu semper alere et circum se habere; neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse, atque hujus potentiae causā matrem in 35  
Biturigibus homini illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocasse; ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere, sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum in alias civitates collo-

casae. Favere et cupere Helvetiis propter eam affinitatem, odisse etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu potentia ejus deminuta, et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si  
5 quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi venire; imperio populi Romani non modo de regno, sed etiam de ea, quam habeat, gratiam desperare. Reperiebat etiam in quaerendo Caesar, quod proelium  
10 ejus fugae factum a Dumnorige atque ejus equitibus (nam equitatu, quem auxilio Caesari Aedui miserant, Dumnorix praeerat); eorum fugam reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

XIX. Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad has suspensiones certissimae res accederent, quod per fines Sequanorum  
15 Helvetios transduxisset, quod obsides inter eos dando curasset, quod ea omnia, non modo injussu suo et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis, fecisset, quod a magistratu Aeduorum accusaretur, satis esse causae arbitrabatur, quare  
20 in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere juberet. His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat; nam, ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci  
25 animum offenderet, verebatur. Itaque priusquam quidquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet et, quotidianis interpretibus remotis, per Gaium Valerium Proculum, principem Galliae provinciae, familiarem suum, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur; simul commonefacit, quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallorum  
30 de Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit. Petit atque hortatur, ut sine ejus offensione animi vel ipse de eo, causam cognitam, statuatur vel civitatem statuere jubeat.

XX. Divitiacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus  
35 us obsecrare coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: Scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratiam plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adoles-

centiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur; sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tene-  
ret, neminem existimaturum, non suam voluntate factum; quam ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur. Haec cum pluribus verbis flens a Caesare peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prendit; consolatus rogat, finem orandi faciat; tanti ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit, ut et rei publicae injuriam et suum dolorem ejus voluntati ac precibus condonet. Dumnorigem ad se vocat, fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intelligat, quae civitas queratur, proponit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet; praeterita se Divitiaco  
fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi custodes ponit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquatur, scire possit.

XXI. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedissemillia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent, misit. Renuntiatum est, facilem esse. De tertia vigilia Titum Labienum, legatum pro praetore, cum duabus legionibus et iis ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid sui consilii sit, ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo  
hostes ierant, ad eos contendit equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. Publius Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur et in exercitu Lucii Sullae et postea in Marci Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

XXII. Prima luce, cum summus mons a Tito Labieno teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitus esset, Considius equo admissio ad eum accurrit, dicit, montem quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri; id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labienus, ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare, ne proelium com-

*Begin at the 21 Chap*

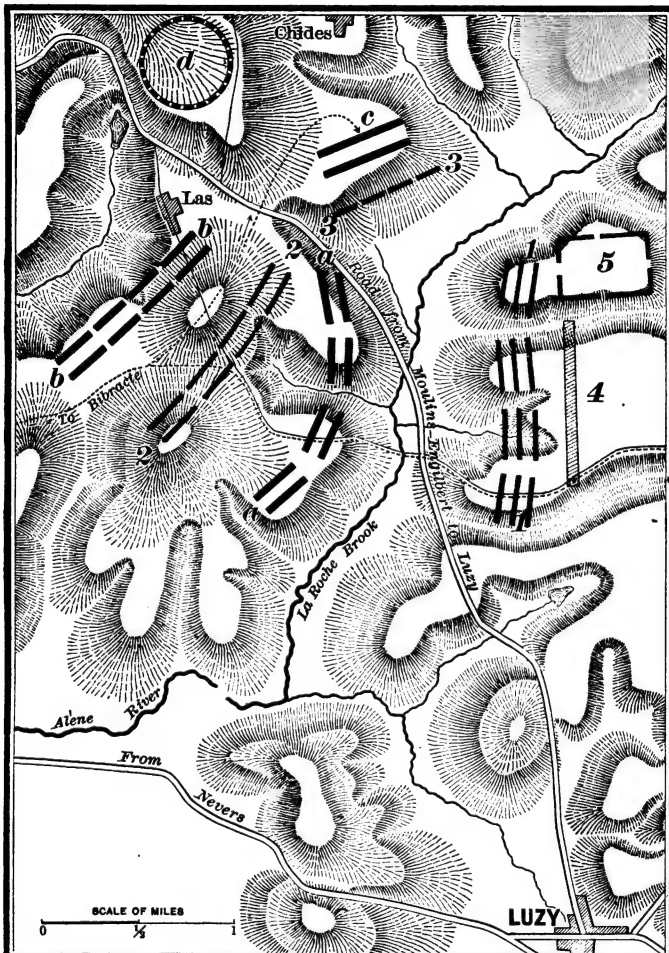


mitteret, nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato nostros expectabat proelioque abstinebat. Multo denique die per exploratores Caesar cognovit, et  
 5 montem a suis teneri, et Helvetios castra movisse, et Considium timore perterritum, quod non vidisset, pro viso sibi renuntiassse. Eo die, quo consuerat intervallo, hostes sequitur, et millia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

XXIII. Postridie ejus diei, quod omnino biduum supererat, cum exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret, et quod  
 10 a Bibracte, oppido Aeduorum longe maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius millibus passuum octodecim aberat, rei frumentariae prospiciendum existimavit, iter ab Helvetiis avertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos  
 15 Lucii Aemilii, decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus nuntiatur. Helvetii, seu quod timore perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimarent, eo magis, quod pridie, superioribus locis occupatis, proelium non commisissent, sive eo, quod re frumentaria intercludi posse confiderent, commutato consilio atque itinere converso, nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacescere coeperunt.

XXIV. Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit, equitatumque, qui sustineret hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle  
 25 medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum; sed in summo iugo duas legiones, quas in Gallia citeriore proxime conscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocari, ac totum montem hominibus compleri et interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri, et eum ab his, qui in superiore  
 30 acie constiterant, muniri jussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris secuti impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt; ipsi confertissimam aciem, rejecto nostro equitatu, phalange factam, sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

XXV. Caesar, primum suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remotis equis, ut aequato omnium periculo spem fugae  
 25 tolleret, cohortatus suos proelium commisit. Milites, e loco superiore pilis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfrugerunt. Ea disiecta, gladiis dstrictis in eos impetum fecerunt.



EXPLANATION.

1. Romans in line of battle with the *Helvetii* (a, a) in front of them.
2. The first two of the Roman lines after they had driven back the *Helvetii* (b, b) to the neighboring hill.
3. The third line with the *Boii* and *Tulingi* (c) in front of it.
4. Two new legions with auxiliaries. 5. Roman camp.
- a. *Helvetii*, first position. b. *Helvetii*, second position. c. *Boii* and *Tulingi*.
- d. Helvetian camp defended by wagons, chariots and baggage.

———— Romans. ———— *Helvetii*.

1111111111 000000 1111111111 000000  
0000 0000

12 to 11

Name



Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento, quod pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu p<sup>ro</sup>p<sup>ri</sup>orum transfixis et colligatis, cum ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere neque, sinistra impedita, satis commode pugnare poterant; multi ut, diu jactato brachio, praeoptarent scutum manu emittere et nudo corpore pugnare. Tandem vulneribus defessi et pedem referre et, quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eo se recipere coeperunt. Captō monte et succedentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum millibus circiter quindecim agmen hostium claudebant et novissimis praesidio erant, 10 ex itinere nostros latere aperto aggressi circumvenere; et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instare et proelium redintegrare coeperunt. Romani conversa signa bipartito intulerunt: prima ac secunda acies, ut victis ac submotis resisteret; tertia, ut venientes 15 exciperet.

XXVI. Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius cum nostrorum impetus sustinere non possent, alteri se, ut coeperant, in montem receperunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt. Nam hoc 20 toto proelio, cum ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod pro vallo carros objecerant, et e loco superiore in nostros venientes tela conjiciebant et nonnulli inter carros 25 rotasque mataras ac tragulas subiciebant nostrosque vulnerabant. Diu cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. Ex eo proelio circiter millia hominum centum et triginta superfuerunt eaque tota nocte continenter ierunt; nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso in fines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepulturam occisorum, nostri triduum morati eos sequi non potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litteras nuntiosque misit, ne eos frumento neve alia 35 re juvarent; qui si juvissent, se eodem loco, quo Helvetios, habiturum. Ipse triduo intermisso cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.

XXVII. Helvetii, omnium rerum inopiā adducti, legatos de deditione ad eum miserunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convenissent seque ad pedes projecissent suppliciterque locuti fientes pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco, quo  
5 tum essent, suum adventum exspectare, jussisset, paruerunt. Eo postquam Caesar pervegit, obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur et conferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum millia sex ejus pagi, qui Verbigēnus appellatur, sive timore per-  
10 teriti, ne armis traditis supplicio afficerentur, sive spe salutis inducti, quod in tantā multitudine dediticiorum suam fugam aut occultari aut omnino ignorari posse existimarent, primā nocte ex castris Helvetiōrum egressi ad Rhenum finesque Germanōrum contenderunt.

XXVIII. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quorum per fines ierant, his, uti conquirerent et reducerent, si sibi purgati  
esse vellent, imperavit; reductos in hostium numero habuit; reliquos omnes, obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis, in deditionem accepit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latovicos in  
20 fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti jussit, et quod, omnibus fructibus amissis, doni nihil erat, quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit, ut iis frumenti copiam facerent; ipsos oppida vicosque, quos incenderant, restituere jussit. Id eā maxime ratione fecit, quod noluit eum locum, unde  
25 Helvetii discesserant, vacare, ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germāni, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiōrum fines transirent et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boios petentibus Aeduis, quod egregiā virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent,  
30 concessit; quibus illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in parem juris libertatisque conditionem, atque ipsi erant, receperunt.

XXIX. In castris Helvetiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis confectae et ad Caesārem relatae, quibus in  
35 tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum, qui arma ferre possent, et item separatim pueri, senes mulieresque. Quarum omnium rerum summa erat capitum Helvetiōrum millia ducenta et sexaginta tria,

Tulingōrum millia triginta sex, Latovicōrum quattuordecim, Rauricōrum viginti tria, Boiōrum triginta duo; ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad millia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium fuerunt ad millia trecenta et sexaginta octo. Eorum, qui domum redierunt, censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus millium centum et decem.

XXX. Bello Helvetiōrum confecto, totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesārem gratulatum convenerunt: Intelligere sese, tametsi, pro veteribus Helvetiōrum injuriis populi Romāni, ab his poenas bello repetisset, 10 tamen eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam populi Romāni accidisse, propterea quod eo consilio, florentissimis rebus, domos suas Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque potirentur locumque domicilio ex magnā copiā deligerent, quem ex omni Galliā 15 opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum judicassent, reliquasque civitates stipendiarias haberent. Petierunt, uti sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere, idque Caesāris voluntate facere, liceret; sese habere quasdam res, quas ex communi consensu ab eo petere vellent. Eā re 20 permissā, diem concilio constituerunt, et jurejurando, ne quis enuntiaret, nisi quibus communi consilio mandatum esset, inter se sanxerunt.

XXXI. Eo concilio dimisso, iidem principes civitatum, qui ante fuerant ad Caesārem, reverterunt petieruntque, uti 25 sibi secreto in occulto de suā omniumque salute cum eo agere liceret. Eā re impetratā, sese omnes flentes Caesāri ad pedes projecerunt: Non minus se id contendere et laborare, ne ea, quae dixissent, enuntiarentur, quam uti ea, quae vellent, impetrarent, propterea quod, si enuntiatum 30 esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos viderent. Locutus est pro his Divitiācus Aeduus: Galliae totius factiones esse duas; harum alterius principatum tenere Aeduos, alterius Arvernos. Hi cum tantopere de potentatu inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse 35 uti ab Arvernīs Sequānisque Germāni mercede arcescerentur. Horum primo circiter millia quindecim Rhenum transisse; posteaquam agros et cultum et copias Gallōrum

homines feri ac barbari adamassent, transductos plures; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et viginti millium numerum. Cum his Aeduos eorumque clientes semel atque iterum armis contendisse; magnam calamitatem pulsos  
5 accepisse, omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum amisisse. Quibus proeliis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et suā virtute et populi Romāni hospitio atque amicitia plurimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coactos esse Sequānis obsides dare, nobilissimos civitatis, et jurejurando  
10 civitatem obstringere, sese neque obsides repetituros, neque auxilium a populo Romāno imploraturos, neque recusatu-  
satu-  
ros, quo minus perpetuo sub illorum ditione atque imperio essent. Unum se esse ex omni civitate Aeduōrum, qui adduci non potuerit, ut juraret aut liberos suos obsides  
15 daret. Ob eam rem se ex civitate profugisse et Romam ad senatum venisse auxilium postulatum, quod solus neque jurejurando neque obsidibus teneretur. Sed pejus victoribus Sequānis quam Aeduis victis accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rex Germanōrum, in eorum finibus consedisset,  
20 tertiamque partem agri Sequāni, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, occupavisset, et nunc de alterā parte tertiā Sequānos decedere juberet, propterea quod paucis mensibus ante Harūdum millia hominum viginti quattuor ad eum venissent, quibus locus ac sedes pararentur. Futurum esse  
25 paucis annis, uti omnes ex Galliae finibus pellerentur, atque omnes Germāni Rhēnum transirent; neque enim conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanōrum agro, neque, hanc consuetudinem victus cum illā comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum copias proelio vicerit,  
30 quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, superbe et crudeliter imperare, obsides nobilissimi cujusque liberos possidere, et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, si qua res non ad nutum aut ad voluntatem ejus facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium; non posse  
35 ejus imperia diutius sustinere. Nisi quid in Caesāre populoque Romāno sit auxilii, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum, quod Helvetii fecerint, ut domo emigrent, aliud domicilium, alias sedes remotas a Germānis petant,

fortunamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si enuntiata Ariovisto sint, non dubitare, quin de omnibus obsidibus, qui apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sumat. Caesarem vel auctoritate suâ atque exercitus, vel recenti victoriâ, vel nomine populi Romani deterrere posse, ne major multitudo Germanorum Rhenum transducatur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti injuriâ posse defendere.

XXXII. Hac oratione ab Divitiâco habitâ, omnes, qui aderant, magno fletu auxilium a Caesare petere coeperunt. Animadvertit Caesar unos ex omnibus Sequanos nihil earum rerum facere, quas ceteri facerent, sed tristes, capite demisso, terram intueri. Ejus rei causa quae esset, miratus, ex ipsis quaesiit. Nihil Sequani respondere, sed in eâdem tristitiâ taciti permanere. Cum ab his saepius quaereret, neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Divitiâcus Aeduos respondit: Hoc esse miseriorem graviolemque fortunam Sequanorum quam reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri neque auxilium implorare auderent, absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horrent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daretur, Sequanis vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potestate ejus essent, omnes cruciatus essent perferendi.

XXXIII. His rebus cognitis, Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem curae futuram; magnam se habere spem, et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum Ariovistum finem injuriis facturum. Hac oratione habitâ, concilium dimisit. Et secundum ea, multae res eum hortabantur, quare sibi eam rem cogitandam et suscipiendam putaret; imprimis quod Aeduos, fratres consanguineosque saepenumero ab senatu appellatos, in servitute atque in ditione videbat Germanorum teneri, eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos intelligebat; quod in tanto imperio populi Romani turpissimum sibi et rei publicae esse arbitrabatur. Paulatim autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum transire et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire, populo Romano periculosum videbat; neque sibi homines feros ac



barbaros temperaturos existimabat, quin, cum omnem Galliam occupavissent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fecissent, in provinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sequānos a provinciā nostrā 5 Rhodānus divideret. Quibus rebus quam maturrime occurrendum putabat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantiam sumpserat, ut ferendus non videretur.

XXXIV. Quamobrem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum 10 legatos mitteret, qui ab eo postularent, uti aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquio diceret: velle sese de re publicā et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere. Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit: Si quid ipsi a Caesāre opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse; si quid ille se velit, illum ad se 15 venire oportere. Praeterea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audere, quas Caesar possideret, neque exercitum sine magno commeatu atque molimento in unum locum contrahere posse; sibi autem mirum videri, quid in suā Galliā, quam bello vicisset, aut Caesāri aut 20 omnino populo Romāno negotii esset.

XXXV. His responsis ad Caesārem relatis, iterum ad eum Caesar legatos cum his mandatis mittit: Quoniam tanto suo populiue Romāni beneficio affectus, cum in consulatu suo rex atque amicus a senatu appellatus esset, 25 hanc sibi populoque Romāno gratiam referret, ut in colloquium venire invitatus gravaretur, neque de communi re dicendum sibi et cognoscendum putaret, haec esse, quae ab eo postularet: primum, ne quam multitudinem hominum amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam transduceret; deinde 80 obsides, quos haberet ab Aeduis, redderet Sequānisque mitteret, ut, quos illi haberent, voluntate ejus reddere illis liceret; neve Aeduos injuriā lacesseret, neve his sociisve eorum bellum inferret. Si id ita fecisset, sibi populoque Romāno perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam cum eo futu- 85 ram; si non impetraret, sese, quoniam Marco Messālā, Marco Pisōne consulibus, senatus censuisset, uti, quicumque Galliam provinciam obtineret, quod commodo rei publicae facere posset, Aeduos ceterosque amicos populi

Romāni defenderet, se Aeduōrum injurias non neglecturum.

XXXVI. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Jus esse belli, ut, qui vicissent, iis, quos vicissent, quemadmodum vellent, imperarent: item populum Romānum victis non ad alterius 5 praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperare consuesse. Si ipse populo Romāno non praescriberet, quemadmodum suo jure uteretur, non oportere sese a populo Romāno in suo jure impediri. Aeduos sibi, quoniam belli fortunam tentassent et armis congressi ac superati essent, stipendiarios 10 esse factos. Magnam Caesārem injuriam facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret. Aeduis se obsides redditurum non esse, neque iis neque eorum sociis injuriā bellum illaturum, si in eo manerent, quod convenisset, stipendiumque quotannis penderent: si id non fecis- 15 sent, longe iis fratrum nomen populi Romāni abfuturum. Quod sibi Caesar denuntiaret se Aeduōrum injurias non neglecturum, neminem secum sine suā pernicie contendisse. Cum vellet, congregaretur; intellecturum, quid invicti Germāni, exercitatissimi in armis, qui inter annos 20 quattuordecim tectum non subissent, virtute possent.

XXXVII. Haec eodem tempore Caesāri mandata referebantur et legati ab Aeduis et a Trevīris veniebant; Aedui questum, quod Harūdes, qui nuper in Galliam transportati essent, fines eorum popularentur; sese ne obsidibus quidem 25 datis pacem Ariovisti redimere potuisse; Trevīri autem, pagos centum Suebōrum ad ripas Rheni consedisse, qui Rhenum transire conarentur; iis praeesse Nasuam et Cimmerium fratres. Quibus rebus Caesar vehementer commotus maturandum sibi existimavit, ne, si nova manus Suebō- 30 rum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese conjunxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque re frumentariā quam celerrime potuit comparatā, magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

XXXVIII. Cum tridui viam processisset, nuntiatum 35 est ei, Ariovistum cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanōrum, contendere, triduique viam a suis finibus profecisse. Id ne

accideret, magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimabat. Namque omnium rerum, quae ad bellum usui erant, summa erat in eo oppido facultas, idque naturā loci sic muniebatur, ut magnam ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem, propterea quod flumen Dubis, ut circino circumductum, paene totum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est non amplius pedum sexcentorum, qua flumen intermittit, mons continet magnā altitudine, ita ut radices montis ex utrāque parte ripae fluminis contingant. Hunc murus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppido conjungit. Huc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupatoque oppido ibi praesidium collocat.

XXXIX. Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeatusque causā moratur, ex percontatione nostrorum vocibusque Gallōrum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germānos, incredibili virtute atque exercitatione in armis esse praedicabant, saepenumero sese cum his congressos ne vultum quidem atque aciem oculorum ferre potuisse, tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit, ut non mediocriter omnium mentes animosque perturbaret. Hic primum ortus est a tribunis militum, praefectis reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesārem secuti non magnum in re militari usum habebant; quorum alius, aliā causā illatā, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petebat, ut ejus voluntate discedere liceret; nonnulli pudore adducti, ut timoris suspicionem vitarent, remanebant. Hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimas tenere poterant: abditi in tabernaculis aut suum fatum querebantur, aut cum familiaribus suis commune periculum miserabantur. Vulgo totis castris testamenta obsignabant. Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ii, qui magnum in castris usum habebant, milites centurionesque, quique equitatui praeerant, perturbabantur. Qui se ex his minus timidos existimari volebant, non se hostem vereri, sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum, quae inter eos atque Ariovistum intercederent, aut rem frumentariam, ut satis commode supportari posset, timere dicebant. Nonnulli etiam Caesāri renuntiabant, cum castra

moveri ac signa ferri jussisset, non fore dicto audientes milites neque propter timorem signa laturos.

XL. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocato consilio omniumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibitis centurionibus, vehementer eos incusavit: Primum, quod, aut quam in 5 partem aut quo consilio ducerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum putarent. Ariovistum, se consule, cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam appetisse; cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum judicaret? Sibi quidem persuaderi, cognitis suis postelatis atque aequitate conditi- 10 onum perspecta, eum neque suam neque populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum. Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur? aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent? Factum ejus hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, 15 cum, Cimbris et Teutonis a Gaiō Mario pulsus, non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritus videbatur: factum etiam nuper in Italia, servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina, quam a nobis acceperant, sublevarent. Ex quo judicari posse, quantum haberet in se 20 boni constantia; propterea quod, quos aliquamdiu inermos sine causa timuissent, hos postea armatos ac victores superassent. Denique hos esse eosdem, quibuscum saepenumero Helvetii congressi non solum in suis, sed etiam in illorum finibus, plerumque superarint, qui tamen pares esse nostro 25 exercitui non potuerint. Si quos adversum proelium et fuga Gallorum commoveret, hos, si quaerent, reperire posse, diurnitate belli defatigatis Gallis, Ariovistum cum multis menses castris se ac paludibus tenuisset, neque sui potestatem fecisset, desperantes jam de pugna et dispersos 30 subito adortum, magis ratione et consilio quam virtute vicisse. Cui rationi contra homines barbaros atque imperitos locus fuisset, hac ne ipsum quidem sperare nostros exercitus capi posse. Qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulationem angustiasque itinerum conferrent, facere 35 arroganter, cum aut de officio imperatoris desperare aut praescribere viderentur. Haec sibi esse curae; frumentum Sequanos, Leucos, Lingonas subministrare, jamque esse in

agris frumenta matura; de itinere ipsos brevi tempore iudicatu-  
catturos. Quod non fore dicto audientes neque signa latu-  
dicantur, nihil se eā re commoveri; scire enim, quibuscum-  
que exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit, aut male re gestā  
5 fortunam defuisse, aut aliquo facinore comperto avaritiam  
esse convictam: suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, felicitatem  
Helvetiōrum bello, esse perspectam. Itaque se, quod  
in longiorem diem collaturus fuisset, repraesentaturum et  
proximā nocte de quartā vigiliā castra moturum, ut quam  
10 primum intelligere posset, utrum apud eos pudor atque  
officium, an timor valeret. Quod si praeterea nemo sequatur,  
tamen se cum solā decimā legione iturum, de quā  
non dubitaret; sibi eam praetoriam cohortem futuram.  
Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter vir-  
15 tutem confidebat maxime.

XLI. Hac oratione habitā, mirum in modum conversae  
sunt omnium mentes, summaque alacritas et cupiditas belli  
gerendi innata est, princepsque decima legio per tribunos  
militum ei gratias egit, quod de se optimum iudicium fecis-  
20 set, seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirma-  
vit. Deinde reliquae legiones cum tribunis militum et  
primorum ordinum centurionibus egerunt, uti Caesāri satisfac-  
erent; se nec unquam dubitasse neque timuisse, neque  
de summā belli suum iudicium, sed imperatoris esse, existi-  
25 mavisse. Eorum satisfactione acceptā, et itinere exquisito  
per Divitiācum, quod ex aliis ei maximam fidem habebat,  
ut millium amplius quinquaginta circuitu locis apertis ex-  
ercitum duceret, de quartā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus  
est. Septimo die, cum iter non intermitteret, ab explo-  
30 ratoribus certior factus est, Ariovisti copias a nostris milli-  
bus passuum quattuor et viginti abesse.

XLII. Cognito Caesāris adventu, Ariovistus legatos ad  
eum mittit: Quod antea de colloquio postulasset, id per  
se fieri licere, quoniam propius accessisset; seque id sine  
35 periculo facere posse existimare. Non respuit conditionem  
Caesar, jamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur,  
cum id, quod antea petenti denegasset, ultro polliceretur;  
magnamque in spem veniebat, pro suis tantis populique

Romani in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis postulatis, fore, uti pertinaciā desisteret. Dies colloquio dictus est, ex eo die quintus. Interim saepe ultro citroque cum legati inter eos mitterentur, Ariovistus postulavit, ne quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar adduceret: Vereri se, ne per insidias 5 ab eo circumveniretur; uterque cum equitatu veniret; aliā ratione se non esse venturum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tolli volebat, neque salutem suam Gallōrum equitatu committere audebat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis equitibus detractis, eo 10 legionarios milites legionis decimae, cui quam maxime confidebat, imponere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus facto esset, haberet. Quod cum fieret, non irridicule quidam ex militibus decimae legionis dixit: Plus, quam pollicitus esset, Caesārem ei facere; pollicitum, se in 15 cohortis praetoriae loco decimam legionem habiturum, ad equum rescribere.

XLIII. Planities erat magna et in eā tumultus terrenus satis grandis. Hic locus aequo fere spatio ab castris Ariovisti et Caesāris aberat. Eo, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium venerunt. Legionem Caesar, quam equis devexerat, passibus ducentis ab eo tumultu constituit. Item equites Ariovisti pari intervallo constiterunt. Ariovistus, ex equis ut colloquerentur et praeter se denos ut ad colloquium adducerent, postulavit. Ubi eo ventum est, Caesar initio 25 orationis sua senatusque in eum beneficia commemoravit, quod rex appellatus esset a senatu, quod amicus, quod munera amplissime missa; quam rem et paucis contigisse, et pro magnis hominum officiis consuesse tribui docebat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandi justam 30 haberet, beneficio ac liberalitate suā ac senatus ea praemia consecutum. Docebat etiam, quam veteres quamque justae causae necessitudinis ipsis cum Aeduis intercederent, quae aenatus consulta, quoties, quamque honorifica in eos facta essent; ut omni tempore totius Galliae principatum Aedui 35 tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam appetissent. Populi Romāni hanc esse consuetudinem, ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil deperdere, sed gratiā,

dignitate, honore auctiores velit esse: quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romāni attulissent, id iis eripi, quis pati posset? Postulavit deinde eadem, quae legatis in mandatis dederat, ne aut Aeduis aut eorum sociis bellum inferret; obsides 5 redderet; si nullam partem Germanōrum domum remittere posset, at ne quos amplius Rhenum transire pateretur.

XLIV. Ariovistus ad postulata Caesāris pauca respondit; de suis virtutibus multa praedicavit: Transisse Rhenum sese non suā sponte, sed rogatum et arcessitum a 10 Gallis; non sine magnā spe magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse; sedes habere in Galliā ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capere jure belli, quod victores victis imponere consuerint. Non sese Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse; omnes 15 Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse, ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno proelio fusas ac superatas esse. Si iterum experiri velint, se iterum paratum esse decertare; si pace uti velint, iniquum esse dē stipendio recusare, quod suā voluntate ad id tempus pe- 20 penderint. Amicitiam populi Romāni sibi ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento, esse oportere, idque se eā spe petisse. Si per populum Romānum stipendium remittatur, et dediticii subtrahantur, non minus libenter sese recusaturum populi Romāni amicitiam quam appetierit. Quod 25 multitudinem Germanōrum in Galliam transducatur, id se sui muniendi, non Galliae impugnandae causā facere; ejus rei testimonium esse, quod nisi rogatus non venerit, et quod bellum non intulerit, sed defenderit. Se prius in Galliam venisse, quam populum Romānum. Nunquam 30 ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Romāni Galliae provinciae fines egressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cur in suas possessiones veniret? Provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concedi non oporteret, si in nostros fines impetum faceret, sic item nos esse iniquos, 35 qui in suo jure se interpellaremus. Quod fratres a senatu Aeduos appellatos diceret, non se tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum, ut non sciret, neque bello Allobrogum proximo Aeduos Romānis auxiliū tulisse, neque

ipsum in his contentionibus, quas Aedui secum et cum Sequānis habuissent, auxilio populi Romāni usos esse. Debere se suspicari, simulatā Caesārem amicitia, quod exercitum in Gallia habeat, sui opprimendi causā habere. Qui nisi decedat atque exercitum deducat ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amico, sed pro hoste habiturum. Quod si eum interfecerit, multis sese nobilibus principibusque populi Romāni gratum esse facturum; id se ab ipsis per eorum nuntios compertum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque amicitiam ejus morte redimere posset. Quod si decessisset ac liberam possessionem Galliae sibi tradidisset, magno se illum praemio remuneraturum, et quaecumque bella geri vellet, sine ullo ejus labore et periculo confecturum.

XLV. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio desistere non posset, et neque suam neque populi Romāni consuetudinem pati, uti optime meritos socios desereret; neque se judicare Galliam potius esse Ariovisti, quam populi Romāni. Bello superatos esse Arvernos et Rutēnos ab Quinto Fabio Maximo, quibus populus Romānus ignovisset, neque in provinciam redegisset, neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectari oporteret, populi Romāni justissimum esse in Gallia imperium: si iudicium senatus observari oporteret, liberam debere esse Galliam, quam bello victam suis legibus uti voluisset.

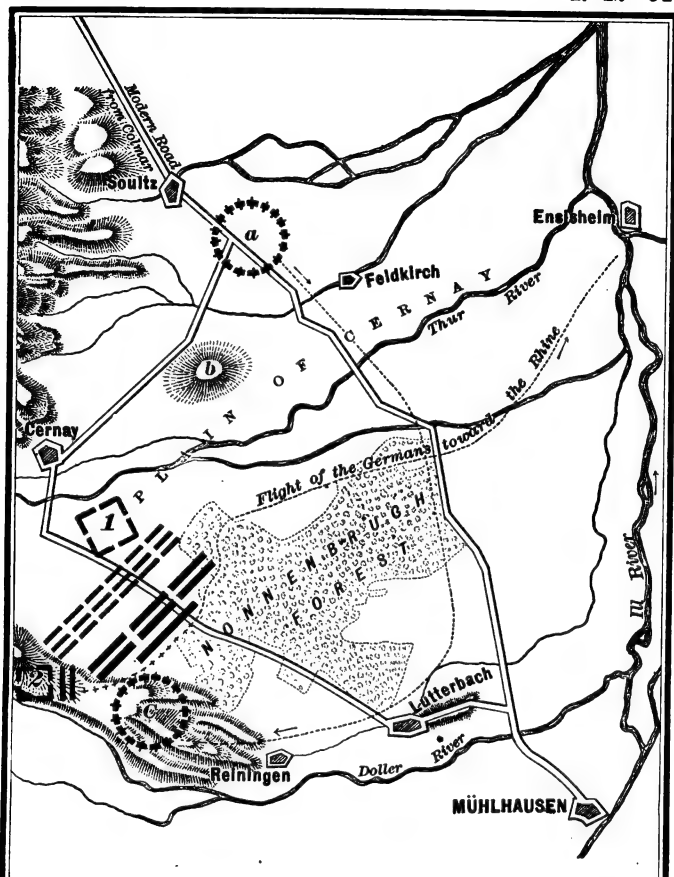
XLVI. Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est equites Ariovisti propius tumultum accedere et ad nostros adequitare, lapides telaque in nostros conjicere. Caesar loquendi finem facit seque ad suos recipit, suisque imperavit, ne quod omnino telum in hostes rejicerent. Nam etsi sine ullo periculo legionis delectae cum equitatu proelium fore videbat, tamen committendum non putabat, ut pulsus hostibus dici posset, eos ab se per fidem in colloquio circumventos. Posteaquam in vulgus militum elatum est, quā arrogantia in colloquio Ariovistus usus omni Gallia Romānis interdixisset, impetumque in nostros ejus equites fecissent, eaque res colloquium ut diremisset, multo



major alacritas studiumque pugnandi majus exercitui injectum est.

XLVII. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesārem legatos mittit: Velle se de his rebus, quae inter eos agi coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eo: uti aut iterum colloquio diem constitueret, aut, si id minus vellet, e suis legatis aliquem ad se mitteret. Colloquendi Caesāri causa visa non est, et eo magis, quod pridie ejus diei Germāni retineri non poterant, quin in nostros tela conjicerent. Legatum e suis sese magno cum periculo ad eum missurum et hominibus feris objecturum existimabat. Commoddissimum visum est Gāium Valerium Procillum, Gaii Valerii Cabūri filium, summā virtute et humanitate adolescentem (cujus pater a Gaio Valerio Flacco civitate donatus erat), et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā jam Ariovistus longinquā consuetudine utebatur, et quod in eo peccandi Germānis causa non esset, ad eum mittere, et Marcum Mettium, qui hospitio Ariovisti utebatur. His mandavit, ut, quae diceret Ariovistus, cognoscerent et ad se referrent. Quos cum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitu suo praesente, conclamavit: Quid ad se venirent? An speculandi causā? Conantes dicere prohibuit et in catenas conjecit.

XLVIII. Eodem die castra promovit et millibus passuum sex a Caesāris castris sub monte consedit. Postridie ejus diei praeter castra Caesāris suas copias transduxit et millibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit, eo consilio, uti frumento commeatuque, qui ex Sequānis et Aeduis supportaretur, Caesārem intercluderet. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deesset. Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris continuit; equestri proelio quotidie contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae, quo se Germāni exercuerant. Equitum millia erant sex, totidem numero pedites velocissimi ac fortissimi, quos ex omni copiā singuli singulos suae salutis causā delegerant. Cum his in proeliis versabantur, ad hos se equites recipiebant:



EXPLANATION.

1. Caesar's large camp.
2. Caesar's small camp.
- a. First camp of Ariovistus.
- b. Hill on which Caesar and Ariovistus met.
- c. Second camp of Ariovistus.

— Romans. — Germans.

SCALE OF MILES  
0 1 2 3 4 5



hi, si quid erat durius, concurrebant; si qui, graviore vulnere accepto, equo deciderat, circumstisiebant; si quo erat longius prodeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas, ut jubeis equorum sublevati cursum adaequarent.

5

XLIX. Ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius comineatu prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germāni consederant, circiter passus sexcentos ab iis, castris idoneum locum delegit, acieque triplici instructā, ad eum locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in 10 armis esse, tertiam castra munire jussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos, uti dictum est, aberat. Eo circiter hominum numero sedecim-millia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, quae copiae nostros perterrerent et munitione prohiberent. Nihilo secius Caesar, ut 15 ante constituerat, duas acies hostem propulsare, tertiam opus perficere jussit. Munitis castris, duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem auxiliorum, quattuor reliquas in castra majora reduxit.

L. Proximo die instituto suo Caesar e castris utrisque 20 copias suas eduxit, paulumque a majoribus castris progressus aciem instruxit hostibusque pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quae castra minora oppugnaret, 25 misit. Acriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus, multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus, in castra reduxit. Cum ex captivis quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proelio non decertaret, hanc reperiebat causam, quod apud Germānos 30 ea consuetudo esset, ut matres familiae eorum sortibus et vaticinationibus declararent, utrum proelium committi ex usu esset, necne: eas ita dicere: Non esse fas Germānos superare, si ante novam lunam proelio contendissent.

LI. Postridie ejus diei Caesar praesidio utrisque castris, 35 quod satis esse visum est, reliquit; omnes alarios in conspectu hostium pro castris minoribus constituit, quod minus multitudine militum legionariorum pro hostium

numero valebat, ut ad speciem alariis uteretur. Ipse triplici instructa acie usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum demum necessario Germani suas copias castris eduxerunt, generatimque constituerunt paribusque intervallis Harudes, 5 Marcomannos, Triboccos, Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusios, Suebos, omnemque aciem suam rhedis et carris circumdederunt, ne qua spes in fuga relinqueretur. Eo mulieres imposuerunt, quae in proelium proficiscentes passis manibus flentes implorabant, ne se in servitatem Romanis traderent. 10 derent.

LII. Caesar singulis legionibus singulos legatos et quaestorem praefecit, uti eos testes suae quisque virtutis haberet. Ipse a dextro cornu, quod eam partem minime firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostri 16 acriter in hostes signo dato impetum fecerunt, itaque hostes repente celeriterque procurrerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes conjiciendi non daretur. Rejectis pilis, comminus gladiis pugnatum est. At Germani, celeriter ex consuetudine sua phalange facta, impetus gladiatorum exceperunt. Reperti 20 sunt complures nostri milites, qui in phalangas insilirent et scuta manibus revellerent et desuper vulnerarent. Cum hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitudine suorum nostram aciem premebant. Id cum animadvertisset Publius 25 Crassus adolescens, qui equitatu praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam hi qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit.

LIII. Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes terga verterunt, neque prius fugere destiterunt, quam ad 30 flumen Rhenum millia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinquaginta pervenerunt. Ibi perpauci aut viribus confisi transire contenderunt, aut lintribus inventis sibi salutem repererunt. In his fuit Ariovistus, qui naviculam deligatam ad ripam nactus, eam profugit: reliquos omnes equitatu consecuti 35 nostri interfecerunt. Duae fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, una Sueba natione, quam domo secum duxerat, altera Norica, regis Voconis soror, quam in Gallia duxerat, a fratre missam: utraeque in eam fugam perierunt. Duae filiae harum,

altera occisa, altera capta est. Gāius Valerius Procillus, cum a custodibus in fugā trinis catenis vinctus traheretur, in ipsum Caesārem, hostes equitatu persequentem, incidit. Quae quidem res Caesāri non minorem quam ipsa victoria voluptatem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum provin- 5  
ciae Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, ereptum e manibus hostium, sibi restitutum videbat, neque ejus calamitate de tantā voluptate et gratulatione quidquam fortuna deminuerat. Is, se praesente, de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat, utrum igni statim necaretur, an in aliud tempus 10  
reservaretur: sortium beneficio se esse incolumem. Item Marcus Mettius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

LIV. Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato, Suēbi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt; quos Ubii, qui proximi Rhenum incolunt, perterritos insecuti, 15  
magnum ex his numerum occiderunt. Caesar, unā aestate duobus maximis bellis confectis, maturius paulo, quam tempus anni postulabat, in hiberna in Sequānos exercitum deduxit; hibernis Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos profectus est. 20

## LIBER II.

I. Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Galliā in hibernis, ita uti supra demonstravimus, crebri ad eum rumores afferebantur litterisque item Labiēni certior fiebat, omnes Belgas, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus, contra  
5 populum Romānum conjurare obsidesque inter se dare: conjurandi has esse causas: primum, quod vererentur, ne, omni pacatā Galliā, ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur; deinde, quod ab nonnullis Gallis sollicitarentur, partim qui, ut Germānos diutius in Galliā versari noluerant, ita populi  
10 Romāni exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere in Galliā moleste ferebant, partim qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis imperiis studebant; ab nonnullis etiam, quod in Galliā a potentioribus atque his, qui ad conducendos homines facultates habebant, vulgo regna occupabantur, qui  
15 minus facile eam rem imperio nostro consequi poterant.

II. His nuntiis litterisque commotus Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Galliā novas conscripsit, et initā aestate, in interiorem Galliam qui deduceret, Quintum Pedium legatum misit. Ipse, cum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet,  
20 ret, ad exercitum venit; dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea, quae apud eos gerantur, cognoscant seque de his rebus certiore faciant. Hi constanter omnes nuntiaverunt, manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum conduci. Tum vero dubitandum non  
25 existimavit, quin ad eos proficisceretur. Re frumentariā comparatā castra movet diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgārum pervenit.

III. Eo cum de improvviso celeriusque omni opinione venisset, Remi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad  
30 eum legatos Iccium et Andocumborium, primos civitatis,

miserunt, qui dicerent, se suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romāni permittere; neque se cum Belgis reliquis consensisse, neque contra populum Romānum conjurasse, paratosque esse et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus juvare; 5 reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse, Germanosque, quī cis Rhenum incolant, sese cum his conjunxisse, tantumque esse eorum omnium furorem, ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eodem jure et eisdem legibus utantur, unum imperium unumque magistratum cum ipsis 10 habeant, deterrere potuerint, quin cum his consentirent.

IV. Cum ab his quaereret, quae civitates quantaque in armis essent et quid in bello possent, sic reperiebat: Plerosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germānis, Rhenumque antiquitus transductos propter loci fertilitatem ibi conse- 15 disse, Gallosque, qui ea loca incolerent, expulisse, solosque esse, qui patrum nostrorum memoriā, omni Galliā vexatā, Teutōnos Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingredi prohibuerint.

+ Quā ex re fieri, uti earum rerum memoriā magnam sibi auctoritatem magnosque spiritus in re militari sumerent. 20 De numero eorum omnia se habere explorata Remi dicebant, propterea quod propinquitatibus affinitatibusque conjuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem in communi Belgārum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognoverint. Plurimum inter eos Bellovācos et virtute et auctoritate et 25 hominum numero valere; hos posse conficere armata millia centum; pollicitos ex eo numero electa millia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulare. Suessiones suos esse finitimqs; latissimos feracissimosque agros possidere. Apud eos fuisse regem nostrā etiam memoriā Divitiācum, 30 totius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum, tum etiam Britanniae, imperium obtinuerit: nunc esse regem Galbam: ad hunc propter justitiam prudentiamque suam totius belli summam omnium voluntate deferri; oppida habere numero duodecim, polliceri 35 millia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervios, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habeantur longissimeque absint; quindecim millia Atrebātes, Ambiānos decem millia, Morīnos viginti



quinque millia, Menapios septem millia, Calētos decem millia, Velocasses et Veromandos totidem, Aduatūcos decem et novem millia; Condrūsos, Eburōnes, Caeroesos, Paemānos, qui uno nomine Germāni appellantur, arbitrari  
5 ad quadraginta millia.

— V. Caesar Remos cohortatus liberaliterque oratione prosecutus, omnem senatum ad se convenire principumque liberos obsides ad se adduci jussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Divitiācum Aedu-  
10 um magnopere cohortatus docet, quanto opere rei publicae communisque salutis intersit manus hostium distineri, ne cum tantā multitudine uno tempore configendum sit. Id fieri posse, si suas copias Aedui in fines Bellovacōrum introduxerint et eorum agros populari coeperint. His  
15 mandatis eum ab se dimittit. Postquam omnes Belgārum copias in unum locum coactas ad se venire vidit, neque jam longe abesse ab his, quos miserat, exploratoribus et ab Remis cognovit, flumen Axōnam, quod est in extremis Remōrum finibus, exercitum transducere maturavit, atque ibi castra posuit. Quae res et latus unum cas-  
20 trorum ripis fluminis muniebat et post eum quae essent tuta ab hostibus reddebat, et; commeatus ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus ut sine periculo ad eum portari possent, efficiebat. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit  
25 et in alterā parte fluminis Quintum Titurium Sabīnum legatum cum sex cohortibus relinquit: castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vallo, fossāque duodeviginti pedum, munire jubet.

VI. Ab his castris oppidum Remōrum nomine Bibrax  
30 aberat millia passuum octo. Id ex itinere magno impetu Belgae oppugnare coeperunt. Aegre eo die sustentatum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnatio est haec. Ubi circumjectā multitudine hominum totis moenibus undique in murum lapides jaci coepti sunt murusque  
35 defensoribus nudatus est, testudine factā, portas succedunt murumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiebat. Nam cum tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conjicerent, in muro consistendi potestas erat nulli. Cum finem oppugnandi



nox fecisset, Iccius Remus, summā nobilitate et gratiā inter suos, qui tum oppido praefuerat, unus ex his qui legati de pace ad Caesārem venerant, nuntium ad eum mittit: Nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse.

5

VII. Eo de mediā nocte Caesar iisdem ducibus usus qui nuntii ab Iccio venerant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios, et funditores Baleāres, subsidio oppidanis mittit; quorum adventu et Remis cum spe defensionis studium propugnandi accessit, et hostibus eādem de causā spes potiun- 10 di oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morati agrosque Remōrum depopulati, omnibus vicis aedificiisque, quos adire poterant, incensis, ad castra Caesāris omnibus copiis contenderunt et ab millibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut fumo atque ignibus sig- 15 nificabatur, amplius millibus passuum octo in latitudinem patebant.

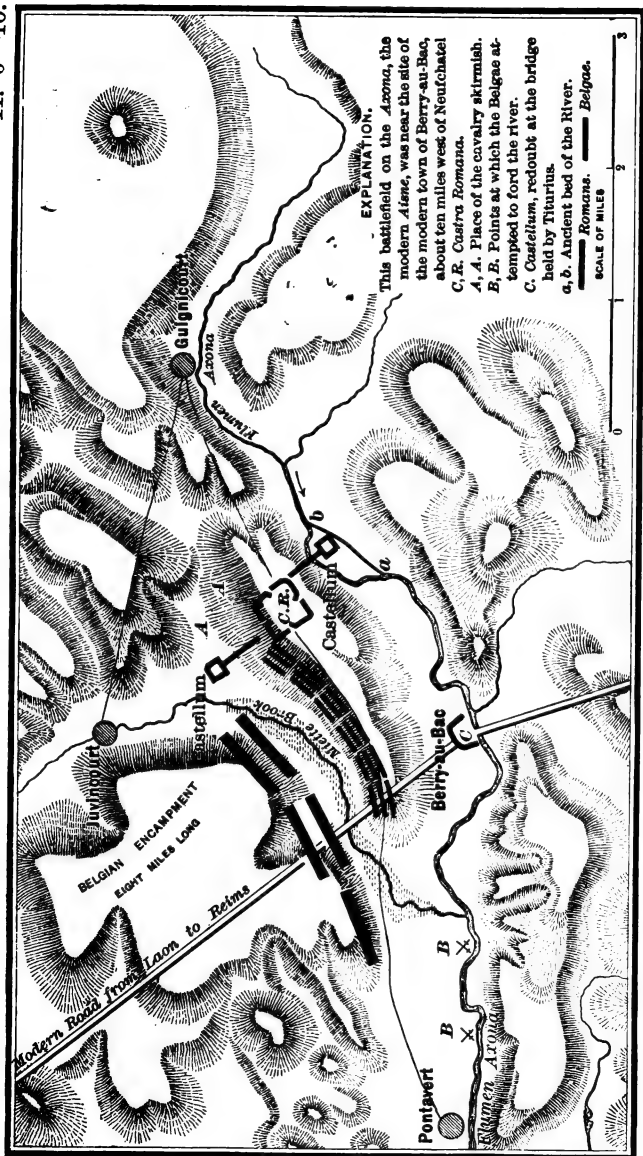
VIII. Caesar primo et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opinionem virtutis, proelio superedere statuit; quotidie tamen equestribus proeliis, quid 20 hostis virtute posset et quid nostri auderent, periclitabatur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiores intellexit, loco pro castris ad aciem instruendam naturā opportuno atque idoneo (quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex planitie editus, tantum adversus in latitudinem patebat, quan- 25 tum loci acies instructa occupare poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dejectus habebat, et in fronte leniter fastigatus paulatim ad planitiem redibat), ab utroque latere ejus collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum quadringentorum; et ad extremas fossas castella constituit 30 ibique tormenta collocavit, ne, cum aciem instruxisset, hostes, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantes suos circumvenire possent. Hoc facto, duabus legionibus, quas proxime conscripserat, in castris relictis, ut, si quo opus esset, subsidio duci possent, reliquas sex 35 legiones pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxerant.

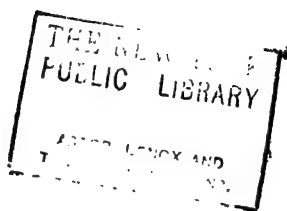
IX. Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium

exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent, hostes expectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos aggredierentur, parati in armis erant. Interim  proelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. Ubi nostri transeundi initium faciunt, secundiore equitum proelio  nostris, Caesar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axōnam contenderunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt, eo consilio, 10 ut, si possent, castellum, cui praeerat Quintus Titurius legatus, expugnarent, pontemque interscinderent; si minus potuissent, agros Remōrum popularentur, qui magno nobis usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatuque nostros prohiberent.

15 X. Caesar certior factus ab Titurio, omnem equitatum et levis armaturae Numīdas, funditores sagittariosque pontem transducit atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi magnum eorum numerum occiderunt. Per eorum corpora 20 pora reliquos audacissime transire conantes multitudine telorum repulerunt; primos, qui transierant, equitatu circumventos interfecerunt. Hostes ubi et de expugnando oppido et de flumine transeundo spem se fefellisse intellexerunt, neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progredi pugnandi causā viderunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficere coepit, concilio convocato, constituerunt optimum esse, domum suam quemque reverti, et, quorum in fines primum Romāni exercitum introduxissent, ad eos defendendos undique convenirent, ut potius in suis quam in alienis finibus 30 decertarent et domesticis copiis rei frumentariae uterentur. Ad eam sententiam, cum reliquis causis, haec quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiācum atque Aeduos finibus Bellovacōrum appropinquare cognoverant. His persuaderi, ut diutius morarentur neque suis auxilium ferrent, non poterat.

35 XI. Eā re constitutā, secundā vigiliā magno cum strepitu ac tumultu castris egressi, nullo certo ordine neque imperio, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt, ut consimilis fugae





profectio videretur. Hac re statim Caesar per speculatores cognitā, insidias veritus, quod, quā de causā discederent, nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Primā luce, confirmatā re ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum, qui novissimum agmen moraretur, prae- 5 misit. His Quintum Pedium et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praefecit. Titum Labiēnum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimos adorti et multa millia passuum prosecuti magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt, cum ab extremo agmine, 10 ad quos ventum erat, consisterent fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent, priores (quod abesse a periculo viderentur, neque ullā necessitate neque imperio continerentur), exaudito clamore, perturbatis ordinibus, omnes in fugā sibi praesidium ponerent. Ita sine ullo 15 periculo tantam eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt, quantum fuit diei spatium, sub occasumque solis destiterunt seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt.

XII. Postridie ejus diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fugā reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit et magno itinere confecto ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare conatus, quod vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat, propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem, paucis defendentibus, expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis, 25 vineas agere, quaeque ad oppugnandum usui erant, comparare coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proximā nocte convenit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum actis, aggere jacto, turribusque constitutis, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque 30 audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti, legatos ad Caesarem de deditione mittunt, et petentibus Remis ut conservarentur impetrant.

XIII. Caesar, obsidibus acceptis, primis civitatis atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex 35 oppido traditis, in deditionem Suessiones accepit exercitumque in Bellovacos ducit. Qui cum se suaeque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppido

Caesar cum exercitu circiter millia passuum quinque abesset, omnes majores natu ex oppido egressi manus ad Caesarem tendere et voce significare coeperunt, sese in ejus fidem ac potestatem venire, neque contra populum Romanum armis contendere. Item cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi poneret, pueri mulieresque ex muro passis manibus suo more pacem ab Romanis petierunt.

XIV. Pro his Divitiacus (nam post discessum Belgarum, dimissis Aeduorum copiis, ad eum reverterat), facit verba: Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Aeduae fuisse: impulsos a suis principibus, qui dicerent Aeduos a Caesare in servitutem redactos omnes indignitates contumeliasque perferre, et ab Aeduis defecisse et populo Romano bellum intulisse. Qui ejus consilii principes fuissent, quod intelligerent quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacos, sed etiam pro his Aeduos, ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur. Quod si fecerit, Aeduorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificatum; quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint.

XV. Caesar honoris Divitiaci atque Aeduorum causam sese eos in fidem recepturum et conservaturum dixit: quod erat civitas magna inter Belgas auctoritate atque hominum multitudine praestabat, sexcentos obsides poposcit. His traditis omnibusque armis ex oppido collatis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervenit, qui se suaque omnia sine mora dederunt. Eorum fines Nervii attingebant; quorum de natura moribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiebat: Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus: nihil pati vini reliquarumque rerum ad luxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod iis rebus relanguescere animos et remitti virtutem existimarent: esse homines feros magnaeque virtutis: increpitare atque incusare reliquos Belgas, qui se populo Romano dedidissent patriamque virtutem projecissent: confirmare sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam conditionem pacis accepturos.

XVI. Cum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, inve-

niebat ex captivis Sabim flumen ab castris suis non amplius millia passuum decem abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedissee adventumque ibi Romanorum expectare una cum Atrebatibus et Veromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his utrisque persnaserant, uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur): expectari etiam ab his Aduatucorum copias atque esse in itinere: mulieres, quique per aetatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur, in eum locum coniecisse, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

XVII. His rebus cognitis, exploratores centurionesque praemittit, qui locum idoneum castris deligant. Cum ex dediticiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesarem secuti una iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus perspecta, nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt atque his demonstrarunt, inter singulas legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intercedere, neque esse quidquam negotii, cum prima legio in castra venisset reliquaeque legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri: qua pulsam impedimentisque direptis, futurum, ut reliquae contra consistere non auderent. Adjuvabat etiam eorum consilium qui rem deferebant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitatu nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed, quidquid possunt, pedestribus valent copiis), quo facilius finitimorum equitatum, si praedandi causa ad eos venisset, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisus atque inflexis crebris in latitudinem ramis enatis et rubis sentibusque interjectis effecerant, ut instar muri hae sepes munimentum praerberent; quo non modo intrari, sed ne perspiei quidem posset. His rebus cum iter agminis nostri impediretur, non omittendum sibi consilium Nervii existimaverunt.

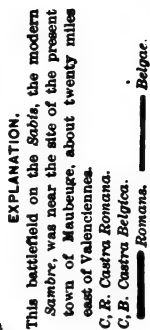
XVIII. Loci natura erat haec, quem locum nostri castris delegerant. Collis ab summo aequaliter declivis ad flumen Sabim, quod supra nominavimus, vergebat. Ab eo flumine pari acclivitate collis nascebatur adversus huic et contrarius, passus circiter ducentos infimus apertus, ab superiore parte silvestris, ut non facile introrsus perspicere



posset. Intra eas silvas hostes in occulto sese continebant: in aperto loco secundum flumen paucae stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo pedum circiter trium.

XIX. Caesar equitatu praemisso subsequebatur omnibus copiis; sed ratio ordoque agminis aliter se habebat, ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. Nam quod ad hostes appropinquabat, consuetudine suā Caesar sex legiones expeditas ducebat: post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocarat: inde duae legiones, quae proxime conscriptae erant, totum agmen claudebant praesidioque impedimentis erant. Equites nostri cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi cum hostium equitatu proelium commiserunt. Cum se illi identidem in silvas ad suos reciperent ac rursus ex silvā in nostros impetum facerent, neque nostri longius, quam quem ad finem porrecta loca aperta pertinebant, cedentes insequi auderent; interim legiones sex, quae primae venerant, opere dimenso castra munire coeperunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitus ab his, qui in silvis abditi latebant, visa sunt (quod tempus inter eos committendi proelii convenerat), ita, ut intra silvas aciem ordinesque constituerant atque ipsi sese confirmaverant, subito omnibus copiis provolaverunt impetumque in nostros equites fecerunt. His facile pulsus ac proturbatis, incredibili celeritate ad flumen decucurrerunt, ut paene uno tempore et ad silvas et in flumine et jam in manibus nostris hostes viderentur. Eādem autem celeritate adverso colle ad nostra castra atque eos, qui in opere occupati erant, contenderunt.

XX. Cæsari omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum proponendum, quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurreretur; signum tubā dandum; ab opere revocandi milites; qui paulo longius aggeris petendi causā processerant, arcessendi; acies instruenda, milites cohortandi, signum dandum. Quarum rerum magnam partem temporis brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat. His difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio, scientia atque usus militum, quod superioribus proeliis exercitati, quid fieri oporteret, non minus commode ipsi sibi praescribere, quam ab aliis





doceri poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere, nisi munitis castris, vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium, nihil jam Caesaris imperium expectabant, sed per se, quae videbantur, administrabant. 5

XXI. Caesar necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites, quam in partem fors obtulit, decucurrit, et ad legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione cohortatus, quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent neu perturbarentur animo hostiumque impetum 10 fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant, quam quo telum adjici posset, proelii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causā profectus pugnantis occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandam animus, ut non modo 15 ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas induendas scutisque tegimenta detrudenda tempus defuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem casu devenit, quaeque prima signa conspexit, ad haec constitit, ne in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret. 20

XXII. Instructo exercitu, magis ut loci natura dejectusque collis et necessitas temporis, quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, cum, diversis legionibus, aliae aliā in parte, hostibus resisterent, sepibusque densissimis, ut ante demonstravimus, interjectis, prospectus impedire- 25 tur, neque certa subsidia collocari, neque quid in quaque parte opus esset provideri, neque ab uno omnia imperia administrari poterant. Itaque in tantā rerum iniquitate fortunae quoque eventus varii sequebantur.

XXIII. Legionis nonae et decimae milites, ut in sinistrā 30 parte acie constiterant, pilis emissis cursu ac lassitudine exanimatos vulneribusque confectos Atrebates (nam his ea pars obvenerat). celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen compulerunt, et transire conantes insecuti gladiis magnam partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsi transire flu- 35 men non dubitaverunt, et in locum iniquum progressi rursus resistentes hostes, redintegrato proelio, in fugam conjecerunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae legiones, undecima

et octava, profligatis Veromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore in ipsis fluminis ripis proeliabantur. At totis fere a fronte et ab sinistrâ parte nudatis castris, cum in dextro cornu legio duodecima et non  
5 magno ab eâ intervallo septima constitisset, omnes Nervii, confertissimo agmine, duce Boduognâto, qui summam imperii tenebat, ad eum locum contenderunt: quorum pars aperto latere legiones circumvenire, pars summum castrorum locum petere coepit.

10 XXIV. Eodem tempore equites nostri levisque armaturae pedites, qui cum iis una fuerant, quos primo hostium impetu pulsos dixeram, cum se in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrebant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petebant; et calones, qui ab decumanâ portâ ac  
15 summo jugo collis nostros victores flumen transisse conspexerant, praedandi causâ egressi, cum respexissent et hostes in nostris castris versari vidissent, praecepites fugae sese mandabant. Simul eorum, qui cum impedimentis veniebant, clamor fremitusque oriebatur, aliique aliam in  
20 partem perterriti ferebantur. Quibus omnibus rebus permoti equites Trevîri, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est singularis, qui auxilii causâ ab civitate ad Caesârem missi venerant, cum multitudine hostium castra nostra compleri, nostras legiones premi et paene circumventas teneri,  
25 calones, equites, funditores, Numîdas, diversos dissipatosque in omnes partes fugere vidissent, desperatis nostris rebus, domum contenderunt: Românos pulsos superatosque, castris impedimentisque eorum hostes potitos civitati renuntiaverunt.

30 XXV. Caesar ab décimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit, quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis signiferoque interfecto, signo  
35 amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo Publio Sextio Bacûlo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto, ut jam se sustinere non posset, reliquos esse tar-

diore et nonnullos ab novissimis deserto proelio excedere ac tela vitare, hostes neque a fronte ex inferiore loco subeuntes intermittere et ab utroque latere instare, et rem esse in angusto vidit, neque ullum esse subsidium, quod submitti posset, scuto ab novissimis uni militi detracto, 5 quod ipse eo sine scuto venerat, in primam aciem processit centurionibusque nominatim appellatis, reliquos cohortatus milites, signa inferre et manipulos laxare jussit, quo facilius gladiis uti possent. Cujus adventu spe illatā militibus ac redintegrato animo, cum pro se quisque in conspectu 10 imperatoris etiam in extremis suis rebus operam navare cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardatus est.

XXVI. Caesar cum septimam legionem, quae juxta constiterat, item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunus militum monuit, ut paulatim sese legiones conjungerent et conversa 15 signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto, cum alius alii subsidium ferrent, neque timerent ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare coeperunt. Interim milites legionum duarum, quae in novissimo agmine praesidio impedimentis fuerant, proelio nuntiato, 20 cursu incitato, in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur; et Titus Labiēnus castris hostium potitus et ex loco superiore, quae res in nostris castris gererentur, conspicatus, decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit. Qui cum ex equitum et calonum fugā, quo in loco res esset, quanto- 25 que in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator versaretur, cognovissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt.

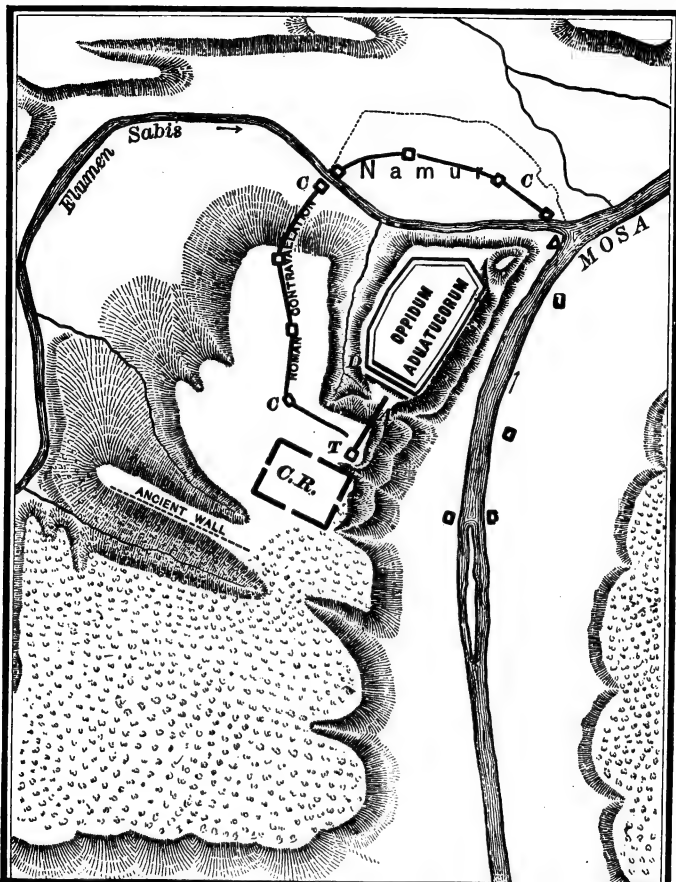
XXVII. Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio est facta, ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procubuis- sent, scutis innixi proelium redintegrarent; tum calones, 30 perterritos hostes conspicati, etiam inermes armatis occurrerent; equites vero, ut turpitudinem fugae virtute dele- rent, omnibus in locis pugnae se legionariis militibus praeferrent. At hostes etiam in extremā spe salutis tantam virtutem praestiterunt, ut cum primi eorum cecidissent, 35 proximi jacentibus insisterent atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent; his dejectis et coacervatis cadaveribus, qui superessent, uti ex tumulo, tela in nostros conjicerent et

pila intercepta remitterent: ut non nequidquam tantas virtutis homines judicari deberet ausos esse transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum: quae facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo  
5 redegerat.

XXVIII. Hoc proelio facto et prope ad internecionem gente ac nomine Nerviorum redacto, majores natu, quos una cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuaria ac paludes collectos dixeramus, hac pugnam nuntiata, cum victoribus  
10 nihil impeditum, victis nihil tutum arbitrarentur, omnium, qui supererant, consensu legatos ad Caesarem miserunt seque ei dediderunt; et in commemoranda civitatis calamitate, ex sexcentis ad tres senatores, ex hominum millibus sexaginta vix ad quingentos, qui arma ferre possent, sese  
15 redactos esse dixerunt. Quos Caesar, ut in miseros ac supplices usus misericordiam videretur, diligentissime conservavit suisque finibus atque oppidis uti jussit et finitimis imperavit, ut ab injuria et maleficio se suosque prohiberent.

20 XXIX. Aduatuci, de quibus supra scripsimus, cum omnibus copiis auxilio Nervii venirent, hac pugnam nuntiata ex itinere domum reverterunt; cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis sua omnia in unum oppidum egregie naturamunitum contulerunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitu  
25 partibus altissimas rupes despectusque haberet, una ex parte leniter acclivis aditus in latitudinem non amplius ducentorum pedum relinquebatur; quem locum duplici altissimo muro munierant, tum magni ponderis saxa et praeacutas trabes in muro collocarant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Tentonisque prognati; qui, cum iter in provinciam  
30 nostram atque Italiam facerent, iis impedimentis, quae secum agere ac portare non poterant, citra flumen Rhenum depositis custodiam ex suis ac praesidium sex millia hominum una reliquerunt. Hi post eorum obitum multos  
35 annos a finitimis exagitati, cum alias bellum inferrent, alias illatum defenderent, consensu eorum omnium pace facta, hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt.

XXX. Ac primo adventu exercitus nostri crebras ex



**EXPLANATION.**

This stronghold of the Aduatuci occupied the hill, on the right bank of the *Sambre*, which now forms the citadel of *Namur*.

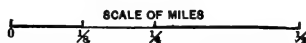
**A. Roman Agger.**

**T. Turris ambulatoria.**

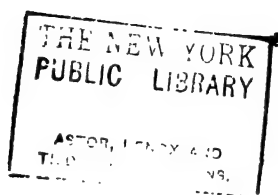
**C, C. Roman contravallation with numerous redoubts.**

**C, R.** *Castra Romana.*

**D. Double wall before the city.**







oppido excursiones faciebant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendebant: postea vallo pedum duodecim, in circuitu quindecim millium, crebrisque castellis circummuniti oppido sese continebant. Ubi vineis actis, aggere exstructo, turrim procul constitui viderunt, primum irridere 5, ex muro atque increpitare vocibus, quod tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio instrueretur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus, praesertim homines tantulae staturae (nam plerumque omnibus Gallis prae magnitudine corporum suorum, brevitās nostra contemptui est), tanti oneris turrim in muros sese collocare confiderent?

XXXI. Ubi vero moveri et appropinquare moenibus viderunt, novā atque inusitatā specie commoti legatos ad Caesarem de pace miserunt, qui ad hunc modum locuti: Non existimare Romānos sine ope divinā bellum gerere, 15 qui tantae altitudinis machinationes tantā celeritate promovere possent; se suaque omnia eorum potestati permittere, dixerunt. Unum petere ac deprecari: si forte pro suā clementiā ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, statuisset, Aduatūcos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret. Sibi omnes fere finitimos esse inimicos ac suae 20 virtuti invidere, a quibus se defendere, traditis armis, non possent. Sibi praestare, si in eum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortunam a populo Romāno pati, quam ab his per cruciatum interfici, inter quos dominari consuessent. 25

XXXII. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Se magis consuetudine suā quam merito eorum civitatem conservaturum, si prius, quam murum aries attigisset, se dedidissent; sed deditiōnis nullam esse conditionem, nisi armis traditis. Se id, quod in Nervii fecisset, facturum finitimisque imperatorum, ne quam dediticiis populi Romāni injuriam inferrent. Re nuntiātā ad suos, quae imperarentur, facere dixerunt. Armorum magnā multitudine de muro in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, jactā, sic ut prope summam muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum adaequarent, et tamen circiter 35 parte tertiā, ut postea perspectum est, celatā atque in oppido retentā, portis patefactis, eo die pace sunt usi.

XXXIII. Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militesque

ex oppido exire jussit, ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus injuriam acciperent. Illi ante inito, ut intellectum est, consilio, quod deditioe factā nostros praesidia deducturos aut denique indiligentius servaturos crediderant, partim  
5 cum his, quae retinuerant et celaverant, armis, partim scutis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intextis, quae subito, ut temporis exiguitas postulabat, pellibus induxerant, tertiā vigiliā, qua minime arduus ad nostras munitiones ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis repentino ex oppido eruptionem  
10 fecerunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperarat, ignibus significatione factā, ex proximis castellis eo concursum est pugnatumque ab hostibus ita acriter est, ut a viris fortibus in extremā spe salutis iniquo loco contra eos, qui ex vallo turribusque tela jacerent, pugnari debuit, cum in unā  
15 virtute omnis spes salutis consisteret. Occisus ad hominum millibus quattuor, reliqui in oppidum rejecti sunt. Postridie ejus diei refractis portis, cum jam defenderet nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris, sectionem ejus oppidi universam Caesar vendidit. Ab his, qui emerant,  
20 capitum numerus ad eum relatus est millium quinquaginta trium.

XXXIV. Eodem tempore a Publio Crasso, quem cum legione unā miserat ad Venētos, Venellos, Osismos, Curiosolitas, Esubios, Aulercos, Redōnes, quae sunt maritimae  
25 civitates Oceānumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnes eas civitates in ditionem potestatemque populi Romāni esse redactas.

XXXV. His rebus gestis, omni Galliā pacatā, tanta hujus belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est, uti ab his nati  
30 onibus, quae trans Rhenum incoherent, mitterentur legati ad Caesārem, qui se obsides daturas, imperata facturas, pollicerentur. Quas legationes Caesar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properabat, initā proximā aestate ad se reverti jussit. Ipse in Carnūtes, Andes Turōnesque, quae civitates propinquae his locis erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legionibus in hibernacula deductis, in Italiam profectus est; ob  
85 easque res ex litteris Caesāris dies quindecim supplicatio decreta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.

## LIBER III.

I. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legione duodecimā et parte equitatus in Nantuātes, Verāgros Sedūnosque misit, qui ab finibus Allobrōgum et lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodāno ad summas Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit, quod iter per 5 Alpes, quo magno cum periculo magnisque cum portoriis mercatores ire consuerant, patefieri volebat. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitraretur, uti in his locis legionem hie-  
mandi causā collocaret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis castellisque compluribus eorum expugnatis, missis 10 ad eum undique legatis obsidibusque datis et pace factā, constituit cohortes duas in Nantuatibus collocare et ipse cum reliquis ejus legionis cohortibus in vico Veragrōrum, qui appellatur Octodūrus, hiemare; qui vicus positus in valle, non magnā adjectā planitie, altissimis montibus 15 undique continetur. Cum hic in duas partes flumine divideretur, alteram partem ejus vici Gallis ad hiemandum concessit, alteram vacuum ab illis relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vallo fossāque munivit.

II. Cum dies hibernorum complures transissent, fru- 20 mentumque eo comportari jussisset, subito per exploratores certior factus est, ex eā parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discessisse, montesque, qui impenderent, a maximā multitudine Sedunōrum et Veragrōrum teneri. Id aliquot de causis acciderat, ut subito Galli belli 25 renovandi legionisque opprimendae consilium caperent: primum, quod legionem, neque eam plenissimam, detractis cohortibus duabus et compluribus singillatim, qui commeatus petendi causā missi erant, absentibus, propter paucitatem despiciebant; tum etiam, quod propter iniquitatem 30

loci, cum ipsi ex montibus in vallem decurrerent et tela conjicerent, ne primum quidem posse impetum suum sustineri existimabant. Accedebat, quod suos ab se liberos abstractos obsidum nomine dolebant, et Romanos, non  
5 solum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessionis, culmina Alpium occupare conari, et ea loca finitimae provinciae adjungere, sibi persuasum habebant.

III. His nuntiis acceptis, Galba, cum neque opus hibernorum munitionesque plene essent perfectae, neque de frumento reliquoque commeatu satis esset provisum, quod,  
10 deditione factā obsidibusque acceptis, nihil de bello timendum existimaverat, consilio celeriter convocato, sententias exquirere coepit. Quo in consilio, cum tantum repentini periculi praeter opinionem accidisset, ac jam omnia fere  
15 superiora loca multitudine armatorum completa conspicerentur, neque subsidio veniri neque commeatus supportari, interclusis itineribus, possent, prope jam desperatā salute, nonnullae hujusmodi sententiae dicebantur, ut impedimentis relictis, eruptione factā, iisdem itineribus, quibus eo per-  
20 venissent, ad salutem contenderent. Majori tamen parti placuit, hoc reservato ad extremum consilio, interim rei eventum experiri et castra defendere.

IV. Brevi spatio interjecto, vix ut his rebus, quas constituerent, collocandis atque administrandis tempus daretur,  
25 tur, hostes ex omnibus partibus signo dato decurrere, lapides gaesaeque in vallum conjicere. Nostri primo integris viribus fortiter repugnare, neque ullum frustra telum ex loco superiore mittere; ut quaeque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo occurrere et auxilium  
30 ferre, sed hoc superari, quod diuturnitate pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant: quarum rerum a nostris propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, ac non modo defesso ex pugna excedendi, sed ne saucio quidem ejus loci, ubi constiterat, relinquendi  
35 ac sui recipiendi facultas dabatur.

V. Cum jam amplius horis sex continenter pugnaretur ac non solum vires, sed etiam tela nostros deficerent, atque hostes acrius instarent languidioribusque nostris

vallum scindere et fossas complere coepissent, resque esset jam ad extremum perducta casum, Publius Sextius Baculus, primi pili centurio, quem Nervico proelio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item Gaius Volusenus, tribunus militum, vir et consilii magni et virtutis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione facta extremum auxilium experirentur. Itaque convocatis centurionibus celeriter milites certiores facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tela missa exciperent seque ex labore reficerent, post dato signo ex 10 castris erumperent atque omnem spem salutis in virtute ponerent.

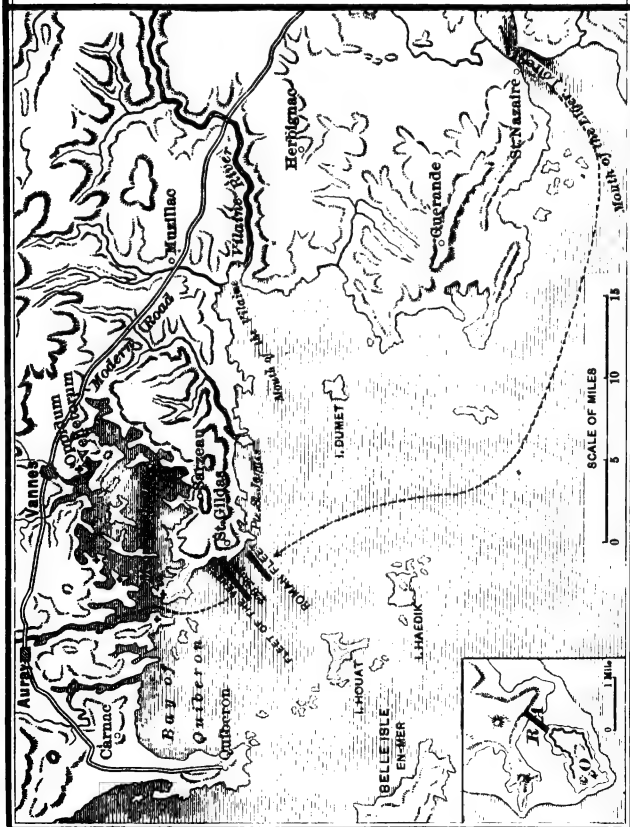
VI. Quod jussi sunt, faciunt; ac subito omnibus portis eruptione facta, neque cognoscendi, quid fieret, neque sui colligendi hostibus facultatem relinquunt. Ita commutata 15 fortuna, eos, qui in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant, undique circumventos interficiunt et ex hominum millibus amplius triginta, quem numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse constabat, plus tertia parte interfecta reliquos perterritos in fugam conjiciunt, ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium copiis 20 fuis armisque exutis, se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. Quo proelio facto, quod saepius fortunam tentare Galba nolebat, atque alio se in hiberna consilio venisse meminerat, aliis occurrisset rebus viderat, maxime frumenti 25 commeatusque inopia permotus, postero die omnibus ejus vici aedificiis incensis, in provinciam reverti contendit; ac nullo hoste prohibente aut iter demorante, incolumem legionem in Nantuates, inde in Allobroges perduxit ibique hiemavit. 30

VII. His rebus gestis, cum omnibus de causis Caesar pacatam Galliam existimaret, superatis Belgis, expulsis Germanis, victis in Alpibus Sedunis, atque ita inita hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque nationes adire et regiones cognoscere volebat, subitum bellum in 35 Gallia coortum est. Ejus belli haec fuit causa. Publius Crassus adolescens cum legione septima proximus mare Oceanum in Andibus hiemarat. Is, quod in his locis

inopia frumenti erat, praefectos tribunosque militum complures in finitimas civitates frumenti commeatusque petendi causā dimisit, quo in numero erat Titus Terrasidius, missus in Esubios, Marcus Trebius Gallus in Curiosolitas, 5 Quintus Velanius cum Tito Silio in Venētos.

VIII. Hujus est civitatis longe amplissima auctoritas omnis orae maritimae regionum earum, quod et naves habent Venēti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt, et scientiā atque usu nauticarum rerum reli- 10 quos antecedunt, et in magno impetu maris atque aperto, paucis portibus interjectis, quos tenent ipsi, omnes fere, qui eo mari uti consuerunt, habent vectigales. Ab his fit initium retinendi Silii atque Velanii, quod per eos suos se obsides, quos Crasso dedissent, recuperaturos existimabant. 15 Horum auctoritate finitimi adducti (ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentina consilia), eādem de causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missis legatis per suos principes inter se conjurant, nihil nisi communi consilio acturos eundemque omnis fortunae exitum esse latu- 20 ros; reliquasque civitates sollicitant, ut in eā libertate, quam a majoribus acceperant, permanere quam Romanōrum servitutem perferre mallent. Omni orā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā, communem legationem ad Publium Crassum mittunt; si velit suos recipere, 25 obsides sibi remittat.

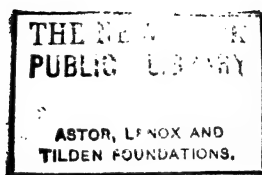
IX. Quibus de rebus Caesar ab Crasso certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, naves interim longas aedificari in flumine Ligēre, quod influit in Oceānum, remiges ex provinciā institui, nautas gubernatoresque comparari jubet. 30 His rebus celeriter administratis ipse, cum primum per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Venēti reliquaeque item civitates, cognito Caesāris adventu, simul quod, quantum in se facinus admisissent, intelligebant (legatos, quod nomen ad omnes nationes sanctum inviolatu- 35 tumque semper fuisset, retentos a se et in vincula con- jectos), pro magnitudine periculi bellum parare et maxime ea, quae ad usum navium pertinent, providere instituunt; hoc majore spe, quod multum naturā loci confidebant.



# EXPLANATION.

1. The dotted red line represents the course of Caesar's fleet from the mouth of the Liger, Loire, to Point St. Jacques, off which it defeated the fleet of the Veneti.
2. The small plan at the left represents the manner in which Caesar took several towns of the Veneti; the red line R, A, the Roman agger. O, a town of the Veneti.





Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuariis, navigationem impeditam propter inscientiam locorum paucitatemque portuum sciebant, neque nostros exercitus propter frumenti inopiam diutius apud se morari posse confidebant; ac jam ut omnia contra opinionem acciderent, tamen se plurimum 5 navibus posse; Romānos neque ullam facultatem habere navium, neque eorum locorum, ubi bellum gesturi essent, vada, portus, insulas novisse; ac longe aliam esse navigationem in concluso mari atque in vastissimo atque apertissimo Oceāno perspiciebant. His initis consiliis oppida 10 muniunt, frumenta ex agris in oppida comportant, naves in Venetiam, ubi Caesārem primum esse bellum gesturum constabat, quam plurimas possunt, cogunt. Socios sibi ad id bellum Osismos, Lexovios, Nannētes, Ambiliātos, Morīnos, Diablintes, Menapios adsciscunt: auxilia ex Britan- 15 niā, quae contra eas regiones posita est, arcessunt.

X. Erant hae difficultates belli gerendi, quas supra ostendimus, sed multa Caesārem tamen ad id bellum incitabant: injuriae retentorum equitum Romanōrum, rebellio facta post deditionem, defectio datis obsidibus, tot civita- 20 tum conjuratio, imprimis, ne, hac parte neglectā, reliquae nationes sibi idem licere arbitrarentur. Itaque cum intelliceret omnes fere Gallos novis rebus studere et ad bellum mobiliter celeriterque excitari, omnes autem homines naturā libertati studere et conditionem servitutis odisse, pri- 25 usquam plures civitates conspirarent, partiendum sibi ac latius distribuendum exercitum putavit.

XI. Itaque Titum Labiēnum legatum in Trevīros, qui proximi flumini Rheno sunt, cum equitatu mittit. Huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat atque in officio 30 contineat, Germānosque, qui auxilio a Belgis arcessiti dicebantur, si per vim navibus flumen transire conentur, prohibeat. Publium Crassum cum cohortibus legionariis duodecim et magno numero equitatus in Aquitaniam proficisci jubet, ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittan- 35 tur ac tantae nationes conjungantur. Quintum Titurium Sabīnum legatum cum legionibus tribus in Venellos, Curiolitās Lexoviosque mittit, qui eam manum distinendam

curet. Decimum Brutum adolescentem classi Gallicisque navibus, quas ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pacatis regionibus convenire jusserat, praeficit, et cum primum possit, in Venetos proficisci jubet. Ipse eo pedestribus  
5 copiis contendit.

XII. Erant ejusmodi fere situs oppidorum, ut posita in extremis lingulis promontoriisque, neque pedibus aditum haberent, cum ex alto se aestus incitavisset, quod bis accidit semper horarum viginti quattuor spatio, neque  
10 navibus, quod rursus minuente aestu naves in vadis afflictae-  
tarentur. Ita utraque re oppidorum oppugnatione impedi-  
batur; ac si quando magnitudine operis forte superati, extruso mari aggere ac molibus atque his oppidi moenibus  
15 adaequatis, suis fortunis desperare coeperant, magno nume-  
ro navium appulso, cujus rei summam facultatem habebant, sua deportabant omnia seque in proxima oppida recipie-  
bant. Ibi se rursus iisdem opportunitatibus loci defende-  
bant. Haec eo facilius magnam partem aestatis faciebant, quod nostrae naves tempestatibus detinebantur, summa-  
20 que erat vasto atque aperto mari, magnis aestibus, raris ac prope nullis portibus, difficultas navigandi.

XIII. Namque ipsorum naves ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant. Carinae aliquanto planiores quam nostrarum navium, quo facilius vada ac decessum aestus exci-  
25 pere possent; prorae admodum erectae, atque item puppes ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodatae; naves totae factae ex robore, ad quamvis vim et contumeliam perferendam; transtra pedalibus in altitudinem trabibus confixa clavis ferreis digiti pollicis crassitu-  
30 dine; ancorae pro funibus ferreis catenis revinctae; pelles pro velis alutaeque tenuiter confectae, hae sive propter lini inopiam atque ejus usus inscientiam, sive eo, quod est magis verisimile, quod tantas tempestates Oceani tantosque impetus ventorum sustineri ac tanta onera navium  
35 regi velis non satis commode posse arbitrabantur. Cum his navibus nostrae classi ejusmodi congressus erat, ut una celeritate et pulsu remorum praestaret, reliqua pro loci natura, pro vi tempestatum illis essent aptiora et accommo-

datiora. Neque enim his nostrae rostro nocere poterant (tanta in iis erat firmitudo), neque propter altitudinem facile telum adjiciebatur, et eādem de causā minus commode copulis continebantur. Accedebat ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et se vento dedissent, et tempestatem 5 ferrent facilius et in vadis consisterent tutius et ab aestu relictæ nihil saxa et cautes timerent; quarum rerum omnium nostris navibus casus erant extimescendi.

XIV. Compluribus expugnatis oppidis, Caesar, ubi intellexit frustra tantum laborem sumi, neque hostium fugam 10 captis oppidis reprimi neque his noceri posse, statuit expectandam classem. Quæ ubi convenit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ducentæ et viginti naves eorum paratissimæ atque omni genere armorum ornatissimæ, profectæ ex portu, nostris adversæ constitierunt; neque 15 satis Bruto, qui classi praeerat, vel tribunis militum centurionibusque, quibus singulae naves erant attributæ, constabat, quid agerent aut quam rationem pugnae insisterent. Rostro enim noceri non posse cognoverant; turribus autem excitatis, tamen has altitudo puppium ex 20 barbaris navibus superabat, ut neque ex inferiore loco satis commode tela adjici possent, et missa ab Gallis gravius acciderent. Una erat magno usui res praeparata a nostris, falces praeacutæ, insertæ affixæque longuriis, non absimili formā muralium falcium. His cum funes, qui antennas 25 ad malos destinabant, comprehensi adductique erant, navigio remis incitato præerumpebantur. Quibus abscissis, antennæ necessario concidebant, ut, cum omnis Galliæ navibus spes in velis armamentisque consisteret, his ereptis omnis usus navium uno tempore eriperetur. Reliquum 30 erat certamen positum in virtute, quā nostri milites facile superabant, atque eo magis, quod in conspectu Caesaris atque omnis exercitus res gerebatur, ut nullum paulo fortius factum latere posset; omnes enim colles ac loca superiora, unde erat propinquus despectus in mare, ab exercitu 35 tenebantur.

XV. Dejectis, ut diximus, antennis, cum singulas binæ ac ternæ naves circumsteterant, milites summā vi

transcendere in hostium naves contendebant. Quod postquam barbari fieri animadverterunt, expugnatis compluribus navibus, cum ei rei nullum reperiretur auxilium, fugā salutem petere contenderunt; ac jam conversis in eam  
5 partem navibus, quo ventus ferebat, tanta subito malacia ac tranquillitas exstitit, ut se ex loco movere non possent. Quae quidem res ad negotium conficiendum maxime fuit opportuna; nam singulas nostri consecrati expugnaverunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numero noctis interventu ad terram  
10 pervenerint, cum ab horā fere quartā usque ad solis occasum pugnaretur.

XVI. Quo proelio bellum Venetōrum totiusque orae maritimae confectum est. Nam cum omnis juvenus, omnes etiam gravioris aetatis, in quibus aliquid consilii aut  
15 dignitatis fuit, eo convenerant, tum navium quod ubique fuerat, unum in locum coēgerant; quibus amissis, reliqui neque quo se reciperent neque quemadmodum oppida defenderent, habebant. Itaque se suaeque omnia Caesāri dediderunt. In quos eo gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quo diligentius in reliquum tempus a barbaris jus  
20 legatorum conservaretur. Itaque, omni senatu necato, reliquos sub coronā vendidit.

XVII. Dum haec in Venētis geruntur, Quintus Titurius Sabīnus cum iis copiis, quas a Caesāre acceperat, in fines  
25 Venellōrum pervenit. His praeerat Viridōvix ac summam imperii tenebat earum omnium civitatum, quae defecerant, ex quibus exercitum magnasque copias coēgerat; atque his paucis diebus Aulerci Eburovīces Lexovīque, senatu suo interfecto, quod auctores belli esse nolebant, portas clau-  
30 runt seque cum Viridovīce conjunxerunt; magnaeque praeterea multitudo undique ex Galliā perditorum hominum latronumque convenerant, quos spes praedandi studiumque bellandi ab agriculturā et quotidiano labore revocabat Sabīnus idoneo omnibus rebus loco castris sese tenebat,  
35 cum Viridōvix contra eum duum millium spatio condisset, quotidieque productis copiis pugnandi potestatem faceret, ut jam non solum hostibus in contemptionem Sabīnus veniret, sed etiam nostrorum militum vocibus nonnihil

carperetur; tantamque opinionem timoris prae-buit, ut jam ad vallum castrorum hostes accedere auderent. Id eā de causā faciebat, quod cum tantā multitudine hostium, praesertim eo absente, qui summam imperii teneret, nisi aequo loco aut opportunitate aliquā datā, legato dimican- 5 dum non existimabat.

XVIII. Hac confirmatā opinione timoris, idoneum quen- dam hominem et callidum delegit, Gallum, ex his, quos auxilii causā secum habebat. Huic magnis praemiis polli- citationibusque persuadet, uti ad hostes transeat, et, quid 10 fieri velit, edocet. Qui ubi pro perfugā ad eos venit, timorem Romanōrum proponit, quibus angustiis ipse Caesar a Venētis prematur, docet, neque longius abesse, quin proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castris exercitum educat et ad Caesārem auxilii ferendi causā proficiscatur. Quod ubi 15 auditum est, conclamant omnes occasionem negotii bene gerendi amittendam non esse, ad castra iri oportere. Multae res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur: superiorum dierum Sabīni cunctatio, perfugae confirmatio, inopia cibari- orum, cui rei parum diligenter ab iis erat provisum, 20 spes Venetīci belli et quod fere libenter homines id, quod volunt, credunt. His rebus adducti non prius Viridovicem reliquosque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quam ab his sit concessum, arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā re concessā laeti, ut exploratā victoriā, sarmentis virgultis- 25 que collectis, quibus fossas Romanōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

XIX. Locus erat castrorum editus et paulatim ab imo acclivis circiter passus mille. Huc magno cursu conten- derunt, ut quam minimum spatii ad se colligendos arman- 30 dosque Romānis daretur, exanimatique pervenerunt. Sabīnus suos hortatus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea, quae ferebant, onera, subito duabus portis eruptionem fieri jubet. Factum est opportunitate loci, hostium inscientiā ac defatigatione, virtute militum, 35 et superiorum pugnaram exercitatione, ut ne unum qui- dem nostrorum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quos impeditos integris viribus milites nostri consecuti

magnum numerum eorum occiderunt; reliquos equites consecrati, paucos, qui ex fugā evaserant, reliquerunt. Sic uno tempore et de navali pugnā Sabīnus et de Sabīni victoriā Caesar est certior factus, civitatesque omnes se  
5 statim Titurio dederunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac promptus est animus, sic mollis ac minime resistens ad calamitates perferendas mens eorum est.

XX. Eodem fere tempore Publius Crassus, cum in  
10 Aquitaniam pervenisset, quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regionum latitudine et multitudine hominum ex tertiā parte Galliae est aestimanda, cum intelligeret in his locis sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucis ante annis Lucius Valerius Praeconinus legatus exercitu pulso interfectus esset,  
15 atque unde Lucius Mallius proconsul impedimentis amissis profugisset, non mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intelligebat. Itaque, re frumentariā provisā, auxiliis equitatuque comparato, multis praeterea viris fortibus Tolosā et Narbōne, quae sunt civitates Galliae provinciae finitima  
20 mae his regionibus, nominatim evocatis, in Sontiātum fines exercitum introduxit. Cujus adventu cognito, Sontiātes magnis copiis coactis equitatuque, quo plurimum valebant, in itinere agmen nostrum adorti primum equestre proelium commiserunt; deinde, equitatu suo pulso atque insequen-  
25 tibus nostris, subito pedestres copias, quas in convalle in insidiis collocaverant, ostenderunt. Hi nostros disiectos adorti proelium renovarunt.

XXI. Pugnatum est diu atque acriter, cum Sontiātes superioribus victoriis freti in suā virtute totius Aquitaniae  
30 salutem positam putarent, nostri autem, quid sine imperatore et sine reliquis legionibus, adolescentulo duce, efficere possent, perspicere cuperent: tandem confecti vulneribus hostes terga vertere. Quorum magno numero interfecto, Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sontiātum oppugnare coepit.  
35 Quibus fortiter resistantibus vineas turreaque egit. Illi alias eruptione tentatā, alias cuniculis ad aggerem vineaque actis (cujus rei sunt longe peritissimi Aquitāni, propterea quod multis locis apud eos aerariae secturae sunt),

ubi diligentia nostrorum nihil his rebus profici posse intellexerunt, legatos ad Crassum mittunt seque in deditionem ut recipiat petunt. Quā re impetratā arma tradere jussi faciunt.

XXII. Atque in eā re omnium nostrorum intentis an- 5  
mis, aliā ex parte oppidi Adcantuannus, qui summam imperii tenebat, cum sexcentis devotis, quos illi soldurios appellant (quorum haec est conditio, uti omnibus in vitā commodis una cum his fruantur, quorum se amicitiae dederint; si quid his per vim accidat, aut eundem casum una 10  
ferant aut sibi mortem consciscant; neque adhuc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam, qui eo interfecto cujus se amicitiae devovisset, mortem recusaret), cum his Adcantuannus eruptionem facere conatus, clamore ab eā parte munitionis sublato, cum ad arma milites concurrissent 15  
vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen uti eādem deditionis conditione uteretur, ab Crasso impetravit.

XXIII. Armis obsidibusque acceptis Crassus in fines Vocatium et Tarusatium profectus est. Tum vero bar- 20  
bari commoti, quod oppidum, et naturā loci et manu munitum, paucis diebus, quibus eo ventum erat, expugnatum cognoverant, legatos quoquoversum dimittere, conjurare, obsides inter se dare, copias parare coeperunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitates legati, quae sunt citerioris Hispaniae 25  
finitimae Aquitaniae; inde auxilia ducesque arcessuntur. Quorum adventu magnā cum auctoritate et magnā cum hominum multitudine bellum gerere conantur. Duces vero ii deliguntur, qui una cum Quinto Sertorio omnes 30  
annos fuerant summamque scientiam rei militaris habere existimabantur. Hi consuetudine populi Romāni loca capere, castra munire, commeatibus nostros intercludere instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, suas copias propter exiguitatem non facile diduci, hostem et vagari et vias obsidere et castris satis praesidii relinquere, ob eam 35  
causam minus commode frumentum commeatumque sibi supportari, in dies hostium numerum augeri, non cunctandum existimavit, quin pugnā decertaret. Hac re ad



consilium delatā, ubi omnes idem sentire intellexit, posterum diem pugnae constituit.

XXIV. Primā luce, productis omnibus copiis, duplici acie institutā, auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, quid  
5 hostes consilii caperent expectabat. Illi, etsi propter multitudinem et veterem belli gloriam paucitatemque nostrorum se tuto dimicatu-  
ros existimabant, tamen tutius esse arbitrabantur, obsessis viis, commeatu intercluso, sine ullo vulnere victoriā potiri; et, si propter inopiam rei fru-  
10 mentariae Romāni sese recipere coepissent, impeditos in agmine et sub sarcinis infirmiore animo adoriri cogitabant. Hoc consilio probato ab ducibus, productis Romanōrum copiis, sese castris tenebant. Hac re perspectā, Crassus, cum suā cunctatione atque opinione timoris hostes nos-  
15 tros milites alacriores ad pugnandum effecissent, atque omnium voces audirentur, expectari diutius non oportere, quin ad castra iretur, cohortatus suos, omnibus cupientibus, ad hostium castra contendit.

XXV. Ibi cum alii fossas complerent, alii multis telis  
20 coniectis defensores vallo munitionibusque depellerent, auxiliaresque, quibus ad pugnam non multum Crassus confidebat, lapidibus telisque subministrandis et ad aggerem cespitibus comportandis speciem atque opinionem pugnantium praeberent, cum item ab hostibus constan-  
25 ter ac non timide pugnaretur telaque ex loco superiore missa non frustra acciderent, equites, circumitis hostium castris, Crasso renuntiaverunt, non eādem esse diligentia ab decumanā portā castra munita facilemque aditum habere.

30 XXVI. Crassus equitum praefectos cohortatus, ut magnis praemiis pollicitationibusque suos excitarent, quid fieri velit, ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperatum, eductis quattuor cohortibus, quae, praesidio castris relictæ, intritæ ab labore erant, et longiore itinere circumductis, ne ex hostium  
35 castris conspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad eas, quas diximus, munitio-  
nes pervenerunt, atque his prorutis prius in hostium castris constiterunt, quam plane ab his videri, aut, quid rei gere-

retur, cognosci posset. Tum vero, clamore ab eā parte audito, nostri redintegratis viribus, quod plerumque in spe victoriae accidere consuevit, acrius impugnare coeperunt. Hostes undique circumventi, desperatis omnibus rebus, se per munitiones dejicere et fugā salutem petere 5 intenderunt. Quos equitatus apertissimis campis consecutus, ex millium quinquaginta numero, quae ex Aquitaniā Cantābrisque convenisse constabat, vix quartā parte relictā, multā nocte se in castra recepit.

XXVII. Hac auditā pugnā, maxima pars Aquitaniae 10 sese Crasso deditit obsidesque ultro misit; quo in numero fuerunt Tarbelli, Bigerriōnes, Ptianii, Vocātes, Tarusātes, Elusātes, Gates, Ausci, Garumni, Sibuzātes, Cocosātes. Paucae ultimae nationes anni tempore confisae, quod hiems suberat, hoc facere neglexerunt. 15

XXVIII. Eodem fere tempore Caesar, etsi prope exacta jam aestas erat, tamen, quod, omni Galliā pacatā, Morīni Manapiique supererant, qui in armis essent neque ad eum unquam legatos de pace misissent, arbitratus id bellum celeriter confici posse, eo exercitum adduxit; qui, longe 20 aliā ratione ac reliqui Galli, bellum gerere coeperunt. Nam quod intelligebant maximas nationes, quae proelio contendissent, pulsas superatasque esse, continentisque silvas ac paludes habebant, eo se suaque omnia contulerunt. Ad quarum initium silvarum cum Caesar pervenisset castra- 25 que munire instituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subito ex omnibus partibus silvae evolaverunt et in nostros impetum fecerunt. Nostri celeriter arma ceperunt eosque in silvas repulerunt, et, compluribus interfectis, longius impeditioribus locis secuti 30 paucos ex suis deperdiderunt.

XXIX. Reliquis deinceps diebus Caesar silvas caedere instituit, et ne quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem collocabat et pro vallo 35 ad utrumque latus exstruebat. Incredibili celeritate magno spatio paucis diebus confecto, cum jam pecus atque extrema impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur, ipsi densiores

silvas peterent, ejusmodi sunt tempestates consecutae, uti opus necessario intermitteretur et continuatione imbrium diutius sub pellibus milites contineri non possent. Itaque, vastatis omnibus eorum agris, vicis aedificiisque incensis,  
5 Caesar exercitum reduxit et in Aulercis Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitatibus, quae proxime bellum fecerant, in hibernis collocavit.

## LIBER IV.

I. EĀ, quae secuta est, hieme, qui fuit annus Gnaeo Pompēio, Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipētes Germāni et item Tenctēri magnā cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt, non longe a mari, quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quod ab Suēbis complures annos 5 exagitati bello premebantur et agriculturā prohibebantur. Suebōrum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanōrum omnium. Hi centum pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula millia armatorum bellandi causā ex finibus educunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserunt, se atque 10 illos alunt. Hi rursus in vicem anno post in armis sunt, illi domi remanent. Sic neque agricultura nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur. Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est, neque longius anno remanere uno in loco incolendi causā licet. Neque multum frumento, sed 15 maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in venationibus; quae res et cibi genere et quotidianā exercitatione et libertate vitae (quod, a pueris nullo officio aut disciplinā assuefacti, nihil omnino contra voluntatem faciant), et vires alit et immani corporum magnitu- 20 dine homines efficit. Atque in eam se consuetudinem adduxerunt, ut locis frigidissimis neque vestitus praeter pelles habeant quidquam (quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta), et laventur in fluminibus.

II. Mercatoribus est ad eos aditus magis eo, ut, quae 25 bello ceperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quo ullam rem ad se importari desiderent. Quin etiam jumentis, quibus maxime Galli delectantur, quaeque impenso parant pretio, Germāni importatis non utuntur, sed quae sunt apud eos nata, parva atque deformia, haec quotidianā 30

exercitatione summi ut sint laboris, efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem remanere vestigio assuefecerunt, ad quos se celeriter, cum usus est, recipiunt; neque eorum moribus turpius quidquam aut inertius habetur, quam ephippiis uti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum equitum, quamvis pauci, adire audent. Vinum ad se omnino importari non sinunt, quod eā re ad laborem ferendum remollescere homines atque effeminari arbitrantur.

10 III. Publice maximam putant esse laudem, quam latissime a suis finibus vacare agros; hac re significari magnum numerum civitatum suam vim sustinere non posse. Itaque unā ex parte a Suēbis circiter millia passuum sexcenta agri vacare dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succedunt Ubii, 15 quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens, ut est captus Germanōrum, et paulo sunt ejusdem generis ceteris humaniores, propterea quod Rhenum attingunt, multumque ad eos mercatores ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt moribus assuefacti. Hos cum Suēbi multis 20 saepe bellis experti, propter amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis, finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt ac multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt.

IV. In eādē causā fuerunt Usipētes et Tenctēri, quos 25 supra diximus, qui complures annos Suebōrum vim sustinuerunt; ad extremum tamen agris expulsi et multis locis Germaniae triennium vagati ad Rhenum pervenerunt, quas regiones Menapii incolebant et ad utramque ripam fluminis agros, aedificia, vicosque habebant; sed tantae multitudinis aditu perterriti, ex his aedificiis, quae trans flumen habuerant, demigraverunt, et, cis Rhenum dispositis praesidiis, Germanos transire prohibebant. Illi omnia experti, cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam navium neque clam transire propter custodias Menapiōrum possent, re- 30 verti se in suas sedes regionesque simulaverunt; et tridui viam progressi rursus reverterunt, atque omni hoc itinere unā nocte equitatu confecto inscios inopinantesque Menapios oppresserunt, qui de Germanōrum discessu per explo-

ratores certiores facti, sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant. His interfectis navibusque eorum occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citra Rhenum queta in suis sedibus erat, certior fieret, flumen transierunt, atque, omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis, reli- 5 quam partem hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt.

V. His de rebus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his committendum existimavit. Est autem hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, uti et 10 viatores, etiam invitos, consistere cogant, et, quid quisque eorum de quāque re audierit aut cognoverit, quaerant, et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumstet, quibusque ex regionibus veniant, quasque ibi res cognoverint, pronuntiare cogant. His rebus atque auditionibus permoti de sum- 15 mis saepe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum eos e vestigio poenitere necesse est, cum incertis rumoribus serviant, et plerique ad voluntatem eorum ficta respondeant.

VI. Quā consuetudine cognitā, Caesar, ne graviori bello occurreret, maturius quam consuevit ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, ea, quae fore suspicatus erat, facta cognovit; missas legationes ab nonnullis civitatibus ad Germānos, invitatosque eos, uti ab Rheno discederent, omniaque quae postulassent, ab se fore parata. Quā spe adducti Germāni latius vagabantur et in fines Eburōnum 25 et Condrusōrum, qui sunt Trevirōrum clientes, pervenerant. Principibus Galliae evocatis, Caesar ea, quae cognoverat, dissimulanda sibi existimavit, eorumque animis permulsis et confirmatis equitatuque imperato, bellum cum Germānis gerere constituit. 30

VII. Re frumentariā comparatā equitibusque delectis, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germānos audiebat. A quibus cum paucorum dierum iter abesset, legati ab his venerunt, quorum haec fuit oratio: Germānos neque priores populo Romāno bellum inferre neque tamen 35 recusare, si lacescantur, quin armis contendant; quod Germanōrum consuetudo haec sit a maioribus tradita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque deprecari. Haec

tamen dicere: Venisse invitos, ejectos domo; si suam gratiam Romāni velint, posse iis utiles esse amicos; vel sibi agros attribuant, vel patiantur eos tenere quos armis possederint; sese unis Suēbis concedere, quibus ne dii quidem  
5 immortales pares esse possint; reliquum quidem in terris esse neminem, quem non superare possint.

VIII. Ad haec Caesar, quae visum est, respondit; sed exitus fuit orationis: Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Galliā remanerent; neque verum esse, qui suos  
10 fines tueri non potuerint, alienos occupare; neque ullos in Galliā vacare agros, qui dari, tantae praesertim multitudini, sine injuriā possint. Sed licere, si velint, in Ubiōrum finibus considerare, quorum sint legati apud se et de Suebōrum injuriis querantur et a se auxilium petant; hoc se Ubiis  
15 imperaturum.

IX. Legati haec se ad suos relatueros dixerunt, et, re deliberatā, post diem tertium ad Caesārem reversuros: interea ne propius se castra moveret, petierunt. Ne id quidem Caesar ab se impetrari posse dixit. Cognoverat  
20 enim, magnam partem equitatus ab iis aliquot diebus ante praedandi frumentandique causā ad Ambivaritos trans Mosam missam. Hos exspectari equites atque ejus rei causā moram interponi arbitrabatur.

X. Mosa profluit ex monte Vosēgo, qui est in finibus  
25 Lingōnum, et parte quādam ex Rheno receptā, quae appellatur Vahālis, insulam efficit Batavōrum, neque longius ab Rheno millibus passuum octoginta in Oceānum influit. Rhenus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incolunt, et longo spatio per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiōrum, Sequanō-  
30 rum, Mediomatricum, Triboccōrum, Trevirōrum citatus fertur, et ubi Oceāno appropinquavit, in plures defluit partes, multis ingentibusque insulis effectis (quarum pars magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt, qui piscibus atque ovis avium vivere existimantur), multisque  
35 capitibus in Oceānum influit.

XI. Caesar cum ab hoste non amplius passuum duodecim millibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati revertuntur; qui in itinere congressi magnopere ne longius

progrederetur orabant. Cum id non impetrassent, petebant, uti ad eos equites, qui agmen antecessissent, praemitteret, eosque pugnā prohiberet, sibiue uti potestatem faceret in Ubios legatos mittendi; quorum si principes ac senatus sibi jurejurando fidem fecissent, eā conditione, 5 quae a Caesāre ferretur, se usuros ostendebant; ad has res conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eodem illo pertinere arbitrabatur, ut, tridui morā interpositā, equites eorum, qui abessent, reverterentur; tamen sese non longius millibus passuum quattuor aquationis causā 10 processurum eo die dixit; huc postero die quam frequentissimi convenirent, ut de eorum postulatis cognosceret. Interim ad praefectos, qui cum omni equitatu antecesserant, mittit, qui nuntiarent, ne hostes proelio lacesserent, et, si ipsi lacesserentur, sustinerent, quoad ipse cum exer- 15 citu propius accessisset.

XII. At hostes ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, quorum erat quinque millium numerus, cum ipsi non amplius octingentos equites haberent, quod ii, qui frumentandi causā ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil 20 timentibus nostris, quod legati eorum paulo ante a Caesāre discesserant atque is dies induciis erat ab his petitus, impetu facto celeriter nostros perturbaverunt. Rursus resistentibus, consuetudine suā ad pedes desiluerunt, suffossis equis compluribusque nostris dejectis, reliquos in 25 fugam conjecerunt atque ita perterritos egerunt, ut non prius fugā desisterent, quam in conspectum agminis nostri venissent. In eo proelio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quattuor et septuaginta, in his vir fortissimus, Piso Aquitānus, amplissimo genere natus, cujus avus in civitate 30 suā regnum obtinuerat, amicus ab senatu nostro appellatus. Hic cum fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit; ipse equo vulnerato dejectus, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit. Cum circumventus multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frater, qui jam 35 proelio excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitato equo, se hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

XIII. Hoc facto proelio, Caesar neque jam sibi legatos



- audiendos neque conditiones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab  
iis, qui per dolum atque insidias, petita pace, ultro bellum  
intulissent; exspectare vero, dum hostium copiae auge-  
rentur equitatusque reverteretur, summae dementiae esse  
5 judicabat, et cognita Gallorum infirmitate, quantum jam  
apud eos hostes uno proelio auctoritatis essent consecuti,  
sentiebat; quibus ad consilia capienda nihil spatii dandum  
existimabat. His constitutis rebus et consilio cum legatis  
et quaestore communicato, ne quem diem pugnae praeter-  
10 mitteret, opportunissima res accidit, quod postridie ejus  
diei mane eadem et perfidia et simulatione usi Germani fre-  
quentes, omnibus principibus majoribusque natu adhibitis,  
ad eum in castra venerunt, simul, ut dicebatur, sui purgan-  
di causa, quod contra atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent,  
15 proelium pridie commisissent, simul ut, si quid possent, de  
induciis fallendo impetrarent. Quos sibi Caesar oblatos  
gavisus, illos retineri jussit; ipse omnes copias castris  
eduxit, equitatumque, quod recenti proelio perterritum  
esse existimabat, agmen subsequi jussit.
- 20 XIV. Acie triplici instituta et celeriter octo millium  
itinere confecto, prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quam,  
quid ageretur, Germani sentire possent. Qui omnibus  
rebus subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus nostri et dis-  
cessu suorum, neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi  
25 spatio dato perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem edu-  
cere, an castra defendere, an fuga salutem petere, praesta-  
ret. Quorum timor cum fremitu et concursu significa-  
retur, milites nostri pristini diei perfidia incitati in castra  
irruerunt. Quo loco qui celeriter arma capere potuerunt,  
80 paulisper nostris restiterunt atque inter carros impedi-  
taque proelium commiserunt; at reliqua multitudo puero-  
rum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesse-  
rant Rhenumque transierant) passim fugere coepit; ad  
quos consectandos Caesar equitatum misit.
- 35 XV. Germani, post tergum clamore audito, cum suos  
interfici viderent, armis abjectis signisque militaribus relic-  
tis, se ex castris ejecerunt; et cum ad confluentem Mosae  
et Rheni pervenissent, reliqua fuga desperata, magno

numero interfecto, reliqui se in flumen praecipitaverunt atque ibi timore, lassitudine, vi fluminis oppressi perierunt. Nostri ad unum omnes incolumes, perpauca vulneratis, ex tanti belli timore, cum hostium numerus capitum quadringentorum et triginta millium fuisset, se in castra rece- 5 perunt. Caesar his, quos in castris retinuerat, discedendi potestatem fecit. Illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum veriti, quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertatem concessit.

XVI. Germanico bello confecto, multis de causis Caesar 10 statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum; quarum illa fuit justissima, quod, cum videret Germanos tam facile impelli, ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit, cum intelligerent et posse et audere populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire. Accessit etiam, quod 15 illa pars equitatus Usipetum et Tencterorum, quam supra commemoravi praedandi frumentandique causā Mosam transisse neque proelio interfuisse, post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sigambrorum receperat seque cum iis conjunxerat. Ad quos cum Caesar nuntios misisset, 20 qui postularent, eos, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dederent, responderunt: Populi Romani imperium Rhenum finire; si, se invito, Germanos in Galliam transire non aequum existimaret, cur sui quidquam esse imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet? Ubii autem, qui 25 uni ex Transrhenanis ad Caesarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant, magnopere orabant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suebis premerentur; vel, si id facere occupationibus rei publicae prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret; id sibi ad auxili- 30 um spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum. Tantum esse nomen atque opinionem ejus exercitus, Ariovisto pulso et hoc novissimo proelio facto, etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opinione et amicitia populi Romani tuti esse possint. Navium magnam copiam ad transportan- 35 dum exercitum pollicebantur.

XVII. Caesar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decreverat, sed navibus transire neque satis

tutum esse arbitrabatur, neque suae neque populi Romāni dignitatis esse statuebat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis proponebatur propter latitudinem, rapiditatem altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id sibi contendendum  
 5 aut aliter non transducendum exercitum existimabat. Rationem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bina sesquipedalia, paulum ab imo praeacuta, dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis, intervallo pedum duorum inter se jungebat. Haec cum machinationibus immissa in flumen defixerat fistucisque  
 10 adegerat, non sublicae modo directe ad perpendiculum, sed prone ac fastigate, ut secundum naturam fluminis procumberent; his item contraria duo ad eundem modum juncta intervallo pedum quadragenum ab inferiore parte, contra vim atque impetum fluminis conversa statuebat. Haec  
 15 utraque insuper bipedalibus trabibus immissis, quantum eorum tignorum junctura distabat, binis utrimque fibulis ab extremā parte distinebantur; quibus disclusis atque in contrariam partem revinctis, tanta erat operis firmitudo atque ea rerum natura, ut quo major vis aquae se incita-  
 20 visset, hoc artius illigata tenerentur. Haec directā materiā injectā contexebantur et longuriis cratibusque consternebantur. Ac nihilo secius sublicae et ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique agebantur, quae pro ariete subjectae et cum omni opere conjunctae, vim fluminis exciperent, et aliae  
 25 item supra pontem mediocri spatio, ut si arborum trunci sive naves dejiendi operis essent a barbaris missae, his defensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur, neu ponti nocerent.

XVIII. Diebus decem, quibus materia coepta erat comportari, omni opere effecto, exercitus transducitur. Caesar  
 30 ad utramque partem pontis firmo praesidio relicto, in fines Sigambrorum contendit. Interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, quibus pacem atque amicitiam petentibus liberaliter respondit obsidesque ad se adduci jubet. At Sigambri, ex eo tempore quo pons institui  
 35 coeptus est, fugā comparatā, hortantibus iis quos ex Tencrēis atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus suis excesserant suaeque omnia exportaverant seque in solitudinem ac silvas abdiderant.

XIX. Caesar paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus, omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis frumentisque succisis, se in fines Ubiōrum recepit, atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suēbis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit: Suēbos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri compe-  
rissent, more suo concilio habito, nuntios in omnes partes  
dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent, liberos, uxores,  
suaque omnia in silvis deponerent, atque omnes qui arma  
ferre possent unum in locum convenirent; hunc esse de-  
lectum medium fere regionum earum quas Suēbi obtine-  
rent; hic Romanōrum adventum exspectare atque ibi  
decertare constituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omni-  
bus his rebus confectis, quarum rerum causā transducere  
exercitum constituerat, ut Germānis metum injiceret, ut  
Sigambros ulcisceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberaret, diebus 15  
omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis, satis et  
ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum arbitratus, se in Gal-  
liam recepit pontemque rescidit.

XX. Exiguā parte aestatis reliquā, Caesar, etsi in his  
locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septemtriones vergit, maturae 20  
sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod  
omnibus fere Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde submi-  
nistrata auxilia intelligebat; et si tempus anni ad bellum  
gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitra-  
batur, si modo insulam adisset et genus hominum perspex-  
isset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset; quae omnia fere 25  
Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mer-  
catores illo adit quisquam, neque his ipsis quidquam, prae-  
ter oram maritimam atque eas regiones quae sunt contra  
Galias, notum est. Itaque vocatis ad se undique mer-  
catoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque  
quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum  
belli haberent aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui  
essent ad majorum navium multitudinem idonei portus,  
reperire poterat. 30

35

XXI. Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum face-  
ret, idoneum esse arbitratus Gāium Volusēnum cum navi  
longā praemittit. Huic mandat, uti exploratis omnibus

rebus ad se quam primum revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trajectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus et, quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum 5 effecerat, classem jubet convenire. Interim consilio ejus cognito et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus insulae civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides dare atque imperio populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus auditis, liberaliter pollicitus, hortatusque 10 ut in eā sententiā permanerent, eos domum remittit et cum iis una Commium, quem ipse, Atrebatibus superatis, regem ibi constituerat, cujus et virtutem et consilium probabat, et quem sibi fidelem arbitrabatur, cujusque auctoritas in his regionibus magni habebatur, mittit. Huic imperat, 15 quas possit, adeat civitates, horteturque ut populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. Volusēnus, perspectis regionibus omnibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit, qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur, 20 quaeque ibi perspexisset renuntiat.

XXII. Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causā moratur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum legati venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homines barbari et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti 25 bellum populo Romano fecissent, seque ea, quae imperasset, facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi satis opportune Caesar accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat, neque belli gerendi propter anni tempus facultatem habebat, neque has tantularum rerum occupa- 30 tiones sibi Britanniae anteponendas judicabat, magnum iis obsidum numerum imperat. Quibus adductis eos in fidem recepit. Navibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quod praeterea navium longarum habebat, 35 quaestori, legatis, praefectisque distribuit. Huc accedebant octodecim onerariae naves, quae ex eo loco ab millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur, quo minus in eundem portum pervenire possent; has equitibus distribuit.

Reliquum exercitum Quinto Titurio Sabīno et Lucio Aurunculēio Cottae, legatis, in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinōrum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, ducendum dedit. Publium Sulpicium Rufum legatum, cum eo praesidio quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere 5 jussit.

XXIII. His constitutis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem, tertiā fere vigiliā solvit, equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredi et naves conscendere et se sequi jussit. A quibus cum paulo tardius esset adminis- 10 tratum, ipse horā diei circiter quartā cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cujus loci haec erat natura, atque ita montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adigi posset. Hunc ad 15 egrediendum nequaquam idoneum locum arbitratus, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam nonam in ancoris exspectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, et quae ex Volusēno cognosset, et quae fieri vellet, ostendit, monuitque (ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut mari- 20 timae res postularent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent) ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo et sublatiis ancoris, circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus aperto 25 ac plano litore naves constituit.

XXIV. At barbari, consilio Romanōrum cognito, praemisso equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consueverunt, reliquis copiis subsecuti nostros navibus egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa 30 difficultas, quod naves propter magnitudinem, nisi in alto, constitui non poterant; militibus autem, ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi armorum onere oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; cum illi aut ex 35 arido, aut paululum in aquam progressi, omnibus membris expediti, notissimis locis, audacter tela conjicerent et equos insuefactos incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti atque

hujus omnino generis pugnae imperiti, non eādem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consueverant, nitebantur.

XXV. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas, 5 quarum et species erat barbaris inusitatio et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus et remis incitari et ad latus apertum hostium constitui, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis, hostes propelli ac submo-  
10 navium figurā et remorum motu et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti barbari constiterunt ac paulum modo pedem retulerunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, ut ea res legioni felici-  
15 ter eveniret: “Desilite,” inquit, “commilitones, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe meum rei publicae atque imperatori officium praestitero.” Hoc cum magnā voce dixisset, se ex navi projecit atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri cohortati inter se, ne tantum  
20 dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt. Hos item ex proximis navibus cum conspexissent, subsecuti hostibus appropinquant.

XXVI. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare neque firmiter insistere  
25 neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius aliā ex navi, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magnopere perturbabantur. Hostes vero, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis, impeditos adoriebantur; plures paucos cir-  
30 cumsistebant; alii ab latere aperto in universos tela coniciebant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri jussit, et quos laborantes conspexerat, his subsidia submittebat. Nostri simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus  
35 consecutis, in hostes impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam dederunt, neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

XXVII. Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fugā receperunt, statim ad Caesārem legatos de pace miserunt, obsides daturus, quaeque imperasset facturos sese, polliciti sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Atrēbas venit, quem supra demonstraveram a Caesāre in Britanniam praemis- 5  
sum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos oratoris modo Caesāris mandata deferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula conjecerant; tum proelio facto remiserunt et in petendā pace ejus rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur petiverunt. Cae- 10  
sar questus, quod, cum ultro in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignoscere imprudentiae dixit obsidesque imperavit; quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem ex longinquioribus locis arcessitam paucis diebus sese daturus dixerunt. Interea 15  
suos remigrare in agros jusserunt, principesque undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Caesāri commendare coeperunt.

XXVIII. His rebus pace confirmatā, post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves octodecim, de qui- 20  
bus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae cum appropinquarent Britanniae et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, 25  
aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno sui cum periculo dejicerentur; quae tamen, ancoris jactis, cum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversā nocte in altum provectae continentem petierunt.

XXIX. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui 30  
dies maritimos aestus maximos in Oceāno efficere consuevit; nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus complebat, et onerarias, quae ad ancoras erant deligatae, tempestas 35  
afflictabat; neque ulla nostris facultas aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur. Compluribus navibus fractis, reliquae cum essent, funibus, ancoris, reliquisque armamentis



amissis, ad navigandum inutiles, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta est. Neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas naves erant usui, et, quod  
5 omnibus constabat hiemari in Galliā oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

XXX. Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesārem convenerant, inter se collocti, cum equites et naves et frumentum Romānis deesse intel-  
10 ligerent et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, optimum factu esse duxerunt, rebellionē factā, frumento commeatu-  
que nostros prohibere et rem in hiemem producere, quod,  
15 his superatis aut reditu interclusis, neminem postea belli inferendi causā in Britanniam transiturum confidebant. Itaque rursus conjuratione factā, paulatim ex castris discedere ac suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

XXXI. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum, et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat. Nam et frumentum ex agris quotidie in castra conferebat, et quae gravissime afflictae erant naves, earum materiā atque  
25 aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur, et quae ad eas res erant usui, ex continenti comportari jubebat. Itaque, cum summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit.

30 XXXII. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine unā frumentatum missā, quae appellabatur septima, neque ullā ad id tempus belli suspicione interpositā, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesāri  
35 nuntiaverunt pulverem majorem, quam consuetudo ferret, in eā parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum

in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquis duas in stationem cohortes succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi iussit. Cum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi atque aegre sustinere et confertā legione ex omnibus partibus tela conjici, animadvertit. 5 Nam quod, omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos noctu in silvis delituerant; tum dispersos, depositis armis, in metendo occupatos subito adorti, paucis interceptis, reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant; simul 10 equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

XXXIII. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae: primo per omnes partes perequitant et tela conjiciunt, atque ipso terrore equorum et strepitu rotarum ordines plerumque perturbant, et cum se inter equitum turmas insinuave- 15 runt, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt atque ita currus collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac 20 tantum usu quotidiano et exercitatione efficiunt, uti in declivi ac praecipiti loco incitatos equos sustinere, et brevi moderari ac flectere, et per temonem percurrere, et in iugo insistere et se inde in currus citissime recipere consuerint.

XXXIV. Quibus rebus perturbatis nostris novitate 25 pugnae, tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ejus adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Quo facto ad lacesendum et ad committendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus, suo se loco continuit et brevi tempore intermisso in castra legio- 30 nes reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis, qui erant in agris, reliqui discesserunt. Secutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continerent et hostem a pugna prohiberent. Interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes dimiserunt, paucitatemque 35 nostrorum militum suis praedicaverunt, et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romānos castris expulissent, demonstraverunt. His

rebus celeriter magnā multitudine peditatus equitatusque coactā ad castra venerunt.

XXXV. Caesar, etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate  
5 periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equites circiter triginta, quos Commius Atrēbas, de quo ante dictum est, secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso proelio diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt ac terga verterunt. Quos  
10 tanto spatio secuti, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt; deinde omnibus longe lateque aedificiis incensis se in castra receperunt.

XXXVI. Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesārem de pace venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum,  
15 quem antea imperaverat, duplicavit eosque in continentem adduci iussit, quod propinquā die aequinoctii infirmis navibus hiemi navigationem subjiciendam non existimabat. Ipse idoneam tempestatem nactus paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit, quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex iis onerariae duae eosdem,  
20 quos reliquae, portus capere non potuerunt et paulo infra delatae sunt.

XXXVII. Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites circiter trecenti atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti primo non ita magno suorum numero circumsteterunt, ac si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere jusserunt. Cum illi, orbe facto, sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter millia sex convenerunt. Quā re nuntiātā, Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt atque amplius horis quattuor fortissime pugnauerunt, et paucis vulneribus acceptis complures ex his occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster  
30 in conspectum venit, hostes, objectis armis, terga verterunt magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

XXXVIII. Caesar postero die Titum Labiēnum legatum cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in

Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui cum propter siccitates paludum, quo se reciperent, non haberent, quo perfugio superiore anno erant usi, omnes fere in potestatem Labiēni venerunt. At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta legati, qui in Menapiōrum fines legiones duxerant, 5 omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abderant, se ad Caesārem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt, reliquae neglexerunt. 10 His rebus gestis, ex litteris Caesāris dierum viginti supplicatio a senatu decreta est.

## LIBER V.

I. LUCIO DOMITIO, Appio Claudio consulibus, discedens ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consue-  
rat, legatis imperat, quos legionibus praefecerat, uti quam  
plurimas possent hieme naves aedificandas veteresque  
5 reficiendas curarent. Earum modum formamque demon-  
strat. Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulo  
facit humiliores, quam quibus in nostro mari uti consue-  
vimus, atque id eo magis, quod propter crebras commuta-  
tiones aestuum minus magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat;  
10 ad onera ac multitudinem jumentorum transportandam  
paulo latiores, quam quibus in reliquis utimur maribus.  
Has omnes actuarias imperat fieri, quam ad rem humilitas  
multum adjuvat. Ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naves,  
ex Hispaniā apportari jubet. Ipse, conventibus Galliae  
15 citerioris peractis, in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pi-  
rustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari  
audiebat. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat  
certumque in locum convenire jubet. Quā re nuntiātā,  
Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant nihil earum  
20 rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demon-  
strant omnibus rationibus de injuriis satisfacere. Perceptā  
oratione eorum, Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam  
diem adduci jubet; nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem  
persecuturum demonstrat. His ad diem adductis, ut im-  
25 peraverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem aestiment  
poenamque constituent.

II. His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis, in cite-  
riorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum profi-  
ciscitur. Eo cum venisset, circumitis omnibus hibernis,  
30 singulari militum studio in summā omnium rerum inopiā

circiter sexcentas ejus generis, cujus supra demonstravimus, naves et longas viginti octo invenit instructas, neque multum abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possent. Collaudatis militibus atque iis qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit ostendit, atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire jubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam tractum esse cognoverat, circiter millium passuum triginta a continenti. Huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum, reliquit; ipse cum legionibus expeditis quattuor et equitibus octingentis in fines Trevirorum proficiscitur, 10 quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant neque imperio parebant, Germānosque Transrhenānos sollicitare dicebantur.

III. Haec civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae equitatu valet, magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut supra demonstravimus, tangit. In eā civitate duo de 15 principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomārus et Cingetōrix: ex quibus alter, simul atque de Caesāris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit; se suosque omnes in officio futuros, neque ab amicitia populi Romāni defecturos confirmavit, quaeque in Treviris gererentur 20 ostendit. At Indutiomārus equitatum peditatumque cogere, iisque, qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Trevirorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remōrum pertinet, bellum parare instituit. Sed posteaquam 25 nonnulli principes ex eā civitate et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti ad Caesārem venerunt, et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consulere non possent, Indutiomārus veritus ne ab omnibus desereretur, legatos ad 30 Caesārem mittit: Sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam laberetur. Itaque esse civitatem in suā potestate, seque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, 35 suas civitatisque fortunas ejus fidei permissurum.

IV. Caesar, etsi intelligebat, quā de causā ea dicerentur, quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, tamen, ne

aestatem in Treviris consumere cogeretur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomārum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire jussit. His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque ejus omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consolatus Indutiomārum hortatusque est, uti in officio permaneret; nihilo tamen secius principibus Trevirorum ad se convocatis, hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit: quod cum merito ejus ab se fieri intelligebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur, ejus auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valere, cujus tam egregiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indutiomārus, suam gratiam inter suos minui; et, qui jam ante inimico in nos animo fuisset, multo gravius hoc dolore exarsit.

V. His rebus constitutis, Caesar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit quadraginta naves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestate rejectas cursum tenere non potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invenit. Eodem equitatus totius Galliae convenit numero millium quattuor, principesque omnibus ex civitatibus; ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere decreverat; quod, cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur.

VI. Erat una cum ceteris Dumnōrix Aeduus, de quo ante ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere imprimis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quod jam in concilio Aeduorum Dumnōrix dixerat, sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Aedui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causā legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primo precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinqueretur, partim, quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret, partim, quod religionibus impediri sese diceret. Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi ademptā, principes Galliae sollicitare, sevocare singulos hortarique

coepit, uti in continenti remanerent; metu territare, non sine causâ fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur: id esse consilium Caesâris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam transductos necaret: fidem reliquis interponere, jusjurandum poscere, ut, quod 5 esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Haec a compluribus ad Caesârem deferebantur.

VII. Quâ re cognitâ, Caesar, quod tantum civitati Aeduae dignitatis tribuerat, coërcendum atque deterrendum, quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorîgem statuebat; quod 10 longius ejus amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum, ne quid sibi ac rei publicae nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem impediēbat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam, ut in 15 officio Dumnorîgem contineret, nihilo tamen secius omnia ejus consilia cognosceret; tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque conscendere naves jubet. At omnium impeditis animis, Dumnorix cum equitibus Aedudorum a castris, insciente Caesâre, domum discedere coepit. 20 Quâ re nuntiâtâ, Caesar, intermissâ profectione atque omnibus rebus postpositis, magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat: si vim faciat neque pareat, interfici jubet, nihil hunc, se absente, pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille 25 enim revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare coepit, saepe clamitans, liberum se liberaeque esse civitatis. Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumstant hominem atque interficiunt; at equites Aedui ad Caesârem omnes revertuntur. 30

VIII. His rebus gestis, Labiëno in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum millibus duobus relicto, ut portus tueretur et rei frumentariae provideret, quaeque in Galliâ gererentur cognosceret, consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari 35 numero equitum quem in continenti reliquerat, ad solis occasum naves solvit et leni Afrîco provectus, mediâ circiter nocte vento intermisso, cursum non tenuit, et longius



delatus aestu ortā luce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus aestus commutationem secutus remis contendit ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Quā in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis, non intermisso remigandi labore, longarum navium cursum adaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore; neque in eo loco hostis est visus, sed, ut postea Caesar ex 10 captivis cognovit, cum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudine navium perterritae (quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius octingentae uno erant visae tempore), a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

15 IX. Caesar, exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertiā vigiliā ad hostes contendit, eo minus veritus navibus, quod in 20 litore molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat; et praesidio navibus Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctu progressus millia passuum circiter duodecim hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et 25 proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt, locum nacti egregie et naturā et opere munitum, quem domestici belli, ut videbatur, causā jam ante praeparaverant; nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes introitus erant praeclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi prohibebant. 30 At milites legionis septimae, testudine factā et aggere ad munitiones adjecto, locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt, paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod, magnā parte diei consumptā, munitioni castrorum tempus relinquere volebat.

X. Postridie ejus diei mane tripartito milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur.

rentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum jam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent, superiore nocte, maximā coortā tempestate, prope omnes naves afflictas atque in litore ejectas esse; quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernatoresque vim tempestatis pati possent; itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

XI. His rebus cognitis, Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari atque in itinere resistere jubet, ipse ad naves revertitur: eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis litterisque cognoverat, coram perspicit, sic ut amissis circiter quadraginta navibus, reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit et ex continenti alios arcessi jubet; Labiēno scribit, ut, quam plurimas posset, iis legionibus quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnes naves subduci et cum castris unā munitione conjungi. In his rebus circiter dies decem consumit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregie munitis, easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus reliquit; ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, majores jam undique in eum locum copiae Britannōrum convenerant, summā imperii bellicae administrandi communi consilio permissā Cassivellauno, cujus fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamēsis, a mari circiter millia passuum octoginta. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

XII. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos in insulā ipsi memoriā proditum dicunt; maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi causā ex Belgis transierant; qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt, et, bello illato, ibi permanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo creberrimaque aedificia fere

Gallicis consimilia; pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed ejus exigua est  
5 copia; aere utuntur importato. Materia cujusque generis, ut in Galliā, est, praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causā. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Galliā, remissioribus frigoribus.

10 XIII. Insula naturā triquetra, cujus unum latus est contra Galliam. Hujus lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Galliā naves appelluntur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter millia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad  
15 Hispaniam atque occidentem solem, quā ex parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor, ut aestimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatio transmissus atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula, quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores objectae insulae existiman-  
20 tur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt, dies continuos triginta sub brumā esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aquā mensuris breviores esse quam in continente noctes videbamus. Hujus est longitudo lateris, ut fert illorum opinio, septingento-  
25 rum millium. Tertium est contra septemtriones, cui parti nulla est objecta terra; sed ejus angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat; hoc millia passuum octingenta in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vices centum millium passuum.

30 XIV. Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque multum a Gallicā differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carno vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni vitro infici-  
35 unt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiore sunt in pugnā aspectu; capilloque sunt promisso atque omni parte corporis rasā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se communes, et

maxime fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum liberis; sed qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est.

XV. Equites hostium essedariique acriter proelio cum equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, ita tamen ut nostri 5 omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvas collesque compulerint; sed, compluribus interfectis, cupidius insecuti nonnullos ex suis amiserunt. At illi, intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione castrorum, subito se ex silvis ejecerunt, impetuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt; duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a Caesare atque iis primis legionum duarum, cum hae, perexiguo intermisso spatio inter se, constitissent, novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris, per medios audacissime 15 perruperunt seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus, tribunus militum, interficitur. Illi pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

XVI. Toto hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est nostros 20 propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes possent neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos esse ad hujus generis hostem, equites autem magno cum periculo proelio dimicare, propterea quod illi etiam consulto plerumque cederent, et cum paulum ab legionibus 25 nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent et pedibus dispari proelio contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedebat huc, ut nunquam conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis proeliarentur, stationesque dispositas 30 haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent.

XVII. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constiterunt, rarique se ostendere et lenius, quam pridie, nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed meridie, 35 cum Caesar pabulandi causâ tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Gaiō Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic uti ab

signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri, acriter in eos impetu facto, repulerunt, neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt, magnoque eorum  
5 numero interfecto, neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fugā protinus, quae undique convenerant, auxilia discesserunt, neque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

10 XVIII. Caesar, cognito consilio eorum, ad flumen Tamēsim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit, quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo cum venisset, animum advertit ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas; ripa autem  
15 erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita, ejusdemque generis sub aquā defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque, Caesar, praemisso equitatu, confestim legiones subsequi jussit. Sed eā celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aquā exstarent, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere  
20 non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

XIX. Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni depositā spe contentionis, dimissis amplioribus copiis, milibus circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra  
25 servabat, paulumque ex viā excedebat locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat, atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat; et cum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causā se in agros ejecerat, omnibus  
30 viis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis confligebat, atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis  
35 hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

XX. Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, ex quā Mandubratius adolescens Caesaris

fidem secutus ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat, cujus pater Imanuentius in eā civitate regnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fugā mortem vitaverat, legatos ad Caesārem mittunt pollicenturque, sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos; petunt, ut Mandubratium 5 ab injuriā Cassivellauni defendat atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui, Mandubratiumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt. 10

XXI. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum injuriā prohibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibrōci, Cassi, legationibus missis, sese Caesāri dedunt. Ab iis cognoscit non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis magnus ho- 15 minum pecorisque numerus convenerit. Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossā munierunt, quo incursionis hostium vitandae causā convenire consuerunt. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus; locum reperit egregie naturā atque opere munitum; tamen hunc 20 duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt seseque aliā ex parte oppidi ejecerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fugā sunt comprehensi atque interfecti. 25

XXII. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quattuor reges praeerant, Cingetōrix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segōnax, nuntios mittit atque his imperat, uti coactis omnibus copiis castra navalia de impro- 30 viso adorianur atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri, eruptione factā, multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus, hoc proelio nuntiato, tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus 35 defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebātem Commium de deditione ad Caesārem mittit. Caesar, cum constituisset hiemare in continenti propter repentinos Galliae motus,

neque multum aetatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intelligeret, obsides imperat et quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romāno Britannia penderet constituit; interdicat atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubratio  
5 neu Trinobantibus noceat.

XXIII. Obsidibus acceptis, exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat, et nonnullae tempestate deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare  
10 instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero, tot navigationibus, neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret, desideraretur; at ex iis, quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, et prioris commeatus expositis militibus, et quas postea Labiēnus  
15 faciendas curaverat numero sexaginta, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae fere omnes rejicerentur. Quas cum aliquamdiu Caesar frustra exspectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites collocavit, ac summā tranquillitate consecutā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā  
20 luce terram attigit omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

XXIV. Subductis navibus concilioque Gallōrum Samarobrīvae peracto, quod eo anno frumentum in Galliā propter siccitates angustius provenerat, coactus est aliter ac  
25 superioribus annis exercitum in hibernis collocare, legionesque in plures civitates distribuere: ex quibus unam in Morinos ducendam Gāio Fabio legato dedit; alteram in Nervios Quinto Cicerōni; tertiam in Esubios Lucio Roscio; quartam in Remis cum Tito Labiēno in confinio  
30 Trevirōrum hiemare jussit; tres in Belgis collocavit: his Marcum Crassum quaestorem et Lucium Munatium Planicum et Gaium Trebonium legatos praefecit. Unam legionem, quam proxime trans Padum conscripserat, et cohortes quinque in Eburōnes, quorum pars maxima est inter  
35 Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorigis et Catuvolci erant, misit. His militibus Quintum Titurium Sabinum et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praeesse jussit. Ad hunc modum distributis legionibus, facillime

inopiae frumentariae sese mederi posse existimavit: atque harum tamen omnium legionum hiberna, praeter eam, quam Lucio Roscio in pacatissimam et quietissimam partem ducendam dederat, millibus passuum centum continebantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiones collocatas munitaque 5 hiberna cognovisset, in Galliā morari constituit.

XXV. Erat in Carnutibus summo loco natus Tasgetius, cujus majores in suā civitate regnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar pro ejus virtute atque in se benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulari ejus operā fuerat usus, majorum 10 locum restituerat. Tertium jam hunc annum regnantem inimici palam, multis etiam ex civitate auctoribus, eum interfecerunt. Defertur ea res ad Caesārem. Ille veritus, quod ad plures pertinebat, ne civitas eorum impulsu deficeret, Lucium Plancum cum legione ex Belgio 15 celeriter in Carnūtes proficisci jubet ibique hiemare; quorumque operā cognoverit Tasgetium interfectum, hos comprehensos ad se mittere. Interim ab omnibus legatis quaestoribusque, quibus legiones tradiderat, certior factus est in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis esse mun-

nitum.

XXVI. Diebus circiter quindecim, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentini tumultus ac defectionis ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolco; qui cum ad fines regni sui Sabīno Cottaeque praesto fuissent, frumentumque 25 in hiberna comportavissent, Indutiomāri Trevīri nuntiis impulsī suos concitaverunt, subitoque oppressis lignatoribus magnā manu ad castra oppugnatum venerunt. Cum celeriter nostri arma cepissent vallumque ascendissent, atque, unā ex parte Hispanis equitibus emissis, equestri 30 proelio superiores fuissent, desperatā re, hostes suos ab oppugnatione reduxerunt. Tum suo more conclamaverunt, uti aliqui ex nostris ad colloquium prodiret; habere sese, quae de re communi dicere vellent, quibus rebus controversias minui posse sperarent.

35

XXVII. Mittitur ad eos colloquendi causā Gāius Arpinēius, eques Romānus, familiaris Quinti Titurii, et Quintus Junius ex Hispaniā quidam, qui jam ante missu Caesāris



ad Ambiorigem ventitare consueverat; apud quos Ambiorix ad hunc modum locutus est: Sese pro Caesaris in se beneficiis plurimum ei confiteri debere, quod ejus operā stipendio liberatus esset, quod Aduatūcis finitimis suis pendere consuesset; quodque ei et filius et fratris filius ab Caesāre remissi essent, quos Aduatūci obsidum numero missos apud se in servitute et catenis tenuissent; neque id, quod fecerit de oppugnatione castrorum, aut judicio aut voluntate suā fecisse, sed coactu civitatis; suaque  
10 esse ejusmodi imperia, ut non minus haberet juris in se multitudo, quam ipse in multitudinem. Civitati porro hanc fuisse belli causam, quod repentinae Gallōrum conjurationi resistere non potuerit; id se facile ex humilitate suā probare posse, quod non adeo sit imperitus rerum,  
15 ut suis copiis populum Romānum se superare posse confidat; sed esse Galliae commune consilium; omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio alterae legioni subsidio venire posset: non facile Gallos Gallis negare potuisse, praesertim cum de recuperanda  
20 communi libertate consilium initum videretur. Quibus quoniam pro pietate satisfecerit, habere nunc se rationem officii pro beneficiis Caesaris; monere, orare Titurium pro hospitio, ut suae ac militum saluti consulat; magnam manum Germanōrum conductam Rhenum transisse; hanc  
25 affore biduo. Ipsorum esse consilium, velintne prius, quam finitimi sentiant, eductos ex hibernis milites aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum deducere, quorum alter millia passuum circiter quinquaginta, alter paulo amplius ab iis absit. Illud se polliceri et jurejurando confirmare, tutum  
30 iter per fines suos daturum; quod cum faciat, et civitati sese consulere, quod hibernis levetur, et Caesāri pro ejus meritis gratiam referre. Hac oratione habitā discedit Ambiorix.

XXVIII. Arpinēius et Junius quae audierunt ad legatos deferunt. Illi repentinā re perturbati, etsi ab hoste ea dicebantur, non tamen negligenda existimabant; maximeque hac re permovebantur, quod civitatem ignobilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populo Romāno bellum

facere ausam vix erat credendum. Itaque ad consilium rem deferunt magnaue inter eos existit controversia. Lucius Aurunculēius compluresque tribuni militum et primorum ordinum centuriones nihil temere agendum, neque ex hibernis injussu Caesāris discedendum, existimabant. 5 Quantasvis copias etiam Germanōrum sustineri posse munitis hibernis docebant: rem esse testimonio, quod primum hostiū impetum, multis ultro vulneribus illatis, fortissime sustinuerint; re frumentariā non premi; interea et ex proximis hibernis et a Caesāre conventura subsidia; pos- 10 tremo, quid esse levius aut turpius, quam, auctore hoste, de summis rebus capere consilium?

XXIX. Contra ea Titurius sero facturos clamitabat, cum majores manus hostium adjunctis Germānis convenissent, aut cum aliquid calamitatis in proximis hibernis 15 esset acceptum; brevem consulendi esse occasionem. Caesārem arbitrari profectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnūtes interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisse capturos, neque Eburōnes, si ille adesset, tantā contemptione nostri ad castra venturos esse; non hostem auctorem, sed rem spectare; 20 subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germānis dolori Ariovisti mortem et superiores nostras victorias; ardere Galliam tot contumeliis acceptis sub populi Romāni imperium redactam, superiore gloriā rei militaris extinctā. Postremo quis hoc sibi persuaderet, sine certā re Ambiorīgem ad 25 ejusmodi consilium descendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: si nihil esset durius, nullo cum periculo ad proximam legionem perventuros; si Gallia omnis cum Germānis consentiret, unam esse in celeritate positam salutem. Cottae quidem atque eorum, qui dissen- 30 tirent, consilium quem haberet exitum? In quo si non praesens periculum, at certe longinquā obsidione fames esset pertimescenda.

XXX. Hac in utramque partem disputatione habitā, cum a Cottā primisque ordinibus acriter resisteretur, 35 "Vincite," inquit, "si ita vultis," Sabīnus, et id clariore voce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret: "neque is sum," inquit, "qui gravissime ex vobis mortis periculo terrear:

hi sapient, et si gravius quid acciderit, abs te rationem reposcent; qui, si per te liceat, perendino die cum proximis hibernis conjuncti communem cum reliquis belli casum sustineant, non rejecti et relegati longe ab ceteris aut ferro  
5 aut fame intereant.”

XXXI. Consurgitur ex consilio; comprehendunt utrumque et orant, ne suā dissensione et pertinaciā rem in summum periculum deducant: facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, si modo unum omnes sentiant ac pro-  
10 bent; contra in dissensione nullam se salutem perspicere. Res disputatione ad mediam noctem perducitur. Tandem dat Cotta permotus manus; superat sententia Sabini. Pronuntiatur primā luce ituros; consumitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret,  
15 quid secum portare posset, quid ex instrumento hibernorum relinquere cogeretur. Omnia excogitantur, quare nec sine periculo maneatur et languore militum et vigiliis periculum augeatur. Primā luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, ut quibus esset persuasum non ab hoste, sed ab homine ami-  
20 cissimo Ambiorige consilium datum, longissimo agmine maximisque impedimentis.

XXXII. At hostes, posteaquam ex nocturno fremitu vigiliisque de profectione eorum senserunt, collocatis insidiis bipartito in silvis opportuno atque occulto loco a mil-  
25 libus passuum circiter duobus, Romanōrum adventum expectabant; et cum se major pars agminis in magnam convallem demisisset, ex utrāque parte ejus vallis subito se ostenderunt, novissimosque premere et primos prohibere ascensu atque iniquissimo nostris loco proelium commit-  
30 tere coeperunt.

XXXIII. Tum demum Titurius, qui nihil ante providisset, trepidare et concursare cohortesque disponere; haec tamen ipsa timide atque ut eum omnia deficere viderentur; quod plerumque iis accidere consuevit, qui in ipso  
35 negotio consilium capere coguntur. At Cotta, qui cogitasset haec posse in itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectionis auctor non fuisset, nullā in re communi saluti deerat et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus impera-

toris, et in pugnā militis officia<sup>1</sup> praestabat. Cum propter longitudinem agminis minus facile omnia per se obire, et quid quoque loco faciendum esset, providere possent, jussurunt pronuntiare, ut impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem consisterent. Quod consilium etsi in ejusmodi casu 5 reprehendendum non est, tamen incommode accidit; nam et nostris militibus spem minuit et hostes ad pugnam alacriores effecit, quod non sine summo timore et desperatione id factum videbatur. Praeterea accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgo milites ab signis discederent, quae quisque 10 eorum carissima haberet, ab impedimentis petere atque arripere properaret, clamore et fletu omnia complerentur.

XXXIV. At barbaris consilium non defuit; nam duces eorum totā acie pronuntiare jusserunt, ne quis ab loco discederet; illorum esse praedam atque illis reservari, quae- 15 cumque Romāni reliquissent; proinde omnia in victoriā posita existimarent. Erant et virtute et numero pugnando pares nostri. Tametsi ab duce et a fortunā deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtute ponebant, et quoties quaeque cohors procurreret, ab eā parte magnus hostium 20 numerus cadebat. Quā re animadversā, Ambiōrix pronuntiarī jubet, ut procul tela conjiciant, neu propius accedant, et quam in partem Romāni impetum fecerint, cedant (levitate armorum et quotidianā exercitatione nihil iis noceri posse), rursus se ad signa recipientes insequantur. 25

XXXV. Quo praecepto ab iis diligentissime observato, cum quaequam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fecerat, hostes velocissime refugiebant. Interim eam partem nudari necesse erat et ab latere aperto tela recipi. Rursus, cum in eum locum, unde erant egressi, reverti 30 coeperant, et ab iis, qui cesserant, et ab iis, qui proximi steterant, circumveniebantur; sin autem locum tenere vellent, nec virtuti locus relinquebatur, neque ab tantā multitudine conjecta tela conferti vitare poterant. Tamen tot incommodis conflictati, multis vulneribus accep- 35 tis, resistebant et magnā parte diei consumptā, cum a primā luce ad horam octavam pugnaretur, nihil, quod ipsis esset indignum, committebant. Tum Tito Balventio, qui

superiore anno primum pilum duxerat, viro forti et magnae auctoritatis, utrumque femur tragulā transjicitur. Quintus Lucanius, ejusdem ordinis, fortissime pugnans, dum circumvento filio subvenit, interficitur; Lucius Cotta legatus 5 omnes cohortes ordinesque adhortans in adversum os fundā vulneratur.

XXXVI. His rebus permotus Quintus Titurius, cum procul Ambiorīgem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interpretem suum Gnaeum Pompeium ad eum mittit rogatum, 10 ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellatus respondit: Si velit secum colloqui, licere; sperare, a multitudine impetrari posse, quod ad militum salutem pertineat; ipsi vero nihil nocitum iri, inque eam rem se suam fidem interponere. Ille cum Cottā saucio communicat, ei videatur, 15 pugnā ut excedant et cum Ambiorīge una colloquantur; sperare ab eo de suā ac militum salute impetrare posse. Cotta se ad armatum hostem iturum negat atque in eo perseverat.

XXXVII. Sabīnus quos in praesentiā tribunos militum 20 circum se habebat et primorum ordinum centuriones se sequi jubet, et cum propius Ambiorīgem accessisset, jussus arma abjicere, imperatum facit suisque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Interim, dum de conditionibus inter se agunt longiorque consulto ab Ambiorīge instituitur sermo, paula- 25 tim circumventus interficitur. Tum vero suo more victoriam conclamant atque ululatum tollunt, impetuque in nostros facto ordines perturbant. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnans interficitur cum maximā parte militum; reliqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant egressi: ex quibus Lucius 30 Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magnā multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum projecit, ipse pro castris fortissime pugnans occiditur. Illi aegre ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent; noctu ad unum omnes, desperatā salute, se ipsi interficiunt. Pauci ex proelio elapsi incertis 35 itineribus per silvas ad Titum Labiēnum legatum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum de rebus gestis certiores faciunt.

XXXVIII. Hac victoriā sublatus Ambiorix statim cum

equitatu in Aduatūcos, qui erant ejus regno finitimi, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditatumque subsequi jubet. Re demonstratā, Aduatūcisque concitatis, postero die in Nervios pervenit hortaturque, ne sui in perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi Romānos pro iis, 5 quas acceperint, injuriis, occasionem dimittant: interfectos esse legatos duos magnamque partem exercitus interisse demonstrat; nihil esse negotii subito oppressam legionem, quae cum Cicerōne hiemet, interfici; se ad eam rem proficetur adiutorem. Facile hac oratione Nervii persuadet. 10

XXXIX. Itaque confestim dimissis nuntiis ad Ceutrōnes, Grudios, Levācos, Pleumoxios, Geidūnos, qui omnes sub eorum imperio sunt, quam maximas manus possunt, cogunt et de improvviso ad Cicerōnis hiberna advolant, nondum ad eum famā de Titurii morte perlatā. Huic quoque 15 accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nonnulli milites, qui lignationis munitionisque causā in silvas discessissent, repentino equitum adventu interciperentur. His circumventis, magnā manu Eburōnes, Nervii, Aduatūci atque horum omnium socii et clientes legionem oppugnare incipiunt: nostri celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. Aegre is dies sustentatur, quod omnem spem hostes in celeritate ponebant atque hanc adepti victoriam in perpetuum se fore victores confidebant.

XI. Mittuntur ad Caesārem confestim ab Cicerōne litterae, magnis propositis praemiis si pertulissent. Obsessis omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctu ex materiā, quam munitionis causā comportaverant, turres admodum centum et viginti excitantur incredibili celeritate: quae deesse operi videbantur, perficiuntur. Hostes postero die multo 30 majoribus coactis copiis castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Eādem ratione, quā pridie, ab nostris resistitur; hoc idem deinceps reliquis fit diebus. Nulla pars nocturni temporis ad laborem intermittitur: non aegris, non vulneratis facultas quietis datur: quaecumque ad proximi diei 35 oppugnationem opus sunt, noctu comparantur: multae praeustae sudes, magnus muralium pilorum numerus instituitur; turres contabulantur, pinnae loricaeque ex cratibus

attexuntur. Ipse Cicëro, cum tenuissimā valetudine esset, ne nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relinquebat, ut ultro militum concursu ac vocibus sibi parcere cogeretur.

5 XLI. Tunc duces principesque Nerviorum, qui aliquem sermonis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne habebant, colloqui sese velle dicunt. Factā potestate, eadem, quae Ambiorix cum Titurio egerat, commemorant: Omnem esse in armis Galliam, Germānos Rhenum transisse, Caesā-  
10 ris reliquorumque hiberna oppugnari. Addunt etiam de Sabini morte. Ambiorigem ostentant fidei faciendae causā. Errare eos dicunt, si quidquam ab his praesidii sperent, qui suis rebus diffidant; sese tamen hoc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Romānum animo, ut nihil nisi  
15 hiberna recusent atque hanc inveterascere consuetudinem nolint: licere illis incolumibus per se ex hibernis discedere, et quascumque in partes velint, sine metu proficisci. Cicëro ad haec unum modo respondit: Non esse consuetudinem populi Romāni accipere ab hoste armato conditionem: si  
20 ab armis discedere velint, se adiutore utantur legatosque ad Caesārem mittant: sperare pro ejus justitiā, quae petierint, impetraturos.

XLII. Ab hac spe repulsi Nervii vallo pedum novem et fossā pedum quindecim hiberna cingunt. Haec et supe-  
25 riorum annorum consuetudine a nostris cognoverant, et quosdam de exercitu nacti captivos, ab his docebantur; sed nullā ferramentorum copiā, quae esset ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis cespites circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire cgebantur. Quā quidem ex re homi-  
30 num multitudo cognosci potuit; nam minus horis tribus millium passuum quindecim in circuitu munitionem perfecterunt; reliquisque diebus turres ad altitudinem valli, falces testudinesque, quas iidem captivi docuerant, parare ac facere coeperunt.

85 XLIII. Septimo oppugnationis die, maximo coorto vento, ferventes fusili ex argillā glandes fundis et fervefacta jacula in casas, quae more Gallico stramentis erant tectae, jacere coeperunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehenderunt et venti

magnitudine in omnem castrorum locum distulerunt. Hostes maximo clamore, sicuti partā jam atque exploratā victoriā, turres testudinesque agere et scalis vallum ascendere coeperunt. At tanta militum virtus atque ea praesentia animi fuit, ut cum undique flammā torrerentur 5 maximāque telorum multitudine premerentur, suaeque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortunas conflagrare intelligerent, non modo demigrandi causā de vallo decederet nemo, sed paene ne respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnes acerrime fortissimeque pugnarent. Hic dies nostris 10 longe gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum, ut eo die maximus hostium numerus vulneraretur atque interficeretur, ut se sub ipso vallo constipaverant recessumque primis ultimi non dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quodam loco turri adactā et contingente 15 vallum, tertiae cohortis centuriones ex eo, quo stabant, loco recesserunt suosque omnes removerunt; nutu vocibusque hostes, si introire vellent, vocare coeperunt, quorum progredi ausus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus coniectis deturbati turrisque succensa est. 20

XLIV. Erant in eā legione fortissimi viri centuriones, qui jam primis ordinibus appropinquarent, Titus Pulfio et Lucius Vorēnus. Hi perpetuas inter se controversias habebant, quinam anteferretur, omnibusque annis de loco summis simultatibus contendebant. Ex his Pulfio, cum 25 acerrime ad munitiones pugnaretur, “Quid dubitas,” inquit, “Vorēne? aut quem locum probandae virtutis tuae exspectas? Hic dies de nostris controversiis judicabit.” Haec cum dixisset, procedit extra munitiones, quaeque pars hostium confertissima est visa, in eam irrumpit. Ne 30 Vorēnus quidem tum sese vallo continet, sed omnium veritus existimationem subsequitur. Mediocri spatio relicto, Pulfio pilum in hostes immittit atque unum ex multitudine procurrentem transjicit; quo percusso et exanimato, hunc scutis protegunt, in hostem tela universi conjiiciunt 35 neque dant regrediendi facultatem. Transfigitur scutum Pulfioni et verutum in balteo defigitur. Avertit hic casus vaginam et gladium educere conanti dextram moratur



manum; impeditum hostes circumsistunt. Succurrit inimicus illi Vorēnus et laboranti subvenit. Ad hunc se confestim a Pulfiōne omnis multitudo convertit; illum veruto arbitrantur occisum. Occursat ocius gladio comminusque rem gerit Vorēnus atque, uno interfecto, reliquos paulum propellit: dum cupidius instat, in locum dejectus inferiorem concidit. Huic rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulfio, atque ambo incolumes, compluribus interfectis, summā cum laude sese intra munitiones recipiunt. Sic fortuna in contentione et certamine utrumque versavit, ut alter alteri inimicus auxilio salutique esset, neque dijudicari posset, uter utri virtute anteferendus videretur.

XLV. Quanto erat in dies gravior atque asperior opus pugnatum, et maxime quod, magnā parte militum confectā vulneribus, res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat, tanto crebriores litterae nuntiique ad Caesārem mittebantur; quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrorum militum cum cruciatu necabatur. Erat unus intus Nervius, nomine Vertico, loco natus honesto, qui a primā obsidione ad Cicerōnem perfugerat suamque ei fidem praestiterat. Hic servo spe libertatis magnisque persuadet praemiis, ut litteras ad Caesārem deferat. Has ille in jaculo illigatas effert, et Gallus inter Gallos sine ullā suspicione versatus ad Caesārem pervenit. Ab eo de periculis Cicerōnis legionisque cognoscitur.

XLVI. Caesar, acceptis litteris, horā circiter undecimā diei, statim nuntium in Bellovācos ad Marcum Crassum quaestorem mittit; cujus hiberna aberant ab eo millia passuum viginti quinque. Jubet mediā nocte legionem proficisci celeriterque ad se venire. Exit cum nuntio Crassus. Alterum ad Gaiū Fabium legatum mittit, ut in Atrebatium fines legionem adducat, qua sibi iter faciendum sciebat. Scribit Labiēno, si rei publicae commodo facere posset, cum legione ad fines Nerviorum veniat: reliquam partem exercitus, quod paulo aberat longius, non putat expectandam; equites circiter quadringentos ex proximis hibernis colligit.

XLVII. Horā circiter tertiā ab antecursoribus de Crassi adventu certior factus, eo die millia passuum viginti procedit. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legionemque ei attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitus, obsides civitatum, litteras publicas, frumentumque omne, quod eo tolerandae hiemis causā devexerat, relinquebat. Fabius, ut imperatum erat, non ita multum moratus in itinere cum legione occurrit. Labiēnus interitu Sabīni et caede cohortium cognitā, cum omnes ad eum Trevirōrum copiae venissent, veritus ne, si ex hibernis fugae similem profectionem fecisset, hostium impetum sustinere non posset, praesertim quos recenti victoriā efferri sciret, litteras Caesari remittit, quanto cum periculo legionem ex hibernis educturus esset; rem gestam in Eburonibus perscribit; docet, omnes equitatus peditatusque copias Trevirōrum tria millia passuum longe ab suis castris consedis-

XLVIII. Caesar, consilio ejus probato, etsi opinione trium legionum dejectus, ad duas redierat, tamen unum communis salutis auxilium in celeritate ponebat. Venit magnis itineribus in Nerviorum fines. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit, quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur, quantoque in periculo res sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnis praemiis persuadet, uti ad Cicerōnem epistolam deferat. Hanc Graecis conscriptam litteris mittit, ne interceptā epistolā nostra ab hostibus consilia cognoscantur. Si adire non possit, monet, ut tragulam cum epistolā ad amentum deligatā intra munitiones castrorum abjiciat. In litteris scribit se cum legionibus profectum celeriter affore; hortatur, ut pristinam virtutem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, tragulam mittit. Haec casu ad turrē adhaesit, neque ab nostris biduo animadversa, tertio die a quodam milite conspicitur; dempta ad Cicerōnem defertur. Ille perlectam in conventu militum recitat maximāque omnes laetitiā afficit. Tum fumi incendi-  
orum procul videbantur, quae res omnem dubitationem adventus legionum expulit.

XLIX. Galli re cognitā per exploratores obsidionem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus copiis contendunt; hae

erant armata circiter millia sexaginta. Cicëro, datâ facultate, Gallum ab eodem Verticōne, quem supra demonstravimus, repetit, qui litteras ad Caesārem deferat; hunc admonet, iter caute diligenterque faciat: perscribit in litteris hostes ab se discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter mediâ nocte; Caesar allatis suos facit certiores, eosque ad dimicandum animo confirmat; postero die luce primâ movet castra, et circiter millia passuum quattuor progressus trans vallem et rivum multitudinem hostium conspicatur. Erat magni periculi res cum tantis copiis iniquo loco dimicare. Tum, quoniam obsidione liberatum Cicerōnem sciebat, aequo animo remittendum de celeritate existimabat. Consedit, et quam aequissimo loco potest, castra communit; atque haec, etsi erant exigua per se, vix hominum millium septem, praesertim nullis cum impedimentis, tamen angustiis viarum quam maxime potest, contrahit, eo consilio, ut in summam contemptionem hostibus veniat. Interim speculatoribus in omnes partes dimissis explorat, quo commodissime itinere vallem transire possit.

L. Eo die parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis, utrique sese suo loco continent; Galli, quod ampliores copias, quae nondum convenerant, exspectabant; Caesar, si forte timoris simulatione hostes in suum locum elicere posset, ut citra vallem pro castris proelio contenderet; si id efficere non posset, ut exploratis itineribus minore cum periculo vallem rivumque transiret. Primâ luce hostium equitatus ad castra accedit proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar consulto equites cedere seque in castra recipere jubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiore vallo muniri portasque obstrui, atque in his administrandis rebus quam maxime concursari et cum simulatione timoris agi jubet.

LI. Quibus omnibus rebus hostes invitati copias transducunt aciemque iniquo loco constituunt; nostris vero etiam de vallo deductis, propius accedunt et tela intra munitionem ex omnibus partibus conjiciunt; praeconibusque circummissis pronuntiari jubent, seu quis Gallus

seu Romānus velit ante horam tertiam ad se transire, sine periculo licere; post id tempus non fore potestatem; ac sic nostros contempserunt, ut obstructis in speciem portis singulis ordinibus cespitem, quod ea non posse introrumpere videbantur, alii vallum manu scindere, alii fossas complere inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portis eruptione factā equitatuque emissio celeriter hostes in fugam dat, sic uti omnino pugnandi causā resisteret nemo; magnumque ex iis numerum occidit atque omnes armis exuit.

LII. Longius prosequi veritus, quod silvae paludesque 10 intercedebant, neque etiam parvulo detrimento illorum locum relinqui videbat, omnibus suis incolumibus copiis, eodem die ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Institutas turres, testudines, munitionesque hostium admiratur: legione productā cognoscit non decimum quemque esse reliquum militem 15 sine vulnere. Ex his omnibus judicat rebus, quanto cum periculo et quantā cum virtute res sint administratae: Cicerōnem pro ejus merito legionemque collaudat: centuriones singillatim tribunosque militum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtutem testimonio Cicerōnis cognoverat. De casu Sabīni et Cottae certius ex captivis cognoscit. Postero die, concione habitā, rem gestam proponit, milites consolatur et confirmat: quod detrimentum culpā et temeritate legati sit acceptum, hoc aequiore animo ferendum docet, quod beneficio deorum immortalium et 25 virtute eorum expiato incommodo, neque hostibus diutina laetatio neque ipsis longior dolor relinquitur.

LIII. Interim ad Labiēnum per Remos incredibili celeritate de victoriā Caesaris fama perfertur, ut, cum ab hibernis Cicerōnis millia passuum abesset circiter sexaginta, 30 eoque post horam nonam diei Caesar pervenisset, ante mediam noctem ad portas castrorum clamor oriretur, quo clamore significatio victoriae gratulatioque ab Remis Labiēno fieret. Hac famā ad Trevīros perlatā, Indutiomārus, qui postero die castra Labiēni oppugnare decreverat, noctu 35 profugit copiasque omnes in Trevīros reducit. Caesar Fabium cum suā legione remittit in hiberna, ipse cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrīvā trinis hibernis hiemare

constituit; et quod tanti motus Galliae exstiterant, totam  
hiemem ipse ad exercitum manere decrevit. Nam illo  
incommodo de Sabini morte perlato, omnes fere Galliae  
civitates de bello consultabant, nuntios legationesque in  
5 omnes partes dimittebant, et quid reliqui consilii caperent  
atque unde initium belli fieret explorabant, nocturnaque  
in locis desertis concilia habebant. Neque ullum fere  
totius hiemis tempus sine sollicitudine Caesaris intercessit,  
quin aliquem de consiliis ac motu Gallorum nuntium acci-  
10 peret. In his ab Lucio Roscio, quem legioni decimae ter-  
tiae praefecerat, certior factus est, magnas Gallorum copias  
earum civitatum, quae Armoricae appellantur, oppugnandi  
sui causam convenisse, neque longius millia passuum octo ab  
hibernis suis abfuisse, sed nuntio allato de victoria Caesaris  
15 ris discessisse, adeo ut fugae similis discessus videretur.

LIV. At Caesar principibus cujusque civitatis ad se  
evocatis, alias territando, cum se scire, quae fierent, de-  
nuntiaret, alias cohortando, magnam partem Galliae in  
officio tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae est civitas imprimis  
20 firma et magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis, Cavarinum,  
quem Caesar apud eos regem constituerat, cujus frater  
Moritasgus adventu in Galliam Caesaris cujusque majores  
regnum obtinuerant, interficere publico consilio conati,  
cum ille praesensisset ac profugisset, usque ad fines inse-  
25 cuti, regno domoque expulerunt; et missis ad Caesarem  
satisfaciendi causam legatis, cum is omnem ad se senatum  
venire jussisset, dicto audientes non fuerunt. Tantum  
apud homines barbaros valuit, esse aliquos repertos prin-  
cipes belli inferendi, tantamque omnibus voluntatum com-  
30 mutationem attulit, ut praeter Aeduos et Remos, quos  
praecipuo semper honore Caesar habuit, alteros pro vetere  
ac perpetua erga populum Romanum fide, alteros pro  
recentibus Gallici belli officiis, nulla fere civitas fuerit non  
suspecta nobis. Idque adeo haud scio mirandumne sit,  
35 cum compluribus aliis de causis, tum maxime, quod ii  
qui virtute belli omnibus gentibus praeferebantur, tantum  
se ejus opinionis deperdidisse, ut a populo Romano impe-  
ria perferrent, gravissime dolebant.

LV. Treviri vero atque Indutiomārus totius hiemis nulum tempus intermiserunt, quin trans Rhenum legatos mitterent, civitates sollicitarent, pecunias pollicerentur, magnā parte exercitus nostri interfectā, multo minorem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ulli civitati Germanōrum persuaderi potuit, ut Rhenum transiret, cum se bis expertos dicerent, Ariovisti bello et Tencterōrum transitu: non esse amplius fortunam tentaturos. Hac spe lapsus Indutiomārus nihilo minus copias cogere, exercere, a finitimis equos parare, exsules damnatosque totā Galliā magnis praemiis ad se allicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi jam his rebus in Galliā auctoritatem comparaverat, ut undique ad eum legationes concurrerent, gratiam atque amicitiam publice privatimque peterent.

LVI. Ubi intellexit ultro ad se venire, alterā ex parte Senōnes Carnūtesque conscientiā facinoris instigari, alterā Nervios Aduatūcosque bellum Romānis parare, neque sibi voluntariorum copias defore, si ex finibus suis progredi coepisset, armatum concilium indicit. Hoc more Gallōrum est initium belli, quo lege communi omnes puberes armati convenire consuerunt; qui ex iis novissimus venit, in conspectu multitudinis omnibus cruciatibus affectus necatur. In eo concilio Cingetorīgem, alterius principem factionis, generum suum (quem supra demonstravimus, Caesaris secutum fidem, ab eo non discessisse) hostem judicat bonaque ejus publicat. His rebus confectis in concilio pronuntiat arcessitum se a Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque compluribus Galliae civitatibus, huc iter facturum per fines Remōrum eorumque agros populaturum, ac priusquam id faciat, castra Labiēni oppugnaturum; quae fieri velit, praecipit.

LVII. Labiēnus, cum et loci naturā et manu munitissimis castris sese teneret, de suo ac legionis periculo nihil timebat; ne quam occasionem rei bene gerendae dimitteret, cogitabat. Itaque a Cingetorīge atque ejus propinquis oratione Indutiomāri cognitā, quam in concilio habuerat, nuntios mittit ad finitimas civitates equitesque undique evocat; his certum diem conveniendi dicit. Interim prope

quotidie cum omni equitatu Indutiomārus sub castris ejus vagabatur, alias ut situm castrorum cognosceret, alias colloquendi aut territandi causā; equites plerumque omnes tela intra vallum conjiciebant. Labiēnus suos intra munitiones continebat timorisque opinionem, quibuscumque poterat rebus, augebat.

LVIII. Cum majore in dies contemptione Indutiomārus ad castra accederet, nocte unā intromissis equitibus omnium finitimarum civitatum, quos arcessendos curaverat, 10 tantā diligentia omnes suos custodiis intra castra continuit, ut nullā ratione ea res enuntiari aut ad Treviros perferri posset. Interim ex consuetudine quotidianā Indutiomārus ad castra accedit atque ibi magnam partem diei consumit; equites tela conjiciunt et magnā cum contumeliā verborum 15 nostros ad pugnam evocant. Nullo ab nostris dato responso, ubi visum est, sub vespere dispersi ac dissipati discedunt. Subito Labiēnus duabus portis omnem equitatum emittit; praecipit atque interdicat, proteritis hostibus atque in fugam conjectis (quod fore, sicut accidit, videbat), 20 unum omnes peterent Indutiomārum; neu quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum viderit, quod morā reliquorum spatium nactum illum effugere nolebat: magna proponit iis, qui occiderint, praemia: submittit cohortes equitibus subsidio. Comprobat hominis consilium fortuna; 25 et cum unum omnes peterent, in ipso fluminis vado prehensus Indutiomārus interficitur caputque ejus refertur in castra; redeuntes equites, quos possunt, consecantur atque occidunt. Hac re cognitā, omnes Eburonum et Nerviorum, quae convenerant, copiae discedunt; pauloque habuit post id factum Caesar quietiorem Galliam. 30

## LIBER VI.

I. MULTIS de causis Caesar majorem Galliae motum exspectans, per Marcum Silanum, Gaium Antistium Reginum, Titum Sextium legatos, delectum habere instituit: simul ab Gnaeo Pompeio proconsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperio rei publicae causam remaneret, quos ex 5 Cisalpinam Galliam consulis sacramento rogavisset, ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci juberet; magni interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opinionem Galliae existimans, tantas videri Italiae facultates, ut, si quid esset in bello detrimenti acceptum, non modo id brevi tempore resarciri, 10 sed etiam majoribus augeri copiis posset. Quod cum Pompeius et rei publicae et amicitiae tribuisset, celeriter confecto per suos delectu, tribus ante exactam hiemem et constitutis et adductis legionibus duplicatoque earum cohortium numero, quas cum Quinto Titurio amiserat, et 15 celeritate et copiis docuit, quid populi Romani disciplina atque opes possent.

II. Interfecto Indutiomaro, ut docuimus, ad ejus propinquos a Treveris imperium defertur. Illi finitimos Germanos sollicitare et pecuniam polliceri non desistunt; cum 20 ab proximis impetrare non possent, ultiores tentant. Inventis nonnullis civitatibus jurejurando inter se confirmant, obsidibusque de pecunia cavent: Ambiorigem sibi societate et foedere adjungunt. Quibus rebus cognitis, Caesar, cum undique bellum parari videret, Nervios, 25 Aduaticos, ac Menapios, adjunctis Cisrhenanis omnibus Germanis, esse in armis, Senones ad imperatum non venire et cum Carnutibus finitimisque civitatibus consilia communicare, a Treveris Germanos crebris legationibus sollicitari; maturius sibi de bello cogitandum putavit. 30



III. Itaque nondum hieme confectā, proximis quattuor coactis legionibus de improvise in fines Nerviorum contendit, et priusquam illi aut convenire aut profugere possent, magno pecoris atque hominum numero capto atque  
5 eā praedā militibus concessā vastatisque agris, in dediti-  
onem venire atque obsides sibi dare coëgit. Eo celeriter confecto negotio, rursus in hiberna legiones reduxit. Concilio Galliae primo vere, uti instituerat, indicto, cum reliqui praeter Senones, Carnutes Trevirosque venissent,  
10 initium belli ac defectionis hoc esse arbitratus, ut omnia postponere videretur, concilium Lutetiam Parisiorum transfert. Confines erant hi Senonibus civitatemque patrum memoriā conjunxerant; sed ab hoc consilio abfuisse existimabantur. Hac re pro suggestu pronuntiata, eodem die  
15 cum legionibus in Senones proficiscitur magnisque itineribus eo pervenit.

IV. Cognito ejus adventu, Acco, qui princeps ejus consilii fuerat, jubet in oppida multitudinem convenire; conantibus, priusquam id effici posset, adesse Romanos  
20 nuntiatur; necessario sententiā desistunt legatosque deprecandi causā ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Aeduos, quorum antiquitus erat in fide civitas. Libenter Caesar petentibus Aeduis dat veniam excusationemque accipit, quod aestivum tempus instantis belli, non quaestionis, esse  
25 arbitrabatur. Obsidibus imperatis centum, hos Aeduis custodiendos tradit. Eodem Carnutes legatos obsidesque mittunt, usi deprecatoribus Remis, quorum erant in clientela: eadem ferunt responsa. Peragit concilium Caesar equitesque imperat civitatibus.

30 V. Hac parte Galliae pacatā, totus et mente et animo in bellum Trevirorum et Ambiorigis insistit. Cavarinum cum equitatu Senonum secum proficisci jubet, ne quis aut ex hujus iracundiā, aut ex eo, quod meruerat, odio civitatis, motus existat. His rebus constitutis, quod pro explorato  
35 habebat, Ambiorigem proelio non esse concertaturum, reliqua ejus consilia animo circumspiciebat. Erant Menapii propinqui Eburonum finibus, perpetuis paludibus silvisque muniti, qui uni ex Galliā de pace ad Caesarem legatos

nunquam miserant. Cum his esse hospitium Ambiorigi sciebat; item per Treviros venisse Germanis in amicitiam cognoverat. Haec prius illi detrahenda auxilia existimabat, quam ipsum bello lacesseret; ne desperatā salute aut se in Menapios abderet, aut cum Transrhenānis congredi 5 cogeretur. Hoc inito consilio, totius exercitus impedimenta ad Labiēnum in Treviros mittit duasque legiones ad eum proficisci jubet: ipse cum legionibus expeditis quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. Illi, nullā coactā manu, loci praesidio freti in silvas paludesque confugiunt suaque 10 eodem conferunt.

VI. Caesar partitis copiis cum Gāio Fabio legato et Marco Crasso quaestore celeriterque effectis pontibus, adit tripartito, aedificia vicosque incendit, magno pecoris atque hominum numero potitur. Quibus rebus coacti Menapii 15 legatos ad eum pacis petendae causā mittunt. Ille obsidibus acceptis hostium se habiturum numero confirmat, si aut Ambiorigem aut ejus legatos finibus suis recepissent. His confirmatis rebus, Commium Atrebātem cum equitatu custodis loco in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Treviros proficiscitur. 20

VII. Dum haec a Caesare geruntur, Treviri magnis coactis peditatus equitatusque copiis, Labiēnum cum unā legione, quae in eorum finibus hiemaverat, adoriri parabant, jamque ab eo non longius bidui viā aberant, cum duas venisse legiones missu Caesaris cognoscunt. Positis 25 castris a millibus passuum quindecim, auxilia Germanorum expectare constituunt. Labiēnus, hostium cognito consilio, sperans, temeritate eorum fore aliquam dimicandi facultatem, praesidio quinque cohortium impedimentis relicto, cum viginti quinque cohortibus magnoque equitatu contra 30 hostem proficiscitur et mille passuum intermisso spatio castra communit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficili transitu flumen ripisque praeuptis; hoc neque ipse transire habebat in animo neque hostes transituros existimabat. Augebatur auxiliorum quotidie spes. Lo- 35 quitur in consilio palam, quoniam Germani appropinquare dicantur, sese suas exercitusque fortunas in dubium non devocaturum et postero die primā luce castra moturum.

Celeriter haec ad hostes deferuntur, ut ex magno Gallōrum equitum numero nonnullos Gallīcis rebus favere natura coge-  
 bat. Labiēnus noctu, tribunis militum primisque  
 ordinibus convocatis, quid sui sit consilii, proponit, et quo  
 5 facilius hostibus timoris det suspicionem, majore strepitu  
 et tumultu, quam populi Romāni fert consuetudo, castra  
 moveri jubet. His rebus fugae similem profectionem efficit.  
 Haec quoque per exploratores ante lucem in tantā propin-  
 quitate castrorum ad hostes deferuntur.

- 10 VIII. Vix agmen novissimum extra munitiones proces-  
 serat, cum Galli cohortati inter se, ne speratam praedam  
 ex manibus dimitterent, longū esse perterritis Romānis  
 Germanōrum auxilium exspectare, neque suam pati digni-  
 tatem, ut tantis copiis tam exigua manum, praesertim  
 15 fugientem atque impeditam, adoriri non audeant, flumen  
 transire et iniquo loco proelium committere non dubitant.  
 Quae fore suspicatus Labiēnus, ut omnes citra flumen elice-  
 ret, eādem usus simulatione itineris, placide progredieba-  
 tur. Tum praemissis paulum impedimentis atque in tu-  
 20 mulo quodam collocatis, “Habetis,” inquit, “milites, quam  
 petistis, facultatem: hostem impedito atque iniquo loco  
 tenetis: praestate eandem nobis ducibus virtutem, quam  
 saepenumero imperatori praestitistis: atque illum adesse  
 et haec coram cernere existimate.” Simul signa ad hos-  
 25 tem converti aciemque dirigi jubet, et paucis turmis prae-  
 sidio ad impedimenta dimissis, reliquos equites ad latera  
 disponit. Celeriter nostri clamore sublato pila in hostes  
 immittunt. Illi, ubi praeter spem quos fugere credebant  
 infestis signis ad se ire viderunt, impetum modo ferre non  
 30 potuerunt ac primo concursu in fugam coniecti proximas  
 silvas petierunt: quos Labiēnus equitatu consecutus, mag-  
 no numero interfecto, compluribus captis, paucis post die-  
 bus civitatem recepit; nam Germāni, qui auxilio venie-  
 bant, perceptā Trevirōrum fugā, sese domum receperunt.  
 35 Cum his propinqui Indutiomāri, qui defectionis auctores  
 fuerant, comitati eos ex civitate excesserunt. Cingetorigi,  
 quem ab initio permansisse in officio demonstravimus, prin-  
 cipatus atque imperium est traditum.

IX. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Treviros venit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit: quarum una erat, quod auxilia contra se Treviris miserant; altera, ne ad eos Ambiorix receptum haberet. His constitutis rebus, paulum supra eum locum, quo ante exercitum transduxerat, facere pontem instituit. Notā atque institutā ratione, magno militum studio paucis diebus opus efficitur. Firmo in Treviris ad pontem praesidio relicto, ne quis ab his subito motus oriretur, reliquas cōpias equitatumque transducit. Ubi, qui ante obsides dederant atque in deditionem 10 venerant, purgandi sui causā ad eum legatos mittunt, qui doceant neque auxilia ex suā civitate in Treviros missa, neque ab se fidem laesam: petunt atque orant, ut sibi parcat, ne communi odio Germanōrum innocentes pro nocentibus poenas pendant: si amplius obsidum velīt, dare pollicentur. Cognitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēbis auxilia missa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactionem accipit, aditus viasque in Suēbos perquirat.

X. Interim paucis post diebus fit ab Ubiis certior, Suēbos omnes in unum locum copias cogere, atque iis nationibus, quae sub eorum sint imperio, denuntiare, ut auxilia peditatus equitatusque mittant. His cognitis rebus, rem frumentariam providet, castris idoneum locum deligit, Ubiis imperat, ut pecora deducant suaeque omnia ex agris in oppida conferant, sperans barbaros atque imperitos 25 homines inopiā cibariorum adductos ad iniquam pugnandi conditionem posse deduci: mandat, ut crebros exploratores in Suēbos mittant quaeque apud eos gerantur cognoscant. Illi imperata faciunt et, paucis diebus intermissis, referunt, Suēbos omnes, posteaquam certiores nuntii de 30 exercitu Romanōrum venerint, cum omnibus suis sociorumque copiis, quas coēgissent, penitus ad extremos fines se recepisse: silvam esse ibi infinitā magnitudine, quae appellatur Bacēnis; hanc longe introrsus pertinere et pro nativo muro objectam Cheruscos ab Suēbis Suēbosque 35 ab Cheruscis injuriis incursionibusque prohibere: ad ejus initium silvae Suēbos adventum Romanōrum expectare constituisse.

- XI. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, non alienum esse videtur de Galliae Germaniaeque moribus, et quo differant eae nationes inter sese, proponere. In Galliā non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pagis 5 partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus, factiones sunt; earumque factionum principes sunt, qui summam auctoritatem eorum iudicio habere existimantur, quorum ad arbitrium iudiciumque summa omnium rerum consiliorumque redeat. Idque ejus rei causā antiquitus 10 institutum videtur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiorē auxilii egeret: suos enim quisque opprimi et circumveniri non patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, ullam inter suos habet auctoritatem. Haec eadem ratio est in summā totius Galliae; namque omnes civitates in partes divisae sunt duas.
- 15 XII. Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes erant Aedui, alterius Sequāni. Hi cum per se minus valerent, quod summa auctoritas antiquitus erat in Aeduis magnaeque eorum erant clientelae, Germanos atque Ariovistum sibi adjunxerant, eosque ad se magnis 20 jacturis pollicitationibusque perduxerant. Proeliis vero compluribus factis secundis atque omni nobilitate Aeduorum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant, ut magnam partem clientium ab Aeduis ad se transducerent obsidesque ab iis principum filios acciperent, et publice jurare 25 cogerent nihil se contra Sequānos consilii inituros; et partem finitimi agri per vim occupatam possiderent, Galliaeque totius principatum obtinerent. Quā necessitate adductus Divitiācus auxilii petendi causā Romam ad senatum profectus imperfectā re redierat. Adventu Caesaris 30 factā commutatione rerum, obsidibus Aeduis redditis, veteribus clientelis restitutis, novis per Caesarem comparatis, quod hi, qui se ad eorum amicitiam aggregaverant, meliore conditione atque aequiore imperio se uti videbant, reliquis rebus eorum gratiā dignitateque amplificatā, Sequāni 35 principatum dimiserant. In eorum locum Remi successerant; quos quod adaequare apud Caesarem gratiā intelligebatur, ii, qui propter veteres inimicitias nullo modo cum Aeduis conjungi poterant, se Remis in clientelam dicabant.

Hos illi diligenter tuebantur. Ita et novam et repente collectam auctoritatem tenebant. Eo tum statu res erat, ut longe principes haberentur Aedui, secundum locum dignitatis Remi obtinerent.

XIII. In omni Galliā eorum hominum, qui aliquo sunt 5 numero atque honore, genera sunt duo; nam plebes paene servorum habetur loco, quae nihil audet per se, nullo adhibetur consilio. Plerique, cum aut aere alieno aut magnitudine tributorum aut injuriā potentiorum premuntur, sese in servitutem dicant nobilibus: in hos eadem omnia 10 sunt jura, quae dominis in servos. Sed de his duobus generibus alterum est Druīdum, alterum equitum. Illi rebus divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privata procurant, religiones interpretantur. Ad hos magnus adolescentium numerus disciplinae causā concurrit, magnoque hi 15 sunt apud eos honore. Nam fere de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt; et si quod est admissum facinus, si caedes facta, si de hereditate, de finibus controversia est, iidem decernunt; praemia poenasque constituunt. Si qui aut privatus aut populus eorum decreto 20 non stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. Haec poena apud eos est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hi numero impiorum ac sceleratorum habentur; his omnes decedunt, aditum eorum sermonemque defugiunt, ne quid ex contagione incommodi accipiant; neque his petentibus jus red- 25 ditur neque honos ullus communicatur. His autem omnibus Druidibus praeest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo, aut, si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit; aut, si sunt plures pares, suffragio Druīdum, nonnunquam etiam armis de principatu contendunt. 30 Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnūtum, quae regio totius Galliae media habetur, considunt in loco consecrato. Huc omnes undique, qui controversias habent, conveniunt eorumque decretis judiciisque parent. Disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata esse exis- 35 timatur; et nunc, qui diligentius eam rem cognoscere volunt, plerumque illo discendi causā proficiscuntur.

XIV. Druīdes a bello abesse consuerunt neque tributa

una cum reliquis pendunt; militiae vacationem omniumque rerum habent immunitatem. Tantis excitati praemiis et suā sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum  
5 versuum ediscere dicuntur: itaque annos nonnulli vicanos in disciplinā permanent. Neque fas esse existimant ea litteris mandare, cum in reliquis fere rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Graecis litteris utantur. Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur; quod neque in vulgum  
10 disciplinam efferri velint, neque eos, qui discunt, litteris confisos minus memoriae studere; quod fere plerisque accidit, ut praesidio litterarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant. Imprimis hoc volunt persuadere, non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad  
15 alios, atque hoc maxime ad virtutem excitari putant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa praeterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum naturā, de deorum immortalium vi ac potestate disputant et juventuti tradunt.

20 XV. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum est usus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod fere ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solebat, uti aut ipsi injuriae inferrent aut illatas propulsarent), omnes in bello versantur; atque eorum ut quisque est genere copiisque amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se ambactos clientesque habent.  
25 Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque noverunt.

XVI. Natio est omnis Gallorum admodum dedita religionibus atque ob eam causam, qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis quique in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut pro  
30 victimis homines immolant aut se immolatuos vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia Druidibus utuntur, quod, pro vitā hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur, non posse deorum immortalium numen placari arbitrantur, publiceque ejusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia. Alii  
35 immani magnitudine simulacra habent, quorum contexta viminibus membra vivis hominibus complent, quibus succensis, circumventi flammā exanimantur homines. Supplicia eorum, qui in furto aut in latrocinio aut aliquā noxiā

sint comprehensi, gratiora diis immortalibus esse arbitrantur, sed, cum ejus generis copia deficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.

XVII. Deum maxime Mercurium colunt. Hujus sunt plurima simulacra, hunc omnium inventorem artium ferunt, 5 hunc viarum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestus pecuniae mercaturasque habere vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Martem et Jovem et Minervam : de his eandem fere, quam reliquae gentes, habent opinionem ; Apollinem morbos depellere, Minervam operum 10 atque artificiorum initia tradere, Jovem imperium coelestium tenere, Martem bella regere. Huic, cum proelio dimicare constituerunt, ea, quae bello ceperint, plerumque devovent. Cum superaverunt, animalia capta immolant, reliquas res in unum locum conferunt. Multis in civitatibus harum rerum exstructos tumulos locis consecratis 15 conspicari licet ; neque saepe accidit, ut, neglectā quispiam religione, aut capta apud se occultare aut posita tollere auderet ; gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciatu constitutum est. 20

XVIII. Galli se omnes ab Dite patre prognatos praedicant, idque ab Druidibus proditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis non numero dierum, sed noctium finiunt ; dies natales et mensium et annorum initia sic observant, ut noctem dies subsequatur. In reliquis vitae 25 institutis hoc fere ab reliquis differunt, quod suos liberos, nisi cum adoleverunt, ut munus militiae sustinere possint, palam ad se adire non patiuntur, filiumque puerili aetate in publico in conspectu patris adsistere turpe ducunt. 30

XIX. Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxoribus dotis nomine acceperunt, tantas ex suis bonis, aestimatione factā, cum dotibus communicant. Hujus omnis pecuniae conjunctim ratio habetur fructusque servantur : uter eorum vitā superarit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorum 35 temporum pervenit. Viri in uxores, sicuti in liberos, vitae necisque habent potestatem ; et cum pater familiae illustriore loco natus decessit, ejus propinqui conveniunt, et



de morte si res in suspicionem venit, de uxoribus in servilem modum questionem habent, et si compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis excruciatas interficiunt. Funera sunt pro cultu Gallorum magnifica et sumptuosa; omnia-  
5 que, quae vivis cordi fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt, etiam animalia; ac paulo supra hanc memoriam servi et clientes, quos ab iis dilectos esse constabat, justis funeribus confectis una cremabantur.

XX. Quae civitates commodius suam rem publicam  
10 administrare existimantur, habent legibus sanctum, si quis quid de re publicā a finitimis rumore aut famā acceperit, uti ad magistratum deferat, neve cum quo alio communi-  
cet: quod saepe homines temerarios atque imperitos falsis rumoribus terreri et ad facinus impelli et de summis rebus  
15 consilium capere cognitum est. Magistratus quae visa sunt occultant; quaeque esse ex usu judicaverunt, multitudini produnt. De re publicā nisi per concilium loqui non conceditur.

XXI. Germāni multum ab hac consuetudine differunt;  
20 nam neque Druīdes habent, qui rebus divinis praesint, neque sacrificiis student. Deorum numero eos solos ducunt, quos cernunt et quorum aperte opibus juvantur, Solem et Vulcānum et Lunam: reliquos ne famā quidem acceperunt. Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei  
25 militaris consistit: ab parvulis labori ac duritiae student. Qui diutissime impuberes permanserunt, maximam inter suos ferunt laudem: hoc ali staturam, ali hoc vires nervosque confirmari putant. Intra annum vero vicesimum feminae notitiam habuisse in turpissimis habent rebus: cujus  
30 rei nulla est occultatio, quod et promiscue in fluminibus perluuntur, et pellibus aut parvis renonum tegimentis utuntur, magnā corporis parte nudā.

XXII. Agriculturae non student; majorque pars eorum victus in lacte, caseo, carne consistit: neque quisquam  
35 agri modum certum aut fines habet proprios, sed magistratus ac principes in annos singulos gentibus cognationibusque hominum, qui una coierunt, quantum et quo loco visum est agri attribuunt atque anno post alio transire

cogunt. Ejus rei multas afferunt causas; ne assiduâ consuetudine capti studium belli gerendi agriculturâ commutent; ne latos fines parare studeant potentioresque humiliores possessionibus expellant; ne accuratius ad frigora atque aestus vitandos aedificent; ne qua oriatur pecuniae cupiditas, quâ ex re factiones dissensionesque nascuntur; ut animi aequitate plebem contineant, cum suas quisque opes cum potentissimis aequari videat.

XXIII. Civitatibus maxima laus est quam latissimas circum se vastatis finibus solitudines habere. Hoc proprium virtutis existimant, expulsos agris finitimos cedere, neque quemquam prope audere consistere: simul hoc se fore tutiores arbitrantur, repentinae incursionis timore sublato. Cum bellum civitas aut illatum defendit aut infert, magistratus, qui ei bello praesint, ut vitae necisque habeant potestatem, deliguntur. In pace nullus est communis magistratus, sed principes regionum atque pagorum inter suos jus dicunt controversiasque minuunt. Latrocinia nullam habent infamiam, quae extra fines cujusque civitatis fiunt; atque ea juventutis exercendae ac desidia minuendae causâ fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in concilio dixit, se ducem fore, qui sequi velint, profiteantur; consurgunt ii, qui et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ab multitudine collaudantur: qui ex his secuti non sunt, in desertorum ac proditorum numero ducuntur omniumque his rerum postea fides derogatur. Hospitem violare, fas non putant; qui quâcumque de causâ ad eos venerunt, ab injuriâ prohibent, sanctos habent, hisque omnium domus patent victusque communicatur.

80

XXIV. Ac fuit antea tempus, cum Germanos Galli virtute superarent, ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrique inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germaniae sunt, loca circum Hercyniam silvam (quam Eratosthēni et quibusdam Graecis famâ notam esse video, quam illi Oreyniam appellant), Volcae Tectosages occupaverunt atque ibi consederunt. Quae gens ad hoc tempus his sedibus sese

continet summamque habet justitiae et bellicae laudis opinionem: nunc quoque in eādem inopiā, egestate, patientiā, quā Germāni, permanent, eodem victu et cultu corporis utuntur. Gallis autem provinciarum propinquitās et  
5 transmarinarum rerum notitiā multa ad copiam atque usus largitur: paulatim assuefacti superari multisque victi proeliis ne se quidem ipsi cum illis virtute comparant.

XXV. Hujus Hercyniae silvae, quae supra demonstrata est, latitudo novem dierum iter expedito patet: non enim  
10 aliter finiri potest, neque mensuras itinerum noverunt. Oritur ab Helvetiōrum et Nemētum et Rauricōrum finibus, rectāque fluminis Danuvii regione pertinet ad fines Dacōrum et Anartium; hinc se flectit sinistrorsus diversis ab flumine regionibus, multarumque gentium fines propter  
15 magnitudinem attingit; neque quisquam est hujus Germaniae, qui se aut adisse ad initium ejus silvae dicat, cum dierum iter sexaginta processerit, aut quo ex loco oriatur, acceperit; multaque in eā genera ferarum nasci constat, quae reliquis in locis visa non sint; ex quibus quae maxime differant  
20 ab ceteris et memoriae prodenda videantur, haec sunt.

XXVI. Est bos cervi figurā, cujus a mediā fronte inter aures unum cornu exsistit excelsius magisque directum his, quae nobis nota sunt, cornibus. Ab ejus summo sicut palmae ramique late diffunduntur. Eadem est feminae  
25 marisque natura, eadem forma magnitudoque cornuum.

XXVII. Sunt item, quae appellantur, alces. Harum est consimilis capreis figura et varietas pellium; sed magnitudine paulo antecedunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crura sine nodis articulisque habent; neque quietis causā  
30 procumbunt, neque, si quo afflictas casu conciderunt, erigere sese aut sublevare possunt. His sunt arbores procubilibus; ad eas se applicant atque ita paulum modo reclinatae quietem capiunt; quarum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum a venatoribus, quo se recipere consuerint,  
35 omnes eo loco aut a radicibus subruunt, aut accidunt arbores tantum, ut summa species earum stantium relinquatur. Huc cum se consuetudine reclinaverunt, infirmas arbores pondere affligunt atque una ipsae concidunt.

XXVIII. Tertium est genus eorum, qui uri appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo infra elephantos, specie et colore et figurā tauri. Magna vis eorum est et magna velocitas; neque homini neque ferae, quam conspexerunt, parcant. Hos studiose foveis captos interficiunt. Hoc se labore durant adolescentes atque hoc genere venationis exercent; et qui plurimos ex his interfecerunt, relatis in publicum cornibus, quae sint testimonio, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuescere ad homines et mansueferi ne parvuli quidem excepti possunt. Amplitudo cornuum et 10 figura et species multum a nostrorum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiose conquisita ab labris argento circumcludunt atque in amplissimis epulis pro poculis utuntur.

XXIX. Caesar, postquam per Ubios exploratores comperit Suēbos sese in silvas recepisse, inopiam frumenti 15 veritus, quod, ut supra demonstravimus, minime omnes Germāni agriculturae student, constituit non progredi longius; sed ne omnino metum reditus sui barbaris tolleret atque ut eorum auxilia tardaret, reducto exercitu, partem ultimam pontis, quae ripas Ubiōrum contingebat, in longitudo- 20 tudinem pedum ducentorum rescindit; atque in extremo ponte turrim tabulatorum quattuor constituit praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendi causā ponit magnisque eum locum munitionibus firmat. Ei loco praesidioque Gāium Volcatium Tullum adolescentem praefecit. 25 Ipse, cum maturescere frumenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorīgis profectus per Arduennam silvam, quae est totius Galliae maxima atque ab ripis Rhēni finibusque Trevirōrum ad Nervios pertinet, millibusque amplius quingentis in longitudinem patet, Lucium Minucium Basillum 30 cum omni equitatu praemittit, si quid celeritate itineris atque opportunitate temporis proficere possit; monet, ut ignes in castris fieri prohibeat, ne qua ejus adventus procul significatio fiat: sese confestim subsequi dicit.

XXX. Basillus ut imperatum est facit. Celeriter con- 35 traque omnium opinionem confecto itinere, multos in agris inopinantes deprehendit; eorum indicio ad ipsum Ambiorīgem contendit, quo in loco cum paucis equitibus esse

dicebatur. Multum cum in omnibus rebus, tum in re militari potest fortuna. Nam sicut magno accidit casu, ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparatum incideret, priusque ejus adventus ab hominibus videretur, quam fama  
5 aut nuntius afferretur; sic magnae fuit fortunae omni militari instrumento, quod circum se habebat, erepto, rhedis equisque comprehensis, ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hoc eo factum est, quod aedificio circumdato silvā (ut sunt  
10 que silvarum ac fluminum petunt propinquitates), comites familiaresque ejus angusto in loco paulisper equitum nostrorum vim sustinuerunt. His pugnantibus illum in equum quidam ex suis intulit: fugientem silvae texerunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum et ad vitandum multum fortuna  
15 valuit.

XXXI. Ambiorix copias suas judicione non conduxerit, quod proelio dimicandum non existimarit, an tempore exclusus et repentino equitum adventu prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequi crederet, dubium est; sed  
20 certe dimissis per agros nuntiis sibi quemque consulere jussit: quorum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentes paludes profugit; qui proximi Oceānum fuerunt, hi insulis sese occultaverunt, quas aestus efficere consueverunt: multi ex suis finibus egressi se suaque omnia alienissimis  
25 crediderunt. Catuvolcus, rex dimidiae partis Eburōnum, qui una cum Ambiorige consilium inierat, aetate jam confectus, cum laborem belli aut fugae ferre non posset, omnibus precibus detestatus Ambiorigem, qui ejus consilii auctor fuisset, taxo, cujus magna in Galliā Germaniāque  
30 copia est, se exanimavit.

XXXII. Segni Condrūsique, ex gente et numero Germanōrum, qui sunt inter Eburōnes Trevīrosque, legatos ad Caesārem miserunt, oratum, ne se in hostium numero duceret neve omnium Germanōrum, qui essent citra Rhe-  
85 num, unam esse causam judicaret; nihil se de bello cogitavisse, nulla Ambiorigi auxilia misisse. Caesar exploratā re quaestione captivorum, si qui ad eos Eburōnes ex fugā convenissent, ad se ut reducerentur imperavit; si ita

fecissent, fines eorum se violaturum negavit. Tum copiis in tres partes distributis, impedimenta omnium legionum Aduatūcam contulit. Id castelli nomen est. Hoc fere est in mediis Eburōnum finibus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculēus hiemandi causā consederant. Hunc cum reliquis 5 rebus locum probabat, tum quod superioris anni munitiones integrae manebant, ut militum laborem sublevaret. Praesidio impedimentis legionem quartam decimam reliquit, unam ex his tribus, quas proxime conscriptas ex Italiā transduxerat. Ei legioni castrisque Quintum Tullium 10 Cicerōnem praeficit ducentosque equites attribuit.

XXXIII. Partito exercitu, Titum Labiēnum cum legionibus tribus ad Oceānum versus in eas partes, quae Menapios attingunt, proficisci jubet; Gaium Trebonium cum pari legionum numero ad eam regionem, quae Aduatūcis 15 adjacet, depopulandam mittit; ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flumen Scaldem, quod influit in Mosam, extremasque Arduennae partes ire constituit, quo cum paucis equitibus profectum Ambiorigem audiebat. Discedens post diem septimum sese reversurum confirmat; quam ad diem ei 20 legioni, quae in praesidio relinquebatur, frumentum deberi sciebat. Labiēnum Treboniumque hortatur, si rei publicae commodo facere possint, ad eam diem revertantur; ut rursus communicato consilio exploratisque hostium rationibus, aliud belli initium capere possent. 25

XXXIV. Erat, ut supra demonstravimus, manus certa nulla, non oppidum, non praesidium, quod se armis defenderet, sed omnes in partes dispersa multitudo. Ubi cuique aut vallis abdita aut locus silvestris aut palus impedita spem praesidii aut salutis aliquam offerebat, consederat. 30 Haec loca vicinitatibus erant nota, magnamque res diligentiam requirebat, non in summā exercitus tuendā (nulum enim poterat universis ab perterritis ac dispersis periculum accidere), sed in singulis militibus conservandis; quae tamen ex parte res ad salutem exercitus pertinebat. 35 Nam et praedae cupiditas multos longius evocabat, et silvae incertis occultisque itineribus confertos adire prohibebant. Si negotium confici stirpemque hominum sceleratorum

interfici vellet, dimittendae plures manus diducendique erant milites: si continere ad signa manipulos vellet, ut instituta ratio et consuetudo exercitus Romāni postulabat, locus ipse erat praesidio barbaris, neque ex occulto  
 5 insidiandi et dispersos circumveniendi singulis deerat audacia. At in ejusmodi difficultatibus, quantum diligentia provideri poterat, providebatur, ut potius in nocendo aliquid praetermitteretur, etsi omnium animi ad ulciscendum ardebant, quam cum aliquo militum detrimento noceretur. Caesar ad finitimas civitates nuntios  
 10 dimittit, omnes ad se evocat spe praedae ad diripiendos Eburōnes, ut potius in silvis Gallōrum vita quam legionarius miles periclitetur; simul ut, magnā multitudine circumfusā, pro tali facinore stirps ac nomen civitatis tollatur. Magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

XXXV. Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerebantur, diesque appetebat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedimenta legionemque reverti constituerat. Hic quantum in bello fortuna possit et quantos afferat casus, cognosci potuit. Dissipatis ac perterritis hostibus, ut demonstravimus, manus erat nulla, quae parvam modo causam timoris afferret. Trans Rhenum ad Germanos pervenit fama, diripi Eburōnes atque ultro omnes ad praedam evocari. Cogunt equitum duo millia Sigambri, qui sunt proximi  
 20 Rheno, a quibus receptos ex fugā Tenctēros atque Usipētes supra docuimus: transeunt Rhenum navibus ratibusque triginta millibus passuum infra eum locum, ubi pons erat perfectus praesidiumque ab Caesare relictum: primos Eburōnum fines adeunt, multos ex fugā dispersos  
 30 excipiunt, magno pecoris numero, cujus sunt cupidissimi barbari, potiuntur. Invitati praedā longius procedunt: non hos palus in bello latrociniisque natos, non silvae morantur: quibus in locis sit Caesar, ex captivis quaerunt; profectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cognoscunt. Atque unus ex captivis, "Quid vos," inquit, "hanc miseram ac tenuem sectamini praedam, quibus licet jam esse fortunatissimis? Tribus horis Aduaticam venire potestis: huc omnes suas fortunas exercitus

Romanōrum contulit; praesidii tantum est, ut ne murus quidem cingi possit, neque quisquam egredi extra munitiones audeat." Oblatā spe, Germāni, quam nacti erant praedam, in occulto relinquunt; ipsi Aduatūcam contendunt, usi eodem duce, cujus haec indicio cognoverant. 5

XXXVI. Cicēro, qui per omnes superiores dies praeceptis Caesāris cum summā diligentīā milites in castris continuisset ac ne calonem quidem quemquam extra munitionem egredi passus esset, septimo die diffidens de numero dierum Caesārem fidem servaturum, quod longius progressum audiebat, neque ulla de reditu ejus fama afferebatur; simul eorum permotus vocibus, qui illius patientiam paene obsessionem appellabant, si quidem ex castris egredi non liceret; nullum ejusmodi casum exspectans, quo novem oppositis legionibus maximoque equitatu, dispersis ac 15 paene deletis hostibus, in millibus passuum tribus offendi posset; quinque cohortes frumentatum in proximas segetes mittit, quas inter et castra unus omnino collis intererat. Complures erant in castris ex legionibus aegri relictī; ex quibus qui hoc spatio dierum convaluerant, circiter trecenti 20 sub vexillo una mittuntur: magna praeterea multitudo calonum, magna vis jumentorum, quae in castris subsederat, factā potestate, sequitur.

XXXVII. Hoc ipso tempore et casu Germāni equites interveniunt protinusque eodem illo, quo venerant, cursu 25 ab decumanā portā, in castra irrumpere conantur; nec prius sunt visi objectis ab eā parte silvis, quam castris appropinquarent, usque eo, ut qui sub vallo tenderent mercatores, recipiendi sui facultatem non haberent. Inopinantes nostri re novā perturbantur ac vix primum im- 30 petum cohors in statione sustinet. Circumfunduntur ex reliquis hostes partibus, si quem aditum reperire possent. Aegre portas nostri tuentur, reliquos aditus locus ipse per se munitioque defendit. Totis trepidatur castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultus quaerit; neque quo signa 35 ferantur, neque quam in partem quisque conveniat, provident. Alius jam castra capta pronuntiat; alius deleto exercitu atque imperatore victores barbaros venisse



contendit: plerique novas sibi ex loco religiones fingunt, Cottaeque et Titurii calamitatem, qui in eodem occiderint castello, ante oculos ponunt. Tali timore omnibus perterritis confirmatur opinio barbaris, ut ex captivo audierant, 5 nullum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nituntur seque ipsi adhortantur, ne tantam fortunam ex manibus dimittant.

XXXVIII. Erat aeger in praesidio relictus Publius Sextius Baculus, qui primum pilum ad Caesarem duxerat, 10 cujus mentionem superioribus proeliis fecimus, ac diem jam quintum cibo caruerat. Hic diffusus suae atque omnium saluti inermis ex tabernaculo prodit: videt imminere hostes atque in summo esse rem discrimine: capit arma a proximis atque in portā consistit. Consequuntur 15 hunc centuriones ejus cohortis quae in statione erat: paulisper una proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptis vulneribus: aegre per manus tractus servatur. Hoc spatio interposito, reliqui sese confirmant tantum, ut in munitionibus consistere audeant speciem- 20 que defensorum praebeant.

XXXIX. Interim, confectā frumentatione, milites nostri clamorem exaudiunt: praecurrunt equites; quanto sit res in periculo, cognoscunt. Hic vero nulla munitio est, quae perterritos recipiat: modo conscripti atque usus militaris 25 imperiti ad tribunum militum centurionesque ora convertunt: quid ab his praeciatur, expectant. Nemo est tam fortis, quin rei novitate perturbetur. Barbari signa procul conspicati oppugnatione desistunt: redisse primo legiones credunt, quas longius discessisse ex captivis cognoverant: 30 postea, despectā paucitate, ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.

XL. Calones in proximum tumulum procurrunt: hinc celeriter dejecti se in signa manipulosque conjiciunt: eo magis timidos perterrent milites. Alii, cuneo facto ut 35 celeriter perrumpant, censent, quoniam tam propinqua sint castra; et si pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquos servari posse confidunt: alii, ut in iugo consistent atque eundem omnes ferant casum. Hoc veteres non probant

milites, quos sub vexillo una profectos docuimus. Itaque inter se cohortati, duce Gāio Trebonio, equite Romano, qui eis erat praepositus, per medios hostes perrumpunt incolumesque ad unum omnes in castra perveniunt. Hos subsecuti calones equitesque eodem impetu militum vir-  
tute servantur. At ii, qui in iugo constiterant, nullo etiam nunc usu rei militaris percepto, neque in eo, quod probaverant, consilio permanere, ut se loco superiore defenderent, neque eam, quam prodesse aliis vim celeritatemque viderant, imitari potuerunt; sed se in castra recipere conati iniquum in locum demiserunt. Centuriones, quorum nonnulli ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legionum virtutis causā in superiores erant ordines hujus legionis transducti, ne autem partem rei militaris laudem amitterent, fortissime pugnantes conciderunt. Militum pars, horum virtute submotis hostibus, praeter spem incolumis in castra pervenit; pars a barbaris circumventa periit.

XLI. Germāni, desperatā expugnatione castrorum, quod nostros jam constitisse in munitionibus videbant, cum eā praedā, quam in silvis deposuerant, trans Rhenum sese receperunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror, ut eā nocte, quum Gāius Volusēnus missus cum equitatu ad castra venisset, fidem non faceret adesse cum incolumi Caesārem exercitu. Sic omnium animos timor praeoccupaverat, ut paene alienatā mente, deletis omnibus copiis, equitatum se ex fugā recepissee dicerent, neque incolumi exercitu Germānos castra oppugnatuos fuisse contenderent. Quem timorem Caesāris adventus sustulit.

XLII. Reversus ille, eventus belli non ignorans, unum, quod cohortes ex statione et praesidio essent emissae, 30 questus, ne minimo quidem casu locum relinqui debuisset, multum fortunam in repentino hostium adventu potuisse judicavit; multo etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipso vallo portisque castrorum barbaros avertisset. Quarum omnium rerum maxime admirandum videbatur, quod Germāni, 35 qui eo consilio Rhenum transierant, ut Ambiorigis fines depopularentur, ad castra Romanorum delati optatissimum Ambiorigi beneficium obtulerant.

XLIII. Caesar rursus ad vexandos hostes profectus, magno coacto numero ex finitimis civitatibus, in omnes partes dimittit. Omnes vici atque omnia aedificia, quae quisque conspexerat, incendebantur; praeda ex omnibus  
5 locis agebatur; frumenta non solum a tantâ multitudine jumentorum atque hominum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque imbribus procubuerant; ut, si qui etiam in praesentiâ se occultassent, tamen his, deducto exercitu, rerum omnium inopiâ pereundum videretur. Ac  
10 saepe in eum locum ventum est, tanto in omnes partes diviso equitatu, ut modo visum ab se Ambiorigem in fugâ circumspicerent captivi, nec plane etiam abisse ex conspectu contenderent, ut spe consequendi illatâ atque infinito labore suscepto, qui se summam ab Caesare gratiam  
15 inituros putarent, paene naturam studio vincerent, semperque paulum ad summam felicitatem defuisse videretur, atque ille latebris ac silvis aut saltibus se eriperet et noctu occultatus alias regiones partesque peteret, non majore equitum praesidio quam quattuor, quibus solis vitam suam  
20 committere audebat.

XLIV. Tali modo vastatis regionibus, exercitum Caesar duarum cohortium damno Durocortorum Remorum reducit, concilioque in eum locum Galliae indicto, de conjuratione Senonum et Carnutum quaestionem habere instituit;  
25 et de Accōne, qui princeps ejus consilii fuerat, graviore sententiâ pronuntiata, more majorum supplicium sumpsit. Nonnulli judicium veriti profugerunt; quibus cum aquâ atque igni interdixisset, duas legiones ad fines Trevirorum, duas in Lingonibus, sex reliquas in Senonum finibus Agedinci in hibernis collocavit, frumentoque exercitui proviso,  
30 ut instituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

## LIBER VII.

I. QUIETĀ Galliā Caesar, ut constituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos proficiscitur. Ibi cognoscit de Clodii caede; de senatusque consulto certior factus, ut omnes juniores Italiae conjurarent, delectum totā provinciā habere instituit. Eae res in Galliam Transalpīnam celeriter 5 perferuntur. Addunt ipsi et affingunt rumoribus Galli, quod res poscere videbatur, retineri urbano motu Caesārem neque in tantis dissensionibus ad exercitum venire posse. Hac impulsī occasione, qui jam ante se populi Romāni imperio subjectos dolerent, liberius atque audacius de bello 10 consilia inire incipiunt. Indictis inter se principes Galliae conciliis silvestribus ac remotis locis queruntur de Accōnis morte; posse hunc casum ad ipsos recidere demonstrant; miserantur communem Galliae fortunam; omnibus pollicitationibus ac praemiis deposcunt, qui belli initium 15 faciant et sui capitis periculo Galliam in libertatem vindicent. Imprimis rationem esse habendam dicunt, priusquam eorum clandestina consilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitu intercludatur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiones audeant, absente imperatore, ex hibernis egredi, neque 20 imperator sine praesidio ad legiones pervenire possit: postremo in acie praestare interfici, quam non veterem belli gloriam libertatemque, quam a majoribus acceperint, recuperare.

II. His rebus agitatis, profitentur Carnūtes se nullum 25 periculum communis salutis causā recusare, principesque ex omnibus bellum facturos pollicentur; et quoniam in praesentiā obsidibus cavere inter se non possint, ne res efferatur, ut jurejurando ac fide sanciantur, petunt, collatis militaribus signis, quo more eorum gravissima caerimonia 30

continetur, ne facto initio belli ab reliquis deserantur. Tum collaudatis Carnutibus, dato jurejurando ab omnibus qui aderant, tempore ejus rei constituto, ab concilio disceditur.

5 III. Ubi ea dies venit, Carnutes, Cotuāto et Conetodūno ducibus, desperatis hominibus, Genābum signo dato concurrunt, civesque Romānos, qui negotiandi causā ibi constiterant, in his Gāium Fusium Citam, honestum equitem Romānum, qui rei frumentariae jussu Caesāris praeerat, 10 interficiunt bonaque eorum diripiunt. Celeriter ad omnes Galliae civitates fama perfertur; nam ubicumque major atque illustrior incidit res, clamore per agros regionesque significant; hunc alii deinceps excipiunt et proximis tradunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Genābi oriente sole gesta 15 essent, ante primam confectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernōrum audita sunt; quod spatium est millium circiter centum et sexaginta.

IV. Simili ratione ibi Vercingetōrix, Celtilli filius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adolescens, cujus pater principatum 20 Galliae totius obtinuerat et ob eam causam, quod regnum appetebat, ab civitate erat interfectus, convocatis suis clientibus facile incendit. Cognito ejus consilio ad arma concurritur. Prohibetur ab Gobannitiōne, patruo suo, reliquisque principibus, qui hanc tentandam fortunam non 25 existimabant, expellitur ex oppido Gergoviā; non destitit tamen atque in agris habet delectum egentium ac perditorum. Hac coactā manu, quoscumque adit ex civitate, ad suam sententiam perducit; hortatur, ut communis libertatis causā arma capiant; magnisque coactis copiis, adversarios suos, a quibus paulo ante erat ejectus, expellit ex 30 civitate. Rex ab suis appellatur; dimittit quoquoersus legationes; obtestatur, ut in fide maneant. Celeriter sibi Senōnes, Parisios, Pictōnes, Cadurcos, Turōnes, Aulercos, Lemovices, Andes reliquosque omnes, qui Oceānum attingunt, adjungit; omnium consensu ad eum defertur imperium. Quā oblata potestate, omnibus his civitatibus obsides imperat, certum numerum militum ad se celeriter adduci jubet, armorum quantum quaeque civitas domi quodque

ante tempus efficiat, constituit: imprimis equitatu studet. Summae diligentiae summam imperii severitatem addit; magnitudine supplicii dubitantes cogit; nam, majore commisso delicto, igni atque omnibus tormentis necat; levio de causâ auribus desectis aut singulis effossis oculis domum 5 remittit, ut sint reliquis documento et magnitudine poenae perterreant alios.

V. His suppliciis celeriter coacto exercitu, Lucterium Cadurcum, summae hominem audaciae, cum parte copiarum in Rutēnos mittit; ipse in Biturīges proficiscitur. 10 Ejus adventu Biturīges ad Aeduos, quorum erant in fide, legatos mittunt subsidium rogatum, quo facilius hostium copias sustinere possint. Aedui de consilio legatorum, quos Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, copias equitatus peditatusque subsidio Biturigibus mittunt. Qui cum ad 15 flumen Ligērim venissent, quod Biturīges ab Aeduis dividit, paucos dies ibi morati neque flumen transire ausi domum revertuntur, legatisque nostris renuntiant se Biturīgum perfidiam veritos revertisse, quibus id consilii fuisse cognoverint, ut, si flumen transissent, unā ex parte ipsi, 20 alterā Arverni se circumstiterent. Id eūne de causâ, quam legatis pronuntiarunt, an perfidiā adducti fecerint, quod nihil nobis constat, non videtur pro certo esse ponendum. Biturīges eorum discessu statim cum Arvernīs junguntur.

VI. His rebus in Italiam Caesari nuntiatis, cum jam 25 ille urbanas res virtute Gnaei Pompēii commodiorem in statum pervenisse intelligeret, in Transalpīnam Galliam profectus est. Eo cum venisset, magnā difficultate afficiebatur, quā ratione ad exercitum pervenire posset. Nam si legiones in provinciam arcesseret, se absente, in itinere 30 proelio dimicaturas intelligebat; si ipse ad exercitum contenderet, ne iis quidem eo tempore, qui quieti viderentur, suam salutem recte committi videbat.

VII. Interim Lucterius Cadurcus in Rutēnos missus eam civitatem Arvernīs conciliat. Progressus in Nitiobriges et Gabālos ab utrisque obsides accipit, et magnā coactā manu in provinciam, Narbōnem versus, eruptionem facere contendit. Quā re nuntiātā, Caesar omnibus consiliis

antevertendum existimavit, ut Narbōnem proficisceretur. Eo cum venisset, timentes cōfirmat, praesidia in Rutēnis provincialibus, Volcis Arecomīcis, Tolosatibus, circumque Narbōnem, quae loca hostibus erant finitima, constituit; 5 partem copiarum ex provinciā supplementumque, quod ex Italiā adduxerat, in Helvios, qui fines Arvernōrum contingunt, convenire jubet.

VIII. His rebus comparatis, represso jam Lucterio et remoto, quod intrare intra praesidia periculosum putabat, 10 in Helvios proficiscitur. Etsi mons Cevenna, qui Arvernos ab Helviis discludit, durissimo tempore anni altissimā nive iter impediēbat, tamen discussā nive sex in altitudinem pedum atque ita viis patefactis, summo militum labore ad fines Arvernōrum pervenit. Quibus oppressis 15 inopinantibus, quod se Cevennā ut muro munitos existimabant, ac ne singulari quidem unquam homini eo tempore anni semitae patuerant, equitibus imperat, ut quam latissime possint vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrorem inferant. Celeriter haec famā ac nuntiis ad Ver- 20 cingetorīgem perferuntur; quem perterriti omnes Arverni circumsistunt atque obsecrant, ut suis fortunis consulat, neu se ab hostibus diripi patiatur, praesertim cum videat omne ad se bellum translatum. Quorum ille precibus permotus castra ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernos versus.

25 IX. At Caesar biduum in his locis moratus, quod haec de Vercingetorīge usu ventura opinione praeceperat, per causam supplementi equitatusque cogendi ab exercitu discedit; Brutum adolescentem his copiis praeficit; hunc monet, ut in omnes partes equites quam latissime pervagen- 30 tur: daturum se operam, ne longius triduo ab castris absit. His constitutis rebus, suis inopinantibus, quam maximis potest itineribus Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus recentem equitatum, quem multis ante diebus eo praemiserat, neque diurno neque nocturno itinere intermisso per fines Aeduō- 35 rum in Lingōnes contendit, ubi duae legiones hiemabant, ut, si quid etiam de suā salute ab Aeduis iniretur consilii, celeritate praecurreret. Eo cum pervenisset, ad reliquas legiones mittit priusque omnes in unum locum cogit, quam

de ejus adventu Arvernīs nuntiari posset. Hac re cognitā, Vercingetōrix rursus in Biturīges exercitum reducit, atque inde profectus Gergoviam, Boiōrum oppidum, quos ibi Helvetico proelio victos Caesar collocaverat Aeduisque attribuerat, oppugnare instituit. 5

X. Magnam haec res Caesari difficultatem ad consilium capiendum afferebat; si reliquam partem hiemis uno in loco legiones contineret, ne, stipendiariis Aeduōrum expugnatis, cuncta Gallia deficeret, quod nullum amicis in eo praesidium videret positum esse; sin maturius ex hiber- 10 nis educeret, ne ab re frumentariā duris subvectionibus laboraret. Praestare visum est tamen omnes difficultates perpeti, quam, tantā contumeliā acceptā, omnium suorum voluntates alienare. Itaque cōhortatus Aeduos de suppor- tando commeatu praemittit ad Boios, qui de suo adventu 15 doceant hortenturque, ut in fide maneant atque hostium impetum magno animo sustineant. Duabus Agedinci legionibus atque impedimentis totius exercitus relictis ad Boios proficiscitur.

XI. Altero die cū ad oppidum Senōnum Vellauno- 20 dūnum venisset, ne quem post se hostem relinqueret, quo expeditiore re frumentariā uteretur, oppugnare instituit idque biduo circumvallavit; tertio die missis ex oppido legatis de deditioe, arma conferri, jumenta produci, sexcentos obsides dari jubet. Ea qui conficeret, Gāium 25 Trebonium legatum relinquit; ipse ut quam primum iter faceret, Genābum Carnūtum proficiscitur, qui, tum primum allatō nuntio de oppugnatione Vellaunodūni, cum longius eam rem ductum iri existimarent, praesidium Genābi tuendi causā, quod eo mitterent, comparabant. Huc biduo 30 pervenit. Castris ante oppidum positis, diei tempore exclusus in posterum oppugnationem differt, quaeque ad eam rem usui sint, militibus imperat; et quod oppidum Genābum pons fluminis Ligēris continebat, veritus, ne noctu ex oppido profugerent, duas legiones in armis excubare jubet. 35 Genabenses paulo ante mediam noctem silentio ex oppido egressi flumen transire coeperunt. Quā re per exploratores nuntiātā, Caesar legiones, quas expeditas esse jusserat,



portis incensis, intromittit atque oppido potitur, perpaucis ex hostium numero desideratis, quin cuncti caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitudinis fugam intercluserant. Oppidum diripit atque incendit, praedam 5 militibus donat, exercitum Ligërim transducit atque in Biturïgum fines pervenit.

XII. Vercingetōrix, ubi de Caesāris adventu cognovit, oppugnatione destitit atque obviam Caesāri proficiscitur. Ille oppidum Biturïgum positum in viā Noviodūnum op- 10 pugnare instituerat. Quo ex oppido cum legati ad eum venissent oratum, ut sibi ignosceret suaeque vitae consulere, ut celeritate reliquas res conficeret, quā pleraque erat consecutus, arma conferri, equos produci, obsides dari jubet. Parte jam obsidum traditā, cum reliqua administrarentur, 15 centurionibus et paucis militibus intromissis, qui arma jumentaue conquirerent, equitatus hostium procul visus est, qui agmen Vercingetōrigis antecesserat. Quem simul atque oppidani conspexerunt atque in spem auxilii venerunt, clamore sublato, arma capere, portas claudere, mu- 20 rum complere coeperunt. Centuriones in oppido, cum ex significatione Gallōrum novi aliquid ab iis iniri consilii intellexissent, gladiis dstrictis, portas occupaverunt suosque omnes incolumes receperunt.

XIII. Caesar ex castris equitatum educi jubet proelium- 25 que equestre committit; laborantibus jam suis Germānos equites circiter quadringentos submittit, quos ab initio secum habere instituerat. Eorum impetum Galli sustinere non potuerunt, atque in fugam coniecti, multis amissis, se ad agmen receperunt: quibus profligatis, rursus 30 oppidani perterriti comprehensos eos, quorum operā plebem concitatum existimabant, ad Caesārem perduxerunt seseque ei dederunt. Quibus rebus confectis, Caesar ad oppidum Avarïcum, quod erat maximum munitissimumque in finibus Biturïgum atque agri fertilissimā regione, profec- 35 tus est; quod, eo oppido recepto, civitatem Biturïgum se in potestatem redacturum confidebat.

XIV. Vercingetōrix, tot continuis incommodis Vellau-  
nodūni, Genābi, Noviodūni acceptis, suos ad concilium

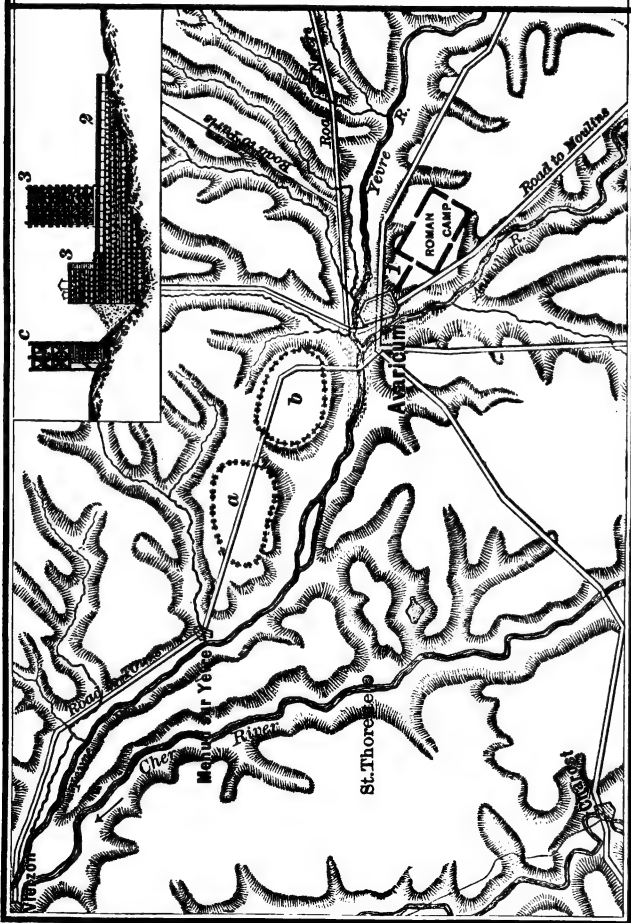
convocat. Docet longē aliā ratione esse bellum gerendum, atque antea sit gestum: omnibus modis huic rei studendum, ut pabulatione et commeatu Romāni prohibeantur. Id esse facile, quod equitatu ipsi abundant et quod anni tempore sublevantur; pabulum secari non posse; necessaria dispersos hostes ex aedificiis petere; hos omnes quotidie ab equitibus deleri posse. Praeterea salutis causā rei familiaris commoda negligenda; vicos atque aedificia incendi oportere hoc spatio quoquoersus, quo pabulandi causā adire posse videantur. Harum ipsis rerum copiam suppetere, quod, quorum in finibus bellum geratur, eorum opibus sublevantur; Romānos aut inopiam non laturos aut magno cum periculo longius ab castris progressuros; neque interesse, ipsosne interficiant impedimentisne exuant, quibus amissis, bellum geri non possit. Praeterea oppida incendi oportere, quae non munitione et loci naturā ab omni sint periculo tuta, neu suis sint ad detractandam militiam receptacula, neu Romānis proposita ad copiam commeatus praedamque tollendam. Haec si gravia aut acerba videntur, multo illa gravius aestimare debere, liberos, conjuges in servitutem abstrahi, ipsos interfici; quae sit necesse accidere victis.

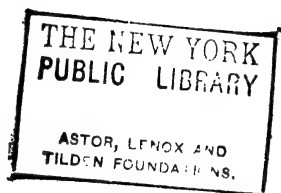
XV. Omnium consensu hac sententiā probatā, uno die amplius viginti urbes Biturigum incenduntur. Hoc idem fit in reliquis civitatibus. In omnibus partibus incendia conspiciuntur; quae etsi magno cum dolore omnes ferebant, tamen hoc sibi solatii proponebant, quod se, prope exploratā victoriā, celeriter amissa recuperaturos confidebant. Deliberatur de Avarico in communi concilio, incendi placeret, an defendi. Procumbunt omnibus Gallis ad pedes Bituriges, ne pulcherrimam prope totius Galliae urbem, quae et praesidio et ornamento sit civitati, suis manibus succendere cogerentur; facile se loci naturā defensuros dicunt, quod prope ex omnibus partibus flumine et palude circumdata unum habeat et perangustum aditum. Datur petentibus venia, dissuadente primo Vercingetorige, post concedente et precibus ipsorum et misericordiā vulgi. Defensores oppido idonei deliguntur.

XVI. Vercingetōrix minoribus Caesārem itineribus subsequitur et locum castris deligit paludibus silvisque munitum, ab Avarīco longe millia passuum sexdecim. Ibi per certos exploratores in singula diei tempora, quae ad Avarīcum agerentur, cognoscebat, et quid fieri vellet, imperabat; omnes nostras pabulationes frumentationesque observabat, dispersosque, cum longius necessario procederent, adoriebatur magnoque incommodo afficiebat; etsi, quantum ratione provideri poterat, ab nostris occurrebatur, ut  
10 incertis temporibus diversisque itineribus iretur.

XVII. Castris ad eam partem oppidi positis, Caesar, quae intermissa a flumine et a palude aditum, ut supra diximus, angustum habebat, aggerem apparare, vineas agere, turres duas constituere coepit; nam circumvallare  
15 loci natura prohibebat. De re frumentariā Boios atque Aeduos adhortari non destitit; quorum alteri, quod nullo studio agebant, non multum adjuvabant; alteri non magnis facultatibus, quod civitas erat exigua et infirma, celeriter, quod habuerunt, consumpserunt. Summā difficultate rei  
20 frumentariae affecto exercitu tenuitate Boiorum, indiligentiā Aeduorum, incendiis aedificiorum, usque eo ut complures dies milites frumento caruerint et pecore ex longinquioribus vicis adacto, extremam famem sustentarent, nulla tamen vox est ab iis audita populi Romāni majestate  
25 et superioribus victoriis indigna. Quin etiam Caesar cum in opere singulas legiones appellaret, et si acerbius inopiam ferrent, se dimissurum oppugnationem diceret, universi ab eo, ne id faceret, petebant: sic se complures annos illo imperante meruisse, ut nullam ignominiam acciperent, nunquam infectā re discederent: hoc se ignominiae laturos  
30 loco, si inceptam oppugnationem reliquissent: praestare omnes perferre acerbitates, quam non civibus Romānis, qui Genābi perfidiā Gallorum interissent, parentarent. Haec eadem centurionibus tribunisque militum mandabant, ut per eos ad Caesārem deferrentur.

XVIII. Cum jam muro turres appropinquassent, ex captivis Caesar cognovit, Vercingetorigem, consumpto pabulo, castra movisse propius Avarīcum atque ipsum cum





equitatu expeditisque, qui inter equites proeliari consuescent, insidiarum causā eo profectum, quo nostros postero die pabulatum venturos arbitraretur. Quibus rebus cognitis, mediā nocte silentio profectus ad hostium castra mane pervenit. Illi celeriter, per exploratores adventu Caesāris 5 cognito, carros impedimentaue sua in artiores silvas abdiderunt, copias omnes in loco edito atque aperto instruxerunt. Quā re nuntiātā, Caesar celeriter sarcinas conferri, arma expediti jussit.

XIX. Collis erat leniter ab infimo acclivis: hunc ex 10 omnibus fere partibus palus difficilis atque impedita cingebat non latior pedibus quinquaginta. Hoc se colle, interruptis pontibus, Galli fiduciā loci continebant, generatimque distributi in civitates omnia vada ac saltus ejus paludis certis custodiis obtinebant, sic animo parati, ut, si eam 15 paludem Romāni perrumpere conarentur, haesitantes premerent ex loco superiore; ut, qui propinquitatem loci videret, paratos prope aequo Marte ad dimicandum existimaret; qui iniquitatem conditionis perspiceret, inani simulatione sese ostentare cognosceret. Indignantes mili- 20 tes Caesar, quod conspectum suum hostes perferre possent, tantulo spatio interjecto, et signum proelii exposcentes edocet, quanto detrimento et quot virorum fortium morte necesse sit constare victoriam; quos cum sic animo paratos videat, ut nullum pro suā laude periculum recusent, 25 summae se iniquitatis condemnari debere, nisi eorum vitam suā salute habeat cariorem. Sic milites consolatus eodem die reducit in castra, reliquaue, quae ad oppugnationem oppidi pertinebant, administrare instituit.

XX. Vercingetōrix, cum ad suos redisset, proditionis 30 insimulatus, quod castra propius Romānos movisset, quod cum omni equitatu discessisset, quod sine imperio tantas copias reliquisset, quod ejus discessu Romāni tantā opportunitate et celeritate venissent; non haec omnia fortuito aut sine consilio accidere potuisse; regnum illum Galliae 35 malle Caesāris concessu quam ipsorum habere beneficio: tali modo accusatus ad haec respondit: Quod castra movisset, factum inopiā pabuli etiam ipsis hortantibus: quod

propius Romānos accessisset, persuasum loci opportunitate, qui se ipse munitione defenderet: equitum vero operam neque in loco palustri desiderari debuisset, et illic fuisse utilem, quo sint profecti: summam imperii se consulto  
5 nulli discedentem tradidisse, ne is multitudinis studio ad dimicandum impelleretur; cui rei propter animi molli-  
tiem studere omnes videret, quod diutius laborem ferre non possent. Romāni si casu intervenerint, fortunae, si alicujus indicio vocati, huic habendam gratiam, quod et  
10 paucitatem eorum ex loco superiore cognoscere, et virtu-  
tem despiciere potuerint, qui dimicare non ausi, turpiter se in castra receperint. Imperium se ab Caesāre per proditi-  
onem nullum desiderare, quod habere victoriā posset, quae jam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallis explorata: quin  
15 etiam ipsis remittere, si sibi magis honorem tribuere, quam ab se salutem accipere videantur. “Haec ut intelligatis,” inquit, “a me sincere pronuntiari, audite Romānos milites.” Producit servos, quos in pabulatione paucis ante diebus exceperat et fame vinculisque excrucia-  
20 verat. Hi jam ante edocti, quae interrogati pronuntiarent, milites se esse legionarios dicunt: fame et inopiā adductos clam ex castris exisse, si quid frumenti aut pecoris in agris reperire possent: simili omnem exercitum inopiā premi, nec jam vires sufficere cujusquam, nec ferre operis laborem posse:  
25 itaque statuisset imperatorem, si nihil in oppugnatione oppidi profecissent, triduo exercitum deducere. “Haec,” inquit, “a me,” Vercingetōrix, “beneficia habetis, quem proditi-  
onis insimulatis, cujus operā sine vestro sanguine tantum exercitum victorem fame consumptum videtis;  
30 quem turpiter se ex fugā recipientem ne qua civitas suis finibus recipiat, a me provisum est.”

XXI. Conclamat omnis multitudo et suo more armis concrepat, quod facere in eo consuerunt, cujus orationem approbant: Summum esse Vercingetōrigem ducem, nec de  
35 ejus fide dubitandum, nec majore ratione bellum administrari posse. Statuunt, ut decem millia hominum delecta ex omnibus copiis in oppidum submittantur, nec solis Biturigibus communem salutem committendam censent, quod

penes eos, si id oppidum retinuissent, summam victoriae constare intelligebant.

XXII. Singulari militum nostrorum virtuti consilia ejusque modi Gallorum occurrebant, ut est summae genus solertiae atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda, quae ab quoque traduntur, aptissimum. Nam et laqueis falces avertebant, quas cum destinaverant, tormentis introrsus reducebant; et aggerem cuniculis subtrahebant, eo scientius, quod apud eos magnae sunt ferrariae atque omne genus cuniculorum notum atque usitatum est. Totum autem murum ex omni parte turribus contabulaverant atque has coriis intexerant. Tum crebris diurnis nocturnisque eruptionibus aut aggeri ignem inferebant aut milites occupatos in opere adoriebantur; et nostrarum turrium altitudinem, quantum has quotidianus agger expresserat, commissis suarum turrium malis adaequabant; et apertos cuniculos praeenstā et praeacutā materiā et pice fervefactā et maximi ponderis saxis morabantur moenibusque appropinquare prohibebant.

XXIII. Muri autem omnes Gallici hac fere formā sunt. Trabes directae perpetuae in longitudinem paribus intervallis distantes inter se binos pedes, in solo collocantur: hae revinciuntur introrsus et multo aggere vestiuntur. Ea autem, quae diximus, intervalla grandibus in fronte saxis effarciuntur. His collocatis et coagmentatis alius insuper ordo additur, ut idem illud intervallum servetur, neque inter se contingant trabes, sed paribus intermissae spatiis, singulae, singulis saxis interjectis, arte contineantur. Sic deinceps omne opus contexitur, dum justa muri altitudo expleatur. Hoc cum in speciem varietatemque opus deforme non est, alternis trabibus ac saxis, quae rectis lineis suos ordines servant; tum ad utilitatem et defensionem urbium summam habet opportunitatem; quod et ab incendio lapis et ab ariete materia defendit, quae perpetuis trabibus pedes quadragenos plerumque introrsus revincta neque perrumpi neque distrahi potest.

XXIV. His tot rebus impeditā oppugnatione, milites cum toto tempore frigore et assiduīs imbribus tardarentur,



tamen continenti labore omnia haec superaverunt, et diebus viginti quinque aggerem latum pedes trecentos et triginta, altum pedes octoginta extruxerunt. Cum is murum hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus consu-  
5 **et** **suetudine** excubaret militesque hortaretur, ne quod omnino tempus ab opere intermitteretur, paulo ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fumare aggerem, quem cuniculo hostes succenderant; eodemque tempore toto muro clamore sublato, duabus portis ab utroque latere turrium  
10 **eruptio** fiebat. Alii faces atque aridam materiem de muro in aggerem eminus jaciebant, picem reliquasque res, quibus ignis excitari potest, fundebant, ut, quo primum occurreretur aut cui rei ferretur auxilium, vix ratio iniri posset. Tamen, quod instituto Caesaris semper duae legiones pro  
15 **castris** excubabant pluresque partitis temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut alii eruptionibus resisterent, alii turres reducerent aggeremque interscinderent, omnis vero ex castris multitudo ad restringendum concurreret.

XXV. Cum in omnibus locis consumptā jam reliquā  
20 **parte** noctis pugnaretur, semperque hostibus spes victoriae redintegraretur, eo magis, quod deustos pluteos turrium videbant nec facile adire apertos ad auxiliandum animadvertebant, semperque ipsi recentes defessis succederent omnemque Galliae salutem in illo vestigio temporis positi  
25 **tam** arbitrarentur, accidit inspectantibus nobis quod dignum memoriā visum praetereundum non existimavimus. Quidam ante portam oppidi Gallus, qui per manus sevi ac picis traditas glebas in ignem e regione turris projiciebat, scorpione ab latere dextro transjectus exanimatusque con-  
30 **cidit**. Hunc ex proximis unus jacentem transgressus eodem illo munere fungebatur: eādem ratione ictu scorpionis exanimato altero, successit tertius, et tertio quartus; nec prius ille est a propugnatoribus vacuus relictus locus, quam restincto aggere atque omni parte submotis hostibus  
35 **finis** est pugnandi factus.

XXVI. Omnia experti Galli, quod res nulla successerat, postero die consilium ceperunt ex oppido profugere, hortante et jubente Vercingetorige. Id silentio noctis conati

non magnā jacturā suorum sese effecturos sperabant, propterea quod neque longe ab oppido castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palus, quae perpetua intercedebat, Romānos ad insequendum tardabat. Jamque hoc facere noctu apparabant, cum matres familiae repente in publicum procurre- 5 runt flentesque projectae ad pedes suorum omnibus precibus petierunt, ne se et communes liberos hostibus ad supplicium dederent, quos ad capiendam fugam naturae et virium infirmitas impediret. Ubi eos in sententiā perstare viderunt, quod plerumque in summo periculo timor miseri- 10 cordiam non recipit, conclamare et significare de fugā Romānis coeperunt. Quo timore perterriti Galli, ne ab equitatu Romanōrum viae praeoccuparentur, consilio destiterunt.

XXVII. Postero die Caesar, promotā turri directisque 15 operibus, quae facere instituerat, magno coorto imbre, non inutilem hanc ad capiendum consilium tempestatem arbitratus, quod paulo incautius custodias in muro dispositas videbat, suos quoque languidius in opere versari jussit, et quid fieri vellet ostendit. Legiones intra vineas in occulto 20 expeditas cohortatur, ut aliquando pro tantis laboribus fructum victoriae perciperent; iis, qui primi murum ascendissent, praemia proposuit militibusque signum dedit. Illi subito ex omnibus partibus evolaverunt murumque celeriter compleverunt. 25

XXVIII. Hostes re novā perterriti, muro turribusque dejecti, in foro ac locis patentioribus cuneatim constituerunt, hoc animo, ut, si quā ex parte obviam contra veniretur, acie instructā depugnarent. Ubi neminem in aequum locum sese demittere, sed toto undique muro cir- 30 cumfundi viderunt, veriti, ne omnino spes fugae tolleretur, abjectis armis, ultimas oppidi partes continenti impetu petiverunt; parsque ibi, cum angusto exitu portarum se ipsi premerent, a militibus, pars jam egressa portis ab equitibus est interfecta: nec fuit quisquam, qui praedae 35 studeret. Sic et Genābi caede et labore operis incitati non aetate confectis, non mulieribus, non infantibus perpercerunt. Denique ex omni numero, qui fuit circiter

quadraginta millium, vix octingenti, qui primo clamore audito se ex oppido ejecerant, incolumes ad Vercingetorigem pervenerunt. Quos ille multā jam nocte silentio ex fugā excepit, veritus, ne qua in castris ex eorum concursu et  
5 misericordiā vulgi seditio oriretur, ut procul in viā dispositis familiaribus suis principibusque civitatum, disparandos deducendosque ad suos curaret, quae cuique civitati pars castrorum ab initio obvenerat.

XXIX. Postero die concilio convocato, consolatus co-  
10 hortatusque est, ne se admodum animo demitterent, ne perturbarentur incommodo: Non virtute neque in acie vicisse Romānos, sed artificio quodam et scientiā oppugnationis, cujus rei fuerint ipsi imperiti; errare, si qui in bello omnes secundos rerum proventus expectent; sibi nun-  
15 quam placuisse, Avaricum defendi, cujus rei testes ipsos haberet; sed factum imprudentiā Biturigum et nimiā obsequentiā reliquorum, uti hoc incommodum acciperetur: id tamen se celeriter majoribus commodis sanaturum. Nam quae ab reliquis Gallis civitates dissentirent, has suā dili-  
20 gentiā adjuncturum atque unum consilium totius Galliae effecturum, cujus consensu ne orbis quidem terrarum possit obsistere; idque se prope jam effectum habere. Interea aequum esse, ab iis communis salutis causā impetrari, ut castra munire instituerent, quo facilius repentinos  
25 hostium impetus sustinerent.

XXX. Fuit haec oratio non ingrata Gallis, et maxime, quod ipse animo non defecerat, tanto accepto incommodo, neque se in occultum abdiderat et conspectum multitudinis fugerat; plusque animo providere et praesentire existi-  
30 mabatur, quod re integrā primo incendendum Avaricum, post deserendum censuerat. Itaque ut reliquorum imperatorum res adversae auctoritatem minuunt, sic hujus ex contrario dignitas, incommodo accepto, in dies augebatur; simul in spem veniebant ejus affirmatione de reliquis ad-  
35 jungendis civitatibus, primumque eo tempore Galli castra munire instituerunt, et sic sunt animo consternati, homines insueti laboris, ut omnia, quae imperarentur, sibi patienda et perferenda existimarent.

XXXI. Nec minus, quam est pollicitus, Vercingetōrix animo laborabat, ut reliquas civitates adjungeret, atque earum principes donis pollicitationibusque alliciebat. Huic rei idoneos homines deligebat, quorum quisque aut oratione subdolā aut amicitia facillime capi posset. Qui Avarico expugnato refugerant, armandos vestiendosque curat. Simul ut diminutae copiae redintegrarentur, imperat certum numerum militum civitatibus, quem et quam antediem in castra adduci velit; sagittariosque omnes, quorum erat permagnus numerus in Gallia, conquiri et ad se mitti jubet. His rebus celeriter id, quod Avarici deperierat, expletur. Interim Teutomatus, Olloviconis filius, rex Nitiobrigum, cujus pater ab senatu nostro amicus erat appellatus, cum magno equitum suorum numero et quos ex Aquitania conduxerat ad eum pervenit.

XXXII. Caesar Avarici complures dies commoratus summamque ibi copiam frumenti et reliqui commeatus nactus, exercitum ex labore atque inopia refecit. Jam prope hieme confecta, cum ipso anni tempore ad gerendum bellum vocaretur et ad hostem proficisci constituisset, sive eum ex paludibus silvisque elicere, sive obsidione premere posset, legati ad eum principes Aeduorum veniunt oratum, ut maxime necessario tempore civitati subveniat: Summo esse in periculo rem, quod, cum singuli magistratus antiquitus creari atque regiam potestatem annum obtinere consuessent, duo magistratum gerant et se uterque eorum legibus creatum esse dicat. Horum esse alterum Convictolitavem, florentem et illustrem adolescentem; alterum Cotum, antiquissimam familiam natum atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et magnae cognationis, cujus frater Valetiacus proximo anno eundem magistratum gesserit: civitatem esse omnem in armis, divisum senatum, divisum populum, suas cujusque eorum clientelas. Quod si diutius alatur controversia, fore, uti pars cum parte civitatis confligat; id ne accidat, positum in ejus diligentiam atque auctoritate.

XXXIII. Caesar, etsi a bello atque hoste discedere detrimentosum esse existimabat, tamen non ignorans,

quanta ex dissensionibus incommoda oriri consuessent, ne tanta et tam conjuncta populo Romāno civitas, quam ipse semper aluisset omnibusque rebus ornasset, ad vim atque ad arma descenderet, atque ea pars, quae minus sibi confideret, auxilia a Vereingetōrige arcesseret, huic rei praevertendum existimavit; et quod legibus Aeduōrum iis, qui summum magistratum obtinerent, excedere ex finibus non liceret, ne quid de jure aut de legibus eorum deminuisse videretur, ipse in Aeduos proficisci statuit senatum-  
10 que omnem et quos inter controversia esset, ad se Dece-  
tiam evocavit. Cum prope omnis civitas eo convenisset, docereturque, paucis clam convocatis alio loco, alio tempore, atque oportuerit, fratrem a fratre renuntiatum, cum leges duo ex unā familiā, vivo utroque, non solum magis-  
15 tratus creari vetarent, sed etiam in senatu esse prohiberent, Cotum imperium deponere coëgit; Convictolitāvem, qui per sacerdotes more civitatis, intermissis magistratibus, esset creatus, potestatem obtinere jussit.

XXXIV. Hoc decreto interposito, cohortatus Aeduos  
20 ut controversiarum, ac dissensionum obliviscerentur, atque omnibus omissis rebus huic bello servirent, eaque, quae meruissent, praemia ab se, devictā Galliā, exspectarent, equitatumque omnem et peditum millia decem sibi celeriter mitterent, quae in praesidiis rei frumentariae causā  
25 disponderet, exercitum in duas partes divisit; quattuor legiones in Senōnes Parisiosque Labiēno ducendas dedit: sex ipse in Arvernos ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flumen Elāver duxit: equitatus partem illi attribuit, partem sibi reliquit. Quā re cognitā, Vereingetōrix, omnibus  
30 interruptis ejus fluminis pontibus, ab alterā Elavēris parte iter facere coepit.

XXXV. Cum uterque utrique esset exercitus in conspectu, fereque e regione castris castra poneret, dispositis exploratoribus, necubi effecto ponte Romāni copias  
35 transducerent, erat in magnis Caesaris difficultatibus res, ne majorem aestatis partem flumine impediretur, quod non fere ante autumnum Elāver vado transiri solēt. Itaque, ne id accideret, silvestri loco castris positus e regione unius

eorum pontium, quos Vercingetōrix rescindendos curaverat, postero die cum duabus legionibus in occulto restitit; reliquas copias cum omnibus impedimentis, ut consueverat, misit, captis quibusdam cohortibus, uti numerus legionum constare videretur. His quam longissime possent 5 progredi jussis, cum jam ex diei tempore conjecturam caperet in castra perventum, iisdem sublicis, quarum pars inferior integra remanebat, pontem reficere coepit. Celeriter effecto opere legionibusque transductis et loco castris idoneo delecto, reliquas copias revocavit. Vercingetōrix, 10 re cognitā, ne contra suam voluntatem dimicare cogeretur, magnis itineribus antecessit.

XXXVI. Caesar ex eo loco quintis castris Gergoviam pervenit, equestrique eo die proelio levi facto, perspecto urbis situ, quae posita in altissimo monte omnes aditus 15 difficiles habebat, de expugnatione desperavit; de obsessione non prius agendum constituit, quam rem frumentariam expedisset. At Vercingetōrix, castris prope oppidum in monte positis, mediocribus circum se intervallis separatim singularum civitatum copias collocaverat; atque omnibus 20 ejus jugi collibus occupatis, qua despici poterat, horribilem speciem praebebat; principesque earum civitatum, quos sibi ad consilium capiendum delegerat, primā luce quotidie ad se convenire jubebat, seu quid communicandum, seu quid administrandum videretur; neque ullum 25 fere diem intermittebat, quin equestri proelio, interjectis sagittariis, quid in quoque esset animi ac virtutis suorum, periclitaretur. Erat e regione oppidi collis sub ipsis radicibus montis, egregie munitus atque ex omni parte circumciscus, quem si tenerent nostri, et aquae magnā parte et 30 pabulatione liberā prohibitori hostes videbantur; sed is locus praesidio ab his non nimis firmo tenebatur; tamen silentio noctis Caesar ex castris egressus, priusquam subsidio ex oppido venire posset, dejecto praesidio, potitus loco, duas ibi legiones collocavit fossamque duplicem duodenum 35 pedum a majoribus castris ad minora perduxit, ut tuto ab repentino hostium incursu etiam singuli commeari possent.

XXXVII. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitāvis Aeduus, cui magistratum adjudicatum a Caesāre demonstravimus, sollicitatus ab Arvernīs pecuniā cum quibusdam adolescentibus colloquitur, quorum erat princeps  
5 Litavīcus atque ejus fratres, amplissimā familiā nati adolescentes. Cum his praemium communicat hortaturque, ut se liberos et imperio natos meminerint: Unam esse Aeduōrum civitatem, quae certissimam Galliae victoriam distineat; ejus auctoritate reliquas contineri; quā transductā locum  
10 consistendi Romānis in Galliā non fore: esse nonnullo se Caesāris beneficio affectum, sic tamen, ut justissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plus communi libertati tribuere: cur enim potius Aedui de suo jure et de legibus ad Caesārem disceptatorem, quam Romāni ad Aeduos veni-  
15 ant? Celeriter adolescentibus et oratione magistratus et praemio deductis, cum se vel principes ejus consilii fore profiterentur, ratio perficiendī quaerebatur, quod civitatem temere ad suscipiendum bellum adduci posse non confidebant. Placuit, uti Litavīcus decem illis millibus, quae  
20 Caesāri ad bellum mitterentur, praeficeretur atque ea ducenda curaret, fratresque ejus ad Caesārem praecurrerent. Reliqua quā ratione agi placeat, constituunt.

XXXVIII. Litavīcus, accepto exercitu, cum millia passuum circiter triginta ab Gergoviā abesset, convocatis  
25 subito militibus, lacrimans, "Quo proficiscimur," inquit, "milites? Omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas interiiit; principes civitatis, Eporedōrix et Viridomārus, insimulati proditiōnis ab Romānis, indictā causā, interfecti sunt. Haec ab his cognoscite, qui ex ipsā caede fugerunt:  
30 nam ego, fratribus atque omnibus meis propinquis interfectis, dolore prohibeor, quae gesta sunt, pronuntiare." Producentur ii, quos ille edocuerat, quae dici vellet, atque eadem, quae Litavīcus pronuntiaverat, multitudinī exponunt: Omnes equites Aeduōrum interfectos, quod collo-  
35 cuti cum Arvernīs dicerentur; ipsos se inter multitudinem militum occultasse atque ex mediā caede fugisse. Conclamant Aedui et Litavīcum obsecrant, ut sibi consulat. "Quasi vero," inquit ille, "consilii sit res, ac non necesse

sit nobis Gergoviam contendere et cum Arvernīs nosmet conjungere. An dubitamus, quin nefario facinore admissō Romāni jam ad nos interficiendos concurrant? Proinde, si quid in nobis animi est, persequamur eorum mortem, qui indignissime interierunt atque hos latrones interficiamus.” Ostendit cives Romānos, qui ejus praesidiū fiduciā una erant. Continuo magnum numerum frumenti com-  
meatusque diripit, ipsos crudeliter excruciatos interficit: nuntios totā civitate Aeduōrum dimittit, eodem mendacio de caede equitum et principum permovet; hortatur, ut 10 simili ratione, atque ipse fecerit, suas injurias persequantur.

XXXIX. Eporedōrix Aeduns, summo loco natus adolescens et summae domi potentiae, et una Viridomārus, pari aetate et gratiā, sed genere dispari, quem Caesar ab 15 Divitiāco sibi traditum ex humili loco ad summam dignitatem perduxerat, in equitum numero convenerant, nominatim ab eo evocati. His erat inter se de principatu contentio, et in illā magistratum controversiā alter pro Convictolitavē, alter pro Coto, summis opibus pugnave-  
rant. Ex iis Eporedōrix, cognito Litavīci consilio, mediā fere nocte rem ad Caesārem defert; orat, ne patiatur civitatem pravis adolescentium consiliis ab amicitia populi Romāni deficere, quod futurum provideat, si se tot hominum millia cum hostibus conjunxerint, quorum salutem 25 neque propinqui negligere, neque civitas levi momento aestimare posset.

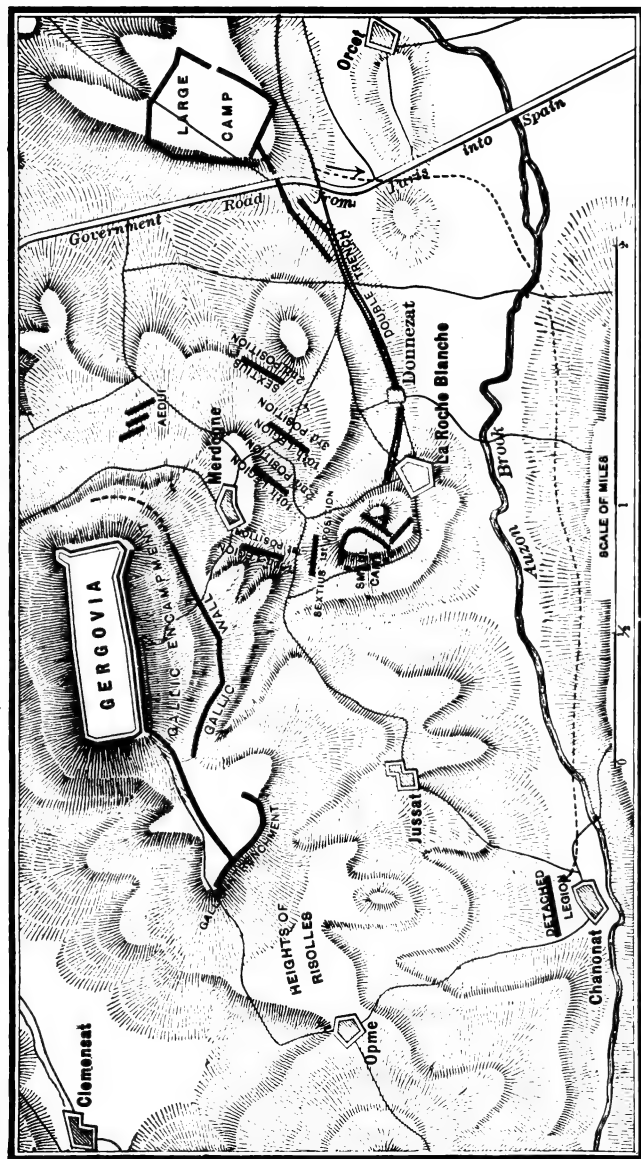
XL. Magnā affectus sollicitudine hoc nuntio Caesar, quod semper Aeduorum civitati praecipue indulserat, nullā interpositā dubitatione, legiones expeditas quattuor 30 equitatumque omnem ex castris educit; nec fuit spatium tali tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod res posita in celeritate videbatur. Gāium Fabium legatum cum legionibus duabus castris praesidio relinquit. Fratres Litavīci cum comprehendi jussisset, paulo ante reperit ad hostes 35 profugisse. Adhortatus milites, ne necessario tempore itineris labore permoveantur, cupidissimis omnibus progressus millia passuum viginti quinque, agmen Aeduōrum

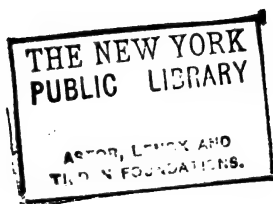


conspicatus, immisso equitatu, iter eorum moratur atque impedit interdicique omnibus, ne quemquam interficiant. Eporedorigem et Viridomārum, quos illi interfectos existimabant, inter equites versari suosque appellare jubet. His  
 5 cognitis et Litavīci fraude perspectā, Aedui manus tendere, deditionem significare et, projectis armis, mortem deprecari incipiunt. Litavīcus cum suis clientibus, quibus more Gallōrum nefas est etiam in extremā fortunā deserere patronos, Gergoviam profugit.

- 10 XLI. Caesar, nuntiis ad civitatem Aeduōrum missis, qui suo beneficio conservatos docerent, quos jure belli interficere potuisset, tribusque horis noctis exercitui ad quietem datis, castra ad Gergoviam movit. Medio fere itinere equites ab Fabio missi, quanto res in periculo fuerit, ex-  
 15 ponunt: summis copiis castra oppugnata demonstrant; cum crebro integri defessis succederent nostrosque assiduo labore defatigarent, quibus propter magnitudinem castrorum perpetuo esset iisdem in vallo permanendum; multitudine sagittarum atque omnis generis telorum mul-  
 20 tos vulneratos; ad haec sustinenda magno usui fuisse tormenta; Fabium discessu eorum, duabus relictis portis, obstruere ceteras pluteosque vallo addere et se in posterum diem similem ad casum parare. His rebus cognitis, Caesar summo studio militum ante ortum solis in castra  
 25 pervenit.

- XLII. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Aedui primis nuntiis ab Litavīco acceptis nullum sibi ad cognoscendum spatium relinquunt. Impellit alios avaritia, alios iracundia et temeritas, quae maxime illi hominum generi est innata,  
 30 ut levem auditionem habeant pro re compertā. Bona civium Romanōrum diripiunt, caedes faciunt, in servitutem abstrahunt. Adjuvat rem proclinatam Convictolitāvis plebemque ad furorem impellit, ut facinore admissio ad sanitatem reverti pudeat. Marcum Aristium tribunum  
 35 militum iter ad legionem facientem, fide datā ex oppido Cabillōno educunt: idem facere cogunt eos, qui negotiandi causā ibi constiterant. Hos continuo in itinere adorti omnibus impedimentis exuunt; repugnantes diem noctemque





obsident; multis utrimque interfectis, majorem multitudinem ad arma concitant.

XLIII. Interim nuntio allato, omnes eorum milites in potestate Caesaris teneri, concurrunt ad Aristium; nihil publico factum consilio demonstrant; quaestionem de bonis 5 direptis decernunt; Litavici fratrumque bona publicant; legatos ad Caesarem sui purgandi gratiam mittunt. Haec faciunt recuperandorum suorum causam: sed contaminati facinore et capti compendio ex direptis bonis, quod ea res ad multos pertinebat, et timore poenae exterriti, consilia 10 clam de bello inire incipiunt civitatesque reliquas legationibus sollicitant. Quae tametsi Caesar intelligebat, tamen quam mitissime potest legatos appellat: nihil se propter inscientiam levitatemque vulgi gravius de civitate judicare, neque de sua in Aeduos benevolentiam deminuere. 15 Ipse, majorem Galliae motum exspectans, ne ab omnibus civitatibus circumsisteretur, consilia inibat, quemadmodum ab Gergoviam discederet ac rursus omnem exercitum contraheret, ne profectio nata ab timore defectionis similis fugae videretur.

20

XLIV. Haec cogitanti accidere visa est facultas bene rei gerendae. Nam cum minora in castra operis perspicendi causam venisset, animadvertit collem, qui ab hostibus tenebatur, nudatum hominibus, qui superioribus diebus vix prae multitudine cerni poterat. Admiratus quaerit ex 25 perfugis causam, quorum magnus ad eum quotidie numerus confluebat. Constabat inter omnes, quod jam ipse Caesar per exploratores cognoverat, dorsum esse ejus jugi prope aequum, sed hunc silvestrem et angustum, qua esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidi: vehementer huic illos 30 loco timere nec jam aliter sentire, uno colle ab Romanis occupato, si alterum amisissent, quin paene circumvallati atque omni exitu et pabulatione interclusi viderentur: ad hunc muniendum omnes a Vercingetorige evocatos.

XLV. Hac re cognita, Caesar mittit complures equitum 35 turmas eo de media nocte: iis imperat, ut paulo tumultuosius omnibus in locis vagarentur. Prima luce magnum numerum impedimentorum ex castris mulorumque produci

deque his stramenta detrahi mulionesque cum cassidibus equitum specie ac simulatione collibus circumvehi jubet. His paucos addit equites, qui latius ostentationis causā vagarentur. Longo circuitu easdem omnes jubet  
5 petere regiones. Haec procul ex oppido videbantur, ut erat a Gergoviā despectus in castra; neque tanto spatium, certi quid esset, explorari poterat. Legionem unam eodem jugo mittit et paulum progressam inferiore constituit loco silvisque occultat. Augetur Gallis suspicio atque  
10 omnes illo ad munitionem copiae transducuntur. Vacua castra hostium Caesar conspicatus, tectis insignibus suorum occultatisque signis militaribus, raros milites, ne ex oppido animadverterentur, ex majoribus castris in minora transducit legatisque, quos singulis legionibus praefecerat, quid  
15 fieri vellet, ostendit; imprimis monet, ut contineant milites, ne studio pugnandi aut spe praedae longius progrediantur; quid iniquitas loci habeat incommodi, proponit; hoc unā celeritate posse mutari; occasionis esse rem, non proelii. His rebus expositis, signum dat et ab dextrā parte alio  
20 ascensu eodem tempore Aeduos mittit.

XLVI. Oppidi murus ab planitie atque initio ascensus rectā regione, si nullus amfractus intercederet, mille et ducentos passus aberat: quidquid huic circuitus ad molliendum clivum accesserat, id spatium itineris augebat. A  
25 medio fere colle in longitudinem, ut natura montis ferebat, ex grandibus saxis sex pedum murum, qui nostrorum impetum tardaret, praeduxerant Galli atque, inferiore omni spatio vacuo relicto, superiorem partem collis usque ad murum oppidi densissimis castris compleverant. Milites,  
30 dato signo, celeriter ad munitionem perveniunt eamque transgressi trinis castris potiuntur. Ac tanta fuit in castris capiendis celeritas, ut Teutomātus, rex Nitiobrigum, subito in tabernaculo oppressus, ut meridie conquieverat, superiore corporis parte nudatā, vulnerato equo, vix se ex  
35 manibus praedantium militum eriperet.

XLVII. Consecutus id, quod animo proposuerat, Caesar receptui cani jussit legionisque decimae, quācum erat, concionatus signa constituit. At reliquarum milites legionum

non exaudito sono tubae, quod satis magna vallis intercedebat, tamen ab tribunis militum legatisque, ut erat a Caesare praeceptum, retinebantur: sed elati spe celeris victoriae et hostium fugā et superiorum temporum secundis proeliis, nihil adeo arduum sibi esse existimaverunt, 5 quod non virtute consequi possent; neque prius finem sequendi fecerunt, quam muro oppidi portisque appropinquarunt. Tum vero ex omnibus urbis partibus orto clamore, qui longius aberant repentino tumultu perterriti, cum hostem intra portas esse existimarent, sese ex oppido 10 ejecerunt. Matres familiae de muro vestem argentumque jactabant et pectore nudo prominentes passis manibus obtestabantur Romanos, ut sibi parcerent, neu, sicut Avarici fecissent, ne mulieribus quidem atque infantibus abstinerent. Nonnullae de muris per manus demissae sese 15 militibus tradebant. Lucius Fabius, centurio legionis octavae, quem inter suos eo die dixisse constabat, excitari se Avaricensibus praemiis neque commissurum, ut prius quisquam murum ascenderet, tres suos nactus manipulares atque ab iis sublevatus murum ascendit. Hos ipse rursus 20 singulos exceptans in murum extulit.

XLVIII. Interim ii, qui ad alteram partem oppidi, ut supra demonstravimus, munitionis causā convenerant, primo exaudito clamore, inde etiam crebris nuntiis incitati, oppidum ab Romanis teneri, praemissis equitibus, magno 25 concursu eo contenderunt. Eorum ut quisque primus venerat, sub muro consistebat suorumque pugnantium numerum augebat. Quorum cum magna multitudo convenisset, matres familiae, quae paulo ante Romanis de muro manus tendebant, suos obtestari et more Gallico 30 passum capillum ostentare liberosque in conspectum proferre coeperunt. Erat Romanis nec loco nec numero aequa contentio: simul et cursu et spatio pugnae defatigati non facile recentes atque integros sustinebant.

XLIX. Caesar, cum iniquo loco pugnari hostiumque 35 augeri copias videret, praemetuens suis ad Titum Sextium legatum, quem minoribus castris praesidio reliquerat, misit, ut cohortes ex castris celeriter educeret et sub infimo colle

ab dextro latere hostium constitueret, ut, si nostros loco depulsos vidisset, quo minus libere hostes insequerentur, terreret. Ipse paulum ex eo loco cum legione progressus, ubi constiterat, eventum pugnae expectabat.

5 L. Cum acerrime comminus pugnaretur, hostes loco et numero, nostri virtute confiderent, subito sunt Aedui visi ab latere nostris aperto, quos Caesar ab dextrā parte alio ascensu manus distinendae causā miserat. Hi similitudine armorum vehementer nostros perterruerunt; ac tametsi  
10 dextris humeris exsertis animadvertēbantur, quod insigne pacatum esse consuerat, tamen id ipsum sui fallendi causā milites ab hostibus factum existimabant. Eodem tempore Lucius Fabius centurio quique una murum ascenderant, circumventi atque interfecti de muro praecipitantur. Mar-  
15 cus Petronius, ejusdem legionis centurio, cum portas excidere conatus esset, a multitudine oppressus ac sibi desperans, multis jam vulneribus acceptis, manipularibus suis, qui illum secuti erant, “Quoniam,” inquit, “me una vobiscum servare non possum, vestrae quidem certe vitae  
20 prospiciam, quos cupiditate gloriae adductus in periculum deduxi. Vos datā facultate vobis consulite.” Simul in medios hostes irrupit, duobusque interfectis reliquos a portā paulum submovit. Conantibus auxiliari suis, “Frustra,” inquit, “meae vitae subvenire conamini, quem jam  
25 sanguis viresque deficiunt: proinde abite, dum est facultas, vosque ad legionem recipite.” Ita pugnans post paulum concidit ac suis saluti fuit.

LI. Nostri cum undique premerentur, quadraginta sex centurionibus amissis, dejecti sunt loco; sed intolē-  
30 rantius Gallos insequentes legio decima tardavit, quae pro subsidio paulo aequiore loco constiterat. Hanc rursus decimae tertiae legionis cohortes exceperunt, quae ex castris minoribus eductae cum Tito Sextio legato ceperant locum superiorem. Legiones, ubi primum planitiem attigerunt, infestis contra hostes signis constiterunt. Vercingetōrix ab radicibus collis suos intra munitiones reduxit. Eo die milites sunt paulo minus septingenti desiderati.

LII. Postero die Caesar, concione advocatā, temeritatem

cupiditatemque militum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsi judicavissent, quo procedendum aut quid agendum videretur, neque signo recipiendi dato constitissent, neque a tribunis militum legatisque retineri potuissent: exposuit, quid iniquitas loci posset, quid ipse ad Avaricum sensisset, cum, 5 sine duce et sine equitatu deprehensis hostibus, exploratam victoriam dimisisset, ne parvum modo detrimentum in contentione propter iniquitatem loci accideret. Quanto opere eorum animi magnitudinem admiraretur, quos non castorum munitiones, non altitudo montis, non murus oppidi 10 tardare potuisset, tanto opere licentiam arrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plus se quam imperatorem de victoria atque exitu rerum sentire existimarent: nec minus se in milite modestiam et continentiam quam virtutem atque animi magnitudinem desiderare. 15

LIII. Hac habitā concione et ad extremum oratione confirmatis militibus, ne ob hanc causam animo permoverentur, neu, quod iniquitas loci attulisset, id virtuti hostium tribuerent, eadem de profectioe cogitans, quae ante senserat, legiones ex castris eduxit aciemque idoneo loco 20 constituit. Quum Vercingetōrix nihilo magis in aequum locum descenderet, levi facto equestri proelio atque eo secundo, in castra exercitum reduxit. Cum hoc idem postero die fecisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentationem minuendam militumque animos confirmandos factum existi- 25 mans, in Aeduos movit castra. Ne tum quidem insecutis hostibus tertio die ad flumen Elāver pontes reficit atque exercitum transducit.

LIV. Ibi a Viridomāro atque Eporedorīge Aeduis appellatus discit, cum omni equitatu Litavicum ad sollicitan- 30 dos Aeduos profectum: opus esse ipsos antecedere ad confirmandam civitatem. Etsi multis jam rebus perfidiam Aeduorum perspectam habebat atque horum discessu ad maturari defectionem civitatis existimabat, tamen eos retinendos non censuit, ne aut inferre injuriam videretur 35 aut dare timoris aliquam suspicionem. Discedentibus his, breviter sua in Aeduos merita exposuit: quos et quam humiles accepisset, compulsos in oppida, multatos agris,



omnibus ereptis copiis, imposito stipendio, obsidibus summā cum contumeliā extortis, et quam in fortunam quamque in amplitudinem deduxisset, ut non solum in pristinum statum redissent, sed omnium temporum dignitatem et gratiam antecessisse viderentur. His datis mandatis, eos ab se dimisit.

LV. Noviodūnum erat oppidum Aeduōrum ad ripas Ligēris opportuno loco positum. Huc Caesar omnes obsides Galliae, frumentum, pecuniam publicam, suorum atque exercitus impedimentorum magnam partem contulerat; huc magnum numerum equorum hujus belli causā in Italiā atque Hispaniā coēptum miserat. Eo cum Eporedōrix Viridomārusque venissent et de statu civitatis cognovissent, Litavicum Bibracte ab Aeduis receptum, quod est oppidum apud eos maximae auctoritatis, Convictolitavem magistratum magnamque partem senatus ad eum convenisse, legatos ad Vercingetorīgem de pace et amicitia conciliandā publice missos, non praetermittendum tantum commodum existimaverunt. Itaque interfectis Noviodūni custodibus quique eo negotiandi causā convenerant, pecuniam atque equos inter se partiti sunt; obsides civitatum Bibracte ad magistratum deducendos curaverunt; oppidum, quod ab se teneri non posse judicabant, ne cui esset usui Romānis, incenderunt; frumenti quod subito potuerunt, navibus avexerunt, reliquum flumine atque incendio corruerunt; ipsi ex finitimis regionibus copias cogere, praesidia custodiasque ad ripas Ligēris disponere equitatumque omnibus locis injiciendi timoris causā ostentare coeperunt, si ab re frumentariā Romānos excludere possent. Quam ad spem multum eos adjuvabat, quod Liger ex nivibus creverat, ut omnino vado non posse transiri videretur.

LVI. Quibus rebus cognitis, Caesar maturandum sibi censuit, si esset in perficiendis pontibus periclitandum, ut prius, quam essent majores eo coactae copiae, dimicaret. Nam ut, commutato consilio, iter in provinciam converteret, id ne tum quidem necessario faciendum existimabat: cum infamia atque indignitas rei et oppositus mons

Cevenna viarumque difficultas impediēbat, tum maxime, quod abjuncto Labiēno atque iis legionibus, quas una miserat, vehementer timebat. Itaque admodum magnis diurnis nocturnisque itineribus confectis, contra omnium opinionem ad Ligērim venit, vadoque per equites invento pro rei 5 necessitate opportuno, ut brachia modo atque humeri ad sustinenda arma liberi ab aquā esse possent, disposito equitatu, qui vim fluminis refringeret, atque hostibus primo aspectu perturbatis, incolumem exercitum transduxit; frumentumque in agris et pecoris copiam nactus, repleto his 10 rebus exercitu, iter in Senōnes facere instituit.

LVII. Dum haec apud Caesārem geruntur Labiēnus, eo supplemento, quod nuper ex Italiā venerat, relicto Agēdinci, ut esset impedimentis praesidio, cum quattuor legionibus Lutetiam proficiscitur. Id est oppidum Parisiōrum 15 quod positum est in insulā fluminis Sequānae: ejus adventu ab hostibus cognito, magnae ex finitimis civitatibus copiae convenerunt. Summa imperii traditur Camulogēno Aulercō, qui, prope confectus aetate, tamen propter singularem scientiam rei militaris, ad eum est honorem evocatus. 20 Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse paludem, quae influeret in Sequānam atque illum omnem locum magnopere impediret, hic consedit nostrosque transitu prohibere instituit.

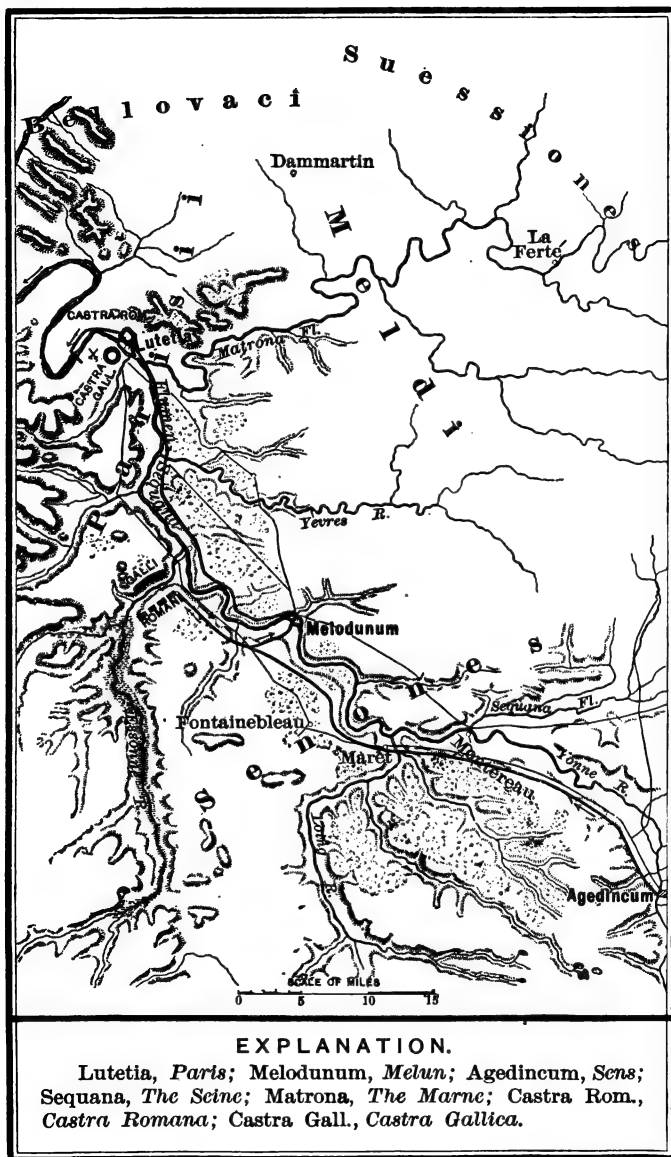
LVIII. Labiēnus primo vineas agere, cratibus atque agere 25 paludem explere atque iter munire conabatur. Postquam id difficiliter confieri animadvertit, silentio e castris tertiā vigiliā egressus, eodem quo venerat itinere Melodūnum pervenit. Id est oppidum Senōnum in insulā Sequānae positum, ut paulo ante de Lutetiā diximus. Deprehen- 30 sis navibus circiter quinquaginta celeriterque conjunctis atque eo militibus impositis et rei novitate perterritis oppidanis, quorum magna pars erat ad bellum evocata, sine contentione oppido potitur. Refecto ponte, quem superioribus diebus hostes resciderant, exercitum transducit et 34 secundo flumine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit. Hostes, re cognitā ab iis, qui a Melodūno profugerant, Lutetiam incendi pontesque ejus oppidi rescindi jubent: ipsi profecti

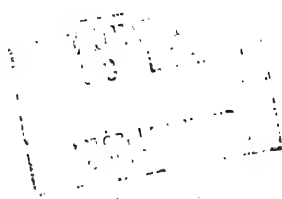
a palude ad ripas Sequānae e regione Lutetiae contra Labiēni castra considunt.

LIX. Jam Caesar a Gergoviā discessisse audiebatur; jam de Aeduōrum defectione et secundo Galliae motu rumores  
5 afferebantur, Gallique in colloquiis interclusum itinere et Ligēri Caesārem inopiā frumenti coactum in provinciam contendisse confirmabant. Bellovāci autem, defectione Aeduōrum cognitā, qui ante erant per se infideles, manus cogere atque aperte bellum parare coeperunt. Tum Labi-  
10 ēnus tantā rerum commutatione longe aliud sibi capiendum consilium, atque antea senserat, intelligebat; neque jam, ut aliquid acquireret proelioque hostes lacerasset, sed ut incolumem exeroitum Agedincum reduceret, cogitabat. Namque alterā ex parte Bellovāci, quae civitas in Galliā  
15 maximam habet opinionem virtutis, instabant; alteram Camulogēnus parato atque instructo exercitu tenebat; tum legiones a praesidio atque impedimentis interclusas maximum flumen distinebat. Tantis subito difficultatibus objectis, ab animi virtute auxilium petendum videbat.

20 LX. Itaque sub vespere consilio convocato, cohortatus, ut ea, quae imperasset, diligenter industrieque administrarent, naves, quas a Melodūno deduxerat, singulas equitibus Romānis attribuit, et, primā confectā vigiliā, quattuor millia passuum secundo flumine silentio progredi ibique se  
25 exspectari jubet. Quinque cohortes, quas minime firmas ad dimicandum esse existimabat, castris praesidio relinquit; quinque ejusdem legionis reliquas de mediā nocte cum omnibus impedimentis adverso flumine magno tumultu proficisci imperat. Conquirat etiam lintres; has magno  
30 sonitu remorum incitatas in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulo, silentio egressus cum tribus legionibus eum locum petit, quo naves appellii jusserat.

LXI. Eo cum esset ventum, exploratores hostium, ut omni fluminis parte erant dispositi, inopinantes, quod  
35 magna subito erat coorta tempestas, ab nostris opprimuntur: exercitus equitatusque, equitibus Romānis administrantibus, quos ei negotio praefecerat, celeriter transmittitur. Uno fere tempore sub lucem hostibus nuntiatur in





castris Romanōrum praeter consuetudinem tumultuari et magnum ire agmen adverso flumine, sonitumque remorum in eādem parte exaudiri et paulo infra milites navibus transportari. Quibus rebus auditis, quod existimabant tribus locis transire legiones atque omnes perturbatos defectione Aeduōrum fugam parare, suas quoque copias in tres partes distribuerunt. Nam praesidio e regione castrorum relictis et parvā manu Melodūnum versus missā, quae tantum progrediatur, quantum naves processissent, reliquas copias contra Labiēnum duxerunt. 10

LXII. Primā luce et nostri omnes erant transportati et hostium acies cernebatur. Labiēnus milites cohortatus, et suae pristinae virtutis et tot secundissimorum proeliorum memoriam retinerent atque ipsum Caesārem, cujus ductu saepenumero hostes superassent, praesentem 15 adesse existimarent, dat signum proelii. Primo concursu ab dextro cornu, ubi septima legio constiterat, hostes pelluntur atque in fugam conjiciuntur: ab sinistro, quem locum duodecima legio tenebat, cum primi ordines hostium transfixi pilis concidissent, tamen acerrime reliqui 20 resistebant, nec dabat suspicionem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulogēnus suis aderat atque eos cohortabatur. Incerto etiam nunc exitu victoriae, cum septimae legionis tribunis esset nuntiatum, quae in sinistro cornu gererentur, post tergum hostium legionem ostenderunt 25 signaque intulerunt. Ne eo quidem tempore quisquam loco cessit, sed circumventi omnes interfectique sunt. Eandem fortunam tulit Camulogēnus. At ii, qui praesidio contra castra Labiēni erant relictis, cum proelium commissum audissent, subsidio suis ierunt collemque cepe- 30 runt neque nostrorum militum victorum impetum sustinere potuerunt. Sic cum suis fugientibus permixti, quos non silvae montesque texerunt, ab equitatu sunt interfecti. Hoc negotio confecto, Labiēnus revertitur Agedincum, ubi impedimenta totius exercitus relictis erant; inde cum 35 omnibus copiis ad Caesārem pervenit.

LXIII. Defectione Aeduōrum cognitā bellum augetur. Legationes in omnes partes circummittuntur: quantum

gratiā, auctoritate, pecuniā valent, ad sollicitandas civitates nituntur. Nacti obsides, quos Caesar apud eos deposuerat, horum supplicio dubitantes territant. Petunt a Vercingetorīge Aedui, ad se veniat rationesque belli **5** **rendi** communicet. Re impetratā, contendunt ut ipsis summa imperii tradatur; et, re in controversiam deductā, totius Galliae concilium Bibracte indicitur. Conveniunt undique frequentes. Multitudinis suffragiis **res** permittitur: ad unum omnes Vercingetorīgem probant imperatorem.

**10** Ab hoc concilio Remi, Lingōnes, Trevīri abfuerunt: illi, quod amicitiam Romanōrum sequebantur; Trevīri, quod aberant longius et ab Germānis premebantur; quae fuit causa, quare toto abessent bello et neutris auxilia mitterent. Magno dolore Aedui ferunt se dejectos principatu; querun-

**15** tur fortunae commutationem et Caesāris in se indulgentiam requirunt; neque tamen, suscepto bello, suum consilium ab reliquis separare audent. Inviti summae spei adolescentes Eporedōrix et Viridomārus Vercingetorīgi parent.

**LXIV.** Ipse imperat reliquis civitatibus obsides diem-

**20** que huic rei constituit: omnes equites, quindecim millia numero, celeriter convenire jubet: peditatu, quem antea habuerat, se fore contentum dicit, neque fortunam tentaturum aut in acie dimicaturum; sed, quoniam abundet equitatu, perfacile esse factu frumentationibus pabulationi-

**25** busque Romānos prohibere; aequo modo animo sua ipsi frumenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant, quā rei familiaris jacturā perpetuum imperium libertatemque se consequi videant. His constitutis rebus, Aeduis Segusiāvisque, qui sunt finitimi provinciae, decem millia peditum imperat:

**30** huc addit equites octingentos. His praeficit fratrem Eporedorīgis bellumque inferri Allobrogībus jubet. Alterā ex parte Gabālos proximosque pagos Arvenōrum in Helvios, item Rutēnos Cadurcosque ad fines Volcārum Arecomicōrum depopulandos mittit. Nihilo minus clandestinis nun-

**35** tiis legationibusque Allobrōgas sollicitat, quorum mentes nondum ab superiore bello resedissee sperabat. Horum principibus pecunias, civitati autem imperium totius provinciae pollicetur.

LXV. Ad hos omnes casus provisa erant praesidia cohortium duarum et viginti, quae ex ipsā coacta provinciā ab Lucio Caesāre legato ad omnes partes opponebantur. Helvii suā sponte cum finitimis proelio congressi pelluntur, et Gāio Valerio Donnotauro, Cabūri filio, principe civitatis 5 compluribusque aliis interfectis, intra oppida murosque compelluntur. Allobrōges, crebris ad Rhodānum dispositis praesidiis, magnā cum curā et diligentia suos fines tuentur. Caesar quod hostes equitatu superiores esse intelligebat, et, interclusis omnibus itineribus, nullā re ex 10 provinciā atque Italiā sublevare poterat, trans Rhenum in Germaniam mittit ad eas civitates, quas superioribus annis pacaverat, equitesque ab his arcessit et levis armaturae pedites, qui inter eos proeliari consueverant. Eorum adventu, quod minus idoneis equis utebantur, a tribunis 15 militum reliquisque equitibus Romānis atque evocatis equos sumit Germānisque distribuit.

LXVI. Interea dum haec geruntur, hostium copiae ex Arvernīs equitesque, qui toti Galliae erant imperati, conveniunt. Magno horum coacto numero, cum Caesar in 20 Sequānos per extremos Lingōnum fines iter faceret, quo facilius subsidium provinciae ferri posset, circiter millia passuum decem ab Romānis trinis castris Vercingetōrix consedit, convocatisque ad concilium praefectis equitum, venisse tempus victoriae demonstrat: fugere in provinci- 25 am Romānos Galliāque excedere; id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam libertatem satis esse; ad reliqui temporis pacem atque otium parum profici; majoribus enim coactis copiis, reversuros neque finem bellandi facturos. Proinde in agmine impeditos adoriantur. Si pedites suis 30 auxilium ferant atque in eo morentur, iter facere non posse; si (id quod magis futurum confidat), relictis impedimentis, suae saluti consulant, et usu rerum necessariarum et dignitate spoliatum iri. Nam de equitibus hostium, quin nemo eorum progredi modo extra agmen audeat, et 35 ipsos quidem non debere dubitare. Id quo majore faciant animo, copias se omnes pro castris habiturum et terrore hostibus futurum. Conclamant equites, sanctissimo

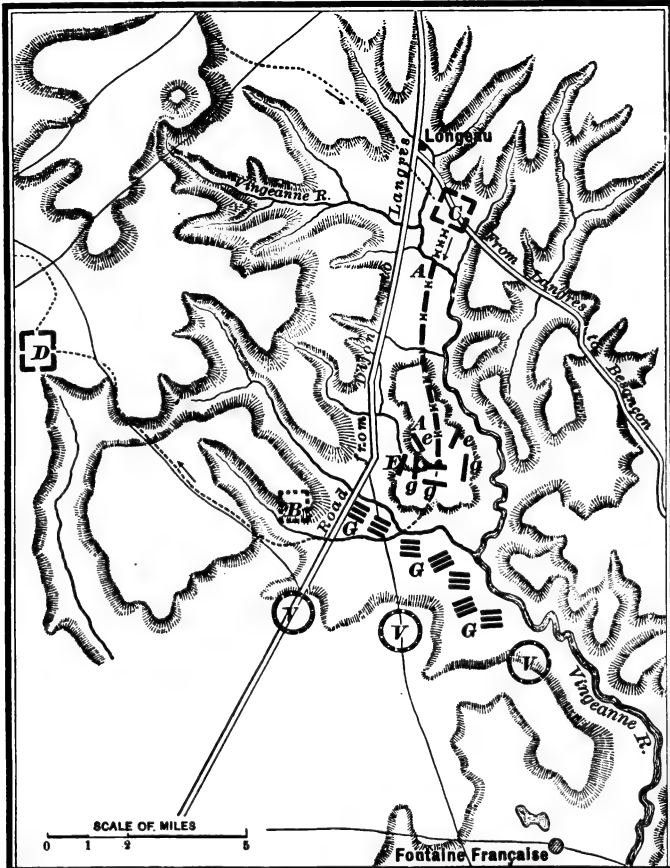


jurejurando confirmari oportere, ne tecto recipiatur, ne ad liberos, ne ad parentes, ne ad uxorem aditum habeat, qui non bis per agmen hostium perequitasset.

LXVII. Probata re atque omnibus jurejurando adactis, 5 postero die in tres partes distributo equitatu, duae se acies ab duobus lateribus ostendunt; una a primo agmine iter impedire coepit. Quā re nuntiata, Caesar suum quoque equitatum tripartito divisum contra hostem ire jubet. Pugnatur una omnibus in partibus; consistit agmen: im- 10 pedimenta inter legiones recipiuntur. Si quā in parte nostri laborare aut gravius premi videbantur, eo signa inferri Caesar aciemque constitui jubebat: quae res et hostes ad insequendum tardabat, et nostros spe auxilii confirmabat. Tandem Germāni ab dextro latere summum 15 jugum nacti hostes loco depellunt; fugientes usque ad flumen, ubi Vercingetōrix cum pedestribus copiis consederat, persequuntur compluresque interficiunt. Quā re animadversā, reliqui, ne circumvenirentur, veriti se fugae mandant. Omnibus locis fit caedes: tres nobilissimi Aedui 20 capti ad Caesārem perducuntur: Cotus praefectus equitum, qui controversiam cum Convictolitavē proximis comitiis habuerat, et Cavarillus, qui post defectionem Litavici pedestribus copiis praefuerat, et Eporedōrix, quo duce ante adventum Caesāris Aedui cum Sequānis bello con- 25 tenderant.

LXVIII. Fugato omni equitatu, Vercingetōrix copias suas, ut pro castris collocaverat, reduxit; protinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit, celeriterque impedimenta ex castris educi et se subsequi 30 jussit. Caesar, impedimentis in proximum collem deductis, duabus legionibus praesidio relictis, secutus, quantum diei tempus est passum, circiter tribus millibus hostium ex novissimo agmine interfectis, altero die ad Alesiam castra fecit. Perspecto urbis situ perterritisque hostibus, quod 35 equitatu, quā maxime parte exercitus confidebant, erant pulsī, adhortatus ad laborem milites Alesiam circumvallare instituit.

LXIX. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summo, admodum



### EXPLANATION.

- A, A. Roman column on the march.
- B. Baggage of the Romans.
- C. Roman camp the night before the battle.
- D. Roman camp the night after the battle.
- e. Caesar's cavalry in three divisions.
- E. German cavalry in Caesar's service.
- g. The enemy's cavalry.
- G. The enemy's infantry in line of battle.
- V. The three camps of Vercingetorix.



edito loco, ut nisi obsidione expugnari non posse videretur. Cujus collis radices duo duabus ex partibus flumina sublu-  
ebant. Ante id oppidum planities circiter millia passuum  
tria in longitudinem patebat: reliquis ex omnibus partibus  
colles, mediocri interjecto spatio, pari altitudinis fastigio, 5  
oppidum cingebant. Sub muro, quae pars collis ad orien-  
tem solem spectabat, hunc omnem locum copiae Gallōrum  
compleverant fossamque et maceriam sex in altitudinem  
pedum praeduxerant. Ejus munitionis, quae ab Romānis  
instituebatur, circuitus undecim millia passuum tenebat. 10  
Castra opportunis locis erant posita ibique castella viginti  
tria facta; quibus in castellis interdum stationes poneban-  
tur, ne qua subito eruptio fieret: haec eadem noctu excu-  
bitoribus ac firmis praesidiis tenebantur.

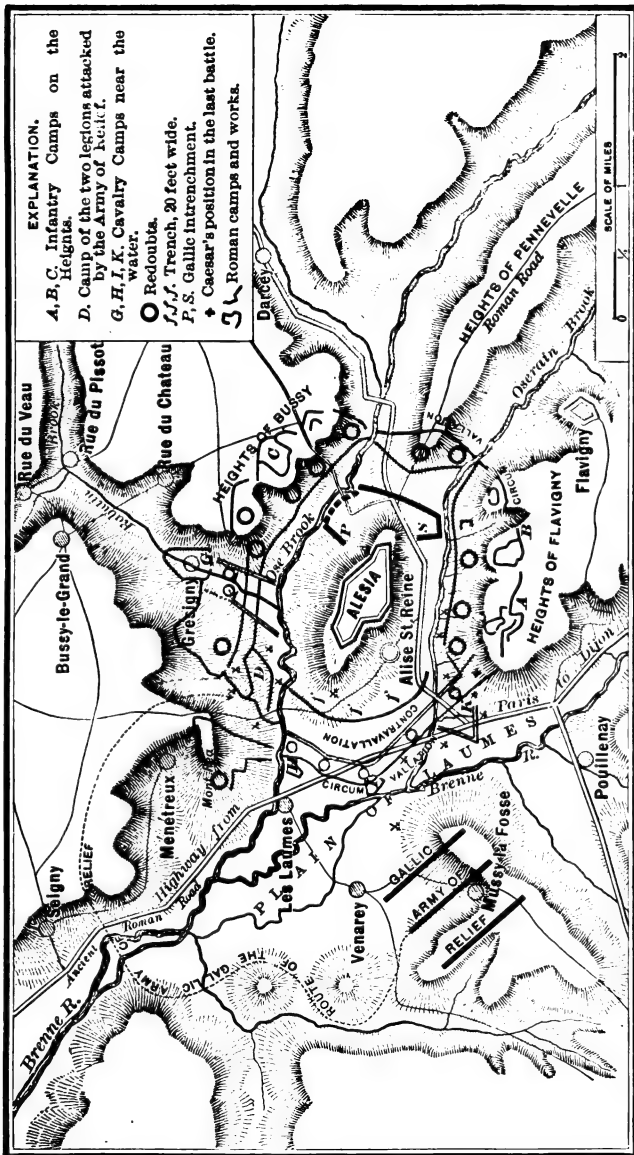
LXX. Opere instituto, fit equestre proelium in eā plani- 15  
tie, quam intermissam collibus tria millia passuum in lon-  
gitudinem patere supra demonstravimus. Summā vi ab  
utrisque contenditur. Laborantibus nostris Caesar Ger-  
mānos submittit legionesque pro castris constituit, ne qua  
subito irruptio ab hostium peditatu fiat. Praesidio legio- 20  
num addito nostris animus augetur: hostes in fugam con-  
jecti se ipsi multitudine impediunt atque angustioribus  
portis relictis coartantur. Germāni acrius usque ad muni-  
tiones sequuntur. Fit magna caedes: nonnulli, relictis  
equis, fossam transire et maceriam transcendere conantur. 25  
Paulum legiones Caesar, quas pro vallo constituerat, pro-  
moveri jubet. Non minus, qui intra munitiones erant,  
Galli perturbantur; veniri ad se confestim existimantes ad  
arma conclamant; nonnulli perterriti in oppidum irrum-  
punt. Vercingetōrix jubet portas claudi, ne castra nuden- 30  
tur. Multis interfectis, compluribus equis captis, Germāni  
sese recipiunt.

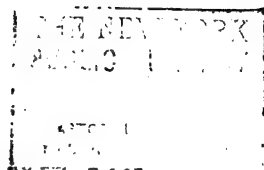
LXXI. Vercingetōrix, priusquam munitiones ab Romā-  
nis perficiantur, consilium capit, omnem ab se equitatum  
noctu dimittere. Discedentibus mandat, ut suam quisque 35  
eorum civitatem adeat omnesque, qui per aetatem arma  
ferre possint, ad bellum cogant; sua in illos merita propo-  
nit obtestaturque, ut suae salutis rationem habeant, neu se

optime de communi libertate meritum hostibus in cruciatum dedant. Quod si indiligentiores fuerint, millia hominum delecta octoginta una secum interitura demonstrat; ratione initâ, frumentum se exigue dierum triginta habere, 5 sed paulo etiam longius tolerare posse parcendo. His datis mandatis, qua opus erat intermissum, secundâ vigiliâ silentio equitatum mittit; frumentum omne ad se referri jubet; capitis poenam iis, qui non paruerint, constituit; pecus, cujus magna erat copia ab Mandubiis compulsâ, 10 viritim distribuit; frumentum parce et paulatim metiri instituit; copias omnes, quas pro oppido collocaverat, in oppidum recipit. His rationibus auxilia Galliae expectare et bellum administrare parat.

LXXII. Quibus rebus cognitis ex perfugis et captivis, 15 Caesar haec genera munitionis instituit. Fossam pedum viginti directis lateribus duxit, ut ejus fossae solum tantundem pateret, quantum summa labra distarent. Reliquas omnes munitiones ab eâ fossâ pedes quadringentos reduxit; id hoc consilio, quoniam tantum esset necessario 20 spatium complexus, nec facile totum corpus coronâ militum cingeretur, ne de improvviso aut noctu ad munitiones hostium multitudo advolaret, aut interdiu tela in nostros operi destinatos conjicere possent. Hoc intermisso spatio, duas fossas quindecim pedes latas eâdem altitudine per- 25 duxit; quarum interiorem, campestribus ac demissis locis, aquâ ex flumine derivatâ complevit. Post eas aggerem ac vallum duodecim pedum exstruxit; huic lorica pinnasque adjecit, grandibus cervis eminentibus ad commissuras pluteorum atque aggeris, qui ascensum hostium tardarent; 30 et turres toto opere circumdedit, quae pedes octoginta inter se distarent.

LXXIII. Erat eodem tempore et materiari et frumentari et tantas munitiones fieri necesse deminutis nostris copiis, quae longius ab castris progrediebantur; ac non- 35 nunquam opera nostra Galli tentare atque eruptionem ex oppido pluribus portis summâ vi facere conabantur. Quare ad haec rursus opera addendum Caesar putavit, quo minore numero militum munitiones defendi possent.





Itaque truncis arborum aut admodum firmis ramis abscisis atque horum delibratis ac praeacutis cacuminibus, perpetuae fossae quinos pedes altae ducebantur. Huc illi stipites demissi et ab infimo revincti, ne revelli possent, ab ramis eminebant. Quini erant ordines, conjuncti inter 5 se atque implicati; quo qui intraverant, se ipsi acutissimis vallis induebant. Hos cippos appellabant. Ante quos obliquis ordinibus in quincuncem dispositis scrobes trium in altitudinem pedum fodiebantur paulatim angustiore ad infimum fastigio. Huc teretes stipites feminis crassitudine 10 ab summo praeacuti et praeusti demittebantur, ita ut non amplius digitis quattuor ex terrā eminerent. simul confirmandi et stabiliendi causā singuli ab infimo solo pedes terrā exculcabantur: reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandas insidias viminibus ac virgultis integebatur. Hujus generis 15 octoni ordines ducti ternos inter se pedes distabant. Id ex similitudine floris liliū appellabant. Ante haec taleae pedem longae ferreis hamis infixis totae in terram infodiebantur, mediocribusque intermissis spatiis omnibus locis disserebantur, quos stimulos nominabant. 20

LXXIV. His rebus perfectis, regiones secutus quam potuit aequissimas pro loci naturā quattuordecim millia passuum complexus, pares ejusdem generis munitiones, diversas ab his, contra exteriorem hostem perfecit, ut ne magnā quidem multitudine, si ita accidat, munitionum 25 praesidia circumfundi possent; neu cum periculo ex castris egredi cogatur, dierum triginta pabulum frumentumque habere omnes convectum jubet.

LXXV. Dum haec apud Alesiam geruntur, Galli, concilio principum indicto, non omnes eos, qui arma ferre pos- 30 sent, ut censuit Vercingetōrix, convocandos statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique civitati imperandum; ne, tantā multitudine confusā, nec moderari nec discernere suos nec frumentandi rationem habere possent. Imperant Aeduis atque eorum clientibus, Segusiāvis, Ambivarētis, Aulercis 35 Brannovicibus, Brannoviis millia triginta quinque; parem numerum Arvernīs, adjunctis Eleutētis, Cadurcis, Gabālis, Vellavis, qui sub imperio Arvernōrum esse consuerunt;



Sequānis, Senonibus, Biturigibus, Santōnis, Rutēnis, Carnutibus duodena millia; Bellovācis decem; totidem Lemovicibus; octona Pictonibus et Turōnis et Parisiis et Helvetiis; Ambianis, Mediomatricis, Petrocoriis, Nerviiis, 5 Morinis, Nitiobrigibus quina millia; Aulercis Cenomanis totidem; Atrebatibus quattuor; Bellocassis, Lexoviis et Aulercis Eburovicibus terna; Rauricis et Boiis bina; decem universis civitatibus, quae Oceānum attingunt, quaeque eorum consuetudine Armoricae appellantur, quo sunt 10 in numero Curiosolites, Redōnes, Ambibarii, Calētes, Osismi, Lemovices, Venēti, Venelli. Ex his Bellovāci suum numerum non compleverunt, quod se suo nomine atque arbitrio cum Romānis bellum gesturos dicerent, neque cujusquam imperio obtemperaturos; rogati tamen ab Com- 15 mio pro ejus hospitio duo millia una miserunt.

LXXVI. Hujus operā Commii, ita ut antea demonstravimus, fideli atque utili superioribus annis erat usus in Britannia Caesar; quibus ille pro meritis civitatem ejus immunem esse jusserat, jura legesque reddiderat atque 20 ipsi Morinos attribuerat. Tamen tanta universae Galliae consensio fuit libertatis vindicandae et pristinae belli laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memoriā moverentur, omnesque et animo et opibus in id bellum incumberent, coactis equitum octo millibus et 25 peditum circiter ducentis et quadraginta. Haec in Aedunorum finibus recensebantur numerusque inibatur; praefecti constituebantur; Commio Atrebatī, Viridomāro et Eporedorigi Aeduis, Vercassivellauno Arverno, consobrino Vercingetorigis, summa imperii traditur. His delecti ex 30 civitatibus attribuuntur, quorum consilio bellum administraretur. Omnes alacres et fiduciae pleni ad Alesiam proficiscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam, qui aspectum modo tantae multitudinis sustineri posse arbitraretur, praesertim ancipiti proelio, cum ex oppido eruptione 35 pugnaretur, foris tantae copiae equitatus peditatusque cererentur.

LXXVII. At ii, qui Alesiae obsidebantur, praeteritā die, qua auxilia suorum expectaverant, consumpto omni

frumento, inseci, quid in Aeduis gereretur, concilio coacto, de exitu suarum fortunarum consultabant. Apud quos variis dictis sententiis, quarum pars deditiōem, pars, dum vires suppetere, eruptionem censebat, non praetereunda oratio Critognāti videtur propter ejus singularem ac nefariam crudelitatem. Hic summo in Arvernīs ortus loco et magnae habitus auctoritatis, "Nihil," inquit, "de eorum sententiā dicturus sum, qui turpissimam servitutem deditiōis nomine appellant; neque hos habendos civium loco neque ad concilium adhibendos censeo. Cum his mihi res sit, qui eruptionem probant, quorum in consilio omnium vestrum consensu pristinae residere virtutis memoria videtur. Animi est ista mollities, non virtus, paulisper inopiam ferre non posse. Qui se ultro morti offerant, facilius reperiuntur, quam qui dolorem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probarem (tantum apud me dignitas potest), si nullam praeterquam vitae nostrae jacturam fieri viderem; sed in consilio capiēdo omnem Galliam respiciamus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitavimus. Quid hominum millibus octoginta uno loco interfectis, propinquis consanguineisque nostris animi fore existimatis, si paene in ipsis cadaveribus proelio decertare cogentur? Nolite hos vestro auxilio exspoliare, qui vestrae salutis causā suum periculum neglexerunt, nec stultitiā ac temeritate vestrā aut animi imbecillitate omnem Galliam prosternere et perpetuae servituti subicere. An, quod ad diem non venerunt, de eorum fide constantiāque dubitatis? Quid ergo? Romānos in illis ulterioribus munitionibus animine causā quotidie exerceri putatis? Si illorum nuntiis confirmari non potestis omni aditu praesepto, his utimini testibus appropinquare eorum adventum, cujus rei timore exterriti diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid ergo mei consilii est? Facere, quod nostri majores nequaquam pari bello Cimbrorum Teutōnumque fecerunt; qui in oppida compulsi ac simili inopiā subacti, eorum corporibus, qui aetate ad bellum inutiles videbantur, vitam toleraverunt neque se hostibus tradiderunt. Cujus rei si exemplum non haberemus, tamen libertatis causā institui

et posteris prodi pulcherrimum judicarem. Nam quid illi simile bello fuit? Depopulatā Galliā Cimbri magnāque illatā calamitate finibus quidem nostris aliquando excesserunt atque alias terras petierunt; jura, leges, agros, libertatem nobis reliquerunt: Romāni vero quid petunt aliud, aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adducti, quos famā nobiles potentesque bello cognoverunt, horum in agris civitatibusque considerare atque his aeternam injungere servitutem? Neque enim unquam aliā conditione bella gesserunt.

10 Quod si ea, quae in longinquis nationibus geruntur, ignoratis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in provinciam redacta, jure et legibus commutatis, securibus subjecta perpetuā premitur servitute.”

LXXVIII. Sententiis dictis, constituunt, ut ii, qui valedine aut aetate inutiles sunt bello, oppido excedant, atque omnia prius experiantur, quam ad Critognāti sententiam descendant: illo tamen potius utendum consilio, si res cogat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut deditionis aut pacis subeundam conditionem. Mandubii, qui eos

20 oppido receperant, cum liberis atque uxoribus exire coguntur. Hi, cum ad munitiones Romanōrum accessissent, flentes omnibus precibus orabant, ut se in servitutem receptos cibo juvarent. At Caesar, dispositis in vallo custodiis, recipi prohibebat.

25 LXXIX. Interea Commius et reliqui duces, quibus summa imperii permissa erat, cum omnibus copiis ad Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriori occupato non longius mille passibus ab nostris munitionibus considunt. Postero die equitatu ex castris educto, omnem eam planitiem, quam in longitudinem tria millia passuum patere demonstravimus, complent pedestresque copias paulum ab eo loco abditas in locis superioribus constituunt. Erat ex oppido Alesiā despectus in campum. Concurrunt his auxiliis visis: fit gratulatio inter eos atque omnium animi

35 ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque productis copiis ante oppidum considunt et proximam fossam cratibus integunt atque aggere explent seque ad eruptionem atque omnes casus comparant.

**LXXX.** Caesar omni exercitu ad utramque partem munitionum disposito, ut, si usus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et noverit, equitatum ex castris educi et proelium committi jubet. Erat ex omnibus castris, quae summum undique jugum tenebant, despectus, atque omnes 5 milites intenti pugnae proventum expectabant. Galli inter equites raros sagittarios expeditosque levis armaturae interjecerant, qui suis cedentibus auxilio succurrerent et nostrorum equitum impetus sustinerent. Ab his complures de improvise vulnerati proelio excedebant. Cum 10 suos pugna superiores esse Galli confiderent et nostros multitudine premi viderent, ex omnibus partibus et ii, qui munitionibus continebantur, et ii, qui ad auxilium convenierant, clamore et ululatu suorum animos confirmabant. Quod in conspectu omnium res gerebatur neque recte ac 15 turpiter factum celari poterat, utrosque et laudis cupiditas et timor ignominiae ad virtutem excitabant. Cum a meridie prope ad solis occasum dubia victoria pugnaretur, Germani una in parte confertis turmis in hostes impetum fecerunt eosque propulerunt; quibus in fugam coniectis, 20 sagittarii circumventi interfectique sunt. Item ex reliquis partibus nostri cedentes usque ad castra insecuti sui colligendi facultatem non dederunt. At ii, qui ab Alesia processerant, moesti, prope victoria desperata, se in oppidum receperunt. 25

**LXXXI.** Uno die intermisso, Galli, atque hoc spatio magno cratium, scarum, harpagonum numero effecto, media nocte silentio ex castris egressi ad campestris munitiones accedunt. Subito clamore sublato, qua significatione qui in oppido obsidebantur de suo adventu cognoscere possent, crates projicere, fundis, sagittis, lapidibus nostros de vallo proturbare reliquaque, quae ad oppugnationem pertinent, parant administrare. Eodem tempore clamore exaudito dat tuba signum suis Vercingetorix atque ex oppido educit. Nostri, ut superioribus diebus 35 suis cuique erat locus attributus, ad munitiones accedunt: fundis librilibus sudibusque, quas in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallos proterrent. Prospectu tenebris adempto,

multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur; complura tormentis tela conjiciuntur. At Marcus Antonius et Gaius Trebonius legati, quibus hae partes ad defendendum obvenerant, quā ex parte nostros premi intellexerant, his auxilio ex ulterioribus castellis deductos submittebant.

LXXXII. Dum longius ab munitione aberant Galli, plus multitudine telorum proficiebant: posteaquam propius successerunt, aut se ipsi stimulis inopinantes induebant, aut in scrobes delati transfodiebantur, aut ex vallo ac turribus transjecti pilis muralibus interibant. Multis undique vulneribus acceptis, nullā munitione perruptā, cum lux appeteret, veriti, ne ab latere aperto ex superioribus castris eruptione circumvenirentur, se ad suos receperunt. At interiores, dum ea, quae a Vercingetorige ad eruptionem praeparata erant, proferunt, priores fossas explent; diutius in his rebus administrandis morati, prius suos discessisse cognoverunt, quam munitionibus appropinquarent. Ita, re infectā, in oppidum reverterunt.

LXXXIII. Bis magno cum detrimento repulsi Galli, quid agant, consulunt: locorum peritos adhibent: ex his superiorum castrorum situs munitionesque cognoscunt. Erat a septemtrionibus collis, quem propter magnitudinem circuitus opere circumplecti non potuerant nostri, necessarioque paene iniquo loco et leniter declivi castra fecerunt. Haec Gaius Antistius Reginus et Gaius Caninius Rebilus legati cum duabus legionibus obtinebant. Cognitis per exploratores regionibus, duces hostium sexaginta millia ex omni numero deligunt earum civitatum, quae maximam virtutis opinionem habebant; quid quoque pacto agi placeat, occulte inter se constituunt; adeundi tempus definiunt, cum meridies esse videatur. His copiis Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, unum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castris primā vigiliā egressus, prope confecto sub lucem itinere, post montem se occultavit militesque ex nocturno labore sese reficere iussit. Cum jam meridies appropinquare videretur, ad ea castra, quae supra demonstravimus, contendit; eodemque tempore equitatus ad campestris

munitiones accedere et reliquae copiae pro castris sese ostendere coeperunt.

LXXXIV. Vercingetōrix ex arce Alesiae suos conspiciatus ex oppido egreditur; a castris longurios, musculos, falces reliquaque, quae eruptionis causā paraverat, profert. 5 Pugnatur uno tempore omnibus locis, atque omnia tentantur: quae minime visa pars firma est, huc concurritur. Romanōrum manus tantis munitionibus distinetur, nec facile pluribus locis occurrit. Multum ad terrendos nostros valet clamor, qui post tergum pugnantibus exstitit, 10 quod suum periculum in alienā vident virtute constare: omnia enim plerumque, quae absunt, vehementius hominum mentes perturbant.

LXXXV. Caesar idoneum locum nactus, quid quāque in parte geratur, cognoscit, laborantibus auxilium submittit. 15 Utrisque ad animum occurrit, unum esse illud tempus, quo maxime contendendi conveniat. Galli, nisi perfregerint munitiones, de omni salute desperant: Romāni, si rem obtinuerint, finem laborum omnium expectant. Maxime ad superiores munitiones laboratur, quo Vercassivellaunum 20 missum demonstravimus. Exiguum loci ad declivitatem fastigium magnum habet momentum. Alii tela conjiciunt; alii testudine factā subeunt; defatigatis in vicem integri succedunt. Agger ab universis in munitionem coniectus et ascensum dat Gallis et ea, quae in terrā occultaverant 25 Romāni, contegit: nec jam arma nostris, nec vires suppetunt.

LXXXVI. His rebus cognitis, Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus sex subsidio laborantibus mittit; imperat, si sustinere non possit, deductis cohortibus eruptione pugnaret; id, nisi necessario, ne faciat. Ipse adit reliquos; cohortatur, ne labori succumbant; omnium superiorum dimicationum fructum in eo die atque horā docet consistere. Interiores desperatis campestribus locis propter magnitudinem munitionum loca praerupta ex ascensu tentant: 35 huc ea, quae paraverant, conferunt: multitudine telorum ex turribus propugnantes deturbant, aggere et cratibus fossas explent, falcibus vallum ac loricam rescindunt.

LXXXVII. Mittit primo Brutum adolescentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis Gaium Fabium legatum: postremo ipse, cum vehementius pugnaretur, integros subsidio adducit. Restituto proelio ac repulsis hostibus, eo, quo Labiënum miserat, contendit; cohortes quattuor ex proximo castello deducit; equitum partem se sequi, partem circumire exteriores munitiones et ab tergo hostes adoriri jubet. Labiënus, postquam neque aggeres neque fossae vim hostium sustinere poterant, coactis undequadraviginta cohortibus, quas ex proximis praesidiis deductas fors obtulit, Caesarem per nuntios facit certiolem, quid faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proelio intersit.

LXXXVIII. Ejus adventu ex colore vestitus cognito, quo insigni in proeliis uti consueverat, turmisque equitum et cohortibus visis, quas se sequi jusserat, ut de locis superioribus haec declivia et devexa cernebantur, hostes proelium committunt. Utrumque clamore sublato, excipit rursus ex vallo atque omnibus munitionibus clamor. Nostri, omissis pilis, gladiis rem gerunt. Repente post tergum equitatus cernitur: cohortes aliae appropinquant: hostes terga vertunt: fugientibus equites occurrunt: fit magna caedes. Sedulius, dux et princeps Lemovicum, occiditur: Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vivus in fugâ comprehenditur: signa militaria septuaginta quattuor ad Caesarem referuntur: pauci ex tanto numero se incolumes in castra recipiunt. Conspicati ex oppido caedem et fugam suorum, desperatâ salute, copias a munitionibus reducunt. Fit protinus hac re auditâ ex castris Gallorum fuga. Quod nisi crebris subsidiis ac totius diei labore milites essent defessi, omnes hostium copiae deleri potuissent. De mediâ nocte missus equitatus novissimum agmen consequitur: magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur, reliqui ex fugâ in civitates discedunt.

LXXXIX. Postero die Vercingetorix, concilio convocato, id bellum se suscepisse non suarum necessitatum, sed communis libertatis causâ demonstrat; et quoniam sit fortunae cedendum, ad utramque rem se illis offerre, seu morte suâ Românis satisfacere, seu vivum tradere velint.

Mittuntur de his rebus ad Caesārem legati. Jubet arma tradi, principes produci. Ipse in munitione pro castris consedit: eo duces producuntur. Vercingetōrix deditur, arma projiciuntur. Reservatis Aeduis atque Arvernīs, si per eos civitates recuperare posset, ex reliquis captivis 5 toto exercitui capita singula praedae nomine distribuit.

XC. His rebus confectis, in Aeduos proficiscitur; civitatem recipit. Eo legati ab Arvernīs missi, quae imperaret se facturos pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum obsidum. Legiones in hiberna mittit. Captivorum circiter 10 viginti millia Aeduis Arvernisque reddit. Titum Labiēnum duabus cum legionibus et equitatu in Sequānos proficisci jubet: huic Marcum Sempronium Rutilum attribuit: Gāium Fabium et Lucium Minucium Basillum cum legionibus duabus in Remis collocat, ne quam ab finitimis 15 Bellovācis calamitatem accipiant. Gāium Antistium Regium in Ambivarētos, Titum Sextium in Bituriges, Gāium Caninium Reblum in Rutēnos cum singulis legionibus mittit. Quintum Tullium Cicerōnem et Publium Sulpicium Cabillōni et Matiscōne in Aeduis ad Arārim rei 20 frumentariae causā collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemare constituit. His rebus litteris Caesāris cognitis, Romae dierum viginti supplicatio indicitur.



## REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS.

Numerals with "G." refer to the author's Latin Grammar; with "L. C." to his Introduction to Latin Composition; with "p." to pages in this work. Numeral letters and numeral figures used together refer to books and chapters in the Latin text. Other numerals refer to articles in the introduction on the Military System of the Romans.

The following abbreviations occur:—

acc. to, . . . .	according to.	freq. . . . .	frequentative.
Celt. . . . .	Celtic.	lit. . . . .	literally.
dep. . . . .	deponent.	opp. . . . .	opposed.
dim. . . . .	diminutive.	prob. . . . .	probably.
esp. . . . .	especially.	sc. . . . .	scilicet, supply.
fig. . . . .	figuratively.	syn. . . . .	synonymes.

# NOTES.

---

PAGE 1

**Caesaris Commentarii, Caesar's Commentaries.** The term *commentarii*, as here used, is applicable to any simple and concise chronicle of events. Caesar, in his seven books of Commentaries on the Gallic War, has given a concise account of seven campaigns waged by himself in Gaul. Each book is a journal of one year.

## BOOK FIRST.

CAMPAIGN OF THE YEAR 58 B. C., IN THE CONSULSHIP OF  
LUCIUS CALPURNIUS PISO AND AULUS GABINIUS.

- I. WAR WITH THE HELVETII. I.-XXIX.  
II. WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS. XXX.-LIV.
- 

### I. *General Description of Gaul.*

1. **Gallia.** *Gallia*, or *Gallia Transalpina*, properly designates that part of the continent of Europe which lies west of the Alps and the Rhine, and north of the Pyrenees; but, as here used, it does not include the Roman province (*provincia*) in the south-eastern portion of this district. In a still more restricted sense, *Gallia* is sometimes used to designate one of the three general divisions of this country, namely, that occupied by the *Celtae* or *Galli*. *Gallia omnis* distinguishes the country, as a whole, from this part. — **Quarum**; Partitive Genitive, depending upon *unam*, and agreeing with *partes* as its antecedent. G. 397; 445.

2. **Aliam**, another, less definite than *alteram*, which would mean *the second*. *Aliam* = *aliam partem* is the object of *incohunt* understood. —

## PAGE

**I** *Tertiam qui* = *ii incolunt tertiam partem, qui*. G. 445, 6. — *Ipsorum lingua*, in their own language. G. 420. *Ipsorum*; lit., of themselves = their own. G. 452, 5.

**3.** *Celtae, Galli*; G. 362. The reader will observe that the term *Galli*, like *Gallia*, is used in two senses. It properly denotes the inhabitants of all Gaul (*Gallia omnis*), but it is also often used, as in this instance, to designate the inhabitants of the third division of the country, i. e., of Celtic Gaul. This distinction must be constantly borne in mind by the learner. — *Nostra*; supply *lingua*. — *Lingua*; G. 424.

**4.** *Inter se*, from one another; lit., among themselves.

**5.** *Dividit*. In the singular, because the two rivers form but one boundary. G. 463, 3.

**6.** *Horum*; G. 397. — *Propterea quod*, because; lit., on account of this (these things) that. This introduces two reasons to account for the valor of the Belgae — their distance from the Roman province, and their nearness to the warlike Germans. — *A cultu atque humanitate*, from the civilization and refinement. *Cultus* here refers to external comforts and luxuries, *humanitas* to mental and moral culture.

**7.** *Provinciae*; i. e., of the Roman province in the south-eastern portion of Gaul.

**8.** *Minime saepe*, least frequently.

**9.** *Ad effeminandos animos*; G. 543; 542, III. — *Proximique*; supply *propterea quod*, introducing the second reason for the valor of the Belgians.

**10.** *Incolunt, dwell*. This verb is sometimes transitive, *inhabit*, as in line 2, and sometimes intransitive, *dwell*, as in this passage.

**11.** *Qua de causa Helvetii*, i. e., because they, too, dwell near the Germans.

**12.** *Virtute praecedunt, surpass in valor*. G. 424.

**13.** *Suis finibus, from their territory*. G. 414. *Suis* refers to the subject, *Helvetii*, while *eos* and *eorum* refer to *Germanis*. G. 449; 451.

**15.** *Eorum una pars, one portion of their country*; lit., one part (of the country) of them. *Eorum* is a Possessive Genitive (of them = their), referring to *hi omnes*, line 3, and *horum omnium*, line 6. — *Quam . . . dictum est, which, it has been said, the Gauls occupy*. *Gallo* = *Celtas*, i. e., the Gauls in the restricted sense of that word. See note on *Celtae, Galli*, line 3. — *Dictum est*. Give the subject. G. 538.

**16.** *Continetur, is bounded*.

**17.** *Ab Sequanis, on the side of the Sequani*; i. e., in their territory; lit., from the Sequani — a common Latin idiom, using *a*, *ab*, *e*, or *ex*, where our idiom requires *at*, *in*, *on*, *on the side of*, or some similar expression.

**18.** *Vergit ad septemtriones, it extends towards the north*, spoken

with reference to the Roman province in the south of Gaul; *i. e.*, viewed from that province, the country of the *Celtae* extends from the Rhine towards the north. 1

**19. Extremis, pertinent, spectant.** These words suppose the reader to be in the Roman province. Thus, *extremis finibus*, the *farthest confines*, means the northern boundary, *i. e.*, the one most remote from the province.

**1. Ad, near, bordering upon.** 2

## II. Ambitious Designs of Orgetorix.

**4. Messala . . . consulibus;** G. 431. This was in the year 61 B. C., three years before Caesar arrived in Gaul.

**5. Regni, of regal power, sovereignty.**—*Nobilitatis, civitati;* the abstract for the concrete; *nobility*, for nobles, *state*, for citizens.

**6. Civitati;** G. 385.

**7. Exirent;** G. 461; 498.—*Perfacile esse . . . potiri.* This is an instance of the Indirect Discourse, *Oratio Obliqua*, very common in Caesar. In the Direct Discourse it would stand thus: *Perfacile est, quum virtute omnibus praestetis, totius Galliae imperio potiri.* The learner will observe that the Ind. *est* is changed to the Infin. *esse*, G. 523; that the Pres. *praestetis* is changed to the Imperf. *praestarent*, because dependent upon an historical tense, *persuasit*, G. 493, and that the second person, *praestetis*, is changed to the third, *praestarent*, G. 526. The Infin. *esse* depends upon a verb of *saying*, implied in *persuasit*; *He persuaded them*, etc., saying that it would be easy, G. 523. The subject of *esse* is the clause *totius . . . potiri*, with which *perfacile* agrees as a predicate adjective. G. 538, 2; 438, 3. The learner should now make himself perfectly familiar with the whole subject of the Indirect Discourse as presented in the Gram. 522–532. —*Omnibus;* G. 386. —*Praestarent.* Why in the Subjunctive? G. 517.

**8. Imperio potiri;** G. 421, I. — *Id hoc facillius eis persuasit*, he persuaded them to that course (*id, i. e.*, ut exirent) the more easily on this account (*hoc, i. e.*, quod . . . continentur). *Id* is the object of *persuasit*; lit., *persuaded that to them*. *Hoc* is Abl. of Means. G. 420.

**9. Loca natura, by natural boundaries, viz., the Rhine, the Rhone, Mount Jura, and Lake Lemannus.**—*Continentur, are confined, hemmed in* — *Una ex parte, on one side.* See note on *ab Sequanis*, p. 1, line 17.

**10. Latissimo, very broad.** G. 444, 1.

**12. Tertio;** supply *ex parte*.

**13. Provinciam nostram, our province, i. e., the Roman province,** corresponding to the south-eastern portion of France.

**14. Ut vagarentur;** G. 501, I. — *Minus late, less extensively, i. e., than they wished.*

## PAGE

- 2 16. *Homines bellandi cupidi, they, a people (men) fond of warfare.* G. 363, 2; 542, I.
17. *Pro, in proportion to.*
19. *Qui.* The antecedent is *anes*. — *Milia . . . ducenta, etc. Mille passuum* is a little more than nine-tenths of an English mile, which makes the length about 220 miles, and the breadth about 160. Caesar's estimate is, however, somewhat too high, resting doubtless upon the exaggerated accounts of others. — *Milia*; G. 178; 379.

### III. *The Helvetii prepare to invade Gaul.*

22. *Quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent, which would be requisite for their departure.* G. 503; 542, III.
23. *Quam maximum*; G. 444, 3.
24. *Ut suppeteret*; G. 497, II. — *In itinere, on their march.*
25. *Cum proximis civitatibus, with the adjacent (nearest) states*; i. e., of Gaul.
26. *Ad eas res conficiendas*; G. 543; 542, III., 2.
27. *In tertium annum . . . confirmant, by formal enactment they appoint their departure for the third year*; i. e., they appoint the third year as the time for their departure. G. 435, 1.
32. *Amicus.* To be called *friend* by the Roman Senate was a distinguished honor.
33. *Ut regnum occuparet.* The Imperfect is explained by its connection with the Historical Present *persuadet*. G. 495, II. The sovereign authority (*regnum*) seems not to have been hereditary, but to have been conferred by the people.
35. *Qui* refers to *Dumnorigi*. — *Tempore*; G. 429. — *Principatum obtinebat, held (was holding) the first place*; i. e., in power and influence. *Principatus* is a word of very general import, and its special application in any instance must be learned from the context. It does not, like *regnum*, necessarily involve either official station or legal authority. *Dumnorix* may, however, have been at that time *Vergobretus*. See p. 8, line 38.
36. *Plebi acceptus*; G. 391. For Synonymes, see L. C. 216.
37. *Perfacile factu esse, etc., he shows them (to them) that it is very easy to accomplish their designs*; lit., *that to accomplish their designs is very easy to do (factu)*. G. 547. See note on *perfacile esse*, p. 2, line 7.
38. *Quod ipse . . . obtenturus esset*; a subordinate clause in the Indirect Discourse. In the Direct Discourse it would read thus: *Quod ipse meae civitatis imperium obtenturus sum*. The learner will observe that the Ind. *sum* is changed to the Subj. *esset*, G. 524; that the Pres. 1st Pers. *sum* is changed to the Imperf. 3d Pers. *esset*, after the Hist. Pres.

*probat*, G. 495, II.; 526; and that the pronoun of the first person, *meas*, 2 is changed to that of the third, *suae*, G. 526. — *Suae civitatis*; G. 449.

1. *Imperium*, *supreme authority, the highest authority, the command*, 3 as of an army. — *Obtenturus esset*; a reason on the authority of Orgetorix. G. 516, II. — *Quin totius Galliae*, etc., *that the Helvetii were the most powerful of all the Gauls*. *Totius Galliae* = *omnium Gallorum*, and *plurimum possent* = *potentissimi essent*.

2. *Galliae*; Partitive Genitive with *plurimum*. G. 397. — *Possent*; G. 504, 3. — *Se illis regna conciliaturum*, *that he would procure for them the sovereign power*; i. e., in their respective states; hence, plural, *regna*.

4. *Inter se dant*, *they* (Casticus, Dumnorix, and Orgetorix) *exchange*; lit., *give between* (among) *themselves*. — *Dant*; Historical Present. G. 467, 1. — *Regno occupato*; G. 431, 2.

5. *Per tres populos*; G. 415, I. The Helvetii, Sequani, and Aedui are meant.

6. *Galliae*; G. 410, V., 3.

#### IV. *Death of Orgetorix.*

7. *Ea res, this fact*; i. e., the conspiracy of Orgetorix. — *Per indicium* = *per indices, by informers*, the abstract for the concrete. — *Moribus*; G. 416.

8. *Ex vinculis causam dicere, to make his defence in chains*. *Ex vinculis*; lit., *out of chains*. See note on *ab Sequanis*, p. 1, line 17. — *Causam dicere*; a forensic expression, *to plead one's cause, to make one's defence*.

9. *Damnatum, if condemned*. G. 549, 2. It agrees with *eum*, the omitted object of *sequi*. — *Poenam sequi*, etc. *Poenam sequi* is the subject of *oportebat*, and *ut igni cremaretur* is in apposition with *poenam*. G. 501, III. Among the Gauls this seems to have been the usual punishment of traitors.

10. *Die constituta, on the appointed day*. Abl. of Time, not Abl. Absol. G. 429. — *Omnem suam familiam*, *his whole household*, including all his slaves, clients and dependants.

11. *Ad, about, towards*, often used, in this sense, with numerals.

12. *Clientes obaeratosque*. The *clientes* were *dependants, retainers*; the *obaerati*, *debtors held to service*.

13. *Ne diceret*; G. 497, II.

14. *Se eripuit, he rescued himself*, though probably not by force, but by the fear which his retainers inspired.

15. *Armis*; Abl. of Means. G. 420. — *Jus suum exsequi, to*

## PAGE

**3** *maintain their authority*; lit., *to follow out their right*. — *Conaretur*, *cogent*; G. 521.

**16.** *Magistratus*; subject of *cogent*.

**17.** *Quin ipse sibi*, etc., *that he committed suicide*; lit., *but that he inflicted death upon himself*.

**18.** *Consciverit*; G. 504; 492, 2.

### V. *The Helvetii continue their Preparations.*

**19.** *Nihilo*; G. 423.

**20.** *Ut . . . exeat*; in apposition with *id*. G. 363, 5; 501, III. Such explanatory clauses are common in Caesar. — *Ubi jam*, i. e., in the third year after the plan was adopted. See p. 2, line 27.

**21.** *Oppida*, cities, towns. *Oppidum* and *urbs* are both used by Caesar of the principal cities of Gaul, but the former is given by preference to those towns which are difficult of access or which are strongly fortified. See Syn. L. C. 473.

**22.** *Numero*; Abl. of Specification. G. 424.

**24.** *Ut . . . essent*; Subj. of Purpose. G. 497; 495, II. — *Domum reditionis spe*, *the hope of a return home*. *Domum*; Accus. of Limit. G. 380, II., 2, 1).

**25.** *Spe*; G. 431. — *Sublata*; from *tollo*. — *Pericula subeunda*; G. 543.

**26.** *Trium mensium . . . cibaria*, meal (or flour) for three months; i. e., supplies for three months, lit., of three months.

**27.** *Domo*; G. 426, 2. — *Rauricis*; G. 385.

**28.** *Finitimis*; G. 441. — *Eodem usi consilio*, having adopted the same plan; i. e., the same as the Helvetii had adopted. G. 421, I. — *Oppidis . . . exustis*; G. 431.

**29.** *Cum his*. *Secum*, which might have been used, would give prominence to the purpose of the Helvetii, while *cum his* implies that the clause is Caesar's statement of the result. G. 449, 1, 2).

**30.** *Trans Rhenum*; i. e., east of the Rhine.

**31.** *Oppugnabant*, had assaulted. This evidently refers to an unsuccessful attempt to reduce the place. — *Receptos . . . adsciscunt*, they receive and ally to themselves as confederates. G. 549, 5.

### VI. *The Helvetii prepare to march through the Province.*

**33.** *Quibus itineribus*, by which, lit., by which ways. G. 445, 8; Syn. L. C. 156. The repetition of the antecedent adds emphasis. — *Domo*, from home; i. e., from their country. G. 426, 2.

**34.** *Possent*; G. 503. — *Unum*; in apposition with *itineria*. G. 364

**35. Inter . . . Juram . . . Rhodanum.** See note, with plan, on a *lacu* . . . *Juram*, p. 4, line 34. — *Singuli carri*. Observe the force of the distributive, *wagons one by one, one at a time*; i. e., a single wagon.

**36. Ducerentur**; G. 503, I., 2. — *Altissimus*, *very high*. — *Ut posset*; Subj. of Result. G. 500.

**1. Allobrogum.** This warlike people had been conquered by the Romans 121 B. C., but having revolted, they had recently (*nuper*) been again reduced to subjection, 61 B. C.

**2. Is vado transitur**, *it is crossed by means of a ford* = is fordable. G. 420. — *Locis*; G. 425, II., 1.

**4. Ad Helvetios pertinet**, *leads over to the Helvetii*.

**5. Allobrogibus . . . viderentur**; vel **vi . . . paterentur**; Indirect Discourse, dependent upon *existimabant*. The principal clauses are *Allobrogibus . . . persuasuros* and *vi coacturos*; the subordinate clauses, *quod . . . viderentur* and *ut . . . paterentur*. Explain the Moods. G. 523, I.; 524. But observe that the Subjunctive in *ut . . . paterentur* is to be referred to G. 498, II., as the Subjunctive would be required even in direct discourse. See also notes on *perfacile esse*, p. 2, line 7, and *quod . . . obtenturus esset*, p. 2, line 38. — *Allobrogibus*; G. 385. — *Persuasuros, coacturos*. Observe the omission of *esse*. G. 534, note.

**6. Bono animo**, *kindly disposed*; lit., *with (of) a good mind*. G. 419, II.

**7. Coacturos**; from *cogo*. — *Suos, eos*. *Suos* refers to the subject of the clause, i. e., to the Allobroges, while *eos* refers to the subject of the principal clause, i. e., to the Helvetii. This clause might have been, *ut se per ipsorum fines ire paterentur*. G. 445, 1.

**9. Qua die**; G. 429; 445, 8. — *Convenient*; G. 500.

**10. Ante diem . . . Apriles** = *die quinto ante Kalendas Apriles*, *on the fifth day before the Kalends of April*; i. e., on the 28th of March. *Ante* must be construed with *Kalendas*, while *diem* (for *die*) is attracted into the Accus. by *ante*. G. 642, III., 3. — *Lucio . . . consulibus*; G. 431, 2. This was in the year 58 B. C.

## VII. Caesar opposes the Helvetii.

**12. Cum nuntiatum esset**; G. 495, II.; 521. — *Eos . . . conari*; in apposition with *id*. G. 539, II.

**13. Ab urbe**, *from the city*; i. e., from Rome, where he received these tidings.

**14. Quam . . . itineribus**, *by as long marches as possible*. G. 170, 2. According to Plutarch he reached the Rhone in eight days. — *In Galliam ulteriorem*, *into Ulterior, or Farther, Gaul*; i. e., Gaul beyond the Alps; also called *Gallia Transalpina*, or simply *Gallia*, as on p. 1.

**15. Ad Genavam**, *into the vicinity of Geneva*. G. 380, II., 1. — *Pro-*



## PAGE

**4** *vinciae toti imperat, he levies upon the whole province; i. e., upon Ulterior Gaul, which he had received as a province.*

**17. Legio una.** This was the tenth legion, afterwards famous in the Gallic wars. The Roman legion contained originally 3000 infantry and 300 cavalry. For an account of the legion, of its organization and numerical strength, see 13 and 28. — *Pontem; i. e., the bridge over the Rhone. — Ad Genavam, near Geneva.*

**18. Certiores facti sunt, were informed; lit., were made more certain.**

**21. Qui dicerent, to say; lit., who should say.** G. 497. *Qui* refers to *legatos* as its antecedent. — *Sibi esse in . . . facere liceat; Indirect Discourse.* Direct Discourse thus: *Nobis est in . . . facere, propterea . . . habemus nullum; rogamus ut tua voluntate id nobis facere liceat.* Explain the changes of Mood, Tense, Person, etc. G. 523–532. See note on *Allobrogibus . . . paterentur*, p. 4, line 5. — *Sibi esse in animo, that it was their intention; lit., was to them in mind.* G. 387, 449, 1. Observe that *esse* and *rogare* are the leading verbs in the principal clauses, and that the subject of *esse* is the clause, *sine ullo . . . facere.* G. 523, I.; 538, 2. — *Sine ullo maleficio, without doing any damage; lit., without any harm.*

**22. Quod . . . nullum.** Observe the emphatic position of *nullum.* G. 561, II.

**23. Haberent, had.** G. 524. — *Rogare, that they asked.* The subject *se* is omitted. G. 523, I., foot-note. — *Ut liceat; G. 498, I. Liceat* has *id facere* as its subject, and *sibi* as its indirect object. G. 538; 384. — *Ejus voluntate, with his (Caesar's) consent.* G. 416.

**24. Memoria tenebat, retained in (by means of) memory. — Memoria; Abl. of Means. — Lucium Cassium.** This defeat of the Roman army under Cassius occurred near the Lake of Geneva, 107 B. C., forty-nine years before the arrival of Caesar in Gaul.

**25. Occisum; supply esse.** So also with *pulsum, missum, and concedendum.* G. 534, note.

**26. Sub jugum.** The yoke was thus used as the symbol of submission and servitude. It consisted of a spear supported horizontally by two others placed in an upright position. — *Concedendum; supply id, referring to the request of the Helvetii.*

**27. Inimico animo, with hostile feelings.** G. 419, II. — *Data facultate, if the opportunity should be granted.* G. 431, 2.

**28. Itineris faciendi.** Construction? G. 543; 542, I. — *Temperaturos, would refrain.* Supply *esse.*

**29. Spatium; here used of time.**

**30. Convenirent; G. 519, II., 2.**

**31. Diem, time, lit., a day.** It is the object of *sumpturum.* — *Si quid vellent . . . reverterentur.* In the Direct Discourse, *i. e.,* in the original words of Caesar, this would be a conditional sentence of the first form

with the Imperative in the conclusion: *Si quid vultis . . . revertimini*. G. 508, 4. For the Mood and Tense in the Indirect Discourse, see G. 523, III., 524; 493, 1. — *Ad idus Apriles*, on the *ides of April*; i. e., on the 13th of April. G. 642, I., 3.

### VIII. *The Helvetii attempt to force a Passage.*

**83.** *Legione, militibus*; Abls. of Means, to be construed with *perducit*, he constructs. G. 415, I., 1.

**84.** *Qui . . . influit*. Caesar speaks of the lake as flowing into the river, i. e., the river is the outlet of the lake. — *A lacu . . . ad Juram*. These defences extended along the southern side of the Rhone, from the Lake of Geneva (*Lemannus*) to Mount Jura, and commanded all the fords of the Rhone by which the Helvetii could enter the Roman province. See the following plan.



A. Pass between Mount Jura and the Rhone.

B. Caesar's Intrenchments on the south side of the Rhone.

## PAGE

- 4 36. *Millia . . . decem novem, nineteen miles* (Roman measure). G. 379. The Roman mile was about twenty-five rods less than the English statute mile.
37. *Murum fossamque*; see 70-73.
38. *Castella, redoubts*, probably of earth.
- 5 1. *Quo possit*; G. 497, 2.—*Se invito, without his consent*; lit., *he being unwilling*. G. 431.—*Conarentur, possit*. Here the Imperfect after the Historical Present, *communit*, corresponds to the actual time denoted by that verb, while the Present corresponds to its form. G. 495, II.
3. *Negat se posse dare, he says that he cannot grant*; lit., *he denies that he is able to give*.—*More et exemplo, consistently with the usage and example*. *Mos* denotes established usage, *exemplum* simply an example or precedent. For construction, see G. 416.
5. *Vim facere, to use force*; lit., *to make force*.—*Conentur*; G. 524.—*Prohibiturum*; i. e., *se prohibiturum esse*.
6. *Ea spe dejecti, disappointed in this hope*; i. e., in the hope of being permitted peaceably to pass through the province. G. 414.—*Navibus junctis, by bridges of boats and by numerous rafts*; lit., *by vessels joined together and numerous rafts made*. G. 420.
7. *Alii vadis*. While the Helvetii, as a body, attempt to cross the Rhone by means of bridges of boats, etc., some (*alii*) try the fords of the river.
8. *Si perrumpere, having attempted to force a passage*; lit., *having tried whether* (if) *they were able to break through*.—*Si . . . possent*; Indirect Question. G. 529, I.
9. *Operis munitione*; i. e., the wall, redoubts, etc., mentioned above.

### IX. *The Helvetii prepare to pass through the Country of the Sequani.*

11. *Una . . . via*; *only the way through the Sequani*; i. e., the narrow pass along the right bank of the Rhone, between the mountains and the river. See Syn. L. C. 156.
12. *His*; G. 385.—*Sua sponte* = *per se, of themselves*; i. e., by their own unaided efforts.
13. *Possent*. Why in the Subjunctive? G. 517.
14. *Ut . . . impetrarent, that they might obtain their request*. G. 497. With this verb the object is often thus omitted.—*Eo deprecatore, by his intercession*; lit., *he being an intercessor*. G. 431, 4.
15. *Gratia et largitione, on account of his popularity and generosity*.—*Plurimum poterat, had very great influence*; lit., *was powerful* (able) *very much*. G. 378, 2.
17. *In matrimonium duxerat, had married*.

18. *Novis rebus studebat, was eager for a revolution; lit., for new things.* G. 384.

19. *Sibi obstrictas, attached to himself.* G. 384.

20. *Rem suscipit, he undertakes the service; i. e., the negotiation in behalf of the Helvetii.*

21. *Uti inter . . . perficit, causes them to exchange; lit., causes that they (the Helvetii and the Sequani) may give among themselves.* — Dent; G. 498, II.

22. *Sequani; the subject of dent, to be supplied from the preceding line.* — *Ne prohibeant, ut transeant; G. 497, II.*

### X. *Caesar hastens to Italy for Re-enforcements.*

24. *Helvetiis esse in animo.* See note on *sibi esse in animo*, p. 4, line 21.

25. *Facere; G. 538, 2.*

26. *Quae civitas; Lat. idiom for civitatis quae, a state which; lit., which state.* The antecedent, which would otherwise be *civitatis*, in apposition with *Tolosatum*, is inserted as the subject of the relative clause. G. 445, 8. This is a common idiom. See L. C. 477, 2.

27. *Id si fieret.* Observe emphatic position of *id*. G. 569, III., 1.

28. *Futurum; supply esse.* The clause *ut . . . haberet* is the subject of *futurum (esse)*, though it also denotes result. G. 501, I., 1.

29. *Locis . . . frumentariis, to open and very fertile districts.*

31. *Titum Labienum; one of Caesar's ablest officers in the Gallic war.* He, however, abandoned the cause of his master at the commencement of the Civil war. — *Legatum; Predicate Acc.* See also 34. — *In Italiam, into Italy; i. e., into Cisalpine or Citerior Gaul, which was regarded as a part of Italy.*

32. *Magnis itineribus, by forced marches.*

35. *Quinque legionibus.* These five legions, with the tenth which Caesar found in Gaul on his arrival, gave him in all six legions, besides the forces just raised in the province. These six legions were the 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, and 12th.

36. *Locis . . . occupatis; G. 431, 2.*

37. *Itinere; G. 413.* — *Compluribus his proeliis pulsus, having routed these in several encounters; lit., these having been routed, etc.* G. 431. Join *compluribus* with *proeliis*, and *pulsus* with *his*.

38. *Citerioris provinciae, ulterioris; i. e., Citerior Gaul and Ulterior Gaul, separated from each other by the Alps.*

1. *Extremum, the last town.* — *Die; G. 429.*

4. *Trans Rhodanum; i. e., west of the Rhone.*

PAGE

6

# XI. *The Aedui and others complain of the Helvetii.*

**5. Per angustias, through the narrow pass; i. e.,** the pass between the Jura and the Rhone. See p. 3, lines 34–38, and note on *a lacu . . . ad Juram*, p. 4, line 34.

**6. Pervenerant.** This they had accomplished during the absence of Caesar in Italy.

**7. Cum possent; G. 517. — Se suaque, themselves and their possessions.** G. 441; 449.

**9. Rogatum, to ask.** G. 546. — *Ita se, etc., that they had at all times deserved so well of the Roman people.* — **Omni tempore; i. e.,** since their alliance with the Romans, more than sixty years before. The address of the ambassadors is reported in the *Oratio Obliqua*, depending upon the idea of *saying* involved in *rogatum*. G. 523, I., note.

**11. Agri vastari non debuerint, that their fields ought not to have been pillaged.** G. 537, 1. — **Liberi eorum = liberi sui;** G. 449, 1, 1).

**12. Debuerint; G. 495, VI.**

**13. Ambarri.** See Dict. — **Necessarii et consanguinei, friends and relatives.** *Necessarii* is a more comprehensive term than *amici*, and includes not only those who are bound together by the ties of friendship, but also those who are connected in business or in official relations.

**14. Non facile, with difficulty; lit., not easily.**

**17. Demonstrant, inform,** a common meaning in Caesar; lit., *demonstrate, show.* — **Praeter agri solum, except the mere soil; lit., except the soil of the field.**

**18. Reliqui.** This Genitive depends upon *nil*, which is the subject of *esse*. G. 397, 1. — **Quibus rebus, by these things.** G. 453. — **Non expectandum sibi, that he ought not to wait.** Supply *esse*. G. 388.

**19. Dum . . . pervenirent; G. 519, II., 2.**

## XII. *Caesar conquers the Tigurini.*

**21. Flumen est Arar, there is a river (called) Arar, now the Saône.** — *Quod* has *flumen* as its antecedent.

**23. In utram partem, in which direction; lit., part.** — **Fluat; G. 529, I. — Possit; G. 500, II.**

**24. Lintribus, canoes, made from the trunks of trees. — Transibant.** Observe the force of the Imperfect, *were crossing*.

**26. Flumen transduxisse.** Here *flumen* depends upon *trans*, and *partes* upon *duxisse*. G. 376.

**27. Citra flumen, on this side of the river; i. e., on the east side. — De tertia vigilia, in the third watch; lit., from or out of.** *De* implies that

the third watch had commenced, but not necessarily that much of it had passed. It began at midnight. For the divisions of the Roman day and night, see G. 645, 1 and 2.

**28. Castris.** He was then encamped in the country of the Segusiavi, between the Rhone and the Arar. See p. 6, line 3. Roman camps were always arranged with the utmost regularity, and fortified with the greatest care. They were rectangular and sometimes square; see 66. The gate nearest to the enemy was called *porta praetoria*, and the one opposite to it, *porta decumana*. The defences consisted of a trench, or fosse, usually nine feet wide and seven deep, or twelve feet wide and nine deep, and a rampart of earth thickly set with sharp stakes. For the form, arrangement, and fortification of a Roman camp, see 64—76.

**31. In silvas, in the forests.** The accusative is used because motion is implied, — *they fled into the forests and hid themselves.*

**33. Hic pagus unus, this one canton.**

**34. Patrum . . . memoria, within the memory of our fathers.** G. 429.

**35. Lucium Cassium.** See note, p. 4, line 24.

**37. Quae pars civitatis Helvetiae, ea = ea pars civitatis Helvetiae, quae.** *Quae* agrees with *pars*. G. 438, 1.

**38. Princeps . . . persolvit, was the first to pay the penalty ; lit., first paid.** G. 442.

**2. Ejus soceri Lucii Pisonis, of Lucius Piso, his (Caesar's) father-in-law.** This is Lucius Piso the consul, mentioned on p. 4, line 10. Caesar had married his daughter Calpurnia.

**3. Lucium Pisonem . . . interfecerant, the Tigurini, in the same battle in which they had slain Cassius, had slain his lieutenant, Lucius Piso.** *Cassium* depends upon *interfecerant*, to be supplied.

### XIII. The Helvetii send Ambassadors to Caesar.

**5. Ut posset; Purpose of faciendum curat.** G. 497.

**6. Pontem . . . curat, causes a bridge to be constructed over the Arar,** — probably a bridge of boats constructed from the vessels in which he conveyed his provisions up the river. See p. 8, line 31.

**8. Cum id . . . intelligerent, when they perceived that he had done in one day what they themselves had with the greatest difficulty accomplished in twenty days (namely), the crossing of the river ; lit., that they should cross the river.** *Ut flumen transirent* is in apposition with *id*. G. 363, 5; 501, III.

**11. Bello Cassiano, in their war with Cassius ; lit., in the Cassian war.** G. 429. This war, it will be remembered, was in the year 107 B. C.

**12. Ita agit, he discourses as follows.** The discourse itself is reported

## PAGE

7 in the *Oratio Obliqua*, and occupies the rest of the chapter. — **Si pacem . . . Helvetiorum**; Conditional sentence of the First Form; in Direct Discourse thus: *Si pacem . . . faciet . . . ibunt . . . erunt Helvetii. . . constitueris . . . volueris; sin . . . perseverabis, reminiscere*, etc. Explain change of Moods and Tenses. G. 523–531.

13. **Ibi futuros**, *would remain there*. Supply *esse*.

14. **Constituisset, voluisset**. In the Direct Discourse these verbs would be in the Future Perfect. Hence the Pluperfect Subj. G. 525, 2.

15. **Persequi**; supply *eos*. — **Perseveraret**. The subject is Caesar. — **Reminisceretur**; G. 523, III. In the Direct Discourse we should have the Imperative *reminiscere*.

16. **Veteris incommodi**, G. 406, II. This refers to the defeat of Cassius.

17. **Adortus esset, transissent, possent**; verbs in the subordinate clauses of the *Oratio Obliqua*. G. 524.

19. **Ne tribueret, despiceret, didicisse**; verbs in the principal clauses of the *Oratio Obliqua*. In the Direct Discourse, for *ne tribueret*, according to G. 489, we should have *noli* with the Infinitive — *noli tribuere* — which here becomes *ne tribueret*. G. 523, I. and III. — **Ob eam rem**, *on this account*; lit., *on account of this thing*; i. e., *quod . . . adortus esset*, because he had surprised. — **Ne suae . . . tribueret**, *he should not ascribe it particularly to his own valor*.

21. **Quam . . . niterentur**, *than to contend by means of stratagem, or to rely on ambuscades*. — **Dolo**; Abl. of Means. — **Insidiis**; G. 425, 1, 1), note.

22. **Ne committeret . . . caperet**, *that he should not cause the place* (lit., *that the place*) *where they should take their stand, to receive* (lit., *should receive*) *a name from the overthrow of the Roman people*, etc. For *ne committeret*, the Direct Discourse, according to G. 489, would have *noli committere*, do not cause; and instead of *constitissent*, the Fut. Perf. Indic. *constiterimus*, where we (the Helvetii) shall have taken our stand. For Mood and Tense, see G. 523, III.; 525, 2.

24. **Memoriam proderet**, *transmit the remembrance*; i. e., of the event.

#### XIV. Reply of Caesar.

25. **His, to them**; i. e., to the Helvetii. — **Eo . . . dari**, *that less hesitation was allowed* (lit., *given*) *him on this account*. *Eo* is an Abl. of Cause. The reason is given in *quod . . . teneret*. Observe that Caesar's reply, occupying most of the chapter, is in the *Oratio Obliqua*.

27. **Eo gravius ferre**, etc., *that he was the more indignant at this, the less it had happened through any fault* (lit., *desert*) *of the Roman people*; i. e., because it had not happened through any fault. *Eo gravius ferre*;

*fit, to bear by so much* (by this) *more heavily* = to be the more indignant. *7*  
*Eo* and *quo* are Abl. of Measure of Difference, often best rendered by *the*.  
 G. 423, and L. C. 450.

**28. Merito**; Abl. of Cause. G. 416. — **Qui si . . . fuisset**, *if they* (lit., *who*, referring to the Roman people) *had been conscious to themselves of any act of injury*; i. e., of having injured the Helvetians. *Alicujus* is here used instead of *cujus*, because it is emphatic, — *any injury whatever*. G. 455, 1. — **Injuriæ sibi**. For the Gen. and Dat. with *conscious*, see G. 399, I., 3, note 1.

**29. Cavere**; subject of *fuisse*, which in the Direct Discourse would be *fuisset*. — **Eo deceptum**; supply *esse*; also *eum*, referring to the Roman people. *Eo*; Abl. of Means, *by this*, viz. *quod . . . intelligeret . . . putaret*.

**30. Commissum a se**; supply *esse*; *that any offence* (thing) *had been committed by them*. The subject of the Infinitive is here omitted, partly because it is indefinite and partly because it can be readily supplied from *quare*, which is equivalent to *propter quod*. If *propter quod* had been used, the antecedent of *quod* would have been the subject of *commissum esse*.

**31. Timeret**; G. 500, I. — **Timendum**; supply *esse*; *that they ought to fear*; lit., *that it should be feared*, or *that there should be fear*. It is impersonal. G. 301. — **Quod si vellet**, *but if he were willing*. G. 453, 6.

**32. Veteris contumelliae**, *their former insult*; i. e., to the Roman people in the defeat of Cassius. — **Num . . . posse**. The learner will remember that Interrogative clauses in the *Oratio Obliqua* generally take the Subjunctive. For the use of the Infinitive see G. 523, II., 2.

**33. Injuriarum**; join with *memoriam* below; *the recollection of injuries*. — **Eo invito**, *without his* (Caesar's) *consent*; lit., *he unwilling*. G. 431. *Se* might have been used. G. 449, 1, 1).

**35. Quod . . . gloriarentur**, *the fact that they boasted*. The clauses with *quod* are the subject of *pertinere*. G. 540, IV., note.

**36. Impune . . . tulisse**, lit., *had carried their crimes with impunity*; i. e., *had not been punished for them*. — **Eodem pertinere**, *tended to the same result*; viz., to arouse his indignation. — **Consuesse**; G. 297, I., 2.

**38. Quo . . . doleant**; Subj. of Purpose. G. 497, II., 2.

**1. Eorum**, *their*; lit., *of them*, referring to *quos*. — **Vellent**. The Subjunctive would be used even in the Direct Discourse. G. 503, I. 8

**2. His** is the antecedent of *quos*. — **Secundiores res**, *greater prosperity*; lit., *more prosperous things*. G. 440, note 4.

**3. Cum . . . sint**, *that although these things were so*. G. 515, III. — **Sint**; Hist. Present. — **Tamen**; join with *esse . . . facturum*.

**4. Es**; object of *facturos (esse)* the subject of which is *eos*, referring to the Helvetii.



## PAGE

8 5. *Aeduis*; G. 384, II., 4, note 1. — *Ipsis* and *eorum* refer to *Aeduis* *Ipsis*, *themselves*, in contrast with their allies.

8. *Institutos esse*. See Syn. L. C. 585. — *Consuerint*; G. 297, I., 2

9. *Ejus rei . . . testem*, *that the Roman people were witnesses of this*, —alluding to the hostages given by the survivors after the defeat and death of Cassius. — *Hoc . . . dato*; G. 431.

### XV. *March of the two Armies.*

11. *Movent*. The subject is *Helvetii*, to be supplied.

12. *Equitatumque omnem*. Caesar had no Roman cavalry in Gaul.

14. *Coactum habebat*, *had collected* — a combination similar to the English; lit., *had* (possessed), *having been collected*. G. 388, 1, note. — *Qui videant*; construction according to sense. *Equitatum* is the antecedent of *qui*. G. 445, 5. — *Videant*; Subj. of Purpose. G. 497. — *Quas . . . faciant*; Indirect Question. G. 529, I.

15. *Cupidius*, *too eagerly*. G. 444, 1. — *Novissimum agmen*, *the rear*; lit., *the newest line*; i. e., the last. See 53, 54; also Syn. L. C. 178.

16. *Alieno loco*, *in an unfavorable place*; lit., *in a place belonging to another*. In the same way, *suus*, *his*, is used in the sense of *favorable*. For the construction of *loco*, see G. 425, II., 1.

17. *Pauci de nostris*, *a few of our men*. G. 397, 3, note 3; 441. — *Quo proelio*, *by this battle*. G. 453.

18. *Quod . . . propulerant*; Caesar's reason, as shown by the Indicative. G. 516, I.

21. *Satis habebat*, *deemed it sufficient*. The object of *habebat* is the clause *hostem . . . prohibere*. — *In praesentia*, *for the present*; lit., *in the present*.

22. *Rapinis*. Construction? G. 414, I.

23. *Dies*; G. 379. — *Circiter*; adverb.

24. *Nostrum primum*; supply *agmen*; *our van*; lit., *our first line*. — *Amplius* is the subject of *interesset*. G. 441, 2.

25. *Quinis . . . millibus*. The Distributive implies that the statement is true for each of the fifteen days. G. 174, 2.

### XVI. *The Aedui fail to furnish Supplies.*

26. *Quotidie*. See Syn. L. C. 399. — *Aeduos frumentum*; G. 374. — *Quod essent*, etc., *which they had promised*. The Subjunctive may be explained by the fact that the antecedent is indefinite; *whatever grain they had promised*. G. 503, I. It may also involve the idea of cause. G. 517.

**27. Publice, in the name of the state ; lit., publicly, —** referring to the promise made by the chiefs. — **Flagitare ;** Historical Infinitive. G. 536, 1. *Flagito* means to demand with eagerness and importunity, and is especially appropriate in this passage. — **Propter frigora, on account of the cold climate.** The singular would refer more to coldness in the abstract. G. 130, 2.

**28. Sub septemtrionibus, towards the north ; lit., under the north. — Ut ante dictum est.** See p. 1.

**29. Matura non erant.** This was probably in the month of April, according to our calendar. — **Pabuli ;** for position, see G. 569, III., 2.

**30. Eo autem . . . poterat, moreover he was not able (lit., less able) to use the grain which he had brought up the river Arar in vessels.** *Frumento* depends upon *uti*. G. 421, I. *Flumine* and *navibus* are Abl. of Means. G. 420.

**31. Propterea quod, because ; lit., on account of these things, (viz.) because.**

**32. Iter ab Arare.** Caesar, in pursuing the Helvetii, who had turned away from the river, had been obliged to leave his supplies.

**33. Diem . . . Aedui, the Aedui put him off day after day.** With *ducere* supply *eum*, referring to Caesar. *Ducere* and *dicere* are Historical Infinitives. — **Diem ;** Accus. of Time. G. 379. — **Conferri ;** supply *id ; that it (the grain) was collecting.* *Conferri, comportari, adesse,* depend upon *dicere*. G. 535, I., 2.

**34. Se diutius duci, that he was put off too long.**

**35. Quo die.** Observe the repetition of the antecedent. G. 445, 8. — **Metiri ;** supply subject *eum*. The object is *frumentum*. The clause *frumentum . . . metiri* is the subject of *oporteret*. The Roman soldiers received a stated allowance of grain, usually wheat or barley, from which they prepared their bread. See 11 foot-note.

**37. Divitiaco, Lisco ;** in apposition with *principibus*. — **Summo magistratui praeerat, was invested with the highest magistracy ; lit., presided over.** G. 386.

**38. Quem . . . Aedui, whom (i. e., the person invested with the chief magistracy) the Aedui call Vergobretus ; i. e., Vergobretus was the title of their chief magistrate.**

**1. Qui . . . annuus, who is appointed for one year.** *Annuus* agrees with *qui*. — **In suos ;** observe Case ; over or upon his countrymen, not among them. 9

**3. Posset ;** supply *frumentum*. — **Necessario, critical. — Propinquis hostibus ;** G. 431.

**4. Sublevetur . . . sit destitutus.** The Subjunctive implies that these reasons were assigned by the speaker. In other words, Caesar here quotes his own language in the Indirect Discourse. G. 522 ; 516, II.

- 9 5. *Magna ex parte*, in a great measure; lit., from a large part. — *Eorum precibus*, by their prayers; i. e., the prayers of the Aedui. See p. 6, lines 9-12. — *Susceperit*. Why in the Subjunctive? G. 517.

## XVII. *Speech of Liscus, Chief Magistrate of the Aedui.*

8. *Esse nonnullos*, etc. Observe that the speech of Liscus, occupying the rest of this chapter, is in the *Oratio Obliqua*. G. 523-531. — *Quorum auctoritas*, etc., whose influence is very great, etc.; lit., avails very much.

9. *Valeat, possint*; G. 524.

10. *Magistratus*; G. 417, 1. — *Hos* refers to *nonnullos*.

11. *Ne conferant*; Subj. of Purpose. G. 497, II. The plural is used because of the idea of plurality involved in *multitudinem*. G. 461, 1.

12. *Si jam . . . erepturi*. These are the arguments which the men, of whom Liscus speaks, use with the multitude.

13. *Gallorum . . . praeferre . . . debere*; supply *se*; that they prefer the rule of the Gauls rather than that of the Romans, and that they ought not to doubt.

15. *Superaverint*; Fut. Perf. in the Direct Discourse. G. 525, 2. — *Aedui*; G. 386, 2.

16. *Sint erepturi*; G. 504, 3. — *Ab hisdem*, by the same persons, — referring to *nonnullos*. — *Quaeque . . . gerantur*, and whatever is done in the camp. G. 503, I. *Quaeque* = *et ea quae*, and those things which.

17. *A se*, by himself; i. e., in his capacity as chief magistrate.

18. *Quin etiam, nay even, moreover*. — *Necessario coactus*, compelled by necessity.

19. *Intelligere sese*. The subject is *sese*, and the object *quanto . . . fecerit*, an Indirect Question. G. 529, I.

## XVIII. *Treachery of Dumnorix.*

22. *Sentiebat*. See Syn. L. C. 576. — *Pluribus . . . jactari*, that these things should be discussed in the presence of too many; lit., more being present. G. 431.

24. *Ex solo*, from him in private; i. e., from Liscus.

26. *Reperit esse vera*, he found them to be true. *Vera* agrees with *eadem*, which is explained by *Ipsum esse*, etc. — *Ipsum esse Dumnorigem*, that Dumnorix was the very person; i. e., the one whom Liscus meant.

27. *Summa audacia*, a man of the greatest boldness. Supply *virum*. G. 419, II.

29. *Rerum novarum*, of a revolution; lit., of new things. G. 399; 441, 2, note 4. — *Complures annos*, for several years. G. 379. — *Vecti-*

**galia . . . redempta habere**, *that he had purchased the revenues at a small price.* See note on *coactum habebat*, p. 8, line 14. The revenues, in accordance with the Roman custom, were sold to the highest bidder, who collected them for himself. **Dumnorix** secured these at a low price, because no one dared to bid against him. **Vectigalia** are revenues in general; **portoria**, customs, port duties. **Pretio**; Abl. of Price. G. 422.

**30. Illo licente**, *when he bid.* G. 431.

**31. Audeat**; G. 524. — **Nemo.** Observe the emphatic position. G. 561, II.

**32. Facultates . . . comparasse**, *that he had amassed large means for bribery.* G. 235.

**34. Domi**, *at home*; i. e., in his own state. G. 426, 2.

**35. Largiter posse**, *that he had great influence*; lit., *to be able greatly.* — **Hujus potentiae causa**, *for the sake of maintaining this influence.*

**36. Biturigibus.** The Bituriges were neighbors of the Aedui, from whom they were separated by the river Loire. — **Collocasse**; supply in *matrimonium*, or *nuptum*, used below; *that he had given in marriage.*

**37. Ipsum . . . uxorem habere**, *that he had himself married a wife from the Helvetii.* His wife was the daughter of Orgetorix. See p. 2, lines 34–37. — **Sororem ex matre**, *his half sister*; *sister by the same mother.*

**38. Nuptum**; construe with *collocasse*. G. 546. **Nubo** is used of the marriage of women; *duco*, of that of men.

**1. Cupere Helvetiis**, *that he wished well to the Helvetii.* G. 385.

10

**2. Suo nomine**, *on his own account, on personal grounds*; lit., *in his own name*; Abl. of Cause. G. 416.

**3. Eorum adventu**, *by their coming.* *Eorum* refers to the Romans, and *adventu* is the Abl. of Means: *Ejus* refers to Dumnorix. — **Deminuta.** Supply *sit* from the next line.

**4. In antiquum**, etc., *to his former place of influence.* He had formerly possessed great influence. See line 37, below.

**5. Accidat.** See Syn. L. C. 624. — **Summam in spem venire**, *that he entertained the highest hopes*; lit., *came into the highest hope.*

**6. Regni obtinendi**; G. 543. — **Imperio**, etc., *under the rule of the Roman people*; i. e., if the Romans should rule. The Ablative here involves *cause*.

**8. Reperiebat.** The object is the clause *initium . . . factum (esse).* — **Quod . . . factum**, *in regard to the fact that an unsuccessful engagement of our cavalry had taken place*, etc. G. 516, 2, note. **Quod** is here a conjunction.

**9. Diebus**; G. 430. — **Esset factum**; G. 524.

**10. Ejus fugae**, *of that flight*, referring to *proelium adversum*.

**11. Equitatu**; G. 386. — **Auxilio Caesari**; G. 390.

XIX. *Caesar's Interview with Divitiacus.*

PAGE

10 14. *Certissimae res*, most undoubted facts; referring to the facts mentioned in the subsequent clauses—*quod per . . . quod obsides*, etc. See p. 5, lines 20-23. — *Quod . . . transduxisset*. This clause is in apposition with *res*, but also involves a reason in the mind of Caesar at the time of the event. Hence the Subjunctive. G. 516, II. A reason assigned by Caesar as historian would require the Indicative. G. 516, I. *Transduxisset*, *curasset*, and *fecisset* are all in the same construction. The subject is Dumnorix.

15. *Inter eos*, between them; *i. e.*, between the Helvetii and the Sequani. — *Dandos*. Supply *esse*.

16. *Injusso suo et civitatis*, without his (Caesar's) orders and those of the state (*i. e.*, of the Aedui).

17. *Inscientibus ipsis*, without their knowledge; *lit.*, they themselves not knowing. *Ipsis* refers to Caesar and the Aedui, — the latter implied in *civitatis*. — *A magistratu Aeduorum*; *i. e.*, by Liscus, the vergobretus or chief magistrate.

18. *Satis causae*, a sufficient reason; *lit.*, enough of cause. G. 397. — *Quare animadverteret*, why he should either himself punish him; *lit.*, by which he should either himself direct his attention to (against) him, *i. e.*, proceed against him according to law. This is a relative clause of Result, introduced by the relative particle *quare*; — a sufficient reason to induce him, etc.; *i. e.*, to produce this result. G. 500, I.

20. *His rebus*, to these things; *i. e.*, these reasons for punishing Dumnorix. G. 385. — *Unum*, one consideration, referring to *quod . . . verebatur*; *i. e.*, though there were several reasons for punishing Dumnorix, there was yet one objection to this course.

21. *Studium, voluntatem*, loyalty, affection.

23. *Ne offenderet*; G. 498, III., note 1. — *Ejus* refers to Dumnorix.

24. *Verebatur*. Observe the force of the Imperfect; *was fearing, was fearful*.

25. *Conaretur*; G. 520, II. — *Quotidianis . . . remotis*, having dismissed his ordinary (*lit.*, daily) interpreters. G. 431, 2.

27. *Principem*, a leading man. — *Cui . . . fidem habebat*, in whom he was wont to place the highest confidence on all subjects; *lit.*, to whom he was having the highest confidence of all things. For the force of the genitive in *rerum*, see G. 393, note.

29. *Simul*; construe with *et*; he at once reminds him . . . and shows. — *Ipsa*, *i. e.*, Divitiacus. — *Sine ejus*, etc., without offence to his feelings, etc. *Ejus* refers to Divitiacus, *ipse* to Caesar, and *civitatem* to the Aedui.

32. *Statuat, jubeat*; G. 498, II.

XX. *Caesar pardons Dumnorix.*

PAGE

35. *Quid gravius, anything too severe; i. e., too severe a sentence.* 10

36. *Scire se.* Here the verb of *saying*, on which the Infinitive depends, is implied in *obsecrare*. G. 523, 1. — *Nec quemquam, and that no one; lit., nor any one.* G. 554, I, 2. — *Ex eo, from him.*

37. *Doloris; G. 397, 3. — Propterea quod; construe with crevisset.* — *Ipse* refers to Divitiacus. — *Plurimum.* Supply *posset*, expressed with *minimum*.

38. *Domī, at home; i. e., among his own people.* G. 426, 2. — *Ille* refers to Dumnorix. Supply *et* before *ille*.

1. *Se* refers to Divitiacus. — *Quibus opibus ac nervis uteretur, 11* and this (lit., which) influence and power he (Dumnorix) was using, referring to the influence and power implied in *per se crevisset*. G. 453. *Nervis* (lit., nerves) is used figuratively for *strength, power*.

3. *Suam* refers to Divitiacus. — *Existimatione vulgi, by the opinion of the common people; i. e., by the fact that they would hold him responsible, as explained in the next sentence.*

4. *Quod si; G. 453, 6.*

6. *Eum locum . . . apud eum, such a place in his friendship; lit., that place of friendship with him; i. e., with Caesar.* — *Existimaturum, factum.* Supply *esse*. — *Voluntate; Abl. of Cause.*

7. *Futurum uti averterentur; G. 501, I, 1; 537, 3.*

10. *Faciat; G. 499, 2. — Tanti; G. 404, note 1. — Ejus* refers to Divitiacus, and *se* to Caesar.

11. *Rei publicae injuriam, the injury to the state.*

15. *Omnes suspiciones, all grounds for suspicion. — Divitiaco fratri, for the sake of his brother Divitiacus; lit., to, or for, his brother.*

16. *Dumnorigi custodes ponit.* Caesar watched the movements of Dumnorix, and finally put him to death. See p. 79. — *Ut possit; Subj. of Purpose.* G. 497.

17. *Agat, loquatur; G. 529, I.*

XXI. *Caesar prepares to attack the Helvetii.*

18. *Certior factus, etc., having been informed (lit., made more certain) that the enemy had encamped. Certior fio, like doceor, admits an Infinitive.* G. 535, I, 3.

19. *Millia passuum; G. 379.*

20. *Esset; G. 529, I. — Qualls in circuitu, etc., what the ascent by a circuitous route; lit., in a circuit.*

21. *Qui . . . misit, he sent men to ascertain; lit., who should ascertain.*

## PAGE

- 11 Supply *eos* as the antecedent of *qui* and the object of *misit*. For the Mood in *cognoscerent*, see G. 497, I. The object is the clause *qualis . . . ascensus*. — *Facilem esse*. Supply *ascensum*.

22. *De tertia vigilia*. See note, p. 6, line 27. — *Legatum pro praetore*, his lieutenant with praetorian power. *Praetor* is here used in the sense of commander-in-chief. *Caesar* is the praetor. *Legatus pro praetore* is an honorary title applicable to the general or lieutenant who is second in command, and accordingly acts as commander-in-chief (*pro praetore*) in the absence of that officer.

23. *Cum his ducibus*, with those persons as guides. *Ducibus*, in apposition with *his*.

24. *Quid sui consilii sit*, what his plan is; lit., what is of his plan. *Consilii* is a Predicate Genitive with *sit*, and not a Partitive Genitive depending upon *quid*. G. 401.

25. *Quo*; Abl. of Means.

27. *Rei militaris*; G. 399, I., 2.

28. *Sullae*; Lucius Cornelius Sulla, the famous Roman dictator, and rival of Marius.

29. *Crassi*; Marcus Licinius Crassus, the distinguished commander in the Servile War, who defeated and slew Spartacus, 71 B. C. For the omission of *exercitu* before *Marci Crassi*, see G. 398, 1, note 1.

## XXII. The Mistake of Considius defeats Caesar's Plan.

30. *Prima luce*, at daybreak; lit., at the first light. G. 440, 2, note 1. *Summus mons*, the summit of the mountain.

31. *Ipse*; i. e., Caesar.

33. *Abesset, cognitus esset*; construe with *quam*. G. 521, II., 2.

34. *Equo admisso*, at full speed. *Admittere*, in such expressions, means to give loose reins. — *Accurrit, dicit*. Observe the omission of the conjunction, implying haste. So, also, between *subducit* and *instruit*, below.

35. *Voluerit*; G. 524. — *A Gallicis insignibus*, from the Gallic standards. See plate IV., also 9, 9, foot note.

37. *Subducit, withdraws*. Here *sub* gives to the verb the idea of a quiet, noiseless movement. — *Aciem*. See 28; also Syn. L. C. 178.

38. *Erat praeceptum*. The object is the clause *ne . . . committeret*, which also expresses purpose. G. 499, 3.

- 12 1. *Ipsius copiae*, his own (Caesar's) forces. — *Visae essent*. In the Direct Discourse the Fut. Perfect would be used: hence, the Pluperf. Subj. here. G. 525, 2.

4. *Multo die*, late in the day; though probably only relatively so, im-

plying that much time had been lost since daybreak (*prima luce*) when they might have surprised the enemy. 12

6. *Quod . . . renuntiavisse*, *had reported to him what he had not seen, as if seen*; lit., *for seen*. Supply *id* as the antecedent of *quod*, and as the object of *renuntiavisse*.

7. *Quo consuerat intervallo* = *intervallo quo consuerat*, *at the usual distance*; i. e., *from the enemy*; lit., *with the interval with which he was wont*. The usual distance was about five miles. See p. 8, lines 23-25.

### XXIII.-XXVII. *Defeat of the Helvetii.*

9. *Diet*; G. 398, 5. — *Supererat cum oporteret*, *remained before it would be necessary*; lit., *when it would be necessary*.

10. *Metiri*. See note p. 8, line 35.

12. *Rel . . . existimavit*, *he thought that he ought to provide supplies*. With *prospiciendum* supply *esse*. G. 301; 386.

14. *Avertit ac contendit*. These two verbs, taken together, show what Caesar did, as the result of the opinion expressed in *prospiciendum existimavit*. This connection may be shown, in rendering, by supplying *and accordingly*. Thus: *He thought that he ought, etc., and accordingly turned aside from the Helvetii*. — *Bibracte*; G. 380, II. — *Fugitivos, deserters*; i. e., from the Gallic cavalry in Caesar's service.

It was formerly supposed that *Bibracte* occupied the site of the present city of *Autun*, but the prevailing opinion among scholars now is that the *Aeduan* capital was built on *Mont Beuvray*, an elevated plateau about 3000 feet high, eight or nine miles west of *Autun*. This opinion has found an able advocate in *Napoleon III.*, who calls attention to the fact that the Gauls in general built their towns in places difficult of access, either on high and steep hills, as at *Gergovia* and *Alesia* (book VII., 36 and 69), or on grounds surrounded by marshes, as at *Avaricum* (VII., 19); that several ancient roads in a remarkable state of preservation lead to the summit of *Mont Beuvray*; and, finally, that recent excavations have brought to light the foundations of Gallic walls and towers.

15. *Decurionis*. The *decurio* was the commander of a *decuria*, a small force of cavalry, originally ten in number. The cavalry was divided into companies or *alae*, the *alae* into *turmas*, and these again into *decuriae*.

16. *Seu quod . . . existimarent . . . sive eo quod . . . confiderent*, *either because they thought, etc., or because (lit., for this reason, because) they trusted*. For the Subjunctive, see G. 516, II.

17. *Eo magis quod*, *the more because*; lit., *more because of this, viz., that, or because*; explained by the following clause, which gives a special reason for the opinion of the *Helvetii*. — *Superioribus . . . occupatis*,



## PAGE

**12** *though they* (the Romans) *had taken possession of the higher grounds,* referring to *summus mons*. See p. 11, line 30; also G. 431, 2.

**19.** *Re*; G. 414, 1. — *Posse*. Supply *eos*, referring to the Romans.

**20.** *Nostros, our men*. G. 441. — *A novissimo agmine, on the rear;* lit., *from the newest* (last) *line*. See note on *ab Sequania*, p. 1, line 17. For the arrangement of an army on the march, see 46—49 and 53—57.

**22.** *Id animum*; G. 376. — *Animum advertit*. For the usual form *animadvertit*, see p. 28, line 14.

**23.** *Sustineret*; Subj. of Purpose. G. 497.

**24.** *In colle medio, midway up the hill*. G. 440, 2, note 1.

**25.** *Triplicem aciem, a triple line of battle*; i. e., the army was arranged in three lines, as seen in the figure under 28.

As the engagement with the Helvetii is the first regular battle described in the Commentaries, it may be interesting to the learner to trace the general course of the action. For two weeks Caesar had been following the Helvetii, with an interval of five miles between the head of his column and the rear-guard of the enemy. One favorable opportunity for giving battle had been lost, through the mistake of Considius, as described in chapter 22.

In the mean time, the army supplies were nearly exhausted; Caesar, therefore, reluctantly turned the head of his column toward Bibracte, the chief city of the Aedui, where he would be sure to find an abundance of provisions. The Helvetii at once retraced their steps, and began to harass the rear-guard of the Roman line. Thereupon Caesar withdrew his forces to a neighboring hill, and sent his cavalry to engage the enemy, while he placed his legions in battle array. It will be remembered that the Roman mode of attack required an elevated position from which the heavy javelins could be hurled into the ranks of the enemy with the greatest effect; see 77.

It will be observed that Caesar placed only his four veteran legions in line of battle, while the two legions recently enrolled in Cisalpine Gaul, and all the auxiliary infantry, were stationed in the rear.

In accordance with general custom, Caesar pitched his camp in the rear of his army, and proceeded at once to fortify it, although the battle was imminent (63, 70). The Helvetii had deposited their baggage at a convenient distance in the rear, and had placed their numerous wagons in a circle around it—a common defence for a Gallic or Helvetian camp.

The Helvetii, in dense masses, *confertissima acie* (83, foot note), advanced to the charge. The Roman legions were arranged in three lines, and each line consisted of separate cohorts, with intervals between them (28). The front line received the onset of the enemy with a salvo of javelins; and then with drawn swords rushed to the charge. After a few minutes, the second line of cohorts, advancing through the intervals of the

first line, rushed into the thickest of the fight (85). The enemy were driven back to a hill a mile in the rear; but while the Roman legions were pursuing the retreating Helvetii, the Boii and Tulingi, 15,000 strong, who formed the rear-guard of the enemy's line of march, appearing on the scene, made an attack upon the right flank of the Roman line. The Helvetii, encouraged by this timely aid, turned upon their pursuers and renewed the battle. Caesar at once detached his third or rear line to receive the attack of the Boii and Tulingi, while with the other two lines he repulsed for the second time the whole force of the Helvetii.

**26. In summo jugo, on the very summit.** *Jugum*, in distinction from *mons*, a mountain or hill, often denotes the summit of a hill, or the ridge of a range of hills.

**27. Collocari, compleri; construe with *jussit*.**

**32. Phalange facta.** The Macedonian phalanx, so celebrated in ancient warfare, was doubtless unknown to the Gauls. The Helvetic phalanx, here referred to, probably consisted simply of a body of soldiers in close array, under the cover of their shields locked firmly together over their heads. This phalanx resembled the Roman *testudo*, as seen in plate V.

**33. Primum aciem, first line; i. e., to an approaching enemy; hence, the lowest or front line of cohorts.**

**34. Suo.** Supply *equo remoto* from *remotis equis*, in the next line. G. 431.—**Omnium, of all; i. e., of all the officers and other persons of distinction, not, of course, of the cavalry.**

**37. Pili, javelins.** For an account of this weapon, see 9, 9.

**38. Ea** refers to *phalangem*.—**Gladis dstrictis, with drawn swords; Abl. of Means.**—**Eos** refers to *hostium*.

**1. Magno erat impedimento, it was a great hindrance; lit., for a great hindrance.** G. 390. The subject of *erat* is the clause *quod pluribus*, etc.—**Pluribus . . . colligatis.** A single javelin, penetrating several shields which overlapped each other, sometimes fastened them together by the bending of the iron point. The *scutum* is a large, rectangular shield, four feet in length and two and one-half in width. See 9, 7.

**3. Evellere.** Supply *ea*, as the object, referring to *pilorum*.—**Sinistra impedita.** The buckler was fastened to the left arm.

**4. Multi ut praeoptarent, so that many preferred.** Observe the emphatic position of *multi*. G. 561, I.; 569, III., 1.

**5. Manu; G. 414, I.—Nudo corpore, with the body unprotected; i. e., without a shield.**

**7. Mons suberat, etc., there was a mountain near by, about a mile off.—Eo, thither; i. e., to the mountain.**

**8. Capto monte, when the mountain had been gained; i. e., by the enemy.**

**9. Boii et Tulingi; see plate VII, in the text.**

## PAGE

**13** 10. *Novissimis praesidio erant, guarded the rear; lit., were for a defence to the rear, or the newest (last).* G. 390.

**11.** *Ex itinere, on the march.—Latere aperto, on the exposed flank.* G. 425, II., 1. This expression generally denotes the right side, because not protected with the shield, but is often used of either flank of the army when particularly exposed.

**14.** *Conversa . . . intulerunt, having changed their front, advanced in two divisions; lit., advanced their standards turned about.* The words *conversa signa* apply only to the third line (*tertia acies*), which faced about to meet the Boii and Tulingi, who had fallen upon the Roman flank. The first and second lines pressed forward against the Helvetii, who had been dislodged, but were attempting to renew the battle. See plate VII.

**15.** *Acies; in apposition with Romani.* G. 364.—*Tertia; supply acies.*—*Victis* refers to the Helvetii, and *venientes* to the Boii and the Tulingi.

**17.** *Ancipiti proelio, in a double battle; so called because fought on two different fronts. Proelio; Abl. of Manner.* G. 419, III.—*Pugnatum est, they fought; lit., it was fought.* G. 301.

**19.** *Alteri—alteri, one party (i. e., the Helvetii), the other party (i. e., the Boii and the Tulingi).*

**21.** *Toto proelio; G. 429.—Cum pugnatum sit, though they fought.* G. 515, III.—*Hora septima, one o'clock; lit., the seventh hour.* The Roman hours were numbered from sunrise. G. 645.

**22.** *Aversum hostem, a retreating enemy; lit., an enemy turned away; i. e., in flight.—Ad multam noctem, far into the night.* See note on *multo die*, p. 12, line 4.

**23.** *Ad, near, towards.*

**24.** *In nostros venientes, against our men who were advancing; lit., ours advancing.*

**26.** *Mataras ac tragulas, lances and javelins.* The *mataras* is a heavy pike or lance, while *tragula* is a light javelin.

**27.** *Cum . . . pugnatum; G. 521, II., 2.—Impedimentis; G. 421, I.*

**29.** *E fillis; G. 397, 3, note 3.*

**31.** *Nullam partem; G. 379.* This seems to imply that they fled day and night.

**32.** *Cum potuissent; Subj. of Cause.* They escaped because the Romans could not pursue them.

**33.** *Propter sepulturam, for the burial.* The Romans were scrupulous in the observance of funeral rites, because they believed that the souls of the unburied dead were compelled to wander a hundred years on the banks of the Styx, before they could find rest.—*Nostri, our men.* G. 441.

34. *Triduum*; G. 379. — *Lingonas*; a Greek form. G. 68.

36. *Qui si juvissent, if they should aid.* G. 453; 525, 2. — *Se . . . habiturum*; supply *esse*; *that he would regard them as in the same situation as the Helvetii.* *Se habiturum* depends upon the verb implied in *litteras . . . misit.* G. 523, I. Supply *eos* as the object of *habiturum.* *Helvetios* is the object of *haberet*, to be supplied.

3. *Ad pedes*; *at his feet, i. e., at the feet of Caesar.*

4. *Eos, them; i. e., the Helvetii.*

5. *Essent*; G. 524. — *Jussisset.* The subject is *Caesar.*

6. *Eo, thither, to that place; i. e., where the Helvetii were awaiting him.*

7. *Perfugissent*; G. 503, I. — *Ea, these; lit. these things.* The use of the neuter, referring to *obsides* and *servos*, shows that they were here regarded as the spoils of victory, rather than as men.

8. *Circiter*; adverb, modifying *sez.*

9. *Perterriti* agrees with *millia* by a construction according to sense. G. 438, 6.

10. *Ne . . . afficerentur* depends upon *timore.* G. 498, III; 499, 3.

11. *Quod . . . existimarent*; G. 516, II.

12. *Fugam*; subject of *posse.* — *Aut omnino ignorari, or be entirely unknown.*

13. *Prima nocte, in the early part of the night.* G. 440, 2, note 1.

## XXVIII. *The Helvetii return to their own Country.*

15. *Resciti*; G. 471, 4. This word means to ascertain something which has been concealed or is unexpected. — *Quorum* refers to *his* for its antecedent. — *His* depends upon *imperavit.* G. 385, I.

16. *Si sibi . . . vellent, if they wished to be blameless in his sight; lit., to him.* G. 389. In the Direct Discourse the Indicative would be used in the condition. G. 508, 4.

17. *Reductos.* Supply *eos*, referring to those who had fled. — *In hostium . . . habuit, he treated them as enemies; lit., had them in the number of enemies.* The punishment in such cases was usually slavery or death.

21. *Quo . . . tolerarent*; G. 503, 1.

22. *Ut copiam facerent, to furnish a supply; lit., that they should make an abundance.* G. 498, II.

23. *Ipsos, them, emphatic, in distinction from Allobrogibus, above.* — *Quos incenderant.* The Indicative is used because *Caesar* has in mind the particular towns mentioned on p. 3, lines 20–23. The Subjunctive would make the expression general — *any towns which they had burned.*

24. *Ea maxime ratione, principally for this reason, explained by quod noluit, etc.*

PAGE

**14** 28. *Boios*, etc. Construe, *Concessit Aeduis potentibus ut* (Aedui) collocarent *Boios in finibus suis, quod* (Boii) erant cogniti *egregia virtute, he granted the request of the Aedui that; lit., granted to the Aedui asking that. Ut collocarent* is the object both of *concessit* and of *potentibus*. — *Quod . . . erant cogniti, because they were known to be men of remarkable valor.* This is the reason for the request of the Aedui.

30. *Quibus, to these; i. e., to the Boii.* — *Illi* refers to the Aedui.

31. *Atque ipsi erant, as they enjoyed; lit., and (as) they themselves were.* G. 554, L, 2.

### XXIX. *Comparative Number of the Helvetii before and after the War.*

33. *Tabulae, tablets or lists.* The tablets upon which the Romans wrote were generally of wood covered with wax.

34. *Litteris Graecis confectae, written in Greek characters,* though not necessarily in the Greek language. These characters were undoubtedly derived from the Greek colony at Marseilles, in Southern Gaul.

35. *Ratio qui numerus, an account showing what number.* *Qui . . . exisset, etc.,* is in apposition with *ratio*. — *Domo; G. 412, II., 1.*

36. *Possent; G. 529, I*

37. *Pueri, etc.* Supply *perscripti erant; were enumerated.* — *Quarum . . . summa, the sum of all these classes or items; lit., things.*

38. *Capitum Helvetiorum, of the Helvetii, lit., of heads of the Helvetii.* The use of *capita* is common in the Roman census.

**15** 3. *Qui* refers to *millia* as its antecedent. G. 445, 5. — *Ad* has an adverbial force, *about.*

4. *Fuerunt* agrees with the Predicate noun *millia.* G. 462.

5. *Censu habito, when an actual enumeration had been made; lit., had.* *Census* is here used in this general sense. The same term, when applied to the Romans, often meant much more than this, including not only the numbering of the citizens, but also the valuation of property and a general review of the condition of the state. At Rome such a census was taken every five years.

### XXX-XXXII. *Complaints against Ariovistus.*

7. *Bello Helvetiorum, the war with the Helvetii; lit., of the Helvetii.* — *Galliae.* *Gallia* is here used in its limited sense — *Celtic Gaul.* See p. 1.

8. *Gratulatum; G. 546.*

9. *Intelligere sese*; G. 523, 1. — *Helvetiorum injuriis, the wrongs done by the Helvetii to the Roman people.* *Helvetiorum* is the Subjective Genitive, and *populi* the Objective. G. 396, II. and III.; 398, 2.

10. *Ab his, from these*; i. e., the Helvetii. — *Poenas, satisfaction.* — *Repetisset.* The subject is a pronoun referring to Caesar.

11. *Ex usu, to the advantage of*; lit., *from use*, very much like the English *of use*.

12. *Eo consilio, with this design*; viz., *uti . . . potirentur . . . haberent.* — *Florentissimis rebus*; Abl. Absol. G. 431.

14. *Imperio*; G. 421, I.

15. *Ex magna copia, from the great abundance*; i. e., of places, which they would have in all Gaul. — *Quem . . . opportunissimum*; G. 373, 1, note 2.

16. *Judicassent*; G. 525, 2.

17. *Sibi*; construe with *liceret*.

18. *In diem certam, for a certain day.*

19. *Voluntate*; G. 416. — *Sese habere*; G. 523, I., note.

20. *Ex communi consensu, with the common consent*; i. e., of their people; lit., *from the common consent*, implying that the action is to proceed *from this*, or *grow out of it*. In such cases the preposition may be rendered *with*, or *in accordance with*. — *Vellent*; G. 524.

21. *Concilio*; G. 384. — *Jurejurando*; supply *in eo concilio*; i. e., when the council met they bound themselves, etc. G. 125, 1. — *Ne quis . . . nisi quibus*, etc., *that no one except those to whom this duty should be intrusted by the common council, should communicate their doings*; i. e., to Caesar. Supply *ii* as the antecedent of *quibus*.

26. *Secreto in occulto, alone, in secret.* *Secreto* means simply *without witnesses, alone*; but *in occulto* means much more, *in a secret place, in secret*, implying that the whole interview is to be a profound secret.

27. *Caesari ad pedes, at the feet of Caesar*; lit., *to Caesar at the feet*. (Observe the difference of idiom. *Caesari* is the Indirect Object of *proferunt*. G. 384, 4, note 2.

28. *Se contendere*; G. 523, 1. — *Id, this*, viz., *ne ea . . . enuntiarentur*, which is in apposition with it and at the same time expresses Purpose. G. 499, 3. In this speech, as indeed in all Indirect Discourse, the pupil should observe the use of Moods—the Infinitive in Principal clauses, unless Interrogative or Imperative, and the Subjunctive in Subordinate clauses. G. 523; 524. But he should remember that the Subjunctive in a Subordinate clause, which would require that Mood in the Direct Discourse, should not be referred to G. 524, but to the rule which would govern it in the Direct Discourse. Thus *enuntiarentur* and *impetrarent* are both Subjunctives of Purpose, and must therefore be referred to G. 497, not 524.

Kurz E.H. 4

PAGE

- 15 32. *Galliae totius*. Celtic Gaul is meant.
33. *Factiones duas*, *two parties*.
34. *Hi, these*; i. e., the Aedui with their party on the one hand, and the Arverni with theirs on the other. — *Cum . . . contenderent*, *while they were contending*. Observe tense.
35. *Factum esse*, *it came to pass*. The subject is the clause, *uti . . . uerserentur*, which also expresses Result. G. 501, I., 1.
36. *Mercede*; G. 422.
37. *Horum*, *of these*; i. e., of the Germans; Partitive Genitive. — *Circiter*, *about*; adverb modifying *quindecim*.
38. *Cultum*, *mode of life*. — *Copias*, *riches*, *wealth*.
- 16 2. *Ad . . . millium numerum*, *to the number of*, etc.
3. *Clientes*, *dependants*; i. e., dependent states. — *Semel atque iterum*, *again and again*; lit., *once and again*.
4. *Pulsos*. Supply *eos* as the subject of *accepisse* and *amisisse*.
6. *Fractos*. Supply *eos* as the antecedent of *qui* and the subject of *coactos esse*.
7. *Populi Romani hospitio*, *by the hospitality of the Roman people*. The friendship of the Romans had given the Aedui great influence in Gaul. *Hospitium*, as here used in its application to states, has the same force as when applied to individuals. States extended to each other the rights of hospitality in the persons of their representatives and ambassadors.
9. *Nobilissimos civitatis*, *the noblest men of the state*. G. 441; 363.
12. *Neque recusatueros quo minus*, etc.; supply *esse*; *nor refuse to be*, etc.; lit., *by which the less they should be*. G. 497, II. — *Illorum*, *of them*; i. e., of the Sequani.
13. *Unum se esse*, *that he (Divitiacus) was the only person*.
14. *Obsides*, *as hostages*. G. 373, 1. — *Potuerit*; G. 525, 1; 503, II., 1. — *Ut juraret*, *to take the oath*.
16. *Postulatum*; G. 546. He was, however, unsuccessful. See p. 108
17. *Pejus accidisse*, *that a worse fate had befallen*. *Pejus*, used substantively, is the subject of *accidisse*.
19. *Eorum* refers to the Sequani.
20. *Agri Sequani*. The territory of the Sequani lay between the Saône, the Rhone, the Jura, and the Rhine, and was very fertile.
21. *De altera parte tertia*, *from a second third*.
22. *Mensibus*; G. 430.
23. *Harudum . . . quattuor*, *twenty-four thousand of the Harudes*. *Harudum* is a Partitive Genitive, depending upon *hominum*.
25. *Paucis annis*, *in a few years*; Abl. of Time. G. 429. — *Omnes* refers to the Galli.
27. *Gallicum*. Supply *agrum*. — *Gallicum cum Germanorum agro* = *Gallicum cum Germano agro*, *the Gallic territory with the Ger-*

*man*. Such expressions as this are good illustrations of the fact that **16**  
Adjectives and the Genitives of Nouns are kindred forms, which are often  
interchanged. See also *sua omniumque salute*, p. 15, line 26, and *auctori-*  
*tate sua atque exercitus*, p. 17, line 4; also G. 393; 401, note 2.

**28.** *Hanc consuetudinem victus, their mode of living*; lit., *this*,  
i. e., the one which is near the speaker, or belongs to him, referring to the  
mode of life in Gaul; while *illa* refers to that of the Germans. G. 450, 1.

**29.** *Ut semel . . . vicerit, when once he had conquered.* The Perf. Indic.  
of the Direct Discourse has become the Perf. Subj. of the Indirect. G. 524.

**31.** *Nobilissimi cujusque*; G. 458, 1.

**32.** *In eos . . . edere, practised upon them all kinds of severity and*  
*torture*; lit., *all examples and tortures.* *Exemplum*, as here used, is a  
punishment which, by its severity, will be a warning or example to others.  
—*Si qua*; G. 190, 1.

**33.** *Ad nutum . . . voluntatem, according to his bidding or desire.*  
*Nutus*, a nod, beck, is the outward expression of the desire, while *volun-*  
*tas* is the desire itself. — *Hominem . . . temerarium, that he was a*  
*savage, passionate, rash man.* Supply *eum* as the subject of *esse*. *Homi-*  
*nem* is the Predicate after *esse*.

**34.** *Non posse.* Supply *se*.

**36.** *Auxilii*; Partitive Genitive with *quid*. — *Gallis*; G. 388.

**37.** *Ut emigrant*; in apposition with *idem*. G. 501, III.

**1.** *Fortunamque quaecumque, etc., and experience whatever fortune* **17**  
*might befall them.* *Quaecumque* refers to *fortunam*.

**2.** *Dubitare.* Supply *se*. — *Quin de . . . sumat, that he would inflict*  
*the severest punishment upon all, etc.* The student will observe the Latin  
idiom, *supplicium sumere de*, to take satisfaction or pay from, instead of  
to inflict punishment upon.

**4.** *Caesarem*; construe with *posse*. — *Atque exercitus, and that of*  
*the army.* Supply *auctoritate*.

**7.** *Arlovisti*; Subjective Genitive. G. 396, II.

**12.** *Ejus rei, of this, lit., this thing*; i. e., their silence and sadness.

**13.** *Respondere, permanere*; Historical Infinitives. G. 536, 1.

**14.** *Neque . . . posset, and could extort no answer (word) at all.*

**16.** *Hoc, on this account, viz., quod soli, etc.* G. 416.

**17.** *Quam reliquorum, than that of the rest.* Supply *fortunam*. G.  
507, 1. — *In occulto.* Observe the emphatic position between *ne* and  
*insidam*. G. 569, III., 2.

**18.** *Auderent*; G. 516, II. — *Absentis, though absent.* G. 442.

**19.** *Adesset*; G. 513, II.

**20.** *Reliquis tamen, etc., to the others the means of escape was never-*  
*theless offered.*

**22.** *Sequantis*; Dative of the Agent, with *essent perferendi*. G. 388.



# XXXIII.-XXXVI. *Messages exchanged between Caesar and Ariovistus.*

PAGE

17 25. *Sibi . . . futuram*; supply *esse*; *that he would attend to this subject*; lit., *that this thing should be to him for a care.* G. 390.

26. *Beneficio suo*, by the service which he (Caesar) had rendered him; lit., *his service*, referring to the fact that in the consulship of Caesar, the year before, Ariovistus received from the Roman senate the title of *king and friend*. See p. 18, line 24.

28. *Et . . . res*, and besides (after) *these things*, many considerations induced him. *Ea* refers to the facts stated by Divitiacus, and *multae res* to considerations which he now proceeds to enumerate.

29. *Quare putaret*, to think; lit., by which thing (*qua re*) he should think; i. e., so that he should; a clause denoting Result. G. 500, I.

32. *Germanorum* is to be construed with *ditione* only, not with *servitute*.

34. *Quod*, which, referring to the fact just mentioned. — *In tanto . . . Romani*, in so great an empire as the Roman people had; lit., of the Roman people.

35. *Paulatim . . . consuescere*, that the Germans, moreover, should gradually become accustomed.

38. *Periculosum*. Supply *esse*. — *Sibi . . . temperaturos . . . quin . . . exirent*, would refrain from going, etc.; lit., would restrain themselves, by which they should not go. G. 385; 504, 4.

18 2. *Galliam*; Gaul, in its limited sense — *Celtic Gaul*. — *Ut, as. — Fecissent*; G. 524. — *Ante Cimbrum*. The incursions of the Cimbri and Teutones (or Teutoni), which took place half a century before, are mentioned by Caesar in Book II., 4 and 29.

5. *Rhodanus, the Rhone*; i. e., only the Rhone. — *Quibus rebus, these things*. G. 453; 386. — *Quam maturissime, as promptly as possible*. G. 444, 3.

7. *Arrogantiam*. See Syn. L. C. 431.

9. *Placuit ei*, he decided; lit., it pleased him; i. e., Caesar.

10. *Postularent*; Subj. of Purpose. G. 497. *Ut aliquem . . . diceret*, that he should name for the conference some place midway between both; i. e., between Caesar and Ariovistus. *Utriusque* depends upon *medium*. G. 399.

11. *De re publica, in regard to the common weal*; i. e., interests common to both parties.

13. *Si . . . esset . . . fulsse*; Conditional sentence of the *third form*. Hence *venturum fuisse*. G. 527, III.

14. *Si . . . velit . . . oportere*; Conditional sentence of the *first form*.

— *Si quid se vellet, if he wished anything of him*; a colloquial expression following the analogy of verbs of *asking*, and hence admitting two accusatives. G. 375. *Ille* refers to Caesar, and *se* to Ariovistus. 18

15. *In eas partes*, etc. Ariovistus was probably at this time between the Rhine and the Vosges.

20. *Negotii*; construe with *quid*. — *Esset*; G. 529, I.

22. *Mandatis*, instructions.

23. *Tanto suo . . . affectus*, having been treated with so great kindness on his part and that of the Roman people; lit., with his so great, etc. See note, p. 16, line 27.

25. *Hanc gratiam*, such gratitude; lit., this, in irony. — *Gratiam referret*. See Syn. L. C. 548.

27. *Dicendum sibi*. Supply *esse*. G. 388. — *Haec esse*, that these are the things; i. e., those which he now proceeds to specify. *Esse* depends upon a verb of *saying* involved in *legatos mittit*. G. 523, I.

28. *Ne transduceret*; Subj. of Purpose. G. 499, 3.

31. *Illi* and *illis* refer to *Sequanis*.

33. *Si . . . fecisset . . . futuram*; supply *esse*; Conditional sentence of the *first form*, with the Fut. Perf. in the condition in the Direct Discourse, and the Fut. in the conclusion — *si feceris, erit*. Hence *fecisset*. G. 525, 2. — *Id ita*. *Ita* is not strictly necessary to the thought, but is often thus combined with *id* in Caesar.

35. *Si . . . impetraret . . . futuram*. Here, in the Direct Discourse, we should have the Pres. Subj. in the condition and the Fut. Indic. in the conclusion. Hence, the Imperfect, *impetraret*. G. 511, I. — *Messala . . . consulibus*. See note, p. 2, line 4.

36. *Censulisset*, has decreed. See Syn. L. C. 576. — *Quicumque . . . obtineret*, whoever should hold; i. e., as his province, hence govern.

37. *Quod commodum . . . posset*, should he be able to do it consistently with the interests of the republic. Relative clause expressing condition. G. 507, III., 2. *Quod* refers to the clause *Aeduos . . . defenderet* as its antecedent, and is itself the object of *facere*.

1. *Se* is only a repetition of *esse* above.

19

4. *Ut, qui vicissent*. Supply *ii* as the antecedent of *qui* and the subject of *imperarent*. — *His*; G. 385. — *Imperarent*; G. 501.

7. *Quemadmodum . . . uteretur*; Indirect Question. G. 529.

9. *Sibi*; construe with *stipendiarios*. G. 391.

11. *Magnam*. Observe position. G. 561, I. — *Facere*, was doing. *Suo* refers to Caesar, but *sibi*, in the next line, refers to Ariovistus. — *Qui faceret*, since he was making. G. 517.

13. *Neque his . . . illaturum*, nor (on the other hand) would he make war upon them, etc.

15. *Fecissent*. Why Pluperf.? G. 525, 2.

## PAGE

- 19 16. Longe fis . . . abfuturum, the title of brothers of the Roman people would be far from aiding them; lit., would be far from them.—Fraternum, fraternal=fratrum, of brothers. G. 395, note 2.
18. Secum . . . sua. Se in secum refers to Ariovistus, and sua to neminem. G. 449, 6.
19. Congrederetur; G. 523, III.—Intellectum. Supply esse, also eum; i. e., Caesarem.—Quid virtute possent, what they could accomplish by their valor. G. 378, 2; 529, I.

## XXXVII.—XXXVIII. Caesar occupies Vesontio.

24. Questum. Supply veniebant. G. 546.—Harudes. See p. 16, line 23.
25. Eorum and sese both refer to the Aedui. Obsidibus datis, by giving hostages. G. 549, note 2.—Popularentur. Why Subj.? G. 516, II.
26. Treviri autem. Supply veniebant questum.
27. Pagos centum, etc. These words, if taken literally, would include the whole body of the Suebi; but they seem to be used here not of the people at large, but only of the army, which consisted of one hundred thousand men, one thousand from each canton. See p. 59.
28. Conarentur. Why Subj.? G. 524. What Mood would have been used if it were the statement of the writer? G. 524, 2.—Ils; G. 386.
31. Minus facile, etc., resistance could be less easily offered; i. e., to Ariovistus. Resisti and posset are both impersonal. G. 301.
32. Ad Ariovistum. Where was Ariovistus at this time? See note, p. 18, line 15.
35. Viam; G. 371, I., 2. See also 62.
37. Vesontionem. See Dict.—Quod. Why neuter? G. 445, 4.
38. A suis finibus, etc. When these tidings were received, Caesar was at Arc-en-Barrois, about forty miles from Vesontio (Besançon), and supposed Ariovistus to be quite as near that important city as himself. Hence the pressing need of haste.—Id, this; i. e., the occupation of Vesontio by Ariovistus.
- 20 1. Magnopere . . . praecavendum; supply esse; that he ought to take great precaution.—Sibi; G. 388.
2. Ad bellum usui, of use in (to) war. G. 384, 1, 3).
3. Natura loci, by its natural position; lit., by the nature of the place.
4. Magnam . . . facultatem, abundant means for protracting the war; i. e., against Caesar—a reason why it should not be permitted to fall into the hands of Ariovistus.
5. Ut circumductum, as if traced by a pair of compasses.
7. Pedum. Supply spatium.—Sexcentorum. The distance is found

to be sixteen hundred Roman feet. Perhaps Caesar wrote MDC, from 20 which M was omitted by the copyists. — *Qua flumen intermittit, where the river intermits its circular course.* The river continues its circular course until interrupted by the high hill which stood on one side of the town.

8. Radices, object; ripae, subject.

9. Hunc. Supply *montem*, object of *efficit*.

### XXXIX.-XLI. *Panic in the Roman Army.*

16. Magnitudine; G. 419, II.

18. *Aciem oculorum*; *the fierce expression of their eyes.*

19. Timor. See Syn. L. C. 305. — *Exercitum.* See Syn. L. C. 178.

20. *Mentes animosque.* See Syn. L. C. 355. — *Perturbaret*; Subj. of Result. G. 500.

21. Tribunis. See 37. — *Praefectis*, not the *prefects* of the cavalry, but of the auxiliaries. The *prefects* held the same position among the auxiliaries as the *tribunes* among the legionary soldiers. See 42.

22. Ex urbe; i. e., from Rome.

23. Alius, alia causa, etc., *one assigning one reason and another another.* G. 459, 1.

24. Quam . . . diceret, *which he said was a necessary cause for his departure.* — *Diceret*; G. 500, I.

30. Totis castris; G. 425, 2.

33. Quique, *and those who.*

35. Vereri implies fear, with the accessory notion of respect and awe.

36. Intercederent. Observe the force of the Subj.; *which intervened*; i. e., as they supposed. G. 524. — *Rem frumentariam ut*, etc. = *ut res frumentaria . . . posset, that grain might not be furnished with sufficient readiness.* — *Ut, that not.* G. 498, III., note 1.

38. Cum . . . jussisset. This temporal clause marks the time of *fore* and *laturos*, not of *renuntiabant*.

4. Omnium ordinum, *of all ranks.* To this council all the centurions were invited, though in a regular council of war only those of the first rank (*primorum ordinum*) were entitled to a place. Each legion, it will be remembered, contained ten cohorts, each cohort three maniples, and each maniple two centuries. Each century was commanded by a centurion. There were, accordingly, sixty centurions in each legion. See 40.

5. Incusavit. Incusare means *to censure, find fault with; accuse, to accuse, prefer an accusation*, as in a court of justice.

7. Putarent; Caesar's reason at the time of the accusation. Hence Subj. as if assigned on another's authority. G. 516, II. — *Se* refers to Caesar. — *Se consule*; G. 431. This was the preceding year.

## PAGE

- 21 8. Cur . . . judicaret; G. 486, II. — Hunc; *i. e.*, Ariovistus.  
 9. Sibi persuaderi, *that he was persuaded*; *lit.*, *it was persuaded to him*. G. 301.  
 12. Quod si intulisset . . . vererentur; Second form of the Conditional sentence; the Present and Perf. Subj. being changed, by the law for sequence of tenses, to the Imperfect and Pluperfect. G. 527, II. — *Amentia* denotes simply a *want of reason*, as an idiot; *dementia*, a *perversion of reason*, as in a madman.  
 14. Sua, *their*; *ipsius*, *of himself*, referring to Caesar.  
 16. Cimbris . . . pulsus. This victory of Marius was gained in the year 101 B. C., upwards of forty years before.  
 17. Videbatur. Here the Indicative shows a transition to the Direct Discourse — a transition not uncommon in Caesar.  
 18. Servili tumultu, *in the servile war*, under Spartacus, 73 B. C. *Tumultus* is properly a revolt, tumult. — Quos. The antecedent is implied in *servili*, — *in the revolt of the slaves, whom*. G. 445, 6.  
 19. Aliquid, *somewhat*. G. 378, 2.  
 21. Boni; construe with *quantum*; Partitive Genitive. G. 397. — *Inermos, armatos ac victores*. At first the insurgents were, to a great extent, without arms (*inermos*); but they subsequently obtained arms and gained many victories. They were finally defeated by Crassus, 71 B. C.  
 24. Illorum refers to the Germans.  
 25. Qui refers, for its antecedent, to the Helvetii.  
 26. Adversum proellum, etc. See p. 16, lines 28–33.  
 29. Neque sui potestatem fecisset, *and had not given them the opportunity of fighting him*; *lit.*, *the power or opportunity of himself*.  
 30. Desperantes . . . dispersos. Supply *eos*; referring to the Gauls.  
 31. Ratione et consilio, *by cunning and stratagem*.  
 32. Cui rationi, *hac*, = *hac ratione*, *cui, by that cunning for which*.  
 34. In rei . . . simulationem, *to a pretended anxiety in regard to supplies*.  
 35. Facere. Supply the subject *eos*, which is also the antecedent of *qui*.  
 36. De officio . . . desperare, *to despair of the fidelity (duty) of their commander*. — *Imperatoris*; see 33.  
 37. Praescribere, *to dictate to him*. — Sibi esse curae; G. 390.  
 22 2. Quod . . . dicantur, *as to the fact that it was said* (*lit.*, *they were said*) *that they would not*.  
 3. Quibuscumque; G. 390, note 3.  
 4. Fuerit; G. 525, 1. — *Male re gesta*, *in consequence of some mismanagement*.  
 5. Avaritiam esse convictam, *avarice was proved* (against them).  
 6. Innocentiam, *blamelessness, freedom from avarice*, as opposed to *avaritiam*.

7. *Quod collaturus fuisset, what he had intended to defer.*
9. *De quarta vigilia, during the fourth watch; i. e., between three and six o'clock in the morning.* See note on *de tertia vigilia*, p. 6, line 27.
- *Quam primum, as soon as possible.* G. 170, 2.
13. *Praetoriam cohortem, praetorian cohort, or body guard.* The select band which attended the person of the commander was called the praetorian cohort.
17. *Mentes, rather than animi, to show that their judgments were convinced.* See Syn. L. C. 355.
18. *Princeps, for prima, which would be somewhat objectionable before the ordinal decima.*
19. *El gratias egit, returned thanks to him.* See Syn. L. C. 548.
21. *Cum tribunis . . . egerunt, arranged with the tribunes.*
22. *Primorum ordinum centurionibus, with the centurions of the first rank.* The six centurions of the first cohort are probably meant; see 41. — *Uti . . . satisfacerent, to excuse them to Caesar (saying).*
23. *Se . . . dubitasse depends upon a verb of saying, implied in satisfacerent.* G. 523, I.
24. *Summa belli, the conduct of the whole war. — Suum, sed imperatoris esse, was theirs, but the commander's.*
25. *Satisfactione, excuse or apology. — Itinere exquisito . . . ut . . . duceret, the route having been ascertained . . . (to be such) that he could lead.*
26. *Ex aliis, out of all the Gauls; lit., from others.*
27. *Millium . . . circuitu, by a circuit of more than fifty miles.* With *millium* supply *passuum*. Where was Caesar at this time? See p. 20, line 13. Ariovistus, whom Caesar wished to meet, was in the valley of the Rhine. The direct route would lead over the northern part of the Jura chain, but Caesar preferred a circuitous route through the open country.
29. *Septimo die.* We must not suppose that Caesar marched only fifty miles in these seven days. The circuit of fifty miles brought him around the mountains into the direct road, but it formed only a portion of the distance.
30. *A nostris, from ours. — Millibus; G. 379, 2.*

## XLII. — XLVI. *Interview between Caesar and Ariovistus.*

33. *Quod . . . postulasset.* See p. 18. *Quod* refers to *id* as its antecedent. — *Per se, with his consent; i. e., with the consent of Ariovistus; lit., through himself.*
37. *Potentl. Supply sibi; i. e., Caesari.*

## PAGE

- 23** 1. In eum, to him; i. e., Ariovistus. — Fore, uti desisteret, that he would desist. G. 537, 3.
3. Ultro citroque, on that side and on this; i. e., on both sides.
5. Adduceret. Why Subj.? G. 498, II. — Vereri; G. 523, I., note.
6. Veniret. Why Subj.? G. 523, III. — Alla ratione, on any other terms. G. 419, III.
8. Interposita causa, by the pretext which had been interposed; i. e., by Ariovistus.
10. Equis. Construction? G. 431. — Equitibus; G. 386, 2. — Eo = in eos; i. e., in equos. The horses of the Gallic cavalry, four thousand in number (p. 8, line 12), were assigned to the soldiers of the famous tenth legion.
12. Si quid . . . esset, if there should be any need of action. G. 527, II.
14. Plus Caesarem ei facere, that Caesar was doing more for it; i. e., for that legion.
16. Ad equum rescribere, that he was transferring them to the cavalry. Perhaps the wit of the remark consists in part in the pun involved in *ad equum rescribere*, which may mean either to transfer to the cavalry or to raise to the rank of knighthood.
18. Planities. Caesar was probably at this time in the valley of Upper Alsace, twenty or thirty miles north of Bâle.
19. Spatio; G. 379, 2.
21. Quam equis devexerat, which he had brought on horseback, referring to the tenth legion.
23. Ex equis, on horseback; lit., from horses. See *ex vinculis*, p. 3, line 8.
24. Colloquerentur; Subj. of Purpose. G. 498, I. — Praeter se, beside themselves. — Denos; distributive; ten each.
25. Ubi ventum est, when they came; impersonal in Latin. G. 301.
27. Quod . . . missa. These clauses explain *beneficia*. — Appellatus esset. Why Subj.? G. 524.
28. Munera missa. Presents were often sent to those upon whom the senate conferred the title of king. — Quam rem, that this thing.
30. Illum, referring to Ariovistus, is the subject of *consecutum (esse)*. — Aditum, access; i. e., to the senate, by whom the honor was conferred.
33. Ipsi; to them; i. e., to the Romans.
35. Ut . . . tenuissent; G. 529, II., 1.
36. Appetissent; G. 524.
37. Ut vellet, to wish; lit. that they (populus Romanus) wish.
38. Sui nihil, nothing of their own. G. 397.
- 24** 1. Honore auctiores esse, to be advanced (lit., more increased) in honor. — Vellet; Subj. of Result, explaining *consuetudinem*. G. 501, III. Observe tense. G. 495, VI. — Quod . . . attulissent, which they had indeed

brought to the friendship of the Roman people; i. e., which they possessed when they became their friends. 24

2. *Iis*; G. 386, 2.

3. *In mandatis, in his instructions.* See p. 18, lines 22–33.

6. *At, at least.*

8. *De . . . multa praedicavit, boasted much of.*—*Transisse.* The whole chapter, from this point, is in the *Oratio Obliqua*. For the use of Moods, Tenses, etc., see G. 523–531.

13. *Victores victis.* See fuller form, p. 19, line 4: *qui vicissent* (= *victores*) *iis quos vicissent* (= *victis*).

14. *Sese*; subject of *intulisse*.—*Omnes Galliae civitates.* Ariovistus here indulges in a little exaggeration. Only the Aedui and their allies had fought against him.

15. *Ad se oppugnandum, to attack him.*—*Contra se castra habuisse, had encamped against him.*

18. *Decertare* depends upon *paratum*. G. 533, II., 3.—*Pace*; G. 421, I.—*De stipendio recusare, to raise an objection in regard to* (on the subject of) the tribute.

19. *Voluntate*; G. 416.

20. *Sibi ornamento.* Construction? G. 390.

21. *Idque.* *Id*, though referring to *amicitiam*, is used in preference to *eam*, to give a more comprehensive meaning, — *that thing, that relation.*

22. *Per populum.* Why not *a populo*? Because the result here contemplated, *stipendium remittatur*, is not viewed as the proposed object of the Roman people,—an act performed by them as a *voluntary agent*,—but merely as brought about *indirectly through* their means. G. 415, 1, note 1.

24. *Appetierit.* Supply *eam*.—*Quod transducatur, as to the fact that he is leading.* G. 516, 2, note.

26. *Sui muniendi*; dependent upon *causa*. G. 543; 542, I.

27. *Esse.* The subject is the clause *quod . . . defenderit*. G. 540, IV.—*Nisi rogatus, without being asked.*

28. *Sed defenderit*; supply *id*, referring to *bellum*; *but had warder it off.*—*Prius venisse.* Here again Ariovistus misrepresents the facts in the case, as the Romans conquered the Arverni in the year 121 B. C., long before he came into Gaul.

29. *Populum.* Construction? G. 535, I., 5.

31. *Sibi, suas.* *Sibi* refers to Caesar, *suas* to Ariovistus.

32. *Hanc Galliam, this part of Gaul*; lit., *this Gaul.*

33. *Illam, that*, referring to the Roman province in the south of Gaul.—*Ut ipsi . . . oporteret, as it would not be proper to yield to him* (Ariovistus).—*Concedi*; Impersonal passive.

37. *Berum.* Construction? G. 399, 2.—*Bello Allobrogum prox-*



## PAGE

imo. See p. 4, where Caesar tells us that the Allobroges had been recently subdued.

25 1. *Ipsos, they, i. e., the Aedui.*

4. *Habere.* Supply *eum* as object, referring to *exercitum*.

5. *Qui nisi decedat, if he would not depart.* G. 453.

7. *Quod si, but if.* G. 453, 6.

8. *Gratum, a favor; lit., an agreeable thing.* G. 441. There was, doubtless, some truth in this statement of Ariovistus. Caesar had many bitter personal enemies at Rome. — *Id, this fact.*

9. *Compertum habere, had ascertained.* *Compertum* agrees with *id.* G. 388, 1, note.

11. *Decessisset. Decedo means to withdraw entirely.*

13. *Sine ullo ejus labore, without any effort on his (Caesar's) part.*

16. *Quare non posset, showing why he could not.* In translating, it is best to supply some word, as *showing*, before *why* (*quare*).

17. *Uti desereret; Object Clause.* G. 501, II.

19. *Ariovisti; Predicate Genitive with esse.* G. 401; 403. — *Supertos esse.* This was in the year 121 B. C.

20. *Quibus ignovisset.* The Romans were said to pardon a conquered people when they allowed them to retain their own government and laws.

21. *In provinciam redegisset.* The Romans were said to reduce a conquered country to a province when they brought it under Roman government.

22. *Quod si . . . oporteret, but if the most ancient time (priority of time) should ever be regarded.* In this respect the Romans had the advantage by sixty years.

25. *Quam . . . voluisset, since the senate had decreed (wished) that it (quam), etc.*

28. *Tumulum.* Construction? G. 437, 1.

30. *Facti, imperavit.* Observe the change from the Historical Present to the Historical Perfect — a change by no means uncommon.

31. *Ne quod.* Why not *ne quid*? G. 188; 190.

32. *Legionis; Objective Genitive.* G. 393, note; 396, III.

33. *Committendum . . . ut dici posset, he did not think that he ought to permit it to be said; lit., that it could be said.* With *committendum*, which is impersonal, supply *esse sibi*.

34. *Eos, that they; i. e., the enemy.* — *Per fidem, through plighted faith; i. e., by the plighted word of Caesar, who had invited them to this interview.*

36. *Qua arrogantia usus, with what arrogance; lit., using what arrogance.* G. 421, I. — *Omni . . . interdixisset, had forbidden the Romans all Gaul.*

**38. Fecissent;** Subj. in an Indirect Question. — *Ut, how.* — **Multo;** 25 Ablative of Difference; G. 423.

### XLVII.—L. *Ariovistus avoids a general Engagement.*

26

**3. Biduo;** G. 430. *Post* is used adverbially.

**4. Velle;** G. 523, I., note. — *Coeptae essent.* Why not *coepissent*? G. 297, 1.

**5. Uti constitueret;** Subj. of Purpose, dependent upon *legatos mitti*, involving the idea of *asking*.

**8. Diei.** Construction? G. 398, 5.

**9. Quin . . . conficerent,** *from hurling.* G. 504, 3.

**12. Gaium Valerium Proculum;** mentioned on p. 10; line 26.

**13. Humanitate, culture.** G. 419, II.

**14. Civitate donatus erat.** This was done by C. Valerius Flaccus, when he was governor of Gaul, 83 B. C.

**16. Qua multa.** *Qua* refers to *linguas*, and *multa* agrees with *qua*, though it may be rendered adverbially — *much* or *freely*.

**17. In eo peccandi causa,** *a reason (excuse) for doing wrong in his case*; i. e., the Germans would be less likely to injure him than some others. — **Quod esset;** Cæsar's reason at the time, not assigned by him as narrator. Hence the Subj. G. 516, II.

**21. Exercitu praesente;** G. 431.

**22. Quid;** G. 378, 2. — **Venirent;** G. 523, II., 1. — **Conantes** agrees with *eos*, to be supplied.

**25. Sub monte,** *at the foot of the mountain*, probably the Vosges.

**28. Uti intercluderet.** This clause is in apposition with *consilio*, and at the same time expresses the purpose of *transduxit* and *fecit*. G. 499, 3. — **Frumento;** G. 414, I.

**32. Ei . . . deesset,** *he might not lack the opportunity*; lit., *the power might not be wanting to him*. G. 386, 2. — **His diebus;** G. 379, 1.

**34. Genus hoc erat pugnae,** *the following was the kind of battle*.

**35. Totidem numero pedites,** *the same number of infantry.* — **Numero;** Abl. of Specification. G. 424.

**36. Quos ex . . . delegerant,** *whom they (the cavalry) had individually selected, one for each, from the whole multitude.* — **Copia** = *multitudo*.

**38. His, hos, hi** refer to *pedites*.

**1. Si quid erat durius,** *if there was anything unusually difficult.* G. 27 444, 1. — **Concurrebant,** *ran to their support.* — **Si qui;** for the more usual *si quis*.

**2. Si quo erat prodeundum,** *if it was necessary to advance to any place.*

## PAGE

27 4. *Ut iubilis . . . adaequarent, that, supported by the manes of the horses, they equalled their speed.*

6. *Eum, that he; i. e., Ariovistus.*

7. *Ultra eum locum.* The student will bear in mind the recent movements of the two armies. At the beginning of Chapter XLVIII. they were within six miles of each other. Ariovistus then passed the camp of Caesar, and took up a position in his rear. Caesar now retraces his steps, and secures a position for a second camp, to prevent the enemy from cutting off his supplies.

9. *Castris idoneum; G. 391, I. — Acie triplici.* See note on *triplicem aciem*, p. 12, line 25.

13. *Hominum millia expedita = hominum millia expeditorum. — Circiter numero sedecim, about sixteen in number.* G. 424.

14. *Quae copiae perterrerent, that these (lit., which) forces might terrify.* G. 497.

18. *Castra majora.* Thus Caesar had two camps, *castra majora* with four legions, and *castra minora* with two.

20. *Die; G. 429. — Instituto suo, in accordance with his custom.*

25. *Quae oppugnaret, to attack; lit., which should attack.* G. 497.

29. *Quam ob rem . . . decertaret, why Ariovistus did not offer a general engagement.* G. 529, I.

31. *Ut declararent; G. 501, III. — Matres familiae.* Many German matrons were supposed to be possessed of prophetic power. — *Sortibus.* The Germans made frequent use of lots in divining the future.

32. *Ex usu esset, it would be of advantage (use).*

33. *Non esse fas, that it was not right.* See Syn. L. C. 405.

## LI. — LIV. Caesar defeats the Germans, places his Army in Winter Quarters, and returns to Cisalpine Gaul.

85. *Praesidio castris.* Construction? G. 390, II.

86. *Alarios, allied troops, called alarii, because originally they were stationed on the wings (alae) of the legion.*

28 1. *Ad speciem, for show; i. e., to impress the enemy by a show of numbers.*

3. *Castris; G. 434, note 1.*

4. *Generatimque . . . Harudes, etc., and stationed by tribes (generatim) and at equal intervals the Harudes, etc.*

6. *Rhedis et carris, with carriages and wagons.* G. 384, II., 2.

7. *Ne qua; G. 190, I. — Eo = in iis; i. e., in the carriages and wagons.*

8. *Proficiscentes; supply milites.*

9. *Se, them; i. e., the women.*

11. *Singulos legatos et quaestorem.* Caesar appointed his quaestor over one legion, and a lieutenant over each of the others. The quaestor was intrusted with the care of the public money. See 34, 35.

13. *A dextro cornu, on the right wing; Latin idiom, from the right wing, as the action proceeded from that quarter.*

14. *Ita . . . itaque (= et ita).* Construe the first *ita* with *acriter*, and the second with *repente celeriterque*.

16. *Pila; object of conjiciendi, which depends upon spatium, time, opportunity. For the pilum, see 9, 9.*

19. *Phalange facta.* See note on *phalange*, p. 12, line 32.

20. *Complures nostri milites, many of our soldiers; lit., many our soldiers. — Qui . . . insillirent; G. 503, I.*

22. *A sinistro cornu, on their left wing; i. e., on the left wing of the Germans.*

24. *Publius Crassus; the son of Marcus Licinius Crassus, who was triumvir with Caesar and Pompey.*

25. *Equitatu; G. 386. — Quod expeditior erat, because he was more disengaged.*

27. *Acie nostra subaidio; G. 390, II.*

30. *Millia; G. 379. Quinquaginta.* Some editions have *quinque*.

31. *Viribus.* Case? G. 425, II., 1, note.

32. *Lintribus inventis, by means of boats which chanced to be at hand; lit., by boats found. — Inventis, reppererunt. Invenio means to find without seeking, to meet with accidentally, while reperio means to find by seeking, to obtain by effort. This sentence is a good illustration of the use of these two synonyms.*

34. *Ea, with this; i. e., with the skiff. G. 420. — Equitatu; Means rather than Accompaniment; hence without cum.*

35. *Duae uxores.* Among the ancient Germans polygamy seems to have been confined to the chieftains.

36. *Sueba natione, a Suebian by nation. G. 424.*

37. *Duxerat, had married. Supply in matrimonium.*

38. *Duae filiae . . . capta est, their two daughters were, the one slain, the other captured. Filiae is in apposition with altera, altera.*

1. *Galus Valerius Proculus. See p. 26, line 12.*

2. *Cum traheretur; G. 521, II., 2. — Trinis catenis vinctus, bound with triple chains.*

3. *In ipsum . . . incidit, falls into the hands of Caesar himself.*

4. *Quae res, this thing; i. e., the rescue of his faithful friend Proculus. — Victoria; G. 417, 1.*

5. *Provinciae; G. 397.*

7. *Ejus calamitate, by his death.*

## PAGE

29 9. *Se praesente*; construe with *consultum*. — *Consultum (esse)*; impersonal, *that it had been consulted*; i. e., that they (the enemy) had consulted.

12. *Marcus Mettius*. See p. 26, line 18.

14. *Domum*; G. 380, II., 2.

15. *Rhenum*. Construction? G. 391, II., 2.

17. *Duobus bellis*; i. e., the war with the Helvetii and that with Ariovistus.

18. *In hiberna in Sequanos*, *into winter quarters among the Sequani*. Here the Latin idiom requires *in Sequanos*, not *in Sequanis*, to designate the place *into* which the army was led.

The Romans paid great attention to the winter quarters of their armies. They not only fortified them very strongly, but also furnished them with many accommodations for the convenience and comfort of the soldiers.

19. *Citeriorem Galliam*; also called *Gallia Cisalpina*, consisting of Gaul south of the Alps.

20. *Ad conventus agendos*, *to hold the assizes or courts*. The Roman governors of provinces usually employed their time in winter in the civil duties of their office. They held courts, corrected abuses, levied taxes, and exercised a controlling influence over public affairs.

## BOOK SECOND.

CAMPAIGN OF THE YEAR 57 B. C., IN THE CONSULSHIP OF P. CORNELIUS LENTULUS AND Q. CAECILIUS METELLUS.

I. WAR WITH THE BELGAE. I.-XXXIII.

II. OTHER EVENTS OF THE CAMPAIGN. XXXIV., XXXV.

I. *The Belgae combine against Caesar.*

80 1. *Cum esset*; G. 521, II., 2. — *In hibernis*. These words seem to imply that Caesar had, at least, a small force with him in Cisalpine Gaul, although his main army was in winter quarters among the Sequani. — *Ita demonstravimus*. See p. 29, line 19.

3. *Litterisque . . . fiebat*, *and he was informed by the letters of Labienus*. Labienus, it will be remembered, had been left in charge of the winter quarters. See p. 29, line 19.

4. **Quam**, for *quos*, attracted to agree with the predicate noun *partem*. 30  
 G. 445, 4. — **Tertiam partem**, *one of the three parts*, not strictly a third part. — **Dixeramus**. See p. 1, line 2. The Perfect tense might have been used, but the Pluperfect is more exact, showing that this act was completed at the time of the past events just mentioned.

7. **Omni Gallia**; not *all Gaul* in its most comprehensive sense, but *all Celtic Gaul*.

8. **Partim qui . . . partim qui**, *some of whom . . . others of whom*; lit., *who partly*.

9. **Ita moleste ferebant**, *so they were annoyed*; lit., *bore it ill*.

12. **Novis imperiis**, *revolution*; lit., *new governments*. G. 385. — **Ab nonnullis etiam**; supply *solicitantur*, from line 8 above.

15. **Eam rem consequi**, *to accomplish this (thing)*; i. e., to obtain power in this way. — **Imperio nostro**, *under our rule*. This involves both *time* and *cause*, and may therefore be referred either to G. 416 or to 429. Some grammarians explain it as the Ablative Absolute, which also expresses *time* and *cause*. G. 431.

## II., III. The Remi surrender to Caesar.

16. **Duas legiones**, *two legions*, the thirteenth and the fourteenth.

17. **Inita aestate**, *in the beginning of the summer*. G. 431, 2, (1).

18. **Qui deduceret**, *to lead*. G. 497. — **Quintum Pedium**; the son of Caesar's eldest sister, Julia.

19. **Cum primum**, *as soon as*. — **Inciperet**. Why Subjunctive? G. 521, II., 2.

21. **Belgis**; G. 391, I. — **Uti . . . faciant**; a Substantive Clause in apposition with *negotium*. G. 499, 3.

22. **Gerantur**; G. 529, II.

25. **Quin proficisceretur**; G. 504, 3.

28. **Eo**; i. e., *ad fines Belgarum*. — **Celerius omni opinione**, *sooner than any one expected*. G. 417, note 5.

29. **Proximi ex Belgis**, *the nearest of the Belgas*. G. 397, 3, note 3. **Galliae**, *to Gaul*; i. e., Celtic Gaul.

1. **Se suaque omnia**; object of *permittere*. The subject *se* is omitted. 31  
 G. 523, I., foot note 2.

5. **Oppidis**; G. 425, 1. — **Recipere**; supply *eum*; i. e., *Caesarem*.

6. **Cis Rhenum**, *on this side*; i. e., the southern or Gallic side, on which several German tribes had settled.

8. **Suessiones**; object of *deterrere*, below.

9. **Eodem jure et eisdem legibus**, *the same right (political principles) and the same laws*. *Jus* denotes the principle of right on which *lex* rests. See Syn. L. C. 405.

## PAGE

- 81 10. *Cum ipsi, with themselves; i. e., with the Remi.*  
 11. *Quin consentirent; G. 504, 4. — Cum his; i. e., cum Belgis.*

IV. *Forces of the Belgae.*

12. *Ab his, from these; i. e., from the two ambassadors of the Remi.*  
 13. *Essent; G. 529, 1. — Quid possent, how powerful they were. — Quid, G. 378, 2.*  
 14. *Plerosque Belgas, most Belgians.*  
 15. *Ibi, there, i. e., in Gaul.*  
 16. *Loca; G. 141. — Solosque esse, qui, and that they were the only ones, who.*  
 17. *Memoria; G. 429.*  
 18. *Teutonos Cimbroque . . . prohibuerint.* The event here referred to belongs to the latter part of the second century B. C., when the Teutoni and Cimbri invaded Southern Europe.  
 19. *Memoria; Abl. of Cause. G. 416. — Uti sumerent; G. 501, I., 1.*  
 21. *Habere explorata.* See note on *comptum habere*, p. 25, line 9.  
 22. *Propinquitatibus affinitatibusque, by relationship and marriage.* For the plural of abstract nouns, see G. 130, 2.  
 24. *Pollicitus sit; G. 529, I.; 525, 1.*  
 26. *Conficere, to raise; lit., finish, make up the full number.*  
 27. *Pollicitos, . . . postulare.* Notice difference in tense. — *Electa milia sexaginta, sixty thousand picked men.*  
 28. *Imperium, management. — Suos finitimos, their neighbors; i. e., neighbors of the Remi.*  
 30. *Divitiacum; not Divitiacus, the Aeduan. See Dict.*  
 31. *Potentissimum, the most powerful chieftain. — Cum . . . tum etiam, not only . . . but also.*  
 32. *Britanniae.* This is the earliest mention of Britain by a Roman writer.  
 36. *Totidem Nervios.* Supply *polliceri*, of which *totidem* is the object and *Nervios* the subject.  
 37. *Longissime abaint, are very remote; i. e., far removed from the refining influence of Southern Gaul; hence maxime feri.*  
 38. *Atrebatas, Ambianos, etc.* Supply *polliceri*. On proper names, see Dict. and Map.  
 82 3. *Condrusus, etc., arbitrari . . . milia, that they (ae, i. e., Remos, understood), estimated the Condrusi, etc., at forty thousand.* Observe that the construction changes at this point. *Condrusus* is not, like the preceding proper names, the subject of *polliceri*, to be supplied, but the object of *arbitrari*, expressed.

Against this formidable host of almost three hundred thousand, Caesar had eight legions of Roman soldiers, together with twenty or thirty thousand auxiliaries and mercenaries, in all about fifty or sixty thousand men.

V.-VII. *Caesar relieves Bibrax, a town of the Remi.*

6. *Liberaliter . . . prosecutus*, having addressed them with kind words.

8. *Obsides*; G. 362.

10. *Quanto opere*, also written *quantopere*, is in effect an adverb, but may also be explained as an Ablative of Difference. G. 423. — *Rei publicae*; G. 408, I.

11. *Intersit*; G. 529, I. The subject is *manus hostium distineri*. G. 408, II. — *Distineri*, be kept apart.

13. *Id fieri posse*; i. e., *manus distineri posse*.

14. *Introduxerint*. Fut. Perfect in Direct Discourse. G. 525, 2.

17. *Abesse*. Supply subject *ea*; i. e., *copias*.

18. *Axonam*. See Dict. — *Flumen*, *exercitum*; G. 376.

20. *Atque ibi*, and there; i. e., on the farther side of the river. —

*Quae res*, this position; lit., which thing. G. 453.

21. *Quae essent*; G. 503, 1.

22. *Tuta*; Predicate Accusative, agreeing with *ea*, to be supplied as the object of *reddebat* and the antecedent of *quae*. — *Commeatus . . . ut . . . efficiebat*, made it possible that supplies should be brought. — *Commeatus*, subject of *possent*.

24. *In eo flumine*, over this river.

*altera parte*, on the other side; i. e., the south side, or the left river.

*deviginti pedum*. Supply *in latitudinem*; see 70.

*sustentatum est*, the attack was sustained. The verb is here im-

*modum eadem . . . est haec*, the mode of attack, the same on the Gauls as of the Belgae, is as follows.

*testudine facta*, forming the testudo or tortoise. See 96. *Phalangis* nearly the same meaning. See note on the same, p. 12,

*concerent*. Why plural? G. 461, 1.

*distendi*; G. 542, I. — *Nulli*; G. 387.

*in nobilitate*; Ablative of Characteristic.

*ex his . . . de pace*. See p. 30, line 30.

The verb of *saying* is implied in *nuntium mitti*. G. 523, I. *alter*; i. e., to Bibrax. — *De media nocte*, at midnight. —



## PAGE

- 88** *Iisdem ducibus usus, employing as guides the same persons.* — **Ducibus.** Predicate noun agreeing with *iisdem*, used substantively. G. 362, 3.  
**10.** *Hostibus*; for *ab hostibus*. G. 413.  
**13.** *Quos* refers to *vici*. G. 445, 3; 439.  
**14.** *Copis*; G. 419, 1. — *Ab millibus . . . duobus*, less than two miles off; i. e., from the camp. G. 379, 2; 423, note 2. — *Minus*; G. 417, 1, note 2.

VIII., IX. *Skirmishing between the two Armies.*

**19.** *Eximiam . . . virtutis, their remarkable reputation for valor.* G. 393, note. — *Proello*; G. 414.

**20.** *Quid . . . posset periclitabatur, he attempted to ascertain what the enemy could effect by his valor.*

**22.** *Loco opportuno, as the place was favorable.* G. 431.

**24.** *Collis adversus, the hill on the side opposite the enemy.* *Adversus* is an adjective agreeing with *collis*. G. 440, note 1.

**25.** *Tantum, quantum loci, as much space as.* — *Loci*; Partitive Genitive after *quantum*, though in translating we connect it with *tantum*. G. 397.

**26.** *Ex utraque . . . habebat, had a precipitous descent on each side*; lit., *declivities of side* (lateris) *from each part*.

**29.** *Transversam fossam, a transverse trench*; i. e., a trench at right angles with the front of the hill. These two trenches were designed to protect the flanks of the Roman army.

**30.** *Ad extremas fossas, at the extremities of the trenches*; i. e., at each end of each of the two trenches. There were, therefore, in all four redoubts (*castella*).

**31.** *Tormenta.* See 87.

**33.** *Pugnantes suos, his men while fighting.* — *Duabus legionibus, quas*; i. e., the two enrolled in Cisalpine Gaul. See p. 30, line 16.

**35.** *Si quo = si quo subsidio.* — *Subsidio*; G. 390, note 2.

**37.** *Eductas instruxerant*; G. 549, 5.

**84** **1.** *Si transirent*; Indirect Question. G. 529, II., 1.

**2.** *Si fieret.* G. 509, note 3.

**3.** *Impeditos, while embarrassed or entangled*; i. e., in crossing the river.

**5.** *Secundiore . . . nostris, the engagement of the cavalry being more favorable for our men.* G. 391.

**8.** *Demonstratum est.* See p. 32, line 20.

**10.** *Cui . . . Titurius.* See p. 32, line 25. — *Si possent, si minus potuissent.* Observe the change of tense. *Potuissent* expresses past time relative to *popularentur*.

12. *Popularentur, prohiberent*; construe with *ut*. — *Nobis usui*; 34  
G. 390.

### X., XI. *The Belgae disperse to their Homes.*

15. *Certior factus, having been informed*; i. e., of this movement of the enemy.

16. *Levis . . . Numidas, the light-armed Numidians*; lit., of light armor. They were armed with javelins. See 2, 2, foot note.

17. *Ad eos*; i. e., *ad hostes*. — *In eo loco, in that place*; i. e., the place where he met the enemy, suggested by *ad eos contendit*.

19. *Per eorum corpora, over their dead bodies*.

21. *Repulerunt*. Supply *nostri*.

23. *Spem se fefellisse, that they were disappointed in their hope*; lit., *that hope had disappointed them*.

24. *Neque* = *et non*. Construe the negative *non* with *progredi*.

26. *Optimum esse, that it was best*. The subject of *esse* is the clause *domum . . . reverti*. G. 538, 2.

27. *Quorum*. The antecedent is *eos*.

29. *Convenirent*; supply *ut*. G. 499, 2.

30. *Domesticis copiis, home supplies, or supplies from their own land*.

33. *His persuaderi non poterat, these (the Bellovaci) could not be persuaded*. *His persuaderi*, the subject of *poterat*. *Persuaderi*, Impersonal Passive. G. 301.

35. *Secunda vigilia, at the second watch*. G. 645, 1.

38. *Fecerunt ut . . . videretur, caused their departure to seem*. — *Fugae*; G. 391, I.

1. *Hac re Caesar . . . cognita*. The subject is often thus inserted in the Ablative Absolute when it is the agent of the action expressed by the participle. Here Caesar is agent of the action denoted by *cognita*. 85

5. *Novissimum agmen*. See note, p. 8, line 15.

6. *His*; i. e., *equitatus*.

8. *Hi, these*; i. e., the cavalry and the three legions. — *Novissimos, the hindmost, the extreme rear*, called below (line 10) *extremum agmen*.

10. *Cum . . . consistenter, since those on the extreme rear, to whom (ad quos) our men had come up, made a stand*. After *quum* supply *ii*, the antecedent of *quos*. *Ventum erat*; Impersonal Passive. G. 301.

12. *Priores, and those in advance*. Supply *et*.

13. *Neque ulla . . . continerentur, and were not restrained by any necessity or command*.

17. *Quantum . . . spatium, as the length of the day permitted*; lit., *as was the space of the day*. — *Sub occasumque*; G. 569, III., 4.

XII.-XV. *The Suessiones, the Bellovaci, and the Ambiani submit to Caesar.*

PAGE

- 85 19. *Præusquam . . . recipere*; G. 520, II.  
 22. *Oppugnare, expugnare*. The first of these verbs means to *assault*, the second to *take by assault*. See 94—96.  
 24. *Paucis defendentibus, though only a few defended it*. G. 431, 2.  
 26. *Vineas agere, to prepare the vineae*. This expression usually means to push forward the *vineae*, which were movable sheds, and could be brought very near the walls of the besieged city. But in this instance they were not brought up to the walls till the next day. See line 29. See 86 and 90. — *Quæque* = *et ea quæ*.  
 29. *Aggere jacto*. The *agger* was a mound of any suitable materials, as earth, wood, stone, thrown up before a besieged city. This mound was sometimes of vast dimensions, hundreds of feet in length, and of great height. See p. 134, line 2. On this, or near it, were placed towers, some stationary and others movable. These towers, some of which were ten or fifteen stories high, were furnished with all the engines and implements of ancient warfare. See also 88, 89; 99—105.  
 32. *Potentibus Remis . . . impetrant, they obtain their request, as the Remi ask that they may be spared*.  
 34. *Primis*. Supply *hominibus* in apposition with *obsidibus*.  
 35. *Armis . . . traditis*. Conquered towns were generally thus disarmed.  
 37. *Qui cum, when they*; *i. e.*, the Bellovaci. G. 453.  
 86 2. *Majores natu, elders*; *lit.*, greater by birth, or in age.  
 3. *Sese . . . venire, that they committed themselves to* (were coming into) *his protection and power*. G. 537; 535.  
 8. *Post discessum Belgarum*. See Chapter XI.  
 9. *Ad eum, to him*; *i. e.*, to Caesar.  
 10. *In fide . . . fuisse, had been* (steadfast) *in their fidelity and friendship to the Aeduan state*.  
 11. *Qui dicerent*; G. 524.  
 14. *Qui ejus*. Supply *eos*.  
 17. *Ut . . . utatur*; G. 498, I.  
 18. *Quod si fecerit, if he* (Caesar) *would do this* (quod).  
 20. *Quorum auxiliis . . . consuerint, by whose aid and resources, they* (the Aedui) *were accustomed, if any wars arose, to sustain them*.  
 22. *Honoris causa, as a mark of honor*; construe with *recepturum*.  
 23. *Eos, them*; *i. e.*, the Bellovaci.  
 24. *Quod, as however*. *Et* or *sed* may be supplied before *quod*.  
 25. *Multitudine*; G. 424.

30. *Esse mercatoribus, that merchants had.* G. 387.

31. *Nihil vini, no wine; lit., nothing of wine.* G. 397, 1. *Nihil* is the subject of *inferri*, which depends upon *pati*.

32. *Quod . . . existimarent; G. 516, II. — Relanguescere animos, spirits are enfeebled; i. e., the spirits of men in general.*

36. *Confirmare.* Supply subject, *eos*.

## XVI.-XXVIII. *War with the Nervii; they are completely subdued.*

38. *Eorum* refers to the Nervii. — *Triduum; G. 379.*

1. *Sabim.* See Dict. — *Amplius millia.* G. 417, 1, note 2; 379. 87

8. *Consedissee, had taken a position.*

5. *Eandem . . . fortunam, the same fortune of war; i. e., the same as the Nervii.*

7. *Mulieres; object of coniecisse. — Quique = et eos qui, and those who.*

8. *In eum locum quo, in (into) a place to which (whither).* G. 497, II.

9. *Exercitus, for an army.*

11. *Qui deligant; G. 497.*

14. *Eorum diem . . . perspecta, having perceived our army's mode of marching during those days.* Observe the accumulation of genitives, *itineris* depending upon *consuetudine*, *dierum* and *exercitus* upon *itineris*.

16. *Inter singulas legiones, between the several legions. — Impedimentorum.* This included all the heavy baggage of the army which was carried in wagons or on beasts of burden. The soldiers carried their arms, rations, and some few necessary utensils, as axes, saws, spades, etc. Thus encumbered the soldiers were said to be *sub sarcinis*, under their packs. See line 19, below.

17. *Magnum numerum, a large amount; lit., a large number,* used perhaps, with reference to the number of wagons and beasts of burden. — *Neque . . . negotii, and that it would not be at all difficult; lit., nor was there anything of difficulty.* G. 397. *Quidquam* is the predicate after *esse*, while *hanc sub sarcinis adoriri* is the subject of *esse*.

20. *Futurum ut auderent; G. 537, 3.*

21. *Reliquae.* Supply *legiones. — Adjuvabat.* The subject is the clause *quod Nervii, etc.*

23. *Nihil; G. 378, 2.*

25. *Quo . . . impedirent; G. 497, II., 2.*

26. *Teneris arboribus . . . interjectis, by heading down young trees and intertwining (inflexis) the numerous branches (crebris ramis) which grew out in a lateral direction (in latitudinem enatis), and by allowing brambles and briars to entwine themselves among them (lit., brambles and*

## PAGE

87 briers having been inserted between). The Ablatives are all Absolute. G. 431.

The student will observe that Caesar is not describing any temporary expedient to impede the progress of an army, but the permanent hedges in the country of the Nervii. They were the result of years of growth and care.

28. *Instar muri*, like a wall; lit., the likeness of a wall.

29. *Quo* = in quod, into which. — *Non modo*, not only not. For the omission of *non* after *modo*, see G. 552, 2.

33. *Erat haec*, was as follows; lit., this. — *Quem locum*. Observe the repetition of the antecedent, not uncommon in Caesar.

34. *Ab summo . . . declivis*, descending evenly from its summit. *Declivis*, descending; *acclivis*, ascending; hence, *acclivitate*, below, line

36. *Summo* = *summo colle*.

36. *Pari*, equal; i. e., like that on the other hill. — *Adversus et contrarius*, opposite to this, and facing it. *Contrarius* refers simply to the position of the hills, opposite each other; while *adversus* is more definite, and implies that corresponding sides of the two hills, — i. e., the sides with the same slope — were turned toward each other; faced each other. In rendering it is better to bring in *contrarius* before *adversus*.

37. *Infimus apertus*, clear at its base. *Infimus* and *apertus* are both adjectives, agreeing with *collis*, but the first only specifies the part to which the second is applicable, as *infimus collis* means the lowest part of the hill; i. e., the base. G. 440, 2, note 1.

88 3. *Pedum*; Predicate Genitive. G. 401.

5. *Coplis*; G. 419, 1, 1). — *Aliter se habebat ac*, was otherwise than. G. 459, 2.

7. *Consuetudine sua*, in accordance with his custom; i. e., when in the vicinity of the enemy. — *Expeditas*, unencumbered; i. e., without the baggage; see 57.

8. *Collocarat*; for *collocaverat*. G. 235.

13. *Silvas*, *silva*. *Silvas* refers to the different portions of the forest, while *silva* means the forest as a whole.

15. *Longius . . . ad finem*, farther than; lit., farther than as far as (to what end). — *Porrecta loca aperta*, the extended open ground.

16. *Cedentes*. Supply *eos*.

17. *Opere dimenso*, the work having been measured off; i. e., the ground which the work or camp was to occupy.

20. *Ita, ut . . . confirmaverant*, just as (i. e., in the same order as) they had arranged their line of battle and their ranks within the woods, and as they themselves had encouraged one another to do.

23. *His*, these; i. e., the Roman cavalry.

25. *In manibus nostris*, close at hand.

**26. Adverso colle, up the hill.** G. 431.

**27. Occupati erant;** G. 550, note 2.

The Nervii had formed an alliance with the Atrebatæ and the Veromandui, and had concentrated a large force in the vicinity of the *Sabis*, the modern *Sambre*, a small stream about three feet deep. They had learned that in the Roman order of march each legion was generally followed by its baggage-train. Their plan was to surprise and overwhelm the first legion as it emerged from the hills, encumbered with baggage and cut off from all assistance from the rest of the army; but Caesar, in accordance with his usual custom in the vicinity of the enemy, had placed his baggage in the rear of the main body of the army, with his six veteran legions in front of it, while the two legions recently enrolled formed the rear-guard. The Nervii, confident of an easy victory, concealed themselves and their allies in the woody heights of Hautmont, overlooking the valley of the river.

When the Romans reached the *Sabis*, only the enemy's cavalry was in sight. The six veteran legions, as they arrived, one after another, proceeded at once to fortify the camp. Some went in search of timber and other materials for the ramparts, while others were engaged in the trenches; but as soon as the baggage-train came in sight, the Nervii and their allies rushed from their hiding-place in battle-array, and, routing the Roman cavalry, crossed the river, and, climbing the opposite heights, suddenly appeared before the Roman encampment. Then, in the expressive language of the Commentaries, *Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda*, everything was to be done at once.

**29. Vexillum.** This was the general standard of the army, the *vexillum* or banner of the commander-in-chief. When displayed from the general's tent, it was the signal to prepare for immediate action. See 78.

**30. Proponendum;** supply *erat*. — *Cum oporteret*, whenever it was necessary. G. 518, 1.

**31. Signum tuba dandum,** the signal was to be given with the trumpet. This was the signal to prepare for action. See 82.

**32. Qui.** Supply *ii*. — *Paulo longius*, a little too far. G. 444, 1. — *Aggeris petendi causa*, for the purpose of seeking materials for the rampart. *Agger* here refers to the defences of the camp. See 70 — 74.

**33. Signum dandum,** the signal for battle was to be given. In line 31 *signum tuba dandum* refers to the signal to prepare for battle. The signal for the onset, the *classicum*, was given by the united blasts of the horn and the trumpet. See 82, foot note.

**35. His difficultatibus . . . subsidio,** two things proved a relief against these difficulties. G. 390.

**37. Quid fieri oporteret,** what ought to be done; Indirect Question, depending upon *præscribere* and *doceri*.

**38. Ipsi;** subject of *poterant*.

- 39** 2. *Nisi munitis castris, unless the camp was fortified ; i. e., until it was fortified.* G. 431, 3.
4. *Nihil ;* G. 378, 2.
7. *Quam . . . obtulit, in whatever direction chance presented.*
8. *Millites . . . quam uti retinerent, having addressed the soldiers in a speech not longer than to exhort them to retain. After quam supply cohortari.* G. 498, II.
11. *Quod . . . aberant ; construe with signum dedit. — Quam quo, than ; lit., than whither.*
13. *In alteram partem.* He went to the right wing. See p. 40, line 30.
14. *Pugnantibus occurrit, he found them (i. e., his men) fighting ; i. e., they had already engaged the enemy.*
16. *Insignia.* These were plumes and other ornaments, which were usually laid aside on the march, but resumed before battle.
17. *Scutisque . . . detrudenda, and for removing the coverings from the shields.* The shields, when not in use, were protected by leathern coverings. *Detrudenda* indicates haste and violence. — *Scutis ;* G. 386, 2. — *Quam ;* construe with *partem.*
18. *Quaeque = et quae.*
19. *Ad haec constitit, near these he took his stand. Haec refers to signa. — In quaerendis suis, in seeking his own ; i. e., his own standard.*
23. *Cum, diversis . . . resisterent, since, as the legions were separated, some (i. e., some legions) resisted the enemy in one place, and others in another.* G. 431 ; 459, 1.
26. *Subsidia ;* subject of *poterant.* — *Quid . . . opus esset ;* Indirect Question, subject of *poterat* to be supplied.
29. *Fortunae* depends upon *eventus.*
- 39** 30. *Legionis nonae et decimae.* For the disposition of Caesar's forces, see plate X. in the text.
31. *Acle ;* Genitive. G. 120.
32. *His,* refers to the soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions, and *ex pars* to the Atrebrates.
34. *Conantes* agrees with *eos ; i. e., Atrebrates.*
35. *Impeditam, entangled ; i. e., in crossing the river. — Ipsi, they themselves ; i. e., the Roman soldiers.*
38. *Diversae, other ; lit., different.*
- 40** 2. *Ex loco superiore, having descended from their higher position ; i. e., in pursuit of the Veromandui.*
3. *Totis . . . nudatis castris.* G. 431. It will be remembered that six legions were engaged in fortifying the camp when the attack began

(p. 38, line 16); two of these at once took their position on the left of the camp, two in front of it, and two on the right. Soon the two on the left, the ninth and the tenth (p. 39, line 30), routed the Atrebatas and went in pursuit of them, while the eleventh and the eighth, who were stationed in front, went in pursuit of the Veromandui (p. 40, line 2). Thus the camp was exposed in front and on the left (*a fronte et ab sinistra parte*). At this juncture the whole force of the Nervii was led against the twelfth and the seventh legions, who occupied a position on the right of the camp, and were, at the moment, its only defence. See plan.

**6. Duce Boduognato, under their leader Boduognatus.** G. 431.

**8. Aperto latere, on the unprotected flank; i. e., on the left, exposed by the removal of the legions which had occupied that position. — Summit . . . locum, the summit occupied by the camp; lit., of the camp.**

**11. Quos . . . dixeram.** See p. 38, line 22.

**12. Adversis . . . occurrebant, met the enemy face to face; lit., the facing enemy.** The Roman cavalry found the Nervii in the Roman camp.

**14. Ab decumana . . . jugo; construe with conspexerant.** The rear of the camp, where the decuman gate was situated (see plan), occupied the summit of the hill.

**15. Nostros victores, our victorious troops, or our troops (men) as victors.** *Nostros* is used substantively, and *victores* is in apposition with it.

**19. Alii allam . . . ferebantur, they fled (were borne) in terror (terrified), some in one direction, others in another.** G. 459, l.

**21. Equites Treviri; the cavalry of the Treviri.** *Equites*, subject of *contenderunt*. *Treviri*, used as an adjective.

**23. Cum vidissent, when they had seen.**

**27. Pulsos. Supply esse. — Castris; G. 421, l.**

**30. Caesar; subject of processit, p. 41, line 6. — Ab . . . cohortatione, after (from) exhorting the tenth legion.** Caesar here resumes from p. 39, line 14, the account of the part which he himself took in the battle.

**31. Ubi vidit, where he saw.** Here commences the description of the scene of confusion and ruin which met the eye of Caesar when he reached the right wing. — *Urgeri, esse.* These infinitives, with several others, depend upon *vidit*.

**33. Quartae . . . centurionibus.** The student will remember that there were six centurions in each cohort, and ten cohorts in each legion. See note on *omnium ordinum*, p. 21, line 4.

**34. Signo amisso.** The loss of a standard was regarded as a great disgrace.

**36. Primipilo, the chief centurion.** The *primipilus*, as the chief centurion of the legion, was intrusted with the eagle, or standard of the legion.

**1. Deserto proello, abandoning the contest.** G. 431.



## PAGE

- 41 2. Neque = *et non*. Subeuntes, coming up.  
 4. In angusto, in a critical condition.  
 5. Militi; G. 386, 2.  
 6. Eo, *thither*.  
 8. Manipulos laxare, to open their ranks.  
 9. Cujus; i. e., Caesaris. — Militibus; G. 386.  
 10. Pro se quisque, each one for himself; i. e., irrespective of the others.  
 11. In extremis suis rebus, in their most critical situation.  
 15. Legiones; i. e., the twelfth and the seventh. — *Conversa signa* . . . inferrent, to face about and advance against the enemy; lit., to bear the standards turned about. The two legions, when united, probably formed a rectangle, thus facing the enemy on all sides.  
 16. Cum alius . . . ferrent, since they bore aid, one to another. G. 461, 3.  
 19. Legionum duarum. See p. 38, line 9.  
 22. Labienus castris. Labienus, in command of the ninth and tenth legions, having driven the Atrebatas across the river (p. 39, line 33), had reached the enemy's camp on the other side.  
 24. Legionem subsidio nostris; G. 390, II. — Qui cum, when they; i. e., the soldiers of the tenth legion. G. 445, 5.  
 26. Versaretur, were. G. 463, I.  
 27. Nihil . . . fecerunt, they made all possible haste; lit., they made nothing (of) left; i. e., left nothing undone. — Reliqui; Predicate Genitive. G. 403.  
 29. Etiam qui, even those who. Supply *ii*.  
 31. Occurrerent. Supply *ut*, from line 29; so also before *praeferrent*.  
 32. Turpitudinem fugae. See p. 38, line 22.  
 33. Legionariis . . . praeferrent, placed themselves before the legionary soldiers; i. e., they sought to outdo them in deeds of valor.  
 37. His refers to *proximi*. — Qui. Supply *ii*.  
 38. Conjicerent, remitterent. Supply *ut* from line 35.  
 42 1. Ut, so that. — Non nequidquam, not in vain; i. e., not without reason and a deliberate purpose; construe with *transire*.  
 3. Flumen; i. e., Sabim. See p. 37, line 1.  
 4. Quae facilia redigerat, had rendered these things easy.  
 7. Majores natu, the elders. G. 424. — Quos; G. 536.  
 8. Collectos. Supply *esse*.  
 9. Dixeramus. See note, p. 30, line 4. — Victoribus . . . impeditum, that nothing was difficult for the victors. G. 391.  
 13. Sexcentis. Supply *senatoribus*.  
 14. Vix ad quingentos, to scarcely five hundred. — Possent; G. 501.

The Nervii seem to have exaggerated their loss to excite the compassion of Caesar. 42

16. Usus. Supply *esse*. — *Misericordia*; G. 421, I.

18. Ut . . . prohiberent; G. 498, II. — *Ab injuria*, from injury; i. e., from injuring the Nervii.

XXIX.—XXXIII. *War with the Aduatuci. They surrender, but afterwards attempt to surprise the Romans, and are utterly overthrown.*

20. *Supra scriptus*. See Chapter XVI.

21. *Auxilio Nervii*; G. 390.

23. *In unum oppidum*. The situation of this town is not known.

24. *Cum . . . partibus haberet*, while this had around it (in circuitu) on all sides. The town occupied the summit of a hill which was precipitous on all sides except in one place, two hundred feet wide, where there was a gentle ascent.

27. *Pedum*; construe with *aditus*. — *Duplici muro*, with a double wall; i. e., with two walls, one within the other. In front of the outer wall they had also dug a trench. See p. 43, line 33.

30. *Cimbris Teutonibus*. See Dict.

32. *Citra Rhenum*, on this side (i. e., the south side) of the Rhine.

33. *Custodiam, praesidium*. Here *custodiam* is used of those who had the immediate care of the baggage, while *praesidium* refers to the soldiers who guarded it.

34. *Post eorum obitum*, after their overthrow; i. e., after the overthrow of the Cimbri and Teutones (*eorum*) by C. Marius, 101 B. C.

36. *Illatum defenderent*, warded it off when waged against themselves. With *illatum* supply *bellum sibi*.

37. *Hunc locum*, this place; i. e., the territory which they then occupied, situated between the Meuse and the Scheldt.

2. *Pedum duodecim*, twelve feet in height. 48

3. *Quindecim millium*. Supply *passuum*, as usual. Some critics supply *pedum*. The works here spoken of were constructed by the Romans to enclose the besieged city.

4. *Vineis actis*. See note, p. 35, line 26. — *Aggere*. See note, p. 35, line 29.

5. *Turrim*; G. 62, III. — *Irridere, increpitare*; Historical Infinitives. G. 536, 1.

7. *Ab tanto spatio*, at so great a distance, so far off.

9. *Gallis contemptui*; G. 390.

11. *Confiderent*; G. 523, II., 1.

## PAGE

- 48 12. *Moveri*. Supply *turrim*.  
 14. *Qui*; subject of *dixerunt*. The object of *dixerunt* begins with *et suaque*, and embraces the rest of the chapter.  
 15. *Existimare*. Supply *se*.  
 17. *Se suaque*; object of *permittere*. The subject *se* is omitted. G. 523, I., foot note 2.  
 18. *Petere, deprecari*. *Deprecari* is more specific than *petere*, and means to strive to avert by prayer; *unum deprecari*, that they implored him not to do one thing, viz., *ne se armis despoliaret*.  
 23. *Sibi praestare*, that it was better for them.  
 27. *Conservaturum*. Supply *esse*.  
 28. *Aries*. The battering-ram was used to batter down the walls and towers of besieged cities. It consisted of a heavy beam with a massive iron head. It was suspended from a framework by means of ropes or chains, and, in the hands of a hundred men, could be driven against the walls with almost irresistible force.  
 29. *Nisi armis traditis*, unless the arms be given up.  
 30. *In Nervii*, in the case of the Nervii.  
 31. *Ne quam*; construe with *injuriam*.  
 32. *Quae . . . facere*, that they were already doing those things which were commanded; i. e., by Caesar. This is the report brought back by the ambassadors after they had communicated Caesar's commands to their people (*re nuntiata ad suos*).  
 35. *Adaequarent*; Subjunctive of Result. G. 500.  
 37. *Pace usi sunt*, they availed themselves of peace. G. 421, I.  
 44 3. *Quod . . . crediderant*. Observe the force of the Indicative. G. 516, I.  
 4. *Denique*, at least.  
 5. *Scutis . . . intextis*, with shields made of bark or of intertwined osiers.  
 10. *Significatione facta*, a signal having been given.  
 13. *Contra eos qui jacerent*, against those who (i. e., any who) were hurrying. The subjunctive *jacerent* makes the remark a general one; the indicative would have limited it to Caesar's men. G. 503, I.  
 15. *Ad millibus quattuor*, about four thousand.  
 20. *Capitum millium*. Construe *millium* with *numerus*, and *capitum* with *millium*.

XXXIV., XXXV. *Other events of the Campaign.*

23. *Miserat*, had sent. This must have been after the battle with the Nervii, for the eight legions were all present in that engagement. See p. 38, lines 7-9. — *Venetos . . . Redones*. These states were situated on or near the coast between the Loire and the Seine.

25. Oceanum; i. e., the Atlantic.

30. Incolerent; G. 529, II. — *Mitterentur*; Subj. of Result.

35. Ubi . . . gesserat. Perhaps *Crassus*, and not *Caesar*, should be supplied as the subject of *gesserat*; because the Carnutes, Andes, and Turones, situated on the Loire, were near (*propinque*) the scene of the military operations of Crassus, but quite distant from the scene of Caesar's campaign.

37. *Ex litteris, in consequence of the despatches.* — *Dies . . . supplicatio, a thanksgiving for fifteen days.* Public thanksgivings had often been decreed by the senate after signal victories, but never before for so long a period as fifteen days.

38. *Quod, which, referring to the general idea contained in dies . . . decreta est.* — Nulli; G. 561, II.

## BOOK THIRD.

CAMPAIGN OF THE YEAR 56 B. C., IN THE CONSULSHIP OF CN. CORNELIUS LENTULUS MARCELLINUS AND L. MARCIUS PHILIPPUS.

- I. EXPEDITION OF GALBA AGAINST CERTAIN ALPINE TRIBES. I.-VI.
- II. WAR WITH THE VENETI. VII.-XVI.
- III. WAR WITH THE VENELLI. XVII.-XIX.
- IV. EXPEDITION OF CRASSUS INTO AQUITANIA. XX.-XXVII.
- V. EXPEDITION OF CAESAR AGAINST THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII. XXVIII., XXIX.

### I. Winter Quarters of Galba.

1. *Servium Galbam*; the great-grandfather of the Emperor Galba. 45

5. *Quod . . . volebat.* This clause supplies the place of a Predicate Nominative after *fuit*. — *Iter*; subject of *patefieri*.

6. *Quo, by which, referring to iter.* — *Magnis cum portoribus, with heavy imposts.* This refers to the imposts levied by these Alpine tribes upon all the merchandise carried through their territory. Caesar wished to open a route by which merchandise might be brought into Gaul free of duty.

10. *Eorum* refers to the tribes above mentioned.

## PAGE

- 45 12. *Ipsæ*. Subject of *constituit*, to be supplied.  
 14. *Octodurus*. See Dict.  
 16. *Flumine*, by a river; i. e., the Drance.

II.-VI. *The Gauls attack Galba, but are repulsed. He retires into the Roman Province.*

20. *Hibernorum*, of their wintering, or of the winter. *Hiberna*, which properly designates the winter quarters themselves, here refers to the time spent in them.

21. *Eo*, thither; i. e., to him in his quarters. — *Per exploratores*. Why not the Ablative with *a* or *ab*? G. 415, I., 1, note 1.

25. *Id acciderat ut*, it had happened that. *Id* represents the clause *ut caperent*. G. 636, III., 7.

27. *Primum quod . . . despicebant*. This is the first reason assigned for the movement of the Gauls. — *Neque eam plenissimam*, and that indeed not very full. G. 451, 2. This legion had suffered severely in the battle of the Sambre, so that it was not full even before the two cohorts were detached for service among the Nantuates. See p. 40, lines 32-37.

28. *Commeatus*; probably Genitive.

30. *Tum . . . quod . . . existimabant*; a second reason.

- 46 3. *Accedebat, quod*, an additional reason was that. *Quod . . . habebant* supplies the subject of *accedebat*.

4. *Abstractos*. Supply *esse*. — *Obsidum nomine*, under the name of hostages. G. 419, III.

7. *Sibi persuasum habebant*, they were persuaded; lit., had it persuaded to themselves. *Sibi* depends upon *persuasum*. G. 385, II.

9. *Neque satis esset provisum*, nor had sufficient provision been made.

16. *Neque subsidio veniri*, neither could aid come. Supply *posset*. — *Subsidio*; G. 390, note 2.

18. *Ut . . . contenderent*, that they should hasten to a place of safety; lit., to safety.

19. *Pervenissent*; Subj. in an Indirect Clause. G. 529, II.

21. *Ad extremum*, to the last; i. e., as a last resort. — *Rei eventum experiri*, to try the issue of the movement.

23. *Vix ut*; more emphatic than *ut viz.* — *His rebus . . . administrandis*, for arranging and executing these measures.

25. *Decurrere, conficere, repugnare*, etc.; Historical Infinitives. G. 536, 1.

27. *Ex loco superiore*; i. e., from the ramparts.

28. *Ut quaeque pars, when any part; lit., as each (every) part.*

30. *Hoc superari, they were surpassed in this; i. e., they labored under this disadvantage, explained by quod . . . succedebant.*

31. *Proello excedebant, were continually withdrawing from the battle; i. e., they withdrew one after another, as they became weary, and fresh troops took their places. — Integris viribus; G. 419, II.*

33. *Non modo.* See note, p. 37, line 29. — *Defesso, saucio; Indirect Objects of dabatur. — Excedendi.* Supply *facultas dabatur.*

38. *Languidioribus nostris, as our soldiers were becoming more exhausted.* G. 431.

2. *Ad extremum casum, to the last extremity. — Baculus.* See 47 p. 40, line 36.

3. *Proello; G. 429.*

7. *Extremum auxilium, the last resort.*

8. *Millites certiores facit, he directs the soldiers.*

9. *Intermitterent, exciperent.* G. 523, III.

13. *Omnibus portis, through (by) all the gates.* G. 420. See note, with plan, on *legionis decimae*, p. 39, line 30.

14. *Sui colligendi, of composing themselves.* G. 542, I., note 1.

16. *In spem venerant, had entertained the hope; lit., had come into the hope.*

17. *Circumventos interficiunt; G. 549, 5.*

19. *Plus tertia; G. 417, 1, note 2.*

22. *Armisque exutis, and stripped of their arms.* They had thrown away their arms in flight. *Exutis* agrees with *copiis*.

23. *Saeplus, too often.*

24. *Allo consilio, with one purpose; i. e., to open free communication with Italy by way of the Alps.*

25. *Allis occurrisse.* Supply *et*.

## VII., VIII. *The Veneti Revolt.*

31. *Cum, though. — Omnibus de causis; construe with existimaret.*

32. *Expulsis Germanis.* This seems to refer to Ariovistus and his Germans. See Book I., 53.

33. *Atque ita, and accordingly.*

37. *Mare Oceanum, the ocean; i. e., the Atlantic.* G. 433, note 3.

1. *Praefectos tribunosque.* See note p. 20, line 21.

2. *Frumenti; construe with petendi causa.*

4. *Gallus.* Supply *missus*.

7. *Orae; Partitive Genitive, depending upon amplissima.*

9. *Consuerunt.* Why Perfect? G. 297, 2.

10. *In magno impetu . . . aperto, in consequence of (lit., in) the*

## PAGE

48 *great violence of the open sea*; lit., *the great and open violence of the sea*. G. 438, 7.

12. *Fit initium retinendi Sili*, *a beginning is made by detaining* (lit., *of detaining*) *Silius*.

13. *Se obsides*. *Se* is the subject of *recuperaturos (esse)* and *obsides* the object.

16. *Subita et repentina*, *sudden and unexpected*. *Subitus* is applicable to whatever takes place suddenly; *repentinus* only to that which is at once sudden and unexpected.

19. *Acturos*. Supply *se* and *esse*.

20. *Ut mallet*; Subjunctive of Purpose.

24. *Vellit, remittat*; G. 524; 523, III. — *Suos*, *his men*.

25. *Sibi*, *to them*; i. e., *to the Gauls*.

### IX. — XI. *Caesar prepares for the War.*

27. *Ipsa aberat longius*. Where was Caesar at this time? See p. 47, line 34. — *Naves longas*. See Dict.

32. *Simul quod . . . intelligebant*, *as at the same time they understood*.

33. *In se*, *against themselves*.

34. *Legatos . . . conjectos*. Supply *esse*. The clause explains *facinus*, and depends upon *intelligebant*. — *Quod nomen*, *a name which*; lit., *which name*.

38. *Hoc majore spe*, *with the greater hope on this account*; explained by *quod . . . confidebant*.

19 1. *Pedestria itinera*, *approaches by land*. — *Aestuariis*. Some of these estuaries, upon the coast of the Veneti, extend inland to the distance of five or ten miles. — *Navigatorem . . . inscientiam*, *that access by sea was difficult* (impeded) *on account of our ignorance*.

4. *Diutius*, *very long*. — *Ac jam ut*, *and even though*. G. 515, III.

8. *Longe aliam . . . atque*, *very different from what it was*; lit., *far other than* (and). G. 459, 2.

9. *In concluso mari*, *in a closed sea*; referring to the Mediterranean.

11. *Naves quam plurimas possunt*, *as many vessels as they are able*. G. 444, 3.

17. *Erant hae, quas*, *were these which*.

19. *Injuriae retentorum*, etc., *the crime of retaining Roman knights*; lit., *the wrongs of the Roman knights retained*. This refers to the ambassadors mentioned in the preceding chapter, who, it appears, were of equestrian rank. *Injuriae*, *rebellio*, *defectio*, *conjunctio*, and the clause *ne . . . arbitrarentur*, are all in apposition with *multa*, and present the considerations which led Caesar to enter upon this war.

25. *Præusquam conspirarent*; G. 524.

30. *Adeat*; G. 499, 2.

31. *Germanos*; object of *prohibeat*. — *Auxilio*; G. 390, 2.

38. *Qui eam . . . curet*, to see that that force (i. e., the force of these three tribes) be kept separate; i. e., be prevented from effecting a union with the other forces. G. 497.

1. *Classi* depends upon *præficit*. See also 106, 107.

50

4. *Eo*, thither; i. e., into the country of the Veneti.

## XII.-XIII. *The Country of the Veneti. Their Maritime Power.*

6. *In extremis lingulis*, at the very end of tongues of land. G. 440, 2, note 1.

7. *Pedibus*, by land; lit., by feet.

8. *Ex alto se incitavisset*, had rushed in (had roused itself) from the deep.

11. *Utraque re*, by both facts; lit., each thing; i. e., by the danger attending an approach by land at high tide, and by sea at low tide.

12. *Magnitudine operis*, by the greatness of our work; i. e., of the Roman works.

13. *Extruso mari*, the sea being kept out. — *His*, these; i. e., *aggere ac molibus*; Abl. Absolute. — *Moenibus* depends upon *adaequatis*.

14. *Fortunis*; G. 386, 2.

15. *Cujus rei*, of which; lit., of which thing; referring to the ships (*navium*).

18. *Eo*, on this account; viz., *quod . . . navigandi*.

20. *Mari, aestibus, portibus*; Ablatives Absolute. — *Raris . . . portibus*, with few and almost no harbors.

22. *Namque*, for, introducing the reason for the success of the enemy. — *Ipsorum naves*, their vessels, in contrast with those of the Romans.

23. *Armatae*, equipped.

24. *Excipere*, to encounter.

25. *Possent*; G. 497, II. — *Erectae*. Supply *erant*.

27. *Totae*; G. 443. — *Ad quamvis . . . perferendam*, for sustaining any force and violence whatever.

28. *Transtra . . . trabibus*, cross-beams (consisting) of timbers a foot in thickness; lit., in height. — *Trabibus*; G. 419, II. — *Digitl . . . crassitudine*, of the thickness of a thumb. G. 419, II.

30. *Pro funibus*, instead of ropes. — *Pelles pro vellis*, skins served as sails; lit., were for sails. Supply *erant*.

31. *Alutae tenuiter confectae*, thinly dressed leather. — *Hae*, referring to *pelles alutaeque*, is the subject of *erant*, to be supplied.



PAGE

50 35. Cum his . . . erat, the encounter with these vessels was such for our fleet.

36. Ut . . . praestaret, that it (our fleet) excelled.

51 1. His; G. 385, I. — Nostrae. Supply naves. — Rostro, with the beak. The beaks of ancient ships of war, consisting of solid beams armed with pointed irons, were very formidable in dashing in the sides of the enemy's vessels.

5. Coepisset, ferrent. Observe that coepisset and dedissent depend upon cum, but ferrent, consistenter, and timerent upon ut. G. 521, II., 2; 501, I., 1.

7. Nihil; G. 378, 2. — Quarum rerum omnium casus, disasters from all these things.

#### XIV.-XVI. Caesar conquers the Veneti in a naval Engagement.

10. Frustra. See Syn. L. C. 338.

11. Neque his noceri posse, nor could any injury be done to them. — Noceri; G. 465, 1.

14. Omni genere . . . ornatissimae, most fully furnished with every kind of equipment. Here armorum probably includes arms, as well as the tackle and the ordinary equipment of a vessel.

15. Nostris; i. e., nostris navibus. G. 391, I.

16. Bruto; construe with constabat.

18. Agerent, insisterent; G. 529, I.

20. Turribus excitatis, though towers were erected; i. e., upon the Roman vessels.

21. Neque — et, not — and; lit., nor — and.

22. Missa ab Gallis, those sent by the Gauls. — Gravius, with greater force.

24. Falces; in apposition with res. — Non absimili . . . falcium — forma non absimili formae muralium falcium, of a form not unlike that of mural hooks. G. 419, II. The mural hooks were powerful iron hooks, fastened to long poles, used in pulling down the walls of besieged towns.

29. Navibus; G. 384, 4, note 2.

33. Nullum . . . factum, no deed a little braver than usual.

38. Binae ac ternae naves, two and even three (of our) vessels at a time.

52 4. In eam partem, quo . . . ferebat, in the direction in which the wind was blowing.

5. Malacia, the going down of the wind, a calm.

6. Tranquillitas, stillness, as the result of the going down of the wind

8. Singulas, the ships one by one. Supply naves.

10. *Pervenerint*; G. 495, VI. — *Ab hora quarta*; G. 645.

15. *Navium quod ubique fuerat, whatever vessels they had anywhere*; lit., *what of vessels*.

16. *Reliqui, the others*, in distinction from *quibus*, which seems to include both men and ships.

17. *Neque . . . recipere, habebant, neither knew (had) whither to betake themselves*. G. 529, I.

19. *Eo gravius . . . quo, the more severely for this reason, that*.

22. *Sub corona, as slaves*; lit., *under the crown*, referring to the chaplet placed on the head of the prisoner when offered for sale.

## XVII. *Quintus Titurius Sabinus is sent into the Country of the Venelli.*

24. *Quas . . . acceperat*. See p. 49, line 37.

25. *His, these*; i. e., the Venelli. G. 386.

27. *Exercitum magnasque copias*. He had not only assembled the regular army, but had also raised additional forces by new levies. — *His paucis diebus*; G. 429.

28. *Aulerci Eburonices*. See Dict.

29. *Auctores belli esse, to sanction the war*; lit., *to be the authors of the war*.

33. *Ab agricultura . . . revocabat, detained from agriculture*.

34. *Idoneo . . . loco, in a place in all respects suitable*. G. 424; 425, 2.

35. *Cum, although*. — *Duum* for *duorum*. G. 175, foot note.

37. *Hostibus*; G. 384, 4, note 2.

1. *Opinionem timoris, an impression (on the part of the enemy) of his fear*. 58

2. *Id faciebat, he did this*; i. e., he kept himself in the camp.

3. *Cum multitudine*; construe with *dimicandum (esse)*.

4. *Eo absente qui, in the absence of him who*; i. e., Caesar.

5. *Legato*; G. 388.

## XVIII., XIX. *Sabinus defeats the Venelli.*

11. *Pro perfuga, as a deserter*.

12. *Timorem . . . proficiscatur*; the false report of this pretended deserter.

13. *Neque longius . . . educat, and that it is not farther off than the next night that Sabinus will secretly lead forth his army from the camp*; i. e., that he will do so on the next night; lit., *nor is it farther off but that Sabinus, etc.*

16. *Negotii bene gerendi, of fighting a successful battle*.

17. *Iri oportere, that they ought to go*; both verbs Impersonal.

## PAGE

- 53 18. *Superiorum . . . cunctatio, the delay of Sabinus during the previous days.* G. 393, note; 398, 2.
21. *Spes Venetici belli.* They had not yet heard the result of this war. See Chapter XVI.
22. *Prius*; construe with *quam* in the next line.
24. *Caplant, contendant*; G. 501, I., 1.
25. *Ut explorata victoria, as if victory were already secured*; lit. *victory having been as it were already secured.* *Ut = sicut.*
26. *Quibus compleant*; Purpose. G. 497.
33. *Hostibus*; G. 431.
- 54 1. *Equites*; subject of *reliquerunt.*
2. *Ex fuga evaserant, had escaped from flight*; i. e., were no longer in flight.
3. *Sabinus.* Supply *est certior factus.*
5. *Titurio = Titurio Sabino.*
6. *Aninus, mens.* See Syn. L. C. 355.
7. *Minime resistens, by no means resolute.*

XX.-XXII. *Crassus defeats the Sontiates.*

11. *Ex tertia parte . . . aestimanda, is to be regarded as the third division of Gaul*; i. e., as one of the three general divisions; lit., *from the third part.*
13. *Paucis ante annis, a few years before*, probably in the year 79 B. C., in the war with Sertorius.
19. *Civitates, cities.* — *Galliae provinciae = Provinciae Romanae, of the province.* — *Finitimae*; construe with *civitates.*
22. *Quo plurimum valebant, in which they were very powerful.*
29. *Superioribus victoribus*; probably those over Valerius and Mallius, mentioned in the last chapter. G. 425, 1, 1), note.
30. *Sine imperatore, without their commander*; i. e., without Caesar.
31. *Sine . . . legionibus.* It will be remembered that Crassus had, in addition to his cavalry, only twelve cohorts. See p. 49, line 34. — *Adolescentulo duce, with a young man (Crassus) as their leader.*
32. *Perspicui.* The subject is the clause *quid . . . possent.*
33. *Vertere = verterunt.*
34. *Oppidum Sontiatum*; perhaps the modern *Sds.*
35. *Vineas turresque.* See notes, p. 35, lines 26 and 29. — *IIM*; subject of *mittunt.*
36. *Cuniculis.* These were subterranean passages which the Gauls opened under the Roman works, for the purpose of undermining them.
37. *Cujus rei, in which thing*; i. e., in constructing these mines (*cuniculi*). G. 399, I., 2.

9. *Commodis*; G. 421, I. — *Quorum*; construe with *amicitias*. — 55  
*Dediderint*; G. 529, II.

11. *Ferant, consciscant*; construe, like *fruantur*, with *uti*.

13. *Recusaret*; G. 503, I. — *Cum his Adcantuannus*. This is a repetition of *Adcantuannus cum sexcentis devotis*, justified by the long intervening parenthesis.

17. *Tamen, yet*; i. e., though he attempted to escape. — *Uti . . . uteretur*; G. 498, II.

### XXIII. — XXVII. *Crassus conquers the Aquitani.*

21. *Oppidum*; subject of *expugnatum (esse)*.

22. *Paucis diebus, quibus . . . erat*, in a few days after; lit., in which) he had arrived. G. 430, note 2.

25. *Citerioris Hispaniae, Hither Spain*; i. e., Spain north of the River Ebro. G. 401.

26. *Finitimae* agrees with *quae* and governs *Aquitaniae*. G. 391, 1.

29. *Omnes annos, during all the years*; i. e., all the years of the war, from 80 to 72 B. C.

32. *Consuetudine*; G. 416. They had learned the Roman mode of warfare from Sertorius.

33. *Quod, this*, referring in part to the preceding sentence, but more fully explained by *suas copias . . . diduci . . . augeri*.

37. *Cunctandum*. Supply *esse*.

38. *Quin pugna decertaret, to contend in battle*. G. 504, 3.

3. *Duplici acie, in a double line of battle*; i. e., with two lines of cohorts, instead of three, the usual number. See note on *triplicem aciem*, p. 12, line 25. By this arrangement Crassus presented a more extended front.

4. *Auxillis*. Crassus, having but little confidence in the auxiliaries, placed them in the centre, and not, as usual, on the wings.

10. *Sese . . . coepissent, should begin to retreat*. G. 525, 2.

11. *Sub sarcinis*. See note on *impedimentorum*, p. 37, line 16. — *Infirmiore animo, more depressed in spirit*; lit., of (with) more depressed (weak) spirit. G. 419, II.

14. *Sua, their*; referring to the enemy. — *Opinione timoris, by the opinion* (now entertained by the Romans) *of their cowardice*. — *Hostes*; subject of *effecissent*.

16. *Exspectari, iretur*; Impersonal Passive. Render like the Personal Active, *to hesitate, to go*. The clause *expectari . . . iretur* is in apposition with *voces*.

20. *Vallo*; G. 414, I.; 434, note 1.

22. *Lapidibus, tellis, cespitibus*; Abl. of Means. — *Ad aggerem*. Supply *faciendum*.

## PAGE

- 56 25. *Ex loco superiore*; i. e., from their fortifications.  
 26. *Circumitis . . . castris*; G. 431.  
 28. *Ab decumana porta*, at (from) the decuman gate. See note on *castris*, p. 6, line 28.  
 33. *Praesidio castris*; G. 390. — *Intritae ab labore*, not worn out by labor. G. 415, I., 2.  
 34. *Ne possent*; Subjunctive of Purpose. G. 497.  
 36. *Eas . . . munitiones*; i. e., those near the decuman gate.  
 37. *Prius quam . . . videri*. Supply *possent*.  
 57 1. *Posset*. The subject is *quid rei gereretur*. G. 529, 1; 520, II.  
 2. *Quod*, which. G. 445, 7.  
 3. *Consuevit*, is wont. G. 297, I., 2.  
 5. *Per munitiones*, over (through) the fortifications.  
 7. *Quae*, referring to *millium*, is the subject of *convenisse*.  
 9. *Multa nocte*, late at night.  
 11. *Ultro*, moreover. — *Quo in numero*, in this number; referring to *maxima pars Aquitaniae*.  
 14. *Tempore*; G. 425, 1, 1), note.

### XXVIII. *Caesar marches against the Morini and the Menapii.*

18. *Supererant*, alone remained. Supply *soli*. — *Qui essent*; G. 503, II., 1.  
 20. *Qui*, but they; i. e., the Morini, etc. G. 453. — *Longe alia . . . Galli*, in a way far different from the other Gauls; lit., far other than the other Gauls. G. 459, 2. — *Galli*; subject of *gesserant*, to be supplied.  
 22. *Contendissent*; G. 524.  
 23. *Continentesque silvas habebant*, and because (quod) they had extensive forests.  
 30. *Compluribus*; i. e., of the Gauls. — *Longius*, too far. G. 444, 1. — *Locis*; G. 425, II., 1.

### XXIX. *The Campaign is interrupted by violent Rains. Caesar retires into Winter Quarters.*

32. *Reliquis deinceps diebus*, in all the remaining days. *Deinceps* implies an uninterrupted series.  
 33. *Ne quis impetus*, that no attack. — *Militibus*; G. 431.  
 35. *Conversam ad hostem*, facing the enemy; i. e., before the enemy.  
 37. *Confecto*, finished; i. e., cleared.  
 38. *Extrema impedimenta*, the rear of the baggage; i. e., of the enemy.

3. *Sub pellibus, in the tents, lit., under skins; i. e., the skins with* 58  
which the Roman tents were covered.

5. *In Aulercis; construe with in hibernis collocavit.*

6. *Quae proxime . . . fecerant, which had last made war upon him,*  
viz., the Veneti, the Venelli, and the Sontiates.

## BOOK FOURTH.

CAMPAIGN OF THE YEAR 55 B. C., IN THE CONSULSHIP OF  
CN. POMPEIUS MAGNUS AND M. LICINIUS CRASSUS.

- I. EXPEDITION INTO GERMANY. I.-XIX.
- II. EXPEDITION INTO BRITAIN. XX.-XXXVI.
- III. WAR WITH THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII. XXXVII., XXXVIII.

### I.-III. Two German Tribes come into Gaul.

1. *Hieme; construe with transierunt. G. 429. — Qui fuit . . . con-* 59  
*sulibus, this (lit., which) was the year when Gnaeus Pompey and Marcus*  
*Crassus were consuls. This is somewhat parenthetical, but is added to*  
*show to what year these events belong. — Qui; G. 453.*

2. *Germani, Germans; i. e., a German tribe.*

4. *Quo, into which; lit., whither.*

5. *Quod ab . . . prohibebantur. This clause supplies the place of*  
*a predicate noun after fuit. G. 362. — Suebis. The Suebi occupied a*  
*vast tract of country extending from the Baltic to the Danube and from*  
*the Elbe to the Vistula.*

9. *Singula millia, each a thousand; lit., single thousands; i. e., a*  
*thousand apiece.*

11. *Illos, those; i. e., the warriors. — Hi, these; referring to reliqui.*

12. *Ratio atque usus belli, the theory and practice of war.*

13. *Agri; construe with nihil. G. 397.*

16. *Maximam partem, for the most part. G. 378, 2. — Lacte; G.*  
*420.*

17. *Quae res, and this fact; referring to the mode of life just men-*  
*tioned. — Res; subject of agit, efficit.*

18. *Quod . . . faciant. This explains libertate vitae. — Nullo officio*

## PAGE

59 *assuefacti*, accustomed to no duty; lit., accustomed, trained in (by means of) no duty.

20. *Faciant*; G. 518, II. — *Magnitudine*; G. 419, II.

22. *Locis frigidissimis*, though their country (lit., places) is exceedingly cold. G. 431. — *Vestitus*; Partitive Genitive with *quidquam*.

25. *Magis, eo, ut*, the more for this reason, that. — *Quae*. Supply *ea*, as the antecedent of *quae* and as the object of *vendant*.

26. *Quibus*. Supply *eos*, as the antecedent of *quibus* and the object of *habeant*. — *Quam quo*, than because.

27. *Jumentis* depends upon *utuntur*.

30. *Haec . . . ut sint efficiunt*, these they make, by daily exercise, capable of the greatest labor. — *Haec*; i. e., *haec jumenta*, is the antecedent of *quae* and the subject of *sint*.

60 1. *Ut sint*; G. 500. — *Laboris*; Predicate Genitive. G. 401.

2. *Pedibus*, on foot; lit., on their feet. G. 425, 1, 1).

4. *Moribus*; G. 416.

8. *Ea re*, by this; lit., by this thing; i. e., wine.

11. *Significari*. Supply *putant*.

13. *Una ex . . . a Suebis*, in one direction from the Suebi.

15. *Ut est . . . Germanorum*, according to the German standard; lit., as is the capacity of the Germans; i. e., so far as a German state can be *ampla atque florens*.

16. *Ejusdem . . . ceteris*, than the others of the same race; i. e., than the other Germans.

19. *Hos*; the object of *expellere*. It refers to the Ubii.

#### IV. *The Usipetes and the Tencteri seize the Territory of the Menapii.*

24. *In eadem causa*, in the same condition; i. e., the same as the Ubii.

30. *Trans flumen*, on the other side of the river; i. e., on the German side.

33. *Vi contendere*, to accomplish their object by force.

36. *Itinere*; G. 431. — *Equitatu*; G. 420.

61 2. *His, eorum*. These words refer to the Menapii, who had returned to their homes.

6. *Eorum copijs*, upon their stores; i. e., upon the stores of provisions which the Menapii had collected for their own use.

#### V., VI. *Caesar prepares to carry the War into Germany.*

8. *Mobilis*, impulsive, changeable.

9. *Nihil his committendum, that no confidence should be reposed in them; i. e., at such a crisis.* 61

10. *Est . . . consuetudinis, is a Gallic custom.* G. 401. — *Ut . . . cogant.* This clause is in apposition with *hoc*, while at the same time it denotes result. G. 501, III.

11. *Ut connects quærant to cogant.*

12. *Audierit; G. 529, I.*

13. *Mercatores; object of circumstat.* G. 372. — *Vulgus circumstat, cogant.* Observe the change of number. G. 461, 1, note 2.

16. *Quorum; G. 409, III.*

18. *Et plerique . . . repondeant, and since most persons give them answers adapted to their desires.*

19. *Ne gravior . . . occurreret, that he might not encounter a more formidable war.* Caesar feared that the Gauls would unite with the Germans.

20. *Ad exercitum, to the army, which was at the time in winter quarters.* See p. 58, line 7. He himself probably spent the winter, in accordance with his usual custom, in Northern Italy or Cisalpine Gaul.

23. *Uti . . . discederent, to withdraw from the Rhine; i. e., to come into the interior of Gaul.*

24. *Quæ postulassent, which they (the Germans) might demand.* G. 525, 2. — *Fore* depends upon a verb of *saying* implied in *invitados*. G. 523, 1.

28. *Dissimulanda.* Supply *esse*. See Syn. L. C. 605. — *Permulsis et confirmatis.* He soothed and encouraged them as if he supposed them perfectly true to him.

29. *Equitatu imperato.* Caesar depended upon the Gauls for cavalry.

30. *Constituit, made known his purpose.*

## VII. — IX. *Caesar's Interview with the German Embassy.*

32. *Quibus in locis.* See note on *quibus itineribus*, p. 3, line 33.

38. *Resistere.* Supply *itis* referring to *quicumque*.

2. *Posse.* Supply *se*. — *Sibi, to them; i. e., to the Germans.* 62

3. *Attribuant, patiantur; Imperative in the Direct Discourse.* G. 523, III.

5. *In terris, in the world; lit., in the lands.*

7. *Quæ; object of respondere, to be supplied.*

8. *Exitus, the conclusion.* — *Sibi; G. 387.*

9. *Qui.* Supply *eos* as antecedent.

14. *Hoc se.* *Se* is the subject and *hoc* the object of *imperaturum (esse).*



62 18. *Propius se, nearer to them.* G. 437, 1.

21. *Trans Mosam, across the Meuse; i. e., to the western side of the river.* Caesar was at this time between the Rhine and the Meuse.

### X. *Description of the Rhine and the Meuse.*

24. *Ex . . . Vosego, qui . . . Lingonum, from Mount Vosges, which is in the territory of the Lingones; i. e., from that part of the Vosges which is thus situated, as only a portion of it is in the territory of the Lingones.*

25. *Parte . . . recepta.* This refers to the left branch of the Rhine, called the *Waal*, which forms a junction with the Meuse.

26. *Insulam Batavorum.* This island, triangular in form, is bounded on the north-east by the Rhine, on the south by the *Waal* and the Meuse, and on the west by the North Sea. See Map.

29. *Longo spatio, a long distance.* G. 425, II., 1.

30. *Citatus, with a swift current.*

33. *Sunt, qui, there are some who.* G. 445, 5.

34. *Piscibus; G. 420.*

### XI.-XV. *Caesar defeats the Germans with great Slaughter.*

37. *Ut . . . constitutum.* See line 17 above.

38. *Congressi, having met him (Caesar).*

63 3. *Sibi . . . faceret, that he would grant them the privilege.*

5. *Sibi . . . fecissent, would give them security by an oath; i. e., that they would receive them into their territory, as Caesar had proposed.* See p. 62, line 12. — *Fecissent; G. 525, 2.*

7. *Daret; Imperative in Direct Discourse.* G. 523, III.

8. *Eodem illo, to that same object; i. e., the same as their other proposal, p. 62, line 22.* It is, however, more fully explained in the following clause, *ut equites reverterentur.*

11. *Huc, hither; i. e., to the place where he would then be.*

13. *Praefectos; i. e., the prefects of cavalry.*

14. *Qui nuntiarent; Subj. of Purpose.* G. 497. The antecedent is *quosdam*, the omitted object of *mittit*.

15. *Sustinerent, to sustain the attack; i. e., to act on the defensive.*

21. *Legati eorum, their ambassadors; i. e., the ambassadors of the Germans.*

23. *Rursus resistentibus, when our men in their turn resisted.* Sup-  
ply *nostris*.

30. Genere; G. 415, II.
31. Amicus. See note on *amicus*, p. 2, line 32.
3. Expectare; subject of *esse* in the next line.
4. Dementiae esse; G. 401.
6. Hostes, *the enemy*; i. e., the Germans. — Auctoritatis; construe with *quantum*.
8. Legatis et quaestore. See note on *legatos et quaestorem*, p. 28, line 11.
9. Diem pugnae, *day suitable for battle*; lit., *day of battle*. G. 393, note.
10. Postridie ejus diei; G. 398, 5.
13. Ut dicebatur, *as they said*; lit., *as was said*; i. e., by them. — Sui pugnandi; G. 542, I., note.
14. Contra atque esset dictum, *contrary to what had been agreed upon*. G. 554, I., 2.
16. Fallendo, *by deceiving him*. — Quos; subject of *oblato* (*esse*).  
According to Caesar's account the Germans were guilty of the basest violation of good faith. It is entirely possible, however, that Caesar was deceived, and suspected treachery when none was really intended. Some have even supposed that he availed himself of this attack upon his cavalry as an excuse for destroying the Germans.
21. Prius . . . quam; G. 520, footnote 1.
23. Discessu suorum, *by the departure* (absence) *of their chiefs*, detained by Caesar.
25. Perturbantur = dubitant, *are in doubt*.
29. Quo loco, *in this place*; i. e., in the camp. G. 425, 2.
33. Ad quos consecrandos, *to pursue these*. G. 546, 4, 2). This act of Caesar seems to have been an instance of inexcusable barbarity.
37. Ad confluentem . . . Rheni. This probably refers to the confluence of the Meuse with the left branch of the Rhine, also called the Waal. See p. 62, lines 25 and 26.
3. Ad unum omnes, *all to a man*; i. e., without exception. — Ex tanti . . . timore, *after the alarm of so great a war*.
9. Libertatem concessit, *granted liberty*; i. e., allowed them to remain with him as free men.

## XVI., XVII. Caesar bridges the Rhine.

11. Quarum . . . justissima, *of which the most important* (most suitable) *was the following*. G. 450, 3.
12. Quod; construe with *voluit*.
13. Suis . . . voluit, *he wished them* (the Germans) *to fear for their own possessions*. — Rebus; G. 385, II., 1.
15. Accessit etiam, quod, *an additional reason also was that*.

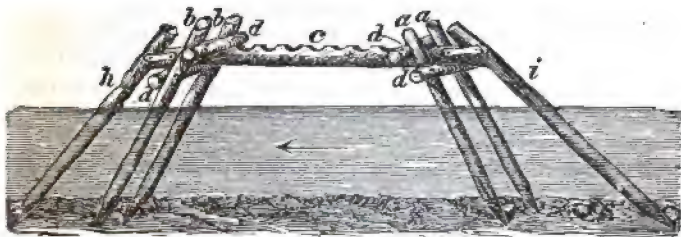
## PAGE

- 65** 16. *Supra commemoravi*. See p. 62, line 21.  
 21. *Postularent*; G. 497. — *Eos*; object of *dederent*.  
 22. *Dederent*. Supply *ut*. G. 499, 2.  
 23. *Se invito*, *without his* (Caesar's) *consent*. G. 431.  
 24. *Sui imperii aut potestatis*, *under* (of) *his sway* (rule) *or power*. G. 401.  
 29. *Occupationibus rei publicae*, *by his public duties*; *lit., occupations of state*.  
 30. *Exercitum Rhenum*; G. 376.  
 32. *Ejus exercitus*, *of his* (Caesar's) *army*.  
 34. *Opinione et amicitia*, *by the reputation and friendship*.  
**66** 1. *Suae . . . dignitatis esse*, *to be consistent with his own dignity or that of the Roman people*. G. 402.  
 3. *Proponebatur*, *was clearly seen*; *lit., was set before him*.  
 4. *Id sibi contendendum*, *that he must attempt it*. He accordingly proceeded to bridge the Rhine, probably near Bonn.  
 6. *Tigna bina sesquipedalia*, *two piles each a foot and a half thick*. *Tigna* is the object of *jungebat*. The distributive *bina* is used because there were several pairs. See plan on the next page.  
 7. *Dimensa ad altitudinem*, etc.; *adapted to the depth of the river*. The longest piles would, of course, be needed in the deepest water.  
 8. *Intervallo . . . jungebat*. This means that the two piles were made fast to each other, but were at the same time kept two feet apart. This was probably done by means of strong cross-pieces or ties (*trubus*, line 16 below). — *Haec cum . . . adegerat*, *when, by means of machines, he had let these down into the water* (*immissa*), *had secured them there* (*defixerat*), *and had driven them down with rammers*.  
 10. *Non sublicae . . . perpendiculum*, *not like* (in the manner of) *an ordinary pile, vertically* (*directe ad perpendiculum*); *lit., entirely according to the plumb-line*.  
 11. *Secundum . . . fluminis*, *according to the current* (nature) *of the river*; *i. e., down the stream*.  
 12. *His contraria*, *opposite to these*. G. 391. *Contraria* agrees with *tigna*, to be supplied after *duo* = *bina*. *Duo* is admissible in this instance, because the meaning is perfectly clear from *bina*, in line 6 above.  
 13. *Intervallo pedum . . . parte*, *at the distance of forty feet down the river* (*ab inferiore parte*). — *Contra vim . . . conversa*, *turned against the force and current of the river*. Thus the upper pair of piles sloped down the river, and the lower pair up the river. See plan.  
 14. *Haec utraque*, *these two pairs*.  
 15. *Quantum . . . distabat*, *which was the distance between the piles*; *lit., as much as the joint of these piles opened*; *i. e., the interval between the two piles was two feet, and accordingly a beam two feet thick* (*bipe-*

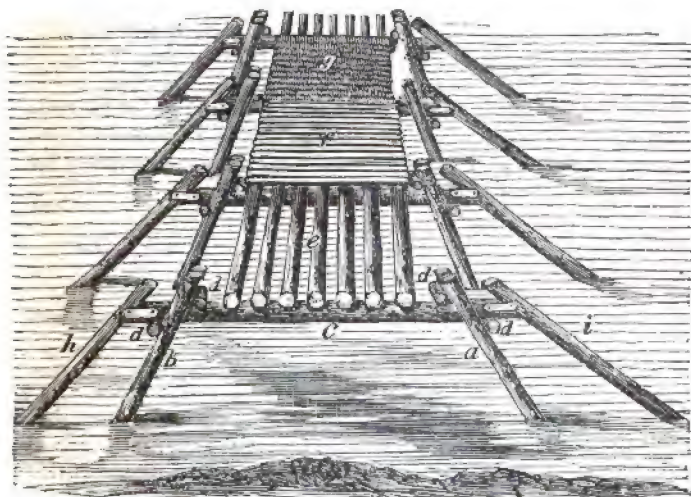
*dalis*) was let in between them, and connected this pair of piles with the 66 opposite pair, forty feet lower down the river.

# PLAN OF CAESAR'S BRIDGE.

## I. VIEW OF ONE PIER.



## I. VIEW OF THREE SECTIONS.



*a* Tigna bina sesquipedalla. — *b* His contraria duo. — *c* Bipediales trabes. — *d* Binae utrimque fibulae. — *e* Directa materia. — *f* Longuril. — *g* Crates. — *h* Sublicae obliquae. — *i* Defensores.

16. Binis utrimque fibulis, with two ties on each side ; *i. e.*, at each extremity of the beam. See plan.

17. Quibus disclusis . . . revinctis, as these (*i. e.*, the two opposite

## PAGE

66 pairs of piles) were kept apart, and also secured in the opposite direction. *Quibus disclusis* relates to what has already been described in *haec utraque distinebantur*. The two pairs of piles inclining towards each other were prevented from inclining too far by the cross pieces or ties inserted in the two acute angles which the large connecting beam made with those piles. The action implied by *in contrariam partem revinctis* has not been described, because it is at once apparent. As the opposite pairs of piles inclined towards each other, the whole weight of the bridge tended to bring them nearer together. This tendency was just the opposite of the action denoted by *disclusis*, and is accordingly well expressed by *in contrariam partem revinctis*.

20. *Haec . . . contexebantur*, these were connected by timbers placed in the direction of the length of the bridge. Caesar, having first described one pier, now proceeds to show how the several piers were connected, and how the bridge was covered.

23. *Quae . . . exciperent*; G. 497, 1.

24. *Aliae item . . . spatio*, others also at a small distance above the bridge. The brevity of the description does not enable us to decide positively whether these were connected with the bridge or not. The words *mediocri spatio* render it somewhat doubtful, but they may refer merely to the lower end of the pile. Colonel August Von Cohausen, of the Prussian Corps of Engineers, in an elaborate and carefully prepared work upon this bridge, takes this view of the subject, and accordingly connects the piles with the bridge itself. See plan.

### XVIII., XIX. Caesar makes an Incursion into Germany.

28. *Diebus*; G. 429. — *Quibus . . . coepta erat*, after the materials began to be collected. G. 430, note 2; 297, I., 1.

35. *Quos ex Tencteris*. This refers to the cavalry, who had taken refuge among the Sigambri. See p. 65, lines 15 to 20.

37. *In solitudinem*. The accusative is necessary to imply that they first went into the desert before they concealed themselves in it.

67 5. *Suebos*; subject of *dimisisse*.

7. *Uti demigrarent*; G. 497, II.

9. *Hunc esse . . . regionem*, that this place had been selected near the centre of those regions. — *Medium* agrees with *hunc* and governs *regionum*. G. 399.

11. *Ibi*, there; i., e., in the same place.

13. *His rebus*; explained by the clauses *ut . . . inficeret, ut ulcisceretur*, etc.

17. *Profectum*; from *proficio*, not from *profiscor*.

XX. — XXII. *Caesar prepares to invade Britain.*

PAGE

23. *Et si tempus . . . deficeret, even if the season should be insufficient ; i. e., too short.* 67

28. *His ipsis ; i. e., mercatoribus.*

30. *Gallias.* Observe the force of the plural referring to the several divisions. See Dict.

31. *Quanta esset ;* Indirect Question depending upon *reperire*. G. 529.

33. *Neque qui ;* construe with *portus*.

36. *Ad . . . cognoscenda ;* construe with *praemittit*.

37. *Idoneum . . . arbitratus, thinking him to be a suitable person.*

1. *Ad se ;* G. 449, 1. — *Quam primum ;* G. 170, 2. 68

3. *Huc ;* construe with *convenire*.

4. *Quam.* The antecedent is *classem*. — *Ad Veneticum bellum.*  
See p. 48, line 27.

7. *Qui polliceantur ;* G. 497.

8. *Dare ;* for *datueros esse*. G. 537, note.

11. *Commium ;* object of *mittit*. — *Atrebatibus superatis ; i. e., in the great battle of the Sambre.* See p. 39, line 35.

12. *Ibi, there ; i. e., among the Atrebrates.*

14. *Magni, of great weight, or value.* G. 403.

15. *Quas possit.* Supply *adire*. — *Adeat ;* G. 499, 2. — *Ut fidem sequantur, to seek (follow) the alliance.*

16. *Se ; i. e., Caesarem.*

17. *Quantum facultatis, so far as the opportunity ;* lit., *as of opportunity*. — *Quantum ;* subject of *potuit*. — *Facultatis ;* Partitive Genitive. — *El qui, to him who ; i. e., to one who.*

21. *In his locis ; i. e., among the Morini.* See line 2 above.

23. *De . . . consilio, for their past conduct.* See p. 57.

24. *Homines ;* in apposition with the omitted subject of *fecissent*. G. 463, 2. — *Consuetudinis ;* G. 399, I., 2.

25. *Imperasset ;* Fut. Perfect in the Direct Discourse. G. 525, 2.

29. *Has . . . occupationes, engagements in these trifling affairs.*

30. *Britanniae, to Britain ; i. e., to the invasion of Britain.* G. 386.

31. *Iis ;* G. 384, II.

32. *Coactis contractisque, collected and brought together.* *Contractis* is more specific than *coactis*, and refers to the final assembling of the vessels at the place of embarkation.

34. *Quod navium ;* G. 397, 3.

35. *Praefectis.* These were commanders of the auxiliaries. — *Huc accedebant, to this number of vessels (lit., hither) were to be added.*

2. *In Menapios ;* construe with *ducendum*. 69

XXIII. — XXVI. *Caesar lands in Britain.*

PAGE

69 8. *Solvit, set sail.* Supply *naves*. Caesar probably sailed from the port *Itius*, which is expressly mentioned as the place from which he embarked on his second expedition into Britain. See p. 77, line 5; also Dict. *Itius*.

9. *Ulteriore portum, the farther port; i. e., farther to the east;* referring to the place where the eighteen vessels assigned to the cavalry had been detained. See p. 68, lines 36 to 38.

11. *Hora quarta, about the fourth hour; i. e., about ten o'clock in the morning, probably on the 16th of August.* G. 645.

16. *Dum convenirent;* G. 519, II., 2.

19. *Ex Voluseno cognosset.* See p. 68, lines 17 to 20.

20. *Monuit . . . administrarentur, admonished them that all things should be performed, etc. — Ut rei . . . haberent* explains *ad nutum . . . administrarentur*.

21. *Ut quae . . . haberent, since they had; lit., as (things) which had.* G. 517, 3, 1).

22. *Ad nutum et ad tempus, at the word of command (i. e., instantaneously), and at the proper moment.*

24. *Secundum;* construe with *ventum* and *aestum*.

25. *Aperto . . . constituit, he anchored off an open and level shore;* probably on the coast of Deal. G. 425, II., 1.

28. *Quo genere, which kind (of force).* G. 421, I.

32. *Militibus;* construe with *erat desiliendum*. G. 388.

35. *Illi, they; i. e., the enemy.*

36. *Omnibus . . . expediti, with the free use of all their limbs.* G. 424.

38. *Insuefactos, accustomed to this work; i. e., to this mode of warfare.*

70 4. *Naves longas;* construe with *removeri jussit*. See 106.

5. *Motus . . . expeditior, their movement easier to use; lit., for (to) use; i. e., they were more easily managed.*

6. *Removeri, submoveri.* *Removere* means *to remove*, referring simply to a change of position, while *submovere* means *to dislodge, to take out of the way*.

9. *Quae res, which movement. — Usui nostris;* G. 390.

13. *Qui, he who.* This refers to the chief centurion, who bore the eagle; *i. e., the standard of the legion*.

16. *Aquilam . . . prodere.* The loss of the eagle would be a great disgrace.

17. *Praestitero;* G. 473, 1.

19. *Cohortati inter se, having exhorted one another.* G. 448, note.

21. *Conspexissent.* Supply *militēs* as subject.

23. *Nostrī;* subject of *perturbabantur*.

**25. Alius alia ex navi, one from one vessel and another from another.** 70  
G. 459, 1.

**29. Plures, several; i. e., of the enemy.**

**30. In universos, against our assembled forces, opposed to aliquos singulares.**

**34. Simul = simul ac, as soon as.**

**36. Neque potuerunt, but were not able. — Equites.** The cavalry had embarked in eighteen transports. See p. 68, line 36. They encountered a storm, and had not been able to reach the island. See p. 71, lines 21 to 29.

## XXVII. *The Britons surrender to Caesar.*

**3. Datturos.** Supply *esse* and *se*. — **Quaeque = et quae.** 71

**5. Supra demonstraveram.** See p. 68, line 11. For the pluperfect, see note on *dixeramus*, p. 30, line 4.

**6. Oratoris modo, in the character of an envoy. — Illi, they; i. e., the enemy, subject of comprehenderant.**

**8. Remiserunt.** Supply *eum*.

**9. Ejus rei, of this; lit., of this thing; i. e., of the imprisonment of Commius.**

**11. In continentem, to the continent; i. e., to Gaul.**

**12. Ignoscere imprudentiae.** Supply subject *se*. G. 385.

**16. Remigrare in agros, to return to their fields; i. e., to their homes and usual occupations, as the war was at an end.**

## XXVIII., XXIX. *Caesar's Fleet encounters a severe Storm.*

**19. Post diem . . . quam, on the fourth day after.** G. 430, note 1

**21. Supra.** See p. 68, Chap. XXII.

**22. Superiore portu, the upper port; called, also, ulterior portus.**  
See note on *ulteriorem portum*, p. 69, line 9.

**23. Britanniae; G. 336.**

**26. Quae . . . occasum, which is farther to the west.** G. 437, 1. They were carried toward the south-west.

**27. Sul; Objective Genitive with periculo.** G. 393, note. — **Tamen ancoris jactis, yet casting anchor; i. e., notwithstanding the violence of the storm.**

**30. Luna plena.** According to astronomical calculation, this was on the night of the 30th of August, 55 B. C. — **Qui dies, which period.**

**36. Administrandi, of managing them.**

**1. Id quod; G. 445, 7.**



PAGE

72 4. Erant usui; G. 390, note 2.—Quod . . . constabat, *because it was manifest to all.*

**XXX.-XXXVI. The Britons attack Caesar, but are defeated. Caesar returns to Gaul.**

7. Principes; subject of *duzerunt* in line 13.

11. Quae refers to *castrorum*.—Hoc, *on this account, viz., quod . . . transportaverat.*

13. Factu; G. 547, 1.

14. Rem producere, *to protract the war.*

17. Rursus here does not mean strictly *a second time*, but implies that the Britons were resuming their former hostility.—Ex castris, *i. e., of Caesar.*

18. Ex agris deducere. This refers to the assembling of the forces, as *remigrare in agros* refers to the disbanding of them. See p. 71, line 16.

20. Ex eventu . . . ex eo quod, *from the fate of his ships, and from the fact that.*

24. Quae naves, earum = *earum navium, quae.* G. 445, 8.

28. Reliquis ut . . . effect, *he made it possible to set sail with the rest in safety.*

31. Frumentatum; G. 546.

32. Appellabatur septima, *was called the seventh; i. e., septima* was the name of the legion. The legions were numbered as they were raised, and were afterwards known by the numbers then assigned to them. Caesar had under his command in all eight legions, two in Britain, the seventh and tenth, and six in Gaul, the eighth, ninth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth and fourteenth.

33. Hominum, *of the men; i. e., of the Britons.*—Etiam in castra, *even into our camp.*

35. Quam consuetudo ferret, *than usual; lit., than custom bore.* G. 524.

37. Id, quod erat, *that which was actually the case, explained by aliquid . . . consilii.*

38. Cohortes, quae . . . erant. One cohort guarded each of the four gates of the camp. See note on *castris*, p. 6, line 28.—Cohortes; construe with *proficisci jussit.*

78 1. Ex reliquis . . . succedere, *two of the other (six) cohorts to take their places on guard.* He could spare only two cohorts to guard the gates.

4. Conferta legione; G. 431.

7. Pars una, *only one part; i. e., only one place from which grain could be obtained.*

10. *Incertis ordinibus, as their places were uncertain.* In the confusion of the moment they could not readily find their places in the ranks. 78

12. *Hoc est, is as follows.*

13. *Perequitant; G. 467, II. — Ipso terrore equorum, by the very terror caused by their horses; lit., dread of their horses.*

22. *Sustinere, to rein in; construe with consuerint. — Brevi . . . flectere, quickly to control and turn them.*

23. *Per temonem percurrere, to run along the pole; i. e., to run out on the pole of the chariot, between the two horses.*

25. *Perturbatis nostris; G. 431. — Novitate pugnae, by the strange mode (newness) of fighting.*

29. *Suo loco, in a favorable position.* G. 425, II., 1.

32. *Qui . . . reliqui, the rest (of the Britons), who were in the fields, departed; i. e., joined the army.*

33. *Quae continerent; G. 500.*

37. *Sui liberandi, of freeing themselves; i. e., from the Roman invaders.* G. 542, I., note 1. — *Daretur* depends upon *demonstraverunt*. G. 529, I.

38. *Castris; G. 434, note 1. — Expulissent; G. 525, 2.*

3. *Idem quod, the same thing, which, explained by ut . . . effugerent.* 74

6. *Ante dictum est.* See pp. 68, 71.

10. *Spatio; G. 379, 2.*

16. *Propinqua . . . equinoctii, as the equinox was near at hand.* G. 431. The autumnal equinox is meant. Caesar remained in Britain about three weeks.

17. *Hiemi . . . subiiciendam, that the voyage should be exposed to the storm; i. e., should be made at the stormy season, as might be the case if he should wait for the hostages.*

20. *Eosdem . . . portus, to reach the same port as the rest.* The reference seems to be to the two ports mentioned on p. 69, lines 5 and 9.

### XXXVII., XXXVIII. *War with the Morini and the Menapii.*

23. *Quibus ex navibus, from these ships; i. e., from the two transports.*

26. *Non ita magno, not so very large.*

27. *Circumsteterunt, surrounded them; i. e. the three hundred.*

28. *Orbe facto, having formed a circle.* Thus, though surrounded, they presented a front to the enemy on every side.

29. *Ad clamorem, in response to a shout; lit., to a shout.*

31. *Suis auxilio; G. 390, note 1.*

## PAGE

- 74 84. *Postea . . . quam = posteaquam* ; G. 636, V., 3.
- 75 1. *Qui cum, since they* ; *i. e.*, the Morini.
2. *Siccitates paludum, the dryness of the marshes.* The plural of the abstract *siccitates* is explained by the plural *paludum*. G. 130, 2. — *Quo se . . . non haberent, had no place to which* (had not whither) *they could betake themselves.*
3. *Quo perfugio, which refuge* ; *i. e.*, the marshes.
9. *Eo, thither* ; *i. e.*, to his winter quarters.
11. *Ex litteris . . . supplicatio.* See note on p. 44, line 37.

## BOOK FIFTH.

CAMPAIGN OF THE YEAR 54 B. C., IN THE CONSULSHIP OF L. DOMITIUS AHENOBARBUS AND APPIUS CLAUDIUS PULCHER.

- I. EXPEDITION AGAINST THE TREVIRI. I.-VII.
- II. SECOND EXPEDITION INTO BRITAIN. VIII.-XXIII.
- III. DISTURBANCES IN GAUL DURING THE WINTER. XXIV.-LVIII.

I.-VII. *Caesar returns to his Army, and marches against the Treviri.*

- 76 2. *Ab hibernis.* See p. 75, line 8. — *In Italliam, into Italy* ; *i. e.*, into Cisalpine Gaul.
3. *Uti aedificandas curarent, that they should cause to be built.* — *Quam plurimas possent, as many as they could.*
5. *Modum, style* ; referring to the general style and fashion of the vessels.
6. *Subductionesque, and for (ad) drawing them on shore.* Roman vessels, when not in use, were drawn on shore.
7. *Quam quibus, than those which.* — *In nostro mari, in our sea* ; *i. e.*, the Mediterranean.
8. *Id, he does this.* Supply *facit*. G. 368, 3, note 1.
9. *Ibi, there* ; *i. e.*, in the English Channel, where they were to be used.
12. *Actuarias, light, easily propelled.* They were furnished with oars, and perhaps also with sails.
14. *Conventibus.* See note on p. 29, line 20.

15. *Illyricum*. This country also belonged to Caesar's province.

21. *De injuriis satisfacere*, to render satisfaction for the wrongs done; lit., concerning the injuries.

25. *Inter civitates*; i. e., between the *Pirustae* and those whom they had injured. — *Dat*, appoints. — *Qui . . . constituent*, to estimate the damage and determine the penalty.

1. *Cujus* = *cujus generis naves*.

77

3. *Ab eo*, from this, explained by *quin . . . possent*. G. 504.

8. *Huc rei*, for this purpose; i. e., to carry out his orders for the assembling of the vessels at port *Itius*. G. 391.

9. *Militum*; construe with *quod*. G. 397, 3.

13. *Haec civitas*; i. e., the state of the *Treviri*. — *Galliae* depends upon *plurimum*. G. 397, 3.

15. *Supra demonstravimus*. See p. 49, line 29.

17. *Ex quibus alter*, the latter of whom.

20. *Gererentur*; G. 529, I.

21. *Cogere*; construe with *instituit*.

23. *Ingenti magnitudine*; Abl. of Characteristic. G. 419, II.

24. *Medios*; G. 440, note 1.

28. *De suis privatim rebus*, in regard to their own personal interests. *Privatim* explains *suis*.

31. *Sese noluisse*; G. 523, I.

33. *Discessu*; Abl. of Cause. — *Propter . . . laberetur*, should, on account of their thoughtlessness, revolt.

36. *Ejus fidel*, to his (Caesar's) protection, implying trust and confidence.

6. *Nihilo tamen seclus*, still none the less on that account; i. e., although *Indutiomarus* had complied with his demands, yet. — *Principibus*, the chiefs; i. e., of the party of *Indutiomarus*.

8. *Merito ejus*, in accordance with his deserts; i. e., the deserts of *Cingetorix*.

9. *Magni interesse*, that it was of great importance. G. 408, III.

11. *Perspexisset*; G. 503, I. — *Id factum* is explained by *suam gratiam . . . minui*.

12. *Qui fuisset*; G. 517.

13. *Hoc dolore* = *hujus rei dolore*, with resentment at this.

17. *Eodem, unde*, to the place from which. They had been unable to reach port *Itius*.

20. *Millium* depends upon *equitatus*. — *Numero*; Abl. of Specification.

25. *Ante dictum est*. See pp. 2, 9, and 10.

28. *Magni animi*, of a haughty spirit.

31. *Recusandi . . . causa*, for the purpose of objecting or entreating.

## PAGE

- 78 83. *Ex suis hospitibus, from his friends.*  
 85. *Navigandi*; G. 542, I.  
 86. *Religionibus, by religious scruples.* — *Impediri sese diceret* = *impediretur, ut dicebat, was hindered, as he said.* G. 516, I.  
 79 2. *Fieri* depends upon a verb of *saying*, implied in *territare*. G. 523, I.  
 The subject of *feri* is the clause *ut . . . spoliaretur*.  
 8. *Ut . . . necaret* explains *consilium*. G. 501, III.  
 5. *Fidem . . . interponere*; Hist. Infinitive; *he pledged his word to the rest.*  
 6. *Ex usu Galliae, of service to (lit., of) Gaul.*  
 12. *Ne quid*; G. 378.  
 19. *Impeditis, occupied*; i.e., in the preparations for the voyage.  
 20. *Insciente Caesare, without Caesar's knowledge.* G. 431.  
 23. *Retrahi.* Supply *eum*.  
 24. *Pro sano, as a sane man.*  
 27. *Liberaeque civitatis, and the citizen of a free state.* G. 401.

# VIII.-XI. *Caesar lands in Britain, gains a victory, and repairs his Fleet.*

85. *Ipse, he himself*; i. e., Caesar. — *Parl numero quem, the same number as*; lit., *which*.  
 80 1. *Delatus aestu, having been carried away by the tide.* The tide carried him to the north-east, so that he saw Britain on his left, *sub sinistra*.  
 2. *Secutus, taking advantage of.*  
 3. *Qua . . . superiore aestate.* See note on *aperto*, etc., p. 69, line 25.  
 5. *Virtus, the endurance.*  
 11. *Annotinis.* Supply *navibus*.  
 12. *Sui commodi.* Supply *causa*. G. 398, I.  
 17. *Consedissent*; G. 529, I. — *Cohortibus decem.* The ten cohorts were probably detailed from different legions.  
 21. *Praesidio*; G. 386. — *Navibus*; G. 390.  
 23. *Equitatu*; G. 419, I. — *Ad flumen,* probably the Little Stour, about twelve miles from Deal.  
 31. *Aggere.* See note on *aggere jacto*, p. 35, line 29.  
 37. *Milites, infantry,* in distinction from *equites*.  
 81 2. *Extremi, the rear*; probably the rear of the retreating enemy.  
 5. *Subsisterent, held,* — the reason assigned by the cavalry; hence the subjunctive. G. 516, II.  
 13. *Viderentur*; Subjunctive of Result. G. 500.  
 14. *Fabros deligit.* Each Roman legion had its complement of artisans, but *deligit* seems to imply that he also selected from the ranks any others whose skill could be made available in this emergency.

16. *Iis legionibus*; G. 415, I., 1. See p. 79, line 31.

17. *Operae ac laboris*; G. 404.

18. *Subduci* = *in aridum subduci*. See p. 71, line 34.

23. *Eodem, unde*, *to the same place, from which*; referring to the fortified position which he had taken from the enemy. See p. 80, lines 26 and 32.

25. *Summa . . . administrandi*, *the supreme command and the entire management of the war*. G. 431.

28. *A mari . . . octoginta*. Caesar here estimates the distance by the length of his own march from the coast. — *Hulc cum . . . interceserant*, *he (Cassivellaunus) had been engaged in continual wars with the other states*; lit., *continual wars had existed between him and (with) the other states*.

## XII.—XIV. *Description of Britain and its Inhabitants.*

32. *Quos natos . . . dicunt*, *who themselves say that there is a tradition that they were the aborigines of the island*; lit., *born in the island*. — *Quos*; subject of *natos (esse)*.

1. *Gallieis*. For a brief notice of the Gallic dwellings, see p. 94, line 37, and p. 116, lines 7 to 11. 82

2. *Ad certum . . . examinatis*, *of a definite weight*; lit., *weighed to a certain weight*.

3. *Mediterraneis*. This is incorrect, as the tin mines are in Cornwall, in the south-west of England.

5. *Materia*, *timber*; i. e., wood, trees.

7. *Haec*; G. 445, 3, note 1.

8. *Animi causa*, *for the sake of amusement*; lit., *of the mind*; i. e., to divert the mind.

13. *Inferior*. Supply *angulus*.

14. *Millia . . . quingenta*. This measurement must include the irregularities of the coast.

17. *Pari spatio . . . atque . . . Britanniam*, *with as long a passage (i. e., into Britain) as is that from Gaul into Britain*; lit., *with an equal distance of passage, etc.* — *Pari spatio*; Abl. of Characteristic with *Hibernia*. — *Atque, as*. G. 554, I., 2.

19. *Objectae*, *lying opposite*; i. e., on this coast.

20. *Dies . . . esse noctem*; a false report.

22. *Certis ex aqua mensuris*, *by accurate measurements by means of water*; i. e., by the water clock, or clepsydra.

24. *Septingentorum millium*; G. 401. The true length is about 590 miles = 610 Roman miles.

## PAGE

- 82 25. *Tertium* ; *i. e.*, *tertium latus*. — *Contra septemtriones, opposite the north*. This is of course incorrect. Caesar means the north-east side.
27. *Millia . . . octingenta*. The true measurement is about 550 miles = 570 Roman miles.
- The inaccuracy of this description of Britain will occasion no surprise when we consider that Caesar had at this time only the most imperfect means of information upon the subject.
35. *Hoc, on this account*. G. 416. — *Horridiore aspectu* ; G. 419, II.
37. *Parte rasa* ; G. 419, II.
- 88 2. *Quo* = *ad quos, to whom* ; *lit., whither*.

XV. — XXIII. *Caesar advances into the Interior.*  
*Several Tribes surrender. He returns to Gaul.*

5. *In itinere*. The narrative, which has been interrupted by the description of Britain in the last three chapters, is here resumed from p. 81, line 23.
8. *Intermisso spatlo, an interval having elapsed*.
13. *Atque his . . . duarum, and that too (these) the first of two legions*. The first cohort of each legion probably contained its best men.
14. *Spatlo, space, not time* ; though in line 9 above, it refers to *time*.
16. *Perruperunt*. The subject is *illi*, referring to *hostes*.
24. *Illi, they* ; *i. e.*, the enemy.
26. *Pedibus, on foot*.
31. *Allos alii . . . exciperent, they relieved one another in succession*.
38. *Sic uti ab . . . absisterent, so that they (the enemy) did not keep aloof from the standards and legions*.
- 84 5. *Sui colligendi* ; G. 542, I., note 1.
13. *Animum advertit* = *animadvertit*.
15. *Praefixis, driven into the ground in front of it* ; *i. e.*, in front of or along the bank.
19. *Cum capite . . . exstarent, though they were above water with the head only* ; *i. e.*, though only their heads were above the water.
26. *His regionibus* ; G. 425, II., 1.
31. *Nostrorum equitum, to (lit., of) our cavalry*.
32. *Hoc metu, by the fear of this*. — *Relinquebatur ut, it remained that* ; *i. e.*, the result was that.
33. *Discedi, to depart* ; Impersonal Passive.
38. *Caesaris fidem secutus, seeking the protection of Caesar*.
- 85 3. *Ipse, while he himself*. The connective is omitted.
4. *Sese* ; the object of *dedituros*. The subject is omitted.

7. *Qui praesit, to preside over it.* G. 497. *Qui* refers to Mandubratius. 85

11. *Defensis, protected; i. e., against Cassivellaunus.*

20. *Natura atque opere, by nature and art.*

27. *Ad mare, on the sea-coast.* — *Supra.* See p. 82, line 31.

30. *Castra navalla, the naval camp* described on p. 81, lines 18 to 23.

36. *Per Commium, by the aid of Commius.*

38. *Motus, movements; i. e., the revolts* which he had reason to apprehend.

1. *Id . . . posse, that this* (the remainder of the summer) *could be* 86  
*easily wasted; i. e., if he remained in Britain.*

2. *Quid vectigalis, what tribute; lit., what of tribute.*

4. *Interdictum atque imperat, prohibits and commands.*

15. *Numero; G. 424. — Locum caperent, reached their destination;*  
*lit., place.* G. 501, I., 1.

17. *Frustra.* See Syn. L. C. 338.

19. *Angustius . . . collocavit, stowed his soldiers more compactly;*  
*i. e., loaded his vessels more heavily than usual.*

#### XXIV.-XXXVII. *Distribution of the Legions in their Winter Quarters. Revolt among the Eburones.*

24. *Angustius provenerat, had been produced* (had grown) *more sparingly than usual.*

28. *Quinto Ciceroni; the brother of the orator.* Supply *ducendam dedit* from the preceding clause.

32. *Unam legionem; object of misit.* This is a new legion, recently levied north of the Po (*trans Padum*).

33. *Cohortes quinque.* Caesar here mentions eight legions and a half, but he may have retained the other half legion with himself at Samarobriua, or may have lost it in Britain.

1. *Inoplae; G. 385, II., note 3.*

87

4. *Millibus . . . continebantur.* The measurement seems to be incorrect, as the quarters of Sabinus, in the eastern part of Belgic Gaul, must have been more than a hundred miles from those of Crassus, in the western part of it.

6. *Cognovisset; G. 519, II., 2; 525, 2.*

7. *Summo loco natus, born in the highest station; i. e., of a royal family.*

9. *In se, toward him; i. e., toward Caesar.*

11. *Hunc annum; G. 379.*

12. *Inimici.* See Syn. L. C. 344. — *Multis . . . auctoribus, with the approval also, of many of the citizens.*

20. *Perventum; Impersonal Passive.* Supply *esse*.



## PAGE

- 87 22. Diebus . . . quibus, *about fifteen days after*. G. 430, note 2.  
 25. Praesto fuissent, *had met*; i. e., in a cordial manner.  
 33. Habere. The object is the omitted antecedent of *quae*.  
 37. Quinti Titurii = Quinti Titurii Sabini, called simply Sabinus in line 25 above, and Titurius on p. 88, line 22.
- 88 3. Plurimum ei debere, *that he owed very much to him*; i. e., to Caesar.  
 10. Esse ejusmodi, *was of such a nature*. — Non minus juris, *no less authority*.  
 14. Rerum; G. 399, I., 2.  
 18. Alterae; G. 151, 1.  
 21. Pro pietate, *in respect to his duty to his country*. — Habere nunc . . . Caesaris, *that he now had regard (rationem) to duty in return for the favors of Caesar*.  
 23. Pro hospitio, *because of friendship*.  
 25. Ipsorum esse consilium, *that it belonged to them to consider*. G. 401. Ipsorum refers to Sabinus and Cotta.  
 30. Quod cum faciat, *while he does this*.  
 32. Gratiam referre. See Syn. L. C. 548.
- 89 3. Primorum . . . centuriones. See note on p. 22, line 22.  
 7. Rem, *the fact*, explained by quod . . . sustinuerint.  
 11. Quid esse levius, *what is more inconsiderate?* G. 523, II., 2.  
 13. Sero facturos, cum, *that they would act too late, when*; i. e., that it would be too late to act, when.  
 17. Profectum. Supply esse. — Neque . . . fuisse capturos, *that otherwise the Carnutes would not have adopted*. — Fuisse capturos; in the Direct Discourse, cepissent; but in line 20 venturos esse would be, in the Direct Discourse, venirent. G. 527, III.  
 20. Non hostem . . . spectare, *that he looked not to the enemy, but to the fact itself, as his authority*.  
 25. Persuaderet; G. 486, II. — Sine certa re, *without sure grounds*; i. e., without a good reason.  
 30. Cottae; construe with consilium.  
 34. In utramque partem, *on each side*.  
 36. Et id, *and that too*. G. 451, 2.
- 90 1. Hi, *these*; i. e., the soldiers.  
 2. Si . . . liceat, *if it should be permitted by (through) you*.  
 12. Dat manus, *yields*; lit., *gives his hands*; an expression derived from the battle-field, where the vanquished offered their hands to be bound.  
 16. Omnia excogitantur, quare, *all things are considered to show why*. — Nec = et non.  
 18. Ut quibus . . . persuasum, *as they would do who were persuaded*. Supply ii before quibus.

20. *Datum.* Supply *esse*.
29. *Nostris*; G. 391, I.
32. *Trepidare, concursare*, etc.; Historical Infinitives.
33. *Haec.* Supply *facere*. G. 368, 3, note 1. — *Atque ut*, and in such a way that.
38. *Imperatoris.* Supply *officia*.
3. *Possent.* Supply *Titurius et Cotta*. — *Jusserunt.* Supply *tribunos et centuriones*. 91
4. *In orbem consistenter*, to arrange themselves in a circle. See note on *orbe facto*, p. 74, line 28.
7. *Nostris militibus*; G. 384, 4, note 2.
11. *Carissima*; G. 373, note 2. — *Petere.* Supply *ea*.
14. *Tota acie*, along the whole line. G. 425, II., 2.
15. *Illorum*, theirs; lit., of them, referring to the Gallic soldiers.
17. *Virtute, numero*; Abl. of Cause, not Specification. — *Pugnando*, in fighting. G. 542, IV., note 2.
20. *Procurreret*, made a charge. G. 518, 1.
25. *Se*; object of *recipientes*.
28. *Eam partem*, that portion of the army; i. e., the cohort itself.
31. *Qui proximi steterant.* The enemy in front of the cohort fell back, while those who stood next on either side closed in around it.
32. *Locum tenere*, to retain their place; i. e., in the circle, instead of sallying from it.
38. *Tito Balventio* depends upon *transjicitur*. G. 384, 4, note 2.
1. *Primum pilum duxerat*, had led the first maniples; i. e., had been the chief centurion of the legion. 92
5. *In adversum os*, directly in the face.
12. *Ipsi*, to himself; i. e., to Titurius.
15. *Ut excedant* depends upon *communicat*, — proposes that they should withdraw, etc., if it should seem best.
19. *In praesentia*, at the time.
21. *Ambiorigem*; G. 437, 1.
34. *Pauci . . . elapsi*. As only a few escaped, Caesar must have lost, on this occasion, about six thousand men. The force of Sabinus and Cotta consisted of a legion and a half. See p. 86.

### XXXVIII. — XLIV. *The Attack upon the Winter Quarters of Quintus Cicero.*

3. *Re demonstrata*, the subject having been laid before them; referring both to his successes and his plans. 93
4. *Sui liberandi*; G. 542, I., note 1.
7. *Legatos duos*; i. e., Titurius and Cotta.

## PAGE

- 98** 8. *Nihil esse negotii, that it is easy; lit., is nothing of difficulty.* — *Oppressam interfici, to be surprised and slain.* G. 549, 5.
13. *Eorum; i. e., Nerviorum.*
14. *Cogunt, they (the Nervii) collect.*
15. *Hulc; i. e., to Cicero.* — *Quoque* refers to the similar experience of Sabinus and Cotta. See p. 87, lines 25 to 28.
17. *Munitiois, of fortifying; i. e., of collecting materials for their fortifications.* See plate III.
26. *Propositis, having been offered; i. e., to the messengers.*
35. *Ad oppugnationem, against the assault.*
37. *Praeustae, burned at the end; i. e., sharpened and hardened in the fire.* — *Murallum pilorum, of mural javelins.* These were to be hurled from the walls against those who were attempting to scale them.
38. *Turres contabulantur, the towers are furnished with floorings; i. e., at different elevations, one above another.* — *Pinnae loricaeque . . . attexuntur, breastworks and pinnacles of hurdles are attached to them; i. e., to the towers.* *Loricae* seems to designate the main work, and *pinnae* the parts which rise at intervals above the rest.
- 94** 2. *Esset; G. 515, III.*
3. *Utro militum concursu, by the assembling of the soldiers of their own accord.*
6. *Sermonis aditum, access for conversation.*
12. *Ab his, from these; i. e., from the Romans in their several quarters.*
15. *Consuetudinem, the custom; i. e., of wintering in Gaul.*
16. *Per se, as far as they (the chiefs) were concerned; construe with licere.*
20. *Adjutore, as an assistant, or intercessor.* — *Utantur; G. 523, III.*
21. *Pro ejus justitia, in accordance with his (Caesar's) sense of justice.*
23. *Ab hac spe; i. e., from the hope of inducing the Romans to leave their quarters.*
24. *Pedum quindecim. Supply in latitudinem.*
28. *Manibus . . . exhaurire, to take up the earth with their hands and carry it away in their cloaks.* *Exhaurire*, strictly applicable only to *manibus*, is applied by *zeugma* to *sagulis*. G. 636, II., 1.
31. *Millium . . . quindecim.* This statement seems almost incredible. Perhaps there is an error in the text.
38. *Venti magnitudine, in consequence of the violence of the wind.*
- 95** 5. *Ut; construe with decederet.*
8. *Demigrandi, of retiring from the battle.*
13. *Recessum primis, etc., the most remote (from the wall) did not allow any means of retreat to those who were nearest (primis).*

22. Qui . . . appropinquarent, *who were already approaching the first rank; i. e., the rank of chief centurion.* G. 503, I. 95

24. De loco, *for precedence.*

32. Spatio relicto; *i. e., between himself and the enemy.*

7. Dejectus, *thrown down; i. e., having stumbled in the ardor of pursuit.* 96

#### XLV.—LII. *Caesar marches to the Relief of Cicero.*

14. Quanto gravior—tanto crebriores, *the more severe—the more frequent.* G. 423; L. C. 450.

16. Res . . . pervenerat, *the garrison had been reduced (lit., the thing had come) to a small number of defenders.*

22. Servo, *his servant.* G. 447.

23. Ad Caesarem. *Caesar was probably at Samaròbriva, Amiens.*

25. Ab eo, *from him; i. e., from the slave.*

31. Cum nuntio, *as soon as he received the message; lit., with the message.*

33. Qua . . . sciebat, *where he knew he must make his journey; i. e., must pass on his way to the relief of Cicero.* G. 388.

35. Veniat; in Direct Discourse *veni.* G. 523, III.

5. Litteras publicas, *public documents.*—Tolerandae hiemis 97 *causa, for the purpose of enduring the winter; i. e., as a supply for the winter.*

12. Quos sciret=*quum eos sciret.* G. 517.

14. Rem gestam, *what had taken place; referring to the revolt and its consequences.* See pp. 87 to 92.

17. Consilio ejus, *his plan; i. e., the plan of Labienus.*

24. Graecis litteris, *in Greek characters; perhaps, also, in the Greek language, though that is not definitely stated.*

26. Adire, *to approach; i. e., so as to deliver the letter.*

33. Perlectam. *Supply epistolam.*

34. Laetitia; G. 420, 2.

2. Gallum . . . repetit, *asks again for the Gaul; i. e., for the Gallic slave of Vertico.* See p. 96, line 22. 98

4. Faciat; G. 499, 2.

5. Ad eum, *toward him; i. e., toward Caesar.*

9. Trans vallem; *construe with conspiciatur.* The expression indicates the situation of the enemy.

11. Tum, *moreover,* introducing an additional reason for delay.

13. Remittendum de celeritate, *that he ought to abate somewhat from his speed.*

16. Angustis viarum, *by making the passages (in the camp) narrow; lit., by the narrowness of the passages.*

## PAGE

- 98 82. *Quam . . . concursari*, that there should be as much running to and fro as possible.
88. *Seu quis . . . Romanus*, if any one, whether a Gaul or a Roman.
- 99 8. *In speciem, in appearance*. Single rows of turf were placed before the gates simply to deceive the enemy.
4. *Ea = ea parte*, in that part, or there; i. e., through the gates.
9. *Omnes armis exult*, forced all to throw away their arms; lit., stripped all of their arms.
11. *Parvulo . . . illorum*, for inflicting a small damage upon them; lit., for a small injury of them.
24. *Legati*; i. e., *Sabini*. — *Sit acceptum*; G. 524. — *Hoc*, on this account; viz., *quod beneficio . . . relinquatur*.
26. *Eorum*, of them; i. e., of the Roman soldiers.

### LIII. – LVIII. *Disturbances among the Senones and the Treviri.*

28. *Per Remos*, through the country of the Remi.
31. *Eo*, there; i. e., at the quarters of Cicero.
32. *Oriretur*; G. 500, II.
34. *Fleret*; G. 500, I.
38. *Trinis hiernis*; G. 174, 2, 3).
- 100 5. *Quid . . . caperent*, what plan the rest were adopting.
10. *In his*, among these reports. Supply *nuntiis*.
17. *Territando*; G. 542, IV.
19. *Quae est civitas*; G. 445, 4.
20. *Cavarinum*; object of *interficere*.
26. *Satisfaciendi causa*, for the purpose of making an apology.
28. *Principes . . . inferendi*, leaders of a hostile movement; lit., of waging war. *Principes* refers to the Senones.
31. *Alteros — alteros*, the former — the latter.
33. *Fuerit*; G. 495, VI.
36. *Virtute belli*, in martial valor; lit., the valor of war. — *Tantum ejus opinionis*, so much of that reputation.
- 101 5. *Ulli . . . persuaderi*, to persuade (be persuaded to) any state.
7. *Bis expertos*, had twice tried the experiment. See pp. 15 to 28 and p. 59.
14. *Publice privatimque*, for the state and for themselves.
16. *Conscientia facinoris*, by a consciousness of guilt. The Senones had banished Cavarinus, and the Carnutes had assassinated Tasgetius.
19. *Hoc*, this; i. e., the act of calling an armed council. *Hoc* is the subject of *est*.
20. *Quo*, to which; i. e., to the council.

24. *Supra demonstravimus.* See p. 77, lines 15 to 20. 101
25. *Ab eo, from him ; i. e., from Caesar.*
28. *Huc = ad has civitates.*
35. *Cogitabat, but was intending.* Observe the asyndeton. G. 636, I., 1. — *A Cingetorige, from Cingetorix.*
16. *Dispersi ac dissipati, scattered and dispersed ; i. e., in confusion* 102  
and disorder.
18. *Praecipit (he orders)* has *unum . . . peterent*, etc., as its object, while *interdicit (he forbids)* has *neu quis . . . vulneret*.
21. *Illum, him ; i. e., Indutiomarus.* — *Mora reliquorum spatium nactum, having gained time by the delay occasioned by the rest ; i. e., in slaying the rest.*
24. *Equitibus subsidio ; G. 390.* — *Hominis ; i. e., Labieni.*
25. *Fluminis.* The Meuse, or the Ourthe, one of its branches, is probably meant.
29. *Paulo ;* construe with *quietiorem*.

## BOOK SIXTH.

CAMPAIGN OF THE YEAR 53 B. C., IN THE CONSULSHIP OF CN.  
DOMITIUS CALVINUS AND M. VALERIUS MESSALA.

- I. CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE NERVII AND THE TREVIRI. I.-VIII.  
II. EXPEDITION AGAINST THE SUEBI. IX.-XXVIII.  
III. WAR AGAINST AMBIORIX AND THE EBURONES. XXIX.-XLIV.

I. *Caesar augments his Army.*

3. *Delectum habere, to hold a levy ; i. e., to raise forces.* 108
4. *Ad urbem, near the city ; i. e., near Rome.* Pompey was at this time proconsul, or military governor of Spain, but remained in person in Italy while he sent his lieutenants into his province.
5. *Rel . . . causa.* Pompey was charged with the duty of supplying the city with grain. — *Remaneret ; G. 516, II.* — *Quos . . . rogavisset, whom he (Pompey) had enrolled from Cisalpine Gaul.* *Consulis sacramento rogare* means to bind (*ask*) with the oath of allegiance to the consul. *Rogare* is used because the soldiers were *asked* whether they would be faithful and loyal.
7. *Convenire.* Supply *eos*. — *Juberet.* Supply *ut*.
8. *Ad opinionem Galliae, for its effect on Gaul ; lit., for the opinion of Gaul.*

## PAGE

**108** 11. *Majoribus . . . copiis, to be replaced by larger forces.*

14. *Duplicato . . . numero.* Caesar lost under Sabinus fifteen cohorts, but he has now received from Italy thirty cohorts; *i. e.*, three legions, the first, the fourteenth, and the fifteenth.

## II., III. *Movements among the Nervii and the Treviri.*

18. *Propinquos.* These had been held by Caesar as hostages, but were probably released after his return from Britain.

22. *Confirmant, they ratify the compact.*

23. *Obsidibus cavent, they give security by means of hostages; i. e.*, the Treviri give hostages to the Germans as security for the payment of the money.

26. *Cisrhenanis Germanis; i. e.*, the German tribes who had settled in Gaul. See p. 32, line 3.

27. *Ad imperatum non venire.* See p. 100, line 26.

**104** 8. *Primo vere; G. 440, 2, note 1. — Uti instituerat, as he had been accustomed to do.*

10. *Hoc, this; i. e.*, absence from the council. — *Omnia postponere, to make all things subordinate; i. e.*, to his present purpose to crush the rebellion.

12. *Hi, these; i. e.*, the Parisii. — *Civitatem conjunxerant, had formed a confederacy with them.*

13. *Hoc consilio, this conspiracy.*

14. *Hac re, this fact; i. e.*, the adjournment of the council to Lutetia. — *Pro suggestu, from (in front of) the stand; i. e.*, from the stand occupied by the general.

## IV.–VIII. *The Senones and Carnutes submit to Caesar. The Menapii and Treviri are defeated.*

19. *Conantibus.* Supply *convenire*. — *Præusquam . . . posset; before this could be accomplished.* G. 520, II.

21. *Adeunt per Aeduos, they gain access (to Caesar) through the Aedui.*

23. *Potentibus Aeduís; G. 431.*

24. *Non quaestionis, not for an investigation.* G. 401.

33. *Hujus iracundia, his violent temper.*

34. *Pro explorato, as certain; lit., for ascertained.*

38. *Uni ex Gallia, alone of the Gauls; lit., alone from Gaul.*

**105** 2. *Venisse.* Supply *eum*.

3. *Illi, from him; i. e.*, from Ambiorix. G. 386, 2.

5. *Cum congregi, to form an alliance with.*
13. *Effectis pontibus: i. e., he bridges the streams which he encounters.*
17. *Habiturum. Supply eos, as object.*
31. *Intermisso spatlo; i. e., between himself and the enemy.*
37. *In dubium non devocaturum, that he will not expose.*
1. *Ut . . . cogebat, as nature (natural love of country) compelled.* 106
12. *Longum esse; G. 476, 5.*
14. *Ut audeant; G. 501.*
23. *Illum, him; i. e., the commander, Caesar.*
29. *Impetum modo, the onset merely; i. e., even the onset.*
33. *Civitatem recepit, recovered the state; i. e., to Roman authority.*
35. *Cum his, at the same time with these.*
37. *Quem . . . demonstravimus. See p. 77, lines 16 to 20.*

IX., X. *Caesar crosses the Rhine, and the Suebi retire before him.*

1. *Postquam venit. The narrative is here resumed from the close* 107 *of Chapter VI.*
3. *Miserant, they (the Germans across the Rhine) had sent.*
5. *Quo ante. See p. 66.*
6. *Nota . . . ratione, as the plan was already known and settled; i. e., the bridge was constructed upon the same plan as that built the preceding year.*
11. *Purgandi sui; G. 542, I., note 1.*
13. *Fidem, their oath of allegiance.*
14. *Communi odio Germanorum, in consequence of his (Caesar's) general hatred of the Germans.*
15. *Poenas pendant, should suffer (pay) the penalty. — Amplius obsidum, more hostages. G. 397.*
20. *Omnes; construe with copias.*
26. *Ad inquam . . . deduci; i. e., he hoped that they could be induced to fight at a disadvantage.*
32. *Penitus . . . fines, back to their most remote frontiers.*
35. *Cheruscos ab . . . prohibere, to protect the Cherusci from injuries and incursions on the part of (from) the Suebi, and the Suebi on the part of the Cherusci.*

XI.–XX. *The Manners and Customs of the Gauls.*

1. *Ad hunc locum, to this place; i. e., to this point in the narrative.* 108
3. *Quo; G. 424, note 1. — Differant; G. 529, I.*



## PAGE

- 108 4. In omnibus pagis partibusque. Supply *civitatum*.  
 7. Eorum iudicio, in their judgment; i. e., the judgment of the Gauls.  
 8. Quorum has the same antecedent as *qui* in line 6.  
 11. Auxilli; G. 410, V., 1. — Quisque, each one; i. e., each leader or patron.  
 12. Si faciat, habet; G. 511, 1.  
 13. In summa, in general. — Galliae; G. 401.  
 16. Hi, the latter; i. e., the Sequani.  
 29. Imperfecta re, without having accomplished his object.  
 32. Eorum, of these; i. e., of the Aedui.  
 33. Se uti, that they enjoyed. — Reliquis rebus, by all other means.  
 36. Adaequare. Supply *Aeduos* as object.
- 109 1. Illi, they; i. e., the Remi. — Ita, thus; i. e., by defending their dependants.  
 3. Longe principes, by far the foremost.  
 5. Aliquo numero atque honore, of any account and honor. G. 419, II.  
 7. Nullo; G. 151, 1, note 1.  
 11. Quae dominis. Supply *sunt*.  
 16. Apud eos, among them; i. e., among the Gauls.  
 19. Idem; G. 451, 3.  
 21. Sacrificiis interdicunt; i. e., they excommunicate him.  
 29. Suffragio; construe, like *armis*, with *contendunt*.  
 34. Disciplina, the system; i. e., the Druidical system.  
 37. Illo, thither; i. e., to Britain.
- 110 4. Ibi, there; i. e. in the schools of the Druids.  
 8. Rationibus, transactions.  
 13. Hoc persuadere, to inculcate this doctrine.  
 21. Quod; G. 445, 7.  
 24. Ut quisque — ita; G. 458, 2.  
 27. Religionibus, religious rites.  
 35. Simulacra; probably colossal representations of their gods, constructed of combustible materials for the temporary purpose.
- 111 3. Descendunt, they resort.  
 6. Viarum, itinerum. See Syn. L. C. 156.  
 8. Apollinem. Supply *colunt*.  
 18. Posita tollere, to remove those things which have been deposited; i. e., in sacred places.  
 21. Ab Dite patre, from Dis (Pluto) as their father. They seem to have meant that they were the offspring of the earth, the aborigines of the country.  
 22. Ob eam causam; i. e., because of their descent from Pluto, the god of the lower world, the realm of darkness and night.

25. Ut . . . subsequatur, so that the day follows the night; i. e., they 111.  
began their day not at midnight, but at sunset.

26. Hoc fere, chiefly in this. G. 424.

32. Tantas ex suis . . . communicant, so much from their own  
property do they add to the dowries.

34. Vita superarit, shall survive the other. G. 424.

1. In servilem modum, like slaves; i. e., by torture, which might be 112  
resorted to in the case of slaves.

2. Si compertum est, if their guilt is proved.

4. Pro cultu Gallorum, considering (for) the Gallic mode of life.

5. Vivis cordi fuisse, to have been dear (for the heart) while alive.  
G. 390.

6. Paulo supra hanc memoriam, a little before the present gener-  
ation.

10. Legibus sanctum, established by law. Sanctum belongs to uti  
. . . communicet.

15. Quae visa sunt, which it has seemed best to conceal; lit., which  
have seemed good.

17. Per concilium, in the council.

## XXI. – XXIV. The Manners and Customs of the Germans.

19. Hac consuetudine; i. e., Gallorum.

23. Vulcanum; a personification, for fire. — Acceperunt, they have  
heard.

25. Ab parvulis, from early childhood. See Syn. L. C. 408.

31. Parvis . . . tegimentis, small garments of deerskins.

36. Gentibus cognationibusque; construe with attribuant.

37. Quantum; construe with agri.

38. Alio, to another place.

2. Studium . . . commutent, they may exchange the pursuit of war 118  
for agriculture. G. 422, note 2.

10. Vastatis finibus, by devastating their frontiers; i. e., the country  
on their borders.

11. Virtutis; G. 391, II., 4.

16. Communis magistratus, general magistrate; i. e., with jurisdic-  
tion over the whole country.

23. Profiteantur, may give in their names. G. 523, III. Supply ii.

25. Ex his, of these; i. e., of those who had volunteered.

26. Omnium . . . fides, all confidence; lit., of all things.

32. Superarent; G. 521, II., 2, 1).

1. Bellicae . . . opinionem, reputation for martial prowess.

## PAGE

- 114 4. *Provinciarum*; i. e., of the Roman provinces on either side of the Alps.  
 7. *Ipsi, they themselves*, the Gauls. — *Cum illis, with them*, the Germans.

XXV.—XXVIII. *The Hercynian Forest.*

9. *Expedito, to an unencumbered traveller.* G. 385.  
 12. *Recta . . . regione, in a straight line along (of) the river Danube*; i. e., it follows the straight course of the river.  
 13. *Diversis . . . regionibus, in a direction away from the river.*  
 15. *Hujus Germaniae, of this part of Germany*; i. e., of Western Germany, where Caesar then was.  
 16. *Ad initium, to the beginning*; i. e., the eastern end.  
 20. *Memoriae prodenda, worthy to be mentioned.*  
 21. *Bos cervi figura*; G. 419, II. Caesar probably means the reindeer, but his description is inaccurate.  
 22. *Unum cornu.* The reindeer has a pair of horns.  
 23. *Sicut palmae, like the palm of the hand*; i. e., like the open hand.  
 27. *Varietas, varied color.*  
 29. *Sine nodis articulisque.* This statement is of course incorrect. Caesar was evidently misled by the accounts of others.  
 30. *Afflictae, thrown down.*  
 35. *Omnes*; construe with *arbores*. — *A radicibus subruunt, they undermine at the roots.*  
 37. *Infirmas arbores, the weakened trees.*  
 115 1. *Est eorum, consists of these.* G. 401.  
 8. *Quae sint testimonio*; G. 390, note 2; 497.

XXIX.—XXXIV. *Caesar scatters the Forces of Ambiorix, and lays waste the Country of the Eburones.*

14. *Postquam.* After his long digression on the manners of the Gauls and Germans, Caesar here resumes, from p. 107, the account of his expedition against the Suebi.  
 29. *Millibus quingentis*; a remarkable exaggeration. An error may have been introduced into the text by some early copyist.  
 116 3. *Priusquam fama afferetur, before any rumor was brought.*  
 5. *Fuit.* The subject is *ipsum . . . mortem*. — *Omni . . . instrumento, every implement of war.*  
 7. *Hoc eo factum est, this (the escape) happened in this way.*

**17. An tempore exclusus, or prevented by the shortness of the time.** 116  
G. 353, 1.

**24. Alienissimis, to utter strangers.**

**29. Taxo, with yew ; probably with the berry.**

**34. Neve judicaret ;** G. 497, II., 1, note. — **Omnium esse causam,** that the cause of all the Germans was one ; i. e., that they had made common cause.

**37. Quaestione captivorum, by an examination of the prisoners.**

**38. Si ita fecissent, if they would do so.** G. 525, 2.

**9. Ex his tribus . . . transduxerat.** See p. 103, line 13. 117

**17. Scaldem . . . in Mosam.** Here Caesar's geography seems to be at fault ; but some have conjectured that in Caesar's time a branch of the Scheldt actually emptied into the Meuse.

**19. Post diem septimum ;** construe with *reversurum*. G. 430, note 1.

**23. Commodo ;** G. 416.

**33. Ab . . . dispersis, from the terrified and scattered enemy.**

**37. Confertos, in compact bodies.**

**7. Ut . . . praetermitteretur, that there might be some omission in** 118  
*injuring ; i. e., that less injury should be done the enemy.*

**12. Legionarius miles = vita legionarii militis.**

**14. Pro tali facinore, for such a crime.** The Eburones had massacred the troops under Sabinus and Cotta, and joined the Nervii in besieging the quarters of Cicero. See pp. 87 to 99.

### XXXV.—XLIV. *The Sigambri make an unsuccessful Attack upon Aduatuca. Caesar places his Army in Winter Quarters.*

**19. Possit, afferat.** The Present is here used to denote a general truth.

**26. Supra docuimus.** See p. 65, line 19.

**29. Multos . . . dispersos, many (of the Eburones) scattered in flight.**

**34. Profectum.** Supply *eum* and *esse*.

**37. Fortunatissimis ;** G. 536, 2, 3). — **Tribus horis ;** G. 429.

**1. Praesidii tantum est, there is so small a garrison.** 119

**2. Cingi, to be manned ;** lit., *encompassed ; i. e., with soldiers.*

**6. Cicero ;** subject of *mittit*, line 18. — **Qui continuisset ;** G. 515, III.

**14. Quo offendi posset, by which any harm could be done ; i. e., to his men.** — **Novem . . . legionibus, as nine legions were opposed to the enemy ; i. e., had gone to meet them.**

**16. In millibus . . . tribus, within three miles ; i. e., of the camp.**

**18. Quas inter ;** G. 569, II., 1,

## PAGE

119 24. Hoc ipso . . . casu, at this very moment, and in this condition of things.

28. Usque eo, ut, so that; lit., to such an extent that.

29. Reciplendi sul, of retiring (betaking themselves); i. e., within the walls. G. 542, I., note 1.

120 2. Qui occiderint; G. 517.

4. Barbaris; G. 384, 4, note 2.

9. Ad Caesarem, with Caesar; i. e., in Caesar's army.

10. Cujus mentionem. See pp. 40 and 47.

17. Per manus tractus, passed from hand to hand.

33. In signa manipulosque, among (into) the standards and maniples; i. e., into the ranks themselves. — Eo magis; construe with *perterrent*.

34. Cuneo facto; i. e., marshalling their forces in the form of a wedge, so as to penetrate and divide the enemy's line.

37. Alii. Supply *consent*.

121 7. Eo; construe with *consilio*.

15. Horum, of these; i. e., of the centurions.

22. Ut fidem non faceret, that he did not gain credence. G. 500. — Missus, sent; i. e., by Caesar.

27. Incolumi exercitu, if the army (Caesar's) were safe. G. 431, 2.

29. Ille; i. e., Caesar. — Unum questus, censuring one thing; explained by *quod . . . emissae*.

31. Casu = *casui*. G. 116. — *Debuisse* depends upon the idea of *saying*, implied in *questus*.

35. Rerum; Partitive Genitive with *maxime admirandum*.

36. Eo consilio, explained by *ut . . . depopularentur*.

122 2. Numero. Supply *hominum*.

7. Anni tempore, in consequence of the lateness of the season. The crops had not been gathered at the proper time, and had consequently been beaten down by the heavy rains.

8. His pereundum; G. 388. Supply *esse*.

10. In eum . . . ventum est, it came to such a point.

11. Ambiorigem circumspicerent, looked around for Ambiorix; i. e., they claimed to have just seen him, and turned to see where he had gone.

16. Paulum defuisse videretur, little seemed to have been wanting.

17. Ille, he; i. e., Ambiorix.

22. Duarum . . . damno; G. 419, III.

23. Galliae; construe with *concilio*.

26. More majorum. The punishment was death by scourging.

27. Quibus; G. 385. — Aqua atque igni; G. 414.

31. Ad conventus agendos. See note on p. 29, line 20.

## BOOK SEVENTH.

CAMPAIGN OF THE YEAR 52 B. C., IN THE CONSULSHIP OF CN.  
POMPEIUS MAGNUS AND Q. METELLUS SCIPIO.

- I. REVOLT OF SEVERAL GALLIC TRIBES. I.-XIV.
- II. SIEGES OF AVARICUM AND GERGOVIA. XV.-LII.
- III. MOVEMENTS AMONG THE AEDUI. LIII.-LVI.
- IV. EXPEDITION AGAINST THE PARISI. LVII.-LXII.
- V. GENERAL REVOLT OF THE GAULS. LXIII.-LXVII.
- VI. SIEGE OF ALESIA. LXVIII.-XC.

I. - V. *Revolt of the Carnutes and Arverni.*

**2. Clodii caede.** The murder of Clodius, a prominent political leader, was immediately followed in Rome by scenes of lawless violence. PAGE 123

**3. Ut conjurarent, should take the military oath.** The senate ordered a general levy throughout Italy.

**6. Addunt, affingunt.** The direct object is *retineri* . . . *posse*, the antecedent of *quod*.

**15. Qui faciunt;** G. 503, I.

**18. Ut . . . intercludatur;** the purpose of *rationem esse habendam*.

**26. Principes . . . facturos, that they will be the first of all to make war.**

**28. Ne res efferatur, lest their action should become known;** the reason why they could not exchange hostages, as that step would attract attention.

**29. Collatis . . . signis.** By this act, symbolizing union, they pledge themselves to a common work.

**1. Continetur, is comprised.**

**11. Galliae; i. e.,** of Celtic Gaul.

**12. Clamore, by shouting;** probably by heralds, stationed at intervals, transmitting the news from station to station.

**14. Genabi;** G. 425, II.

**16. Audita sunt.** Supply *ea*, the antecedent of *quae*. — **Millium.** Supply *passuum*.

**18. Ibi, there; i. e.,** in the territory of the Arverni.

## PAGE

- 124 22. *Incendit*. Supply *eos*; *i. e.*, *clientes*. — *Ad arma concurrunt*, they rush to arms; *i. e.*, Vercingetorix and his opponents.
27. *Quoscumque . . . civitate*, whomsoever of the citizens (*lit.*, from the state) he has access to.
38. *Quantum*; object of *efficiat*. — *Quodque ante tempus*, and before what time.
- 125 5. *Singulis . . . oculis*, with one of their eyes put out. G. 431.
6. *Reliquis documento*, a warning to the others. G. 390.
9. *Cadurcum*, the Cadurcan, or one of the Cadurci.
11. *Quorum in fide*, under whose protection.
13. *De consilio*, in accordance with the advice.
15. *Qui cum*, when they. G. 453; 445, 5.
19. *Quibus id . . . cognoverint*, who, they ascertained, had this design (this of design). G. 387.
22. *Quod . . . constat*, because it is not at all clear to us.

## VI.—XIV. *Caesar returns to Gaul, and enters vigorously upon the Campaign.*

28. *Magna . . . afflictebatur*, he was in great doubt; *lit.*, was affected by a great difficulty.
- 126 3. *Provincialibus* distinguishes the *Ruteni* of the Province from those in Aquitania.
9. *Quod putabat*, because he (Lucterius) thought.
26. *Opinionē praeceperat*, had conjectured. — *Per causam*, under the pretence; used of a feigned purpose.
32. *Nactus recentem equitatum*, having obtained a fresh body of cavalry; *i. e.*, a fresh escort for his rapid journey.
36. *De sua salute*, involving his safety.
37. *Celeritate praecurreret*, he might anticipate it by his rapid movements.
- 127 3. *Quos ibi . . . collocaverat*. See p. 14, lines 28 to 32.
8. *Ne deficeret* explains *difficultatem* in line 6. — *Ne lest*.
9. *In eo*, in him; *i. e.*, in Caesar.
10. *Videret*, it (Gaul) would see.
15. *Qui doceant*; G. 503, I; 445, 6.
20. *Altero die*, on the second day. G. 174, foot-note 4; 429.
30. *Quod eo mitterent*, to send thither; *i. e.*, to Genabum. G. 497.
31. *Diei tempore exclusus*, being prevented (from commencing the attack) by the time of the day; *i. e.*, by the lateness of the hour.
32. *In posterum*. Supply *diem*.
34. *Continebat*, connected; *i. e.*, with the opposite side of the river

**1. Perpaucis desideratis . . . caperentur**, *very few having escaped* 128  
*being taken.*

**5. Exercitum Ligerim**; G. 62, III., 1; 376.

**8. Oppugnatione**; *i. e.*, of Gergovia. See p. 127, line 3. — **Caesari**;  
G. 392.

**9. Ille**; *i. e.*, Caesar.

**12. Ut conficeret**; purpose of *jubet*.

**21. Ex significatione Gallorum**, *from the conduct* (indication) of  
*the Gauls.*

**29. Ad agmen**, *to the main body of the army*, still on the march;  
hence *agmen*.

**35. Se**, *that he* (Caesar). G. 536.

**1. Longe alla atque**, *far other than*. G. 459, 2.

129

**2. Huic rei**, *to this object*; explained by *ut . . . prohibeantur*.

**4. Anni tempore**, *by the time of the year*, as it was winter.

**6. Petere**. Supply *id*, referring to *pabulum*.

**13. Neque interesse**, *and that it makes no difference*.

**17. Neu sint . . . neu**, *that they may be neither . . . nor*.

**18. Romanis proposita**, *set before the Romans*; *i. e.*, become an in-  
vitation to them to plunder (*ad copiam . . . tollendam*).

**20. Illa**; explained by *liberos . . . interfici*.

## XV.—XXXI. *Siege of Avaricum.*

**27. Hoc solatili**, *this* (of) *consolation*; explained by *quod . . . confide-  
bant*.

**34. Flumine**; *i. e.*, the *Avara*, now the *Evre*, which flows into the  
Loire.

**9. Occurrebatur**, *the difficulty* (lit., *it*) *was met*. — **Ut iretur**, *so that* 130  
*they went*; *i. e.*, by going.

**16. Quorum alteri**, *of whom the latter*. G. 459, 3.

**21. Usque eo**, *ut*, *to such a degree that*.

**26. Si acerbius . . . ferrent**, *if they found the scarcity too severe*.

**29. Meruisse**, *had served*; lit., *had earned*; *i. e.*, their pay. Supply  
*stipendia*.

**32. Quam parentarent**; G. 502, 2.

**2. Eo quo**, *to the place to which*.

131

**14. In civitates**, *according to states*.

**16. Haesitantes**, *sticking fast*; *i. e.*, in the mire.

**17. Propinquitatem loci**, *the nearness of their position*; *i. e.*, to the  
enemy.

**19. Iniquitatem conditionis**, *the inequality of situation*; *i. e.*, though  
the armies were so near to each other, the Gauls had every advantage in



## PAGE

**181** situation. — *Inani simulatione, with an empty show; i. e., of courage, as their pretended courage depended upon their situation.*

**27.** *Sua salute, his welfare, with special reference to success and reputation.*

**30.** *Vercingetorix; subject of respondit, in line 37.\**

**31.** *Quod movisset; G. 516, II. — Romanos; G. 437, 1.*

**35.** *Potuisse depends upon a verb of saying implied in insimulatus.*

**37.** *Quod movisset, as to the fact that he had moved. G. 516, 2, note.*

**182** **1.** *Persuasum = sibi persuasum esse.*

**2.** *Qui refers to loci. — Munitione, by its own defences.*

**6.** *Cui rei, for which; i. e., for an engagement.*

**8.** *Fortunae habendam gratiam, they (the Gauls) should be grateful to fortune.*

**9.** *Huic, to him; i. e., the informer.*

**15.** *Remittere, that he resigned the command. Supply imperium.*

**29.** *Tantum exercitum victorem, so large a victorious army.*

**33.** *Quod refers to armis increpat. — In eo, in the case of one.*

**35.** *Majore ratione, with greater wisdom.*

**183** **1.** *Summam victoriae, the whole victory; and of course the glory of it.*

**4.** *Cujusque modi, of every kind. — Gallorum, on the part of the Gauls.*

**8.** *Cuniculis subtrahebant, they undermined. — Eo, on this account.*

**11.** *Turribus contabulaverant = contabulatis turribus instruxerant, had furnished with towers several stories high.*

**15.** *Quotidianus agger, the daily addition to the mound.*

**16.** *Commissis mallis, by uniting the uprights. The uprights at the corners, which at first projected far above the main part of the tower, were afterwards connected by horizontal beams, as one story after another was added, till the tower was finished.*

**17.** *Apertos morabantur = aperiebant et morabantur. G. 549, 5.*

**19.** *Appropinquare prohibebant, prevented them (the mines) from approaching.*

**21.** *Perpetuae in longitudinem, continuous in length.*

**23.** *Introrsus, within the wall.*

**24.** *In fronte . . . effarciuntur. This completes the description of one layer of the wall. The beams, which were two feet apart, extended through the wall, from one side to the other, and were connected within by long sticks of timber lying in the direction of the length of the wall. The spaces between the beams were filled with earth (multo aggere), except in front, where large stones (grandibus saxis) were used.*

**26.** *Idem intervallum. This refers to the interval between the beams in the second layer or tier, which, like that in the first, was two*

feet. It will be observed that the second layer was constructed precisely like the first, but the beams in the second were probably placed upon the stone and earth in the first, and the stone and earth in the second upon the beams in the first.

31. *Alternis . . . saxis*; G. 431.

34. *Perpetuis . . . quadragenos*, by beams forty feet long; referring to the long sticks of timber by which the cross beams were bound together (*revincta*).

9. *Ab . . . turrium*, on each side of the (Roman) towers.

134

12. *Quo . . . occurreretur*, whether they should first run to the defence.

15. *Partitis temporibus*, at stated times; i. e., in turn.

17. *Reducerent*, rolled back. These towers were on rollers. — *Inter-scinderent*, cut through; i. e., severed the fire from the rest of the mound.

22. *Apertos*, exposed; i. e., by the burning of their defences. Supply *Romanos*.

25. *Accidit quod*, there occurred an event which.

27. *Per manus*; construe with *traditas*.

29. *Scorpione*; see 87 L.

33. *Prius ille*. Construe *prius* with *quam* and *ille* with *locus*.

37. *Profugere*; G. 533, II., 3, note 3.

9. *Impediret*; G. 485.

135

11. *Non recipit*, does not admit.

15. *Directisque operibus*, and the military engines were properly placed.

20. *In occulto*, in concealment.

28. *Obviam contra*. *Contra* is added to *obviam* to denote a hostile meeting.

30. *Circumfundi*. Supply subject, *Romanos*.

32. *Continenti impetu*, with an uninterrupted struggle; i. e., without stopping.

36. *Genabi caede*, by the massacre at Genabum. See p. 124.

4. *Ex . . . concursu*, from their arrival in a body.

136

7. *Quae . . . castrorum* = ad eam partem castrorum quae cuique civitati, to that part of the camp which had from the first fallen (*obvenerat*) to each state.

13. *Errare*. The subject is to be supplied from *si qui . . . expectent*.

21. *Consensu* for *consensui*. G. 116.

29. *Plus . . . praesentire*, to discern and foresee more clearly. *Praesentire* is stronger than *providere*, and implies prophetic power.

31. *Post deserendum*. See p. 134, lines 36 to 38.

34. *De . . . civitatibus*; construe with *in spem veniebant*.

## PAGE

**136 35.** Galli; *i. e.*, the Celtic Gauls. The Nervii and some of the Aquitani had previously fortified their camps. See pp. 55 and 94.

**36.** Consternati, *alarmed*; *i. e.*, in consequence of the loss of Avaricum.

**137 4.** Quorum; construe with *oratione*. — Quisque, *each one*; *i. e.*, of the chiefs.

**8.** Quem, *stating what number*. Supply *numerus*.

**14.** Quos = *cum iis quos*.

### XXXII. — LII. Disturbances among the Aedui. Siege of Gergovia.

**23.** Maxime necessario tempore, *at a very critical time*.

**24.** Singuli magistratus, *a single magistrate*; *i. e.*, for each year; hence the *distributive*.

**33.** Cujusque eorum, *that each of them had*. Supply *esse*. G. 401.

**138 4.** Sibi refers to *quae*.

**5.** Praeventendum. Supply *esse sibi*.

**8.** Ne . . . videretur; construe with *proficisci statuit*.

**10.** Et quos inter = *et eos inter quos*; G. 569, II., 1. — Decetiam; G. 380, II.

**12.** Alio . . . atque oportuerit, *at a time and place other than was proper*. G. 459, 2.

**13.** Fratrem a fratre; *i. e.*, Catus by Valetiacus.

**24.** Quae disponderet, *that he might distribute them*. G. 497.

**30.** Ab altera . . . parte, *on the other side of the Allier*.

**32.** Utrique esset in conspectu, *was in sight of the other*. G. 381, 4, note 2.

**33.** Castris depends upon *e regione poneret*.

**139 4.** Captis . . . cohortibus, *having selected certain cohorts*; *i. e.*, to take the place of the two legions which remained behind. Caesar so arranged the cohorts of the four legions sent forward, as to give them the appearance of six legions.

**7.** In castra perventum, *had come into camp*; *i. e.*, had encamped. Supply *esse*.

**21.** Qua despicere poterat, *from which one could look down*.

**31.** Hostes; object of *prohibituri*.

**32.** Tamen refers to *egregie munitus*, etc.

**36.** Ad minora, *to the smaller camp*, situated upon the hill just captured.

**140 8.** Distineat; G. 503, II., 1.

**9.** Qua transducta, *if this were brought over*; *i. e.*, to the Gallic cause.

**19.** Decem illis millibus; G. 386. See p. 138, line 23.

28. *Proditionis*; G. 409, III., note 2.
37. *Ut sibi consulat, to consult for their safety.*
38. *Quasi . . . sit res, as if it were a subject for deliberation*; implying that there is but one course left for them. G. 401.
6. *Qui . . . una erant, who were with him, relying upon his protection.* They were taking supplies to Caesar, as we see from the next line — *magnum numerum frumenti, etc.*
11. *Simili ratione atque, in the same manner as.* G. 554, I., 2, note.
15. *Pari aetate, genere dispari*; G. 419, II.; 562.
19. *In illa . . . controversia*; i. e., the controversy between Convictitavis and Cotus. See p. 137.
25. *Quorum salutem . . . posset*; G. 517.
26. *Levi momento, of slight importance.* G. 422.
32. *Ad contrahenda castra.* The camp prepared for six legions was of course too large to be properly guarded by two.
35. *Paulo ante*; construe with *profugisse*.
14. *Quanto . . . fuerit, in how great peril the camp (thing) has been*; 142 i. e., before the enemy withdrew at night.
21. *Discessu eorum, after (at) the departure of these.*
22. *Pluteus*; see 92.
27. *Ad cognoscendum, for ascertaining the facts in the case.*
29. *Generi*; G. 391.
32. *Adjuvat rem proclinatam, helps forward the ruinous movement.*
36. *Educunt, they lead out*; i. e., by the promise of safety.
5. *Quaestionem decernunt, they institute an investigation.* 143
9. *Ea res, that act*; i. e., the plundering of property.
18. *Omnem . . . contraheret, he might unite his whole army*; i. e., by effecting a junction with Labienus, who was in command of four legions. See p. 138, line 25.
29. *Sed hunc silvestrem, but also covered with woods.*
30. *Ad alteram partem, to the other side.*
31. *Nec . . . sentire quin, and did not doubt that.*
33. *Ad hunc munendum, to fortify this.* *Hunc* refers to *alterum* (collem), in line 32, which again seems to refer to the woody height which gave access to the town.
36. *Eo, thither*; i. e., toward the hill which the Gauls were fortifying. This movement, as well as those described in the next twelve lines, was only a diversion by which Caesar hoped, while threatening this hill, suddenly to seize the Gallic camp.
2. *Equitum specie, with the appearance of cavalry.* These mounted 144 muleteers appeared in the distance like regular cavalry, and were here used to deceive the enemy. — *Collibus, over the hills*, where they could be seen by the enemy. G. 425, II., 1.

## PAGE

- 144 7. *Certi quid esset, what it really was; lit., what of certain there was.*  
 8. *Eodem jugo, by the same range; i. e., the one by which the horsemen and muleteers went.*  
 12. *Raros, in small bodies.*  
 17. *Incommodi; construe with quid.*  
 18. *Occasionis esse rem, that the case demanded (was of) a surprise.*  
 23. *Huic. Supply ascensui. — Circuitus; construe with quidquid.*  
 25. *Ut . . . ferebat, so far as the form (nature) of the mountain permitted.*  
 34. *Superiore . . . parte nudata. He had laid aside his cuirass.*  
 38. *Signa constituit, brought the standards to a halt.*  
 145 8. *Retinebantur. Observe the force of the Imperfect. G. 469, 1.*  
 15. *Per manus demissae, let down by hand; i. e., by those upon the wall.*  
 18. *Avaricensibus praemiis, by the rewards offered at Avaricum.*  
 See p. 135, lines 22 and 23.  
 23. *Supra demonstravimus. See p. 143, line 34.*  
 26. *Ut quisque . . . venerat, as soon as each one arrived.*  
 33. *Spatio, by the long continuance.*  
 146 2. *Hostes; subject of inaequantur.*  
 5. *Loco, numero, virtute; G. 425, II., 1, 1), note.*  
 8. *Manus . . . causa, for the purpose of dividing the forces; i. e., of the enemy. — Similitudine armorum, by the resemblance of their arms; i. e., to those of the enemy.*  
 10. *Dextris . . . exsertis. The Gauls in the service of Caesar were thus distinguished from the enemy. — Insigne pacatum, the friendly sign.*  
 20. *Quos; G. 445, 6. The antecedent is implied in vestras.*  
 35. *Infestis . . . signis, with hostile standards to the enemy.*  
 147 5. *Quid ipse . . . sensisset, what he himself had thought at Avaricum. See p. 131, lines 20 to 27.*  
 8. *Quanto opere — tanto opere, as much as — so much.*  
 12. *Plus se sentire, that they knew more.*  
 13. *Se desiderare, that he (Caesar) desired.*

LIII. — LVI. *Revolt of the Aedui.*

23. *Reduxit, he (Caesar) led back.*  
 31. *Ipsos antecedere, that they themselves should go before him.*  
 33. *Perspectam habebat, clearly saw. G. 388, 1, note.*  
 37. *Quos = quales, in what condition. Caesar reminded them of the condition in which he found the Aedui when he took them under his protection. See p. 16.*  
 148 14. *Bibracte . . . receptum, had been received by the Aedui into (at) Bibracte. G. 425, II.; 63, 2, (1).*

**23. Ne cui . . . Romanis, lest it should be of some use to the Romans.** 148  
G. 390.

**24. Frumenti quod, whatever grain.** G. 397.

**30. Adjuvabat.** The subject is the clause *quod . . . creverat*.

**31. Ex nivibus, from the melting of the snows.**

**34. Si esset periclitandum, even if he must incur danger.**

**38. Cum — tum maxime, not only — but especially.**

**2. Abjuncto Labieno timebat, he feared for Labienus, who had** 149  
*been detached.*

**5. Pro rei necessitate, in view of the urgency of the case.**

## LVII.—LXII. *Expedition against the Parisii.*

**19. Confectus; G. 549, 3.**

**26. Iter munire, to secure a road.**

**32. Eo = in eas; i. e., in naves.**

**36. Secundo flumine, down the river; i. e., upon the right bank of**  
it. Labienus, finding it difficult to approach Lutetia from the left side of  
the Seine, retraced his steps, crossed the river at Melodunum, and pro-  
ceeded down the right bank to Lutetia.

**8. Qui refers to Bellocaci.**

150

**10. Longe aliud, atque; G. 459, 2.**

**15. Opinionem virtutis, reputation for valor. — Alteram.** Supply  
*partem.*

**17. A praesidio, from the garrison, referring to the force left at Agen-**  
dicum to guard the baggage. **Interclusas distinebat; G. 549, 5.**

**18. Maximum flumen; i. e., the Sequana.**

**22. Equitibus Romanis, to Roman knights.**

**27. Quinque ejusdem . . . mittit.** All this was intended as a diver-  
sion. He ordered five cohorts and a number of boats to proceed up the  
river with a great noise, to attract the attention of the enemy, while he  
himself, with three legions, marched in silence down the river, which he  
crossed, four miles below, by means of vessels which he had sent in ad-  
vance.

**1. Praeter . . . tumultuari, that there is an unusual tumult.**

151

**9. Quae . . . progrediatur; G. 497. — Naves = lintres; i. e., the**  
boats sent up the river by Labienus.

**14. Retinerent.** Supply *ut.* G. 499, 2.

**15. Praesentem adesse, to be present in person.**

**19. Cum . . . concidissent; G. 515, III.**

**24. Esset nuntiatum.** The subject is the Indirect Question *quas . . .*  
*gererentur.*

**31. Neque potuerunt, but were not able.**

LXIII. – LXVII. *General Revolt of the Gauls.*

PAGE

- 152 8. *Horum supplicio.* The Aedui, holding in their possession the hostages, whom the other Gauls had given to Caesar, treated some of them with severity, to intimidate the tribes who opposed the revolt.
7. *Bibracte*; G. 380, II. Supply *convenire*.
10. *III*, the two former.
17. *Inviti*; G. 443, note 1.
20. *Huc rei, for this*; i. e., for receiving hostages.
24. *Factu*; G. 547, 1.
26. *Corrumpant*; Imperative in Direct Discourse. G. 523, III.
30. *Huc addit, to this force* (lit., *hither*) he adds.
36. *Ab superiore bello.* See note on *Allobrogum*, p. 4, line 1.
- 153 1. *Ad hos casus, against these contingencies.*
14. *Inter eos*; i. e., *inter equites*. See p. 26, lines 34 to 38.
15. *Minus idoneis, unserviceable.*
28. *Parum profect, that little is effected*; i. e., by the supposed retreat of the Romans.
31. *In eo morentur, should be detained* (lit., *should delay, or linger*) in this; i. e., in relieving their comrades.
35. *Et ipsos quidem, even they indeed*, as distinguished from himself.
36. *Quo faciant*; G. 497, II., 2.
- 154 4. *Jurejurando adaectis, bound by oath.*
16. *Flumen*; not the Arar itself, but one of its branches.
21. *Proximis comitibus.* See p. 137, line 27.

LXVIII. – LXXIV. *Caesar invests Alesia.*

27. *Alesiam, quod*; G. 380, II; 445, 4.
38. *In colle summo, upon the summit of a hill*; viz., Mount Auxois, an isolated hill five hundred feet in height.
- 155 2. *Duo flumina, two streams*, the Ose and the Oserain.
6. *Quae pars collis, on that side of the hill which*; lit., *which part of the hill*.
16. *Intermissam collibus, unbroken by hills.*
22. *Angustioribus . . . relictis, as the openings (gates) left* (in the wall) *were too narrow.*
35. *Discedentibus.* Supply *equitibus*. — *Suam eorum civitatem*; G. 398, 3.
- 156 4. *Ratione inita, by actual calculation.*
6. *Qua . . . intermissum, where our work did not extend*; i. e., where

there was an opening, as the Roman line of investment was not yet completed. 156

15. *Pedum viginti, twenty feet wide. Supply in latitudinem.*

16. *Directis lateribus, with vertical sides.*

19. *Id hoc consilio, he did it (i. e., left this space of four hundred feet between the trench and the other works) with this design. Supply fecit. G. 368, 3, note 1.*

27. *Loricam pinnaeque. See note on pinnae loricaeque, p. 93, line 38.*

28. *Eminentibus . . . aggeris, projecting (horizontally) at the junction of the breastworks and rampart.*

33. *Deminutis . . . copiis, our (available) forces being (thereby) diminished.*

2. *Perpetuae fossae, continuous ditches. Perpetuae seems to be* 157  
used simply to distinguish these ditches (as *continuous*) from the rows of pits mentioned in line 8, below. In the ditches were placed the trunks of trees with their branches cut to a point. The number of ditches is not given, but there were five rows of trunks of trees. Perhaps each row occupied one ditch.

3. *Huc, in these ditches; lit., hither.*

5. *Ab ramis eminebant, rose above ground with their branches; lit., from their branches.*

9. *Angustiore . . . fastigio, smaller toward the bottom; lit., of a narrower slope; i. e., sloping toward a point.*

13. *Singuli . . . exculcabantur, they were filled, each one foot from the bottom with earth well stamped down; lit., single feet from the bottom, were stamped down with earth.*

23. *Diversas, on the opposite side; explained by contra exteriorem hostem.*

## LXXV.-LXXXVIII. *Unsuccessful Attempt of the Gauls to relieve the City.*

2. *Duodena millia, twelve thousand each. Observe the force of the* 158  
*distributive.*

16. *Ut antea demonstravimus. See p. 68, line 11.*

19. *Reddiderat, had restored; i. e., to the state.*

29. *Delecti ex civitatibus, men selected from the states.*

11. *Quorum in consilio, in whose advice.*

16. *Dignitas, their authority; i. e., the authority and influence of those* 159  
*who proposed a sally.*

20. *Millibus octoginta; i. e., the Gallic force in Alesia.*

21. *Animi; construe with quid.*



## PAGE

- 159 29. *Illorum* refers to the Gauls, *his* (line 30) to the Romans, and *eorum* (line 31) to the Gauls.
34. *Cimbrorum*. See note on p. 31, line 18.
- 160 1. *Pulcherrimum judicarem*, *I should judge it a most glorious thing*.  
— *illi bello*; G. 387.
2. *Simile*, *like this*. Supply *huic*.
6. *Quos*. The antecedent is *horum*.
16. *Experiantur*, *that they themselves would try*.
19. *Mandubii*; *i. e.*, the citizens themselves.
27. *Colle exteriora*. This hill was on the west side of the plain mentioned two lines below. See also p. 155, line 3.
29. *Planitiem, quam . . . demonstravimus*. See p. 155, line 3.
32. *Abditas . . . constituunt*, *withdraw . . . and station*. G. 549, 5.
- 161 1. *Ad utramque . . . munitionum*, *on both lines of his intrenchment*; *i. e.*, on the line which invested the city, and on that which enclosed the Romans. He put his own forces in a position to resist any attack upon his lines, either by the besieged within or the army of relief without.
4. *Ex omnibus castris quae*, *from all the camps which*. Caesar had several camps. See p. 155, line 11.
9. *Complures*. Supply *nostrorum equitum*.
19. *Germani*, *the Germans*; *i. e.*, the German cavalry in Caesar's service. See p. 128, line 25, and p. 154, line 14. — *Conferitis turmis*, *in compact squadrons*. Construe with *Germani*.
- 162 5. *Deductos*, *led forth men and*. G. 549, 5.
8. *Stimulis, scrobes*. See p. 157, lines 8 and 20.
12. *Ex superioribus castris*, *from the upper camp*, situated on the heights north of the city. See lines 21 to 25.
14. *Interiores*; *i. e.*, the Gallic force in the city.
15. *Priores fossas expleant*, *those in advance fill up the trenches*.
29. *Quoque pacto*, *and in what manner*.
- 163 10. *Pugnantibus*; G. 384, 4, note 2.
11. *In aliena virtute constare*, *depended upon the valor of others*; *i. e.*, of their comrades.
21. *Exiguum . . . fastigium*, *a slight descending slope*. *Ad declivitatem* indicates the direction of the slope.
25. *Ea . . . occultaverant*. See p. 157.
35. *Ex ascensu*, *by climbing up*. Construe with *tentant*.
- 164 11. *Quid faciendum*, *must be done*; *i. e.*, in accordance with Caesar's command. See p. 163, line 30.
14. *Quo insigni* refers to the purple cloak worn by Caesar in battle. *Insigni* is probably a noun.
28. *Quod nisi*; G. 458, 6.
29. *Crebris subsidis*, *by the frequent aid rendered to one another*.

**LXXXIX., XC. *Surrender of Alesia. Winter Quarters of the Romans.***

	PAGE
35. <i>Suarum necessitatum, of his own interests.</i>	164
6. <i>Toto . . . capita singula, one to each soldier of the whole army.</i>	165
G. 151, 1, note 1.	
13. <i>Huic attribuit, assigned to him; i. e., as his deputy.</i>	
20. <i>Cabilloni et Matiscone; i. e., Cicero was stationed at Cabillum and Sulpicius at Matisco.</i>	



# DICTIONARY.

## A — ABSUM

**ā, āb, abs,** prep. with abl. *A* is used only before consonants; *ab*, before vowels and consonants; *abs*, only with *te*. I. OF SPACE: from, away from, on the side of, in the direction of, on, in; *Gallia attingit ab Sequāni Rhenum*, on the side of the Sequāni, i. 1; *a dextro cornu*, on the right wing, i. 52; *a fronte*, in front, ii. 23; *ab millibus passuum octo*, eight miles off or away, iv. 22. II. OF TIME: from, after; *ab cohortatione*, after exhorting, ii. 25. III. OF OTHER RELATIONS: from, by, by means of, in respect to, among, from with an accessory idea of against; *ab iis defendere*, to defend against (from) them, i. 11; *ortus est a tribunis*, arose among or had its origin from, i. 39; *ab re frumentariā laborare*, to suffer in respect to provisions, vii. 10.

**abditus**, *a, um*, part. from *abdo*.

**ab-do**, *dēre, didi, ditum*, v. tr. To remove, put away; to conceal; *sese in silvas*, to hide away in the forests, i. 12.

**ab-dūco**, *ēre, xi, ctum*, v. tr. To lead away, take away, withdraw.

**āb-eo**, *ire, tui or ii, itum*, v. intr. To go away, depart.

**ābesse**. See *Absum*.

**abfūtūrus**, *a, um*. See *Absum*.

**abies**, *ēis*, f. The fir-tree, v. 12.

**ābisse** for *abiisse*, from *ābeo*.

**abjectus**, *a, um*, part. from *abjicio*.

**ab-jicio**, *ēre, jēci, jectum*, v. tr. (*jācio*.) To throw away, cast from, cast off, throw down; to hurl.

**abjunctus**, *a, um*, part. from *abjungo*.

**ab-jungo**, *ēre, xi, ctum*, v. tr. To loose from the yoke; to separate, remove; *abjungo Labiēno*, Labienus having been detached, vii. 56.

**abreptus**, *a, um*, part. from *abripio*.

**ab-ripio**, *ēre, ripui, reptum*, v. tr. (*rāpio*.) To snatch away, take away by violence, tear off or away.

**abs-cido**, *ēre, cidi, cisum*, v. tr. (*caedo*.) To cut off or away.

**ab-scindo**, *ēre, scidi, scissum*, v. tr. To tear or break off, rend.

**abscisus**, *a, um*, part. from *abscido*.

**absens**, *entis*, part. (*absum*.) Absent, being away; *se absente*, in his absence, v. 7.

**ab-similis**, *e*, adj. Dissimilar, unlike; *formā*, of a form not unlike that of, iii. 14.

**ab-sisto**, *ēre, stiti*, v. intr. To withdraw; to keep off from, v. 17.

**abs-tineo**, *ēre, ui, tentum*, v. tr. (*tē-neo*.) To hold from, keep from. *Intr.* to refrain from, abstain from; to spare, vii. 47.

**abstractus**, *a, um*, part. from *abstrāho*.

**abs-trāho**, *ēre, xi, ctum*, v. tr. To drag away, take or carry away by force.

**ab-sum**, *esse, fui*, v. irr. n. To be absent or away from, to be distant from; *longe iis abesse*, to be far away from them, i. e., to be of no service to them, i. 36; to be exempt from, vi. 14.

**āb-undo**, *āre, āci, ātum*, v. intr. (*unda*, a wave). To flow over, abound in, be well provided with.

**ac**, conj. See *Atque*.

**accēdo**, *ēre, cessi, cessum*, v. intr. (*ad, cēdo*). To go near to, approach; to be added. *Accedebat, quod*, it was added, that, i. e., moreover, iii. 2.

**accēlĕro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. and intr. (*ad, cēlĕro*, to quicken). To hasten; to make haste, vii. 87.

**acceptus**, *a, um*, 1), part. from *ac-  
cipio*; 2), adj. Pleasant, welcome, agreeable; *maximo plebi acceptus*, very much beloved by the people, i. 3.

**accīdo**, *ēre, cidi, cĭsum*, v. intr. (*ad, cādo*). To fall, fall upon; to befall, occur, happen. *Accidit*, impers. it happens.

**accīdo**, *ēre, cidi, cĭsum*, v. tr., (*ad, caedo*). To cut off, cut down, fell.

**accĭpio**, *ēre, ēpi, eptum*, v. tr. (*ad, cāpio*). To receive, take, accept; to attain, get; to learn; to approve of.

**acclivis**, *e*, adj. (*ad, clivus*). Ascending, rising, sloping upwards; *locus, paulatim ab imo acclivis*, a place rising gradually from the plain, iii. 19.

**acclivitas**, *ātis*, f. (*acclivis*). An ascent, steepness, upward slope.

**Acco**, *ōnis*, m. A general of the Senones, vi. 4, 44.

**accommodātus**, *a, um*, 1), part. from *accommodo*; 2), adj. Suitable, fitted; *accommodatiora*, better fitted, more adapted, iii. 13.

**accommodo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*ad, commōdum*). To adjust, fit, put on, arrange.

**accūrāte**, *accūrātius, accūrātissime*, adv. (*ad, cūra*). With care, carefully, exactly, attentively.

**accurro**, *ēre, curri, and cūcurri, cursum*, v. intr. (*ad, curro*). To run to, hasten to.

**accūso**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*ad, causa*). To accuse, blame, reproach, censure, find fault with.

**acer**, *ācris, ācre*, adj. (*āceo*, to be sour). Sharp, pungent; disagreeable, violent.

**ācerbe**, *ācerlius, ācerbissime*, adv. (*ācerbus*). Roughly, bitterly, harshly, sharply; with pain, with discontent, vii. 17.

**ācerbitas**, *ātis*, f. (*ācerbus*). Harshness, sour or disagreeable taste. *Fig.*, severity, rigor, unkindness, harshness of conduct; sorrow, trouble, calamity, hardship, bitter fate.

**ācerbus**, *a, um*, adj. (*ācer*). Sour or disagreeable to the taste. *Fig.*, severe, hard, disagreeable.

**ācerīme**, adv. sup. of *ācriter*.

**ācervus**, *i*, m. A heap, pile, collection.

**ācies**, *ei*, f. (gen. *ācie*, ii. 23, for *ācizi*, G. 120). A sharp edge; sharpness of the sight, fierce expression, keen looks; a line of battle, an army in line of battle, i. 22.

**acquirō**, *ēre, sivi, sĭtum*, v. tr. (*ad, quaero*). To procure, get, obtain, acquire.

**ācriter**, *ācrius, ācerīme*, adv. (*ācer*). Sharply, vigorously, eagerly, violently, courageously, zealously.

**actuārius**, *a, um*, adj. (*āgo*). Easily moved, swift, fleet.

**actus**, *a, um*, part. from *āgo*.

**ācūtus**, *a, um*, adj. (*ācuo*, to make sharp). Sharp, pointed.

**ad**, prep. with *accus*. I. OF SPACE: to, towards, in the direction of, in, at, near, among. II. OF TIME: towards, to, till, at; *ad multam noctem*, until late into the night, i. 26. III. OF OTHER RELATIONS. 1) *With numerals*: towards, about. 2) *Of purpose*: to, for; *ad largiendum*, i. 18. 3) In respect to, for, in, according to, after, in conformity with; *ad hunc modum*, after this manner, ii. 31; *ad certum pondus*, according to a fixed weight, v. 12.

**ādactus**, *a, um*, part. from *ādigo*. **ād-aequo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To make equal; to equal, make level with; to keep up with, i. 48.

**ād-āmo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To love greatly, covet.

**ād-augēo**, *ēre, auxi, auctum*, v. tr. To increase, enlarge.

**Adcantuannus**, *i. m.* A brave chief of the Sontiātes, iii. 22.

**ad-do**, *dēre, didi, dtum*, *v. tr.* To add, join to, annex, mingle with.

**ad-dūco**, *ēre, xi, ctum*, *v. tr.* To lead or conduct to, bring, convey to, draw towards, iii. 14. *Fig.*, to induce, lead, influence.

**ādemptus**, *a, um*, *part.* from *ādēmo*.

**ād-eo**, *ēre, tui or ii, itum*, *v. tr.* To go to, approach; to attack, encounter.

**ād-eo**, *adv. (is)*. To that point, so far, to such a degree, so much.

**ādeptus**, *a, um*, *part.* from *ādēptor*.

**ād-ēquīto**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *v. intr.* (*ēques*). To ride towards or up to, i. 46.

**ād-haeresco**, *ēre, haesi, haesum*, *v. intr.* To stick to, adhere.

**ād-hībeo**, *ēre, ui, itum*, *v. tr.* (*hābeo*). To bring to, summon, invite, admit, receive, bring, call in; to use, employ, iii. 20.

**ād-hortor**, *āri, ātus sum*, *v. dep.* To encourage, incite, exhort.

**ād-huc**, *adv.* Up to this time, hitherto, thus far, as yet, still.

**ād-igo**, *ēre, ēgi, actum*, *v. tr.* (*āgo*). To drive in, conduct; to compel, force.

**ād-īmo**, *ēre, ēmi, emptum*, *v. tr.* (*ēmo = accipio*). To take away, deprive of, remove.

**ād-ipiscor**, *i, eptus sum*, *v. dep.* (*āpiscor*, to reach after). To obtain, get, acquire, attain by effort; *nanciscor*, to obtain by accident.

**ādītus**, *us, m.* (*ādeo*). Approach, access, admittance; permission to approach, right of access or interview.

**ad-jāceo**, *ēre, cui, v. intr.* To lie at or near, be contiguous, border upon.

**adjectus**, *a, um*, *part.* from *adjicio*.

**ad-jicio**, *ēre, jēci, jectum*, *v. tr.* (*jacio*). To cast or throw to, hurl, send; to add, join to.

**ad-jūdicō**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *v. tr.* To adjudge; to award, assign.

**ad-jungo**, *ēre, xi, ctum*, *v. tr.* To join to, add, bind to, annex, unite.

**adjūtor**, *ōris, m.* (*adjūto*). Helper, aid, assistant.

**ad-jūvo**, *āre, jūvi, jūtum*, *v. tr.* To help, assist, aid; to avail, be of use.

**Admagetobriga**. See *Magetobria*.

**ad-mātūro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *v. tr.* To bring to maturity, ripen; to hasten.

**ad-mīnister**, *tri, m.* (*ad, mānus*).

A servant, assistant, attendant.

**ad-mīnistro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *v. tr.* (*ad-mīnister*). To be at hand, assist, serve; to take in hand, manage, guide, direct.

**ad-mīror**, *āri, ātus sum*, *v. dep.* To wonder at, admire.

**ad-mitto**, *ēre, misi, missum*, *v. tr.* To permit, allow; to commit; to give reins to; *equo admisso*, at full speed, i. 22.

**admōdum**, *adv. (ad, mōdus)*. Very, exceedingly; *with numerals*: about, fully, at least.

**ad-mōneo**, *ēre, ui, itum*, *v. tr.* To admonish, warn, advise; to remind, suggest.

**ādōlescens**, *tis, m. and f.* (*ādōlesco*). A youth, a young man or woman.

**ādōlescentia**, *ae, f.* (*ādōlescens*). Youthful age, youth.

**ādōlescentūlus**, *i, m. dim.* (*ādōlescens*). A very young man, stripling.

**ād-ōlesco**, *ēre, olēvi, ultum*, *v. intr.* To grow up, come to maturity.

**ād-ōrior**, *tri, ortus sum*, *v. dep.* To attack, fall upon; to attempt, undertake.

**ādortus**, *a, um*, *part.* from *ādōrior*.

**ad-scisco**, *ēre, scivi, scitum*, *v. tr.* (*scio*). To take, receive, admit, join to.

**ad-sisto**, *ēre, stiti*, *v. intr.* To stand by or near, be present, appear, *in publico*, vi. 18.

**ad-sum**, *esse, adfui or affui*, *v. irr. n.* To be present or at hand; to aid, assist.

**Aduātūca**, *ae, f.* A fortress in the country of the Eburōnes, now *Tongres*, vi. 32, 35.

**Aduātūci**, *ōrum, m.* A people of Gallia Belgica, ii. 4, 16, 29, 31; v. 27, 38, 39, 56; vi. 2, 33.

**adventus, us, m.** (*ad, rēnio*). Arrival, approach, coming.

**adversārius, a, um, adj.** (*adverso*). Hostile, opposed. *Subs.* An opponent, adversary, enemy.

**adversus, a, um, adj.** (*adverto*). Turned to, opposite, over against. *Of rivers*: up or against the stream, *flumine adverso*, vii. 61. *Of winds*: adverse, unfavorable. *Of persons*: hostile, unfriendly; and in general, unfavorable, opp. to *secundus*; *res adversae*, unfavorable circumstances, calamities; *adversa nox*, an unfavorable, stormy night, iv. 28; in *adversum os*, full in the face, v. 35.

**adversus, prep.** with acc. (*adverto*). Against, opposite to.

**ad-vertō, ēre, ti, sum, v. tr.** To turn to or towards; with *animum*, to turn one's mind to, perceive, observe. Sometimes *animum* is understood.

**ad-vōcō, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** To call to; to summon, call.

**ad-vōlō, āre, āvi, ātum, v. intr.** To fly to, hasten to or towards; to rush upon, v. 17.

**aedificium, i, n.** (*aedifico*). Edifice, building, residence.

**aedifico, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** and intr. (*aedes, facio*). To build, construct, make; *naves*, iii. 9.

**Aedui, a, um, adj.** Aeduan. *Aedui, i, m.* An Aeduan. *Aedui, ōrum, pl.* The Aedui, a powerful people in Gallia Celtica, between the Liger (*Loire*) and the Arar (*Saône*). Their chief town was Bibracte.

**aeger, gra, grum, adj.** Sick, indisposed; feeble, suffering, faint.

**aegre, aegrius, aegerime, adv.** (*aeger*). With difficulty, hardly, scarcely, ill.

**Aemilius, i, m.** *Lucius*, a decurion of Gallic cavalry, i. 23.

**aequāliter, adv.** (*aequus*). Equally, uniformly.

**aequinoctium, i, n.** (*aequus, nox*). The equinox; the time when the days and nights are of equal length.

**aequitas, ātis, f.** (*aequus*). Equal-

ity; justice, equity, impartiality; with *animi*, composure, calmness, contentment, vi. 22.

**aequo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** (*aequus*). To make equal.

**aequus, a, um, adj.** 1) Even, level; favorable, suitable. 2) Equal, like; *aequo Marte*, in an equal contest, vii. 19. 3) Just, right, honorable, reasonable. 4) Calm, composed; *aequiore animo*, with greater composure, v. 52.

**aerārius, a, um, adj.** (*aes*). Relating to copper or brass; *aerariae secturae*, copper mines, iii. 21.

**aes, aeris, n.** 1) Brass, copper. 2) Money, as the first Roman coins were of copper. *Aes aliēnum*, debt; *lit.*, the money of another, hence, the money which one owes to another.

**aestas, ātis, f.** The summer.

**aestimātio, ōnis, f.** (*aestimo*). Appraisal, valuation, esteem; worth, price, value.

**aestimo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** (*acs*). To estimate the value of; to esteem, regard, consider; to judge, determine, estimate; *litē*, v. 1.

**aestivus, a, um, adj.** (*aestas*). Relating to summer; *tempus*, summer time, vi. 4.

**aestuārium, i, n.** (*aestus*). An estuary, marsh, creek, frith, inlet.

**aestus, us, m.** 1) Heat, burning heat. 2) The ebb and flow of the sea, the tide.

**aetas, ātis, f.** (for *aevitas, aevum*, age). The period of life, age; old age.

**aeternus, a, um, adj.** (for *aeviternus, aevum*, age). Everlasting, eternal, perpetual.

**affēro, ferre, attūli, allātum, v. tr.** irr. (*ad, fēro*). To bring to, impart, offer, present; to contribute, afford; to occasion, cause, effect, produce.

**afficio, ēre, fēci, fectum, v. tr.** (*ad, facio*). To affect, influence, treat; *beneficio*, to influence by kindness, vii. 37; *poenā, supplicio*, to punish.

**affigo, ēre, xi, xum, v. tr.** (*ad, figo*, to fix). To fix, fasten upon, attach to; *longuriis*, iii. 14.

**affingo**, *ēre, inxi, ictum*, v. tr. (*ad, fingo*). To assert falsely, add falsely.

**affinitas**, *ātis*, f. (*affinis*, near to). Connection, nearness; relationship (by marriage), i. 18.

**affirmatio**, *ōnis*, f. (*ad, firmo*). Affirmation, assurance; assertion, declaration, vii. 30.

**affixus**, *a, um*, part. from *affigo*.

**afflicto**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. freq. (*affligo*). To agitate, toss, trouble, vex, afflict, injure, damage. *Of ships: in vadis*, to strand, iii. 12.

**afflictus**, *a, um*, part. from *affligo*.

**affligo**, *ēre, xi, ctum*, v. tr. (*ad, fli-go, to strike*). To strike or dash against; to cast down, prostrate. *Of ships*, to shatter, injure, collide, v. 10.

**afflōre**, — *afflūrum esse* (*ad, fōre*). See *Adsum*. G. 204, 2.

**āfricus**, *i, m*. The south-west wind.

**Agedineum**, *i, n*. A town in Gallia Celtica, the capital of the Senōnes, now *Sens*, vi. 44; vii. 10, 57, 59, 62.

**āger**, *āgri, m*. Land, territory, field, country, district.

**agger**, *ēris, m*. (*ad, gēro*). A mound, rampart; the materials for a mound.

**aggrēdiōr**, *ēdi, essus sum*, v. dep. (*ad, grādior, to go*). To go to or against, attack; to attempt, undertake.

**aggrēgo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*ad, grēgo, to collect in a flock*). To collect, assemble; to join, unite, attach.

**āgito**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*āgo*). To put in motion, drive; to revolve in mind, talk about, discuss, deliberate upon.

**agmen**, *inis, n*. (for *āgimen, āgo*). An army on the march, the line of march; a march; a troop, band; *primū agmen*, the van; *novissimum*, the rear.

**āgo**, *ēre, ēgi, actum*, v. tr. I. To put in motion, drive. 1) To drive away, carry off, convey away; *praedam*, vi. 43. 2) To drive before one's self, pursue, iv. 12. 3) *Of war machines*: to push forward, move nearer; *vineas*, ii. 12. 4) *Of mines*: to extend, conduct,

iii. 21. 5) To drive in, iv. 17. II. To pursue a course of action. 1) To express, state; *gratias*, to give thanks, i. 41; *cum Caesāre*, to treat with, i. 13; to negotiate, v. 37. 2) To perform, manage, pursue, transact, do, i. 20; *conventus*, to hold the assizes, i. 54. 3) To pass, spend. *Intr.*, to act, vii. 17.

**agricultūra**, *ae, f*. (*āger, cōlo*). Agriculture, cultivation of the soil, tillage.

**ālācer**, *cris, cre*, adj. Lively, animated, brisk, quick; cheerful, elated; eager, active, fierce.

**ālacritas**, *ātis, f*. (*ālācer*). Liveliness, ardor, zeal, eagerness, promptness; gladness.

**ālārius**, *a, um*, adj. (*āla*, wing). Stationed on the wings. *Subs. pl.* The auxiliaries, as they occupied the wings of the army.

**albus**, *a, um*, adj. White; *plumbum*, tin, v. 12.

**alces**, *is, f*. The elk, vi. 27.

**Alēsia**, *ae, f*. A fortified town of the Mandubii, in Gallia Celtica, modern *Alise*, vii. 68, 75, 76, 77, 79, 80, 84.

**ālias**, adv. (*alius*). At another time, otherwise; *alias . . . alias*, at one time . . . at another time; sometimes . . . sometimes.

**aliēno**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*aliēnus*). To change; to estrange, alienate; to take away.

**aliēnus**, *a, um*, adj. (*alius*). Belonging to another, foreign to; estranged, hostile; unfavorable, unfriendly; foreign to the subject, vi. 11.

**ālio**, adv. In another place, elsewhere.

**āliquamdiu**, adv. For some time.

**āliquando**, adv. (*aliquis*). Sometimes; at length.

**āliquanto**, adv. (*aliquantus*). A little, somewhat.

**āliquantus**, *a, um*, adj. (*alius, quantus*). A little, some, somewhat.

**āliquis**, or **āliqui**, *qua, quod* or *quid*, pron. indef. (*alius, quis*). Some one, any one, some, any, anything.

**āliquot**, indef. num. indecl. (*alius, quot*). Some, several, a few.



**ālīter**, adv. (*alius*). Otherwise, in a different manner; *ālīter* ... *ac*, otherwise ... than.

**ālius**, *a*, *ud*, gen. *ālius*, dat. *ālii*, adj. Other, another; *ālius* ... *ālius*, one ... another; *ālii* ... *ālii*, some ... others; *ālias āliā in parte*, some in one place and some in another, ii. 22; *ālius, āliā causā illatā*, one alleging one reason, and another another, i. 39; *ālā ratione*, *ac*, in a different manner from, iii. 28.

**allātus**, *a*, *um*, part. from *affēro*.

**allicio**, *ēre*, *lexi*, *lectum*, *v. tr.* (*ad, lacio*, to entice). To attract, allure, entice.

**Allōbrōges**, *um*, m. [sing. *Allōbrox, ōgis*.] A people of Gallia Narbonensis, between the Rhodānus (*Rhone*) and Isāra (*Isère*). Chief town Vienna (*Vienne*), i. 6, 11, 14, 28; vii. 64.

**ālō**, *ēre*, *ui*, *ālītum* and *altum*, *v. tr.* To nourish, support, sustain, maintain, foster, vii. 33; *controversiam*, to keep up, continue, vii. 32.

**Alpes**, *ium*, *f. pl.* The Alps, i. 10; iii. 1, 2, 7; iv. 10.

**alter**, *ēra*, *ērum*, gen. *altērtus*, dat. *altēri* [but *altērae*, *f.*, v. 27], adj. One of two, the other (of two); *alter* ... *alter*, the one ... the other, i. 31; *alteri* ... *alteri*, the one party ... the other, i. 26; the second, i. 2.

**alternus**, *a*, *um*, adj. (for *altērtus*, *alter*). One after another, by turns, mutual, alternate.

**altitūdo**, *inis*, *f.* (*altus*). Height, depth.

**altus**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*ālo*). High, tall, lofty; deep; *in alto* (*sc. mari*), in deep water, iv. 24.

**ālūta**, *ae*, *f.* Soft leather.

**ambactus**, *i*, *m.* A vassal, dependant.

**Ambarri**, *ōrum*, *m.* The Aedui Ambarri, a Celtic people, clients of the Aedui, between the Arar (*Saône*) and the Rhodānus (*Rhone*), north of the Allobrōges, i. 11, 14, 28; vii. 64.

**Ambiāni**, *ōrum*, *m.* A people in Gallia Belgica, whose chief town was

Samarobriva (*Amiens*), ii. 4, 15; vii. 75.

**Ambibārīi**, *ōrum*, *m.* An Armorican people, in Gallia Celtica, vii. 75.

**Ambiliāti**, *ōrum*, *m.* A Gallic people dwelling, according to Reichard, in the vicinity of modern Abbeville, in Picardy, iii. 9.

**Ambiōrix**, *igis*, *m.* King of half of the Eburōnes, v. 24, 27, 34; v. 29; vi. 2, 5, 6, 9, 29, 43.

**Ambivarēti**, *ōrum*, *m.* A people of Gallia Celtica; clients of the Aedui, near the Ambarri, vii. 75, 90.

**Ambivariti**, *ōrum*, *m.* A people of Gallia Belgica, prob. in the region of Namur, on the left bank of the Mosa (*Meuse*), iv. 9.

**ambo**, *ae*, *nun.* adj. Both.

**āmentia**, *ae*, *f.* (*ā, mens*). Folly, madness, want of reason.

**āmentum**, *i*, *n.* A strap or thong used with missiles to give greater impulse in throwing them.

**amfractus**, *us*, *m.* (*am, frango*). A turning, bending; a circuitous route.

**āmicitia**, *ae*, *f.* (*āmicus*). Friendship, alliance.

**āmicus**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*āmo*, to love). Friendly, well-disposed.

**āmicus**, *i*, *m.* (*āmo*, to love.) A friend, an ally.

**ā-mitto**, *ēre*, *miſi*, *missum*, *v. tr.* To send away, dismiss; to lose, let pass.

**āmor**, *ōris*, *m.* (*āmo*, to love). Love, affection.

**ample**, adv. (*amplus*). Abundantly, copiously, generously.

**amplifico**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *v. tr.* (*amplus, facio*). To enlarge, extend, increase.

**amplissime**, sup. of *ample*.

**amplitūdo**, *inis*, *f.* (*amplus*). Size, greatness; dignity, grandeur, consequence.

**amplius**, adv., comp. of *ample*. More, further.

**amplus**, *a*, *um*, adj. Of large extent, great, spacious; magnificent, abundant, ample; noble, illustrious, renowned.

**an**, adv. Whether, or. G. 353.

**Anartes, ium**, m. A Dacian people, dwelling probably on the Tibiscus (*Theiss*), a branch of the Ister, (*Danube*), vi. 25.

**Ancalites, um**, m. pl. A people in the south-east of Britain, v. 21.

**anceps, cēptis**, adj. (*am, caput*). Having two heads; double, twofold; doubtful.

**ancōra, ae, f.** An anchor.

**Andes, rum**, m. A people of Gallia Celtica, on the right bank of the Liger (*Loire*), above the Nannètes, ii. 35; iii. 7; vii. 4.

**Andocumborius, i**, m. An ambassador of the Remi, ii. 3.

**angŭlus, i**, m. Corner, angle.

**anguste**, adv. (*angustus*). Narrowly, closely; scantily, sparingly.

**angustiae, ārum** [rare in the sing.], f. (*angustus*). Narrow space, narrowness, straitness; a narrow pass, defile; difficulty, necessity.

**angustus, a, um**, adj. (*ango*, to press together). Narrow, strait; *montes*, contracted, steep, iv. 23; *in angusto*, in a critical condition, ii. 25.

**ānima, ae, f.** Breath, life; the soul, spirit, vi. 14.

**ānimadverto, ēre, ti, sum, v. tr.** (*ānimus, ad, verto*). To turn one's attention to; to perceive, attend, take heed, notice; to punish, i. 19.

**ānimal, ālis, n.** (*ānima*). An animal.

**ānīmus, i**, m. The mind, soul, intellect; the attention; the thoughts, will, purpose, desire, design; inclination, disposition; regard, affection; feeling, anger, courage, spirit; *esse in animo*, to be one's intention, i. 7; *relinquit animus Sextium*, consciousness leaves S., i. e., he faints, vi. 38.

**annōtinus, a, um**, adj. (*annus*). A year old, of the previous year, v. 8.

**annus, i**, m. The year.

**annuus, a, um**, adj. (*annus*). Yearly, lasting a year.

**anser, ēris**, m. The goose, v. 12.

**ante**, prep. with accus. Before.

I. OF SPACE: *ante oppidum*, before the town, ii. 32. II. OF TIME: *ante id tempus*, before this time, ii. 35. III. Adv. Before, previously.

**antea**, adv. Formerly, before.

**antē-cēdo, ēre, cēssi, cēssum, v. intr.** To go before, precede; to surpass, excel.

**antē-cursor, ōris**, m. (*curro*). A forerunner, advanced guard, pioneer.

**antē-fēro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, v. tr.** To bear before; to place before, prefer.

**antenna, ae, f.** A sail-yard.

**antē-pōno, ēre, pōsui, pōsitum, v. tr.** To place before; to give the preference, prefer.

**antē-verto, ēre, ti, sum, v. tr.** To prefer or place before, vii. 7.

**antiquŭs**, adv. (*antiquus*). In former times, anciently.

**antiquus, a, um**, adj. (*ante*). Ancient, old, olden.

**Antistius, i**, m. *Gāius Antistius Reginus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants, vi. 1; vii. 83, 90.

**Antōnius, i**, m. *Marcus*, son of Julia, sister of Lucius Julius Caesar, consul 64 B. C. One of the most faithful of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul. He became tribune of the plebs in 49 B. C., and as such opposed the decree of the senate which deprived Caesar of his command. In the year 45 B. C. he formed the Triumvirate with Octavianus and Lepidus, was subsequently defeated at Actium (31 B. C.), and shortly after committed suicide in Egypt, vii. 81.

**āpērio, ēre, ērui, ertum, v. tr.** (*ab, pārio*). To open, reveal; to uncover, make or lay bare.

**āperte**, adv. (*āpertus*). Openly, publicly.

**āpertus, a, um**, adj. (*āpērio*). Open, exposed, uncovered, naked; *latere aperto*, on the unprotected flank, i. 25.

**Apollo, tnīs**, m. Son of Jupiter and Latōna. Among the Gauls, the god of the healing art, vi. 17.

**appāro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** (*ad, pāro*). To prepare, make ready, put

in order; to provide, procure, furnish.

**appello**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*ad, pello*). To approach, accost, address; to name, call.

**appello**, *ēre, pūli, pulsum*, v. tr. (*ad, pello*). To drive to; to move; to bring. *Of ships*: to steer for, direct towards.

**appeto**, *ēre, tri or ii, itum*, v. tr. (*ad, peto*). To strive after, seek, covet. *Intr.*, to approach, be at hand, vi. 35.

**aplico**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, or *ui, itum*, v. tr. (*ad, plico*, to fold). To join to, attach, bring in contact with; *se applicare*, to lean against, vi. 27.

**apporto**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*ad, porto*). To convey to, bring, carry.

**approbo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*ad, probō*). To approve, commend, favor.

**appropinquo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. intr. (*ad, propinquo*, to come near). To approach, draw near.

**appulsus**, part. from *appello, ēre*.

**Aprilis**, *e*, adj. (for *aperilis*, from *aperio*). Of April. *Subs.* [*sc. mensis*], April.

**aptus**, *a, um*, adj. Fit for, suitable, adapted; apt, skilful.

**apud**, prep. with acc. At, by, near, in the presence of; with, among.

**āqua**, *ae*, f. Water.

**āquatio**, *ōnis*, f. (*āqua*). The getting or procuring of water, iv. 11.

**āquila**, *ae*, f. The eagle; the standard of the Roman legion. The *signa* were the standards of cohorts, iv. 25.

**Aquilēia**, *ae*, f. A town in Gallia Cisalpina, near modern Trieste, i. 10.

**āquillifer**, *fēri*, m. (*āquila, fēro*). The eagle-bearer; standard-bearer.

**Aquitāni**, *ōrum*, m. pl. Inhabitants of Aquitania, i. 1; iii. 21

**Aquitānia**, *ae*, f. The southern division of Gaul. See *Gallia*.

**Arar**, *aris*, m. [*acc. Arārim*, abl. *Arāre*.] The Saône, a river in Gaul, tributary to the Rhone, i. 12, 13, 16; vii. 90.

**arbiter**, *tri*, m. An arbitrator, arbiter, umpire, judge.

**arbitrium**, *i*, n. (*arbiter*). The decision of the arbiter, sentence; power, pleasure, absolute will.

**arbitror**, *āri, ātus sum*, v. dep. (*arbiter*). To judge, think, consider.

**arbor** and **arbos**, *ōris*, f. A tree.

**arcesso**, *ēre, sivi, situm*, v. tr. (*accōdo*). To cause to approach; to call, send for, summon, invite.

**ardeo**, *ēre, si, sum*, v. intr. To burn, to be on fire; hence, *of the passions*: to be inflamed, be excited, burn.

**Arduenna**, *ae*, f. [*sc. silva*]. An extensive forest in Gallia Belgica, upwards of fifty miles in length; now Ardennes, v. 3; vi. 29, 31, 33.

**arduus**, *a, um*, adj. Steep; high, lofty; difficult, arduous, hard.

**Arecomici Volcae**. See *Volcae*.

**argentum**, *i*, n. Silver; silver ware, vii. 47.

**argilla**, *ae*, f. White clay, potter's clay.

**āridus**, *a, um*, adj. (*āreo*, to be dry). Dry, parched; *ex arido* [*sc. loco*], from a dry place, dry land.

**āries**, *ētis*, m. 1) A ram; a battering-ram. 2) Support, brace, iv. 17.

**Ariovistus**, *i*, m. A powerful German king, defeated by Caesar, i. 31, *sq.*, 53; v. 29; vi. 12.

**Aristius**, *i*, m. *Marcus*, a military tribune, under Caesar, vii. 42, 43.

**arma**, *ōrum*, n. pl. Arms, weapons; war. *Of a ship*: the tackle, rigging.

**armāmenta**, *ōrum*, n. (*arma*). Implements; the tackle of a ship, rigging, cordage, etc.

**armātūra**, *ae*, f. (*arma*). Armor; *levis armaturae*, of light armor, light-armed, ii. 24.

**armātus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *armo*; 2) subs. An armed man, soldier.

**armo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To arm, equip. *Of ships*: to fit out, furnish, rig.

**Armoricae** [*civitātes*], *ārum*, f. (Celt. *ar*, on, *mor*, the sea.) The Ar

morie or coast states; the north-western provinces of Gaul, v. 53; vii. 75.

**Arpinēius**, *i*, m. *Gūius*, a Roman knight, v. 27, 28.

**arrīpio**, *ēre, ui, reptum*, v. tr. (*ad, rāpio*). To seize, lay hold of, appropriate.

**arrōganter**, adv. (*arrōgans*, arrogant). Arrogantly, proudly, insolently, haughtily.

**arrōgantia**, *ac*, f. (*arrōgans*, arrogant). Haughtiness, pride, arrogance, insolence.

**ars**, *artis*, f. Skill, art, faculty; science, knowledge, method; manner, way, contrivance.

**arte**, adv. (*artus*). Closely, firmly, tightly.

**articūlus**, *i*, m. (dim. from *artus*, a joint). Joint, knct, vi. 27.

**artificium**, *i*, n. (*artifex*, artist). Trade, employment, skill, knowledge, ingenuity; craft, cunning, dexterity.

**artus**, *a, um*, adj. (*arceo*, to shut up). Close, dense, thick.

**Arvernus**, *i*, m. One of the Arverni; *Arverni, ōrum*, a people of Gallia Celtica; Gergovia (*Auvergne*) their principal town, i. 31, 45; vii. 3, 5, 34, 90.

**arx**, *arcis*, f. A height; a fortified height; a citadel, fortress, stronghold.

**ascendo**, *ēre, di, sum*, v. intr. (*ad, scando*, to climb). To ascend, go up, mount.

**ascensus**, *us*, m. (*ascendo*). The act of going up; the ascent, the approach, the acclivity.

**aspectus**, *us*, m. (*adspectio*, to look). The sight; the appearance, looks, presence, countenance.

**asper**, *ēra, ērum*, adj. Rough, uneven; harsh, severe; violent, fierce, cruel, wild, savage.

**assiduus**, *a, um*, adj. (*asstdeo*, to sit by). Continual, unremitting, constant, perpetual, incessant, diligent.

**assuēfācio**, *ēre, fēci, factum*, v. tr. (*assuētus*, accustomed, fācio). To accustom, inure, habituate.

**assuesco**, *ēre, ēri, ētum*, v. intr. (*ad, suesco*, to be wont). To become accustomed to, accustom one's self to.

**at**, conj. But, yet, still; but at least.

**atque** or **ac**, conj. [*ac* stands only before consonants; *atque* before vowels or consonants] (*ad, que*). And, and also. *In comparisons*: than, from, as; *aliter ac*, otherwise than.

**Atrēbātes**, *um*, m. [sing. *Atrēbas, ātis*.] A people of Gallia Belgica, whose principal town was Nemetocenna (*Arras*), ii. 4, 16, 23; iv. 21, 35; vi. 6; vii. 75.

**Atrius**, *i*, m. *Quintus*, an officer whom Caesar left in charge of his fleet, while making an incursion into Britain, v. 9, 10.

**attexo**, *ēre, ui, xtum*, v. tr. (*ad, texo*, to weave). To weave on, join by weaving, add.

**attingo**, *ēre, tēgi, tactum*, v. tr. (*ad, tango*). To touch, come in contact with; to border upon; to arrive at, reach.

**attribuo**, *ēre, ui, ūtum*, v. tr. (*ad, tribuo*). To attribute to, assign, bestow; to give in charge of, appoint over.

**attūli**. See *Affero*.

**auctor**, *ōris*, m. (*augeo*). Creator, maker, author, inventor, producer; leader, originator, director; promoter, approver; adviser, counsellor.

**auctōritas**, *ātis*, f. (*auctor*). Authority, power, influence; standing, reputation, dignity; command, order, will.

**auctus**, *a, um*, part. from *augeo*.

**audācia**, *ae*, f. (*audax*, daring). Boldness; daring courage; insolence, audacity, presumption.

**audacter** or **audāciter**, adv. (*audax*, daring). Boldly; courageously, confidently; insolently.

**audeo**, *ēre, ausus sum*, v. semi-dep. G. 268, 3. To dare, venture; to undertake, attempt.

**audio**, *ire, īvi, ītum*, v. tr. To hear, listen to, perceive; to obey, give heed to; *dicto audientes*, obedient to, i. 39.

**auditio, ōnis, f. (audio).** 1) The act of hearing. 2) That which is heard; rumor, report.

**augeo, ēre, xi, ctum, v. tr.** To increase, enlarge, augment; to enrich, advance, promote.

**Aulerci, ōrum, m.** A people in Gallia Celtica, divided into four branches: 1) *Brannovices (Brannovii)*, on the Liger (*Loire*), vii. 75. 2) *Cenomāni*, west of the *Carnūtes*, vii. 4, 75. 3) *Eburonices*, north of the *Carnūtes*, ii. 34; iii. 17; vii. 75. 4) *Diablintes*, north-west of the *Cenomāni*, iii. 9.

**Aulercus, i, m.** One of the Aulerci, vii. 57.

**Aulus, i, m.** A Roman praenomen.

**auriga, ae, m. (aurea, a bridle, ago).** A charioteer, driver.

**auris, is, f.** The ear.

**Aurunculēius, i, m. Lucius Aurunculēius Colla**, one of Caesar's lieutenants, ii. 11; iv. 22; v. 24, sq.

**Ausci, ōrum, m.** A people in Aquitania, iii. 27.

**ausus, a, um, part.** from *audeo*.

**aut, conj.** Or; *aut . . . aut*, either . . . or. G. 554, II. 2.

**autem, conj.** But, moreover; while, i. 2.

**autumnus, i, m. (augeo).** Autumn, the season of harvest.

**auxi.** See *Augeo*.

**auxiliāris, e, adj. (auxilium).** Auxiliary, aiding, assisting. *Subs.* m. pl. The auxiliaries.

**auxilior, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. (auxilium).** To aid, assist, succor, help.

**auxilium, i, n. (augeo).** Help, aid, assistance; remedy, resource, support; auxiliary troops, i. 24.

**Avāricensis, e, adj. (Avārticum).** Of or relating to Avaricum, vii. 47.

**Avāricum, i, n.** A town of the Bituriges, now *Bourges*, vii. 13, 15, 18, 31, 47.

**āvāritia, ae, f. (āvārus, avaricious).** Avarice, covetousness.

**āvēho, ēre, vezi, vectum, v. tr.** To convey away.

**āversus, a, um, 1) part.** from *āver-*

*to*; 2) adj. Turned away [opp. to *adversus*], backwards, in the back; *aversum hostem*, a flying enemy, i. 26.

**ā-vertō, ēre, ti, sum, v. tr.** To turn away, remove, divert, estrange.

**āvis, is, f.** A bird.

**āvus, i, m.** A grandfather.

**Axōna, ae, m.** A river in Gallia Belgica, now the *Aisne*, a tributary of the *Isāra (Oise)*, which flows into the *Sequāna (Seine)*, ii. 5, 9.

## B.

**Bacēnis silva, f.** An extensive forest in Germany; acc. to Mannert, the western part of the Thuringian Forest; acc. to Reichard, the Hartz, vi. 10.

**Bacillus.** See *Sextius*.

**Bāleāris, e, adj.** Balearic; of the Balearic Islands (*Majorca* and *Minorca*), ii. 7.

**baltēus, i, m.** A girdle, belt; a sword-belt.

**Balventius, i, m. Titus**, a brave centurion, v. 35.

**barbārus, a, um, 1) Adj.** Foreign, strange, barbarous; wild, savage, uncivilized. 2) *Subs.* A barbarian, for-eigner.

**Bāsillus, i, m.** See *Minūcius*.

**Bātāvi, ōrum, m.** The Batavians; *Bātāvōrum insulā*, the island bounded by the northern arm of the *Rhēnus*, (*Rhine*), the *Vahālis (Waal)*, the *Mōsa (Meuse)*, and the ocean, iv. 10.

**Belgae, ārum, m.** The Belgians, a powerful and warlike people, dwelling in Northern Gaul, between the *Rhēnus (Rhine)*, the *Sequāna (Seine)*, *Matrōna (Marne)*, and the North Sea. i. 1; ii. 1, 4, 14, 38.

**Belgium, i, n.** A part of Gallia Belgica, north of the *Isāra (Oise)*, inhabited by the *Bellovāci*, *Atrebatēs*, and the *Ambiāni*, v. 25.

**bellicōsus, a, um, adj. (bellicus).** Warlike, fierce in war.

**bellicus**, *a, um*, adj. (*bellum*). Of or pertaining to war, warlike.

**bello**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. intr. (*bellum*). To wage or carry on war.

**Bellocassi**, *ōrum*, m. [also *Velocasses, ium*, ii. 4]. A people of Gallia Belgica, occupying the country east of the Calcti, along the Sequāna (*Seine*), to the Isāra (*Oise*). Their capital was Rotomāgus (*Rouen*), vii. 75.

**Bellōvāci**, *ōrum*, m. A powerful people of Gallia Belgica, between the Sequāna (*Seine*), the Isāra (*Oise*), and the Samāra (*Somme*). Capital, Bratuspantium, ii. 4, 13, 14; vii. 59, 75.

**bellum**, *i, n.* (*duellum, duo*). War.

**bēne**, *mēlius, optime*, adv. (*bōnus*). Well, rightly, favorably, happily, successfully.

**bēnēficiūm**, *i, n.* (*bēne, fācio*). Kindness, favor, good deed, benefit, service.

**bēnēvōlentia**, *ae, f.* (*bēne, vōlo*). Friendly disposition, good will, inclination, friendship.

**Bibracte**, *is, n.* The capital of the Aedui, in Gallia Celtica; later Augustodūnum, now *Autun*, i. 23; vii. 55, 63, 90.

**Bibrax**, *actis, n.* A town of the Remi, in Gallia Belgica, ii. 6.

**Bibrōci**, *ōrum*, m. A people in the south-eastern part of Britain, v. 21.

**bīdūm**, *i, n.* (*bis, dies*). The space of two days, two days.

**biennium**, *i, n.* (*bis, annus*). The space of two years, two years.

**Bigerriōnes**, *um, m.* A people of Aquitania, at the foot of the Pyrenees, iii. 27.

**bīni**, *ae, a, num.* distrib. (*bis*). Two by two, two each.

**bīpartīto**, adv. (*bis, partio*). In two divisions, in two lines, i. 25.

**bīpēdālīs**, *e, adj.* (*bis, pes*). Two feet long, broad, or thick; *trabes*, iv. 17.

**bis**, num. adv. Twice.

**Bitūriges**, *um, m.* A people of Gallia Celtica, i. 18; vii. 5, 8, 9, 15.

**Boduogaātus**, *i, m.* A leader of the Nervii, ii. 23.

**Boii**, *ōrum*, m. The Boii, a widely-extended and nomadic people, who dwelt chiefly in Gaul, Italy, and Germany. In Gallia Celtica their district was between the Liger (*Loire*) and the Elāver (*Allier*), i. 5, 25, 28, 29; vii. 9, 17, 75.

**bōnitas**, *ātis, f.* (*bōnus*). Goodness, excellence; *agrorum*, fertility, i. 28.

**bōnus**, *a, um*, comp. *mēlior*, sup. *optimus*, adj. Good, excellent; useful, suitable; well-disposed, friendly.

**bōnum**, *i, n.* (*bōnus*). A good thing, benefit, advantage. *Bōna, ōrum*, n. pl. property, goods.

**bos**, *bōris, m.* and *f.* Ox, cow.

**brāchium**, *i, n.* The fore-arm, the arm.

**Braunovices**. See *Aulerci*.

**Brannovii**, *ōrum*, m. A people in Gallia Celtica, subject to the Aedui, vii. 75.

**Bratuspantium**, *i, n.* A town of Gallia Belgica, in the country of the Bellovāci, ii. 13.

**brēvis**, *e, adj.* Short, brief, of short duration.

**brēvitas**, *ātis, f.* (*brēvis*). Shortness (either of space or time), brevity.

**brēviter**, adv. Shortly, briefly, with few words.

**Britanni**, *ōrum*, m. The Britons, iv. 21; v. 11, 14, 21.

**Britannia**, *ae, f.* The island of Britain, iii. 9; iv. 20, 21; v. 8, 12; vi. 13.

**Britannicus**, *a, um*, adj. (*Britannia*). Pertaining to Britain, British.

**brūma**, *ae, f.* (for *brēvima, brēvis*). The shortest day in the year, the winter solstice.

**Brūtus**, *i, m.* *Decimus adōlescens*, i. e., Decimus Junius Brūtus. He commanded a portion of Caesar's fleet, in the Gallic war, and served under him in the civil war, but finally became one of his assassins, 44 B. C., iii. 11, 14; vii. 9, 87.

## C.

**Cabillōnum**, *i*, *n*. An important town of the Aedui, in Gallia Celtica, on the Arar (*Saône*), vii. 42, 90.

**Cabūrus**, *i*, *m*. See *Valērius*.

**cācūmen**, *tnis*, *n*. The extreme end, extremity; point, top.

**cādāver**, *ēris*, *n*. (*cado*). A dead body, corpse.

**cādo**, *ēre*, *cēcidi*, *cāsum*, *v*. intr. To fall; to perish, die.

**Cadurci**, *ōrum*, *m*. A people of Gallia Celtica, vii. 4, 64, 75.

**Cadurcus**, *i*, *m*. A Cadurcan, vii. 5. **caedes**, *is*, *f*. (*caedo*). A cutting down, slaughter, murder.

**caedo**, *ēre*, *cēcidi*, *caesum*, *v*. tr. (caus. of *cādo*). To cut, fell, cut down, cut off; to beat, kill, destroy.

**caerimōnia**, *ae*, *f*. A religious ceremony; a sacred rite.

**Caeroesi**, *ōrum*, *m*. A Germanic tribe, dwelling between the Rhēnus (*Rhine*), and the Mōsa (*Meuse*), ii. 4.

**caerūleus**, *a*, *um*, adj. Dark-colored, dark-blue.

**Caesar**, *aris*, *m*. 1) *Gāius Julius Caesar*; consult Life, p. vii. 2) *Lucius*, consul 64 B. C., one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war, vii. 65.

**caesus**, *a*, *um*, part. from *caedo*.

**Cāius**, See *Gāius*.

**cālāmītas**, *ātis*, *f*. Calamity, misfortune, loss, disaster, damage.

**Cālendae**, *ārum*, *f*. The first day of each month. G. 642.

**Calēti**, *ōrum*, or **Calētes**, *tum*, *m*. A people of Gallia Celtica, on the north side of the lower Seine and along the coast, ii. 4; vii. 75.

**callīdus**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*calleo*, to be wise). Skilful, shrewd, cunning.

**cālo**, *ōnis*, *m*. A soldier's servant, a servant.

**campester**, *tris*, *tre*, adj. (*campus*). Plain, level, flat; *campestres munitiōes*, fortifications on the open plain, vii. 81.

**campus**, *i*, *m*. A plain, a level field.

**Camulogēnus**, *i*, *m*. A Gallic chieftain, of the tribe of the Aulerici, vii. 57, 59, 62.

**Canīnius**, *i*, *m*. See *Gāius Canīnius Rebilus*.

**cāno**, *ēre*, *cēcīni*, *cantum*, *v*. tr. To sound; to sing; to give a signal with a trumpet; *receptui canere*, to give the signal for retreat, vii. 47.

**Cantābri**, *ōrum*, *m*. [sing. *Cantaber*, *brī*]. A warlike people in the north of Spain, iii. 26.

**Cantium**, *i*, *n*. A district on the southern coast of Britain, now *Kent*, v. 13, 14, 22.

**capillus**, *i*, *m*. The hair of the head.

**cāpio**, *ēre*, *cēpi*, *captum*, *v*. tr. To take, receive, lay hold of, seize, capture; to occupy, gain, reach; to select, choose; *consilium capere*, to form the design, iii. 2.

**caprea**, *ae*, *f*. A she-goat, a roe.

**captivus**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*cāpio*). Captive, captured in war, prisoner; captured, plundered, taken as booty.

**captus**, *us*, *m*. (*cāpio*). Capacity, power of comprehension, notions, ideas, iv. 3.

**captus**, *a*, *um*, part. from *cāpio*.

**cāput**, *itis*, *n*. The head; individual, person; *multis capitibus*, with many mouths, iv. 10; *capitis poena*, the punishment of death, vii. 71.

**cāreo**, *ēre*, *ui*, *itum*, *v*. intr. To be without; to want, be in want of, lack; to be deprived of.

**cārīna**, *ae*, *f*. The keel of a ship.

**Carnūtes**, *um*, *m*. A people of Gallia Celtica, on both sides of the Liger (*Loire*), whose principal town was Genābum (*Orléans*), ii. 35; v. 25, 29, 56; vi. 2, 4, 13; vii. 2, 3, 11, 75.

**cāro**, *carnis*, *f*. Flesh.

**carpo**, *ēre*, *psi*, *psum*, *v*. tr. 1) To pluck, tear off. 2) To assail with words; to detract, slander, calumniate, carp at.

**carrus**, *i*, *m*., or **carrum**, *i*, *n*. A wagon.

**cārus, a, um, adj.** Dear, beloved, highly prized.

**Carvilius, i, m.** A king of the Britons, v. 22.

**cāsa, ae, f.** A hut, cottage, barrack.

**cāseus, i, m.** Cheese.

**Cassi, ōrum, m.** A small tribe in the south of Britain, v. 21.

**Cassiānus, a, um, adj.** (*Cassius*). Cassian, pertaining to Cassius, i. 13.

**cassis, tdis, f.** A helmet of metal, (*galea*, of leather).

**Cassius, i, m.** *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, consul 107 B. C., was defeated and slain by the Helvetii, and his army compelled ignominiously to pass under the yoke, i. 7, 12.

**Cassivellaunus, i, m.** A commander of the Britons, v. 11, 18, 22.

**castellum, i, n.** (dim. of *castrum*). A castle, fort, citadel, stronghold, redoubt.

**Casticus, i, m.** A chief of the Sequāni, i. 3.

**castigo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** To punish, chastise, reprimand.

**castrum, i, n.** A fortified place, a fort. *Castra, ōrum, n. pl.* A camp, encampment; *quintis castris*, in five days' march, *lit.*, at the fifth encampment, vii. 36; *castra motāre*, to break up, to decamp, i. 39.

**cāsus, us, m.** (*cādo*). That which comes to pass, an event, an occurrence; misfortune, calamity; chance, accident.

**Catamantalēdes, is, m.** A chief of the Sequāni, i. 3.

**cātēna, ae, f.** A chain, fetter.

**Cātūriges, um, m.** A small tribe in Gallia Narbonensis, i. 10.

**Catuvolcus, i, m.** King of half of the Eburōnes, v. 24, 26; vi. 31.

**causa, ae, f.** 1) Reason, ground, motive, cause; abl. *causā*, for the sake of, on account of; *auxilii causā*, for the sake of aid, ii. 24. 2) An alleged reason, pretence; *amicitiæ causā*, under the pretence of friendship, i. 39. 3) As a legal term: cause; *causam di-*

*cere*, to plead one's cause, i. 4. 4) Condition, situation; in *eādem causā*, in the same condition, iv. 4.

**caute, adv.** (*cāveo*). Cautiously, with prudence.

**cautes, is, f.** A rough pointed rock, cliff.

**Cavarillus, i, m.** Commander of the Aedui, vii. 67.

**Cavarinus, i, m.** King of the Senōnes, appointed by Caesar, v. 54; vi. 5.

**cāveo, ēre, cāvi, cautum, v. intr.** To be on one's guard, either for one's self or another; to take care; to make one secure (as by bail); *obsidibus de pecuniā cavent*, they give hostages as security for the money, vi. 2; *inter se cavēre*, to take and give security, vii. 2.

**cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, v. intr.** To go, go forth, go away; to yield, retire.

**cēler, ēris, ēre, adj.** Swift, rapid, quick, speedy.

**cēlērītas, ātis, f.** (*cēler*). Swift-ness, rapidity, quickness.

**cēlērīter, cēlērīus, cēlerrīme, adv.** (*cēler*). Swiftly, quickly, rapidly.

**cēlo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** To conceal, hide, keep secret.

**Celtae, ārum, m.** The Celts, a people who, in the time of Caesar, occupied the largest of the three principal divisions of Gaul, i. 1.

**Celtillus, i, m.** One of the Arverni, father of Vercingetōrix, vii. 4.

**Genimagni, ōrum, m.** A people in the south of Britain, v. 21.

**Genomāni, ōrum, m.** See *Aulerci*.

**censeo, ēre, sui, sum, v. tr.** To be of an opinion; to judge, determine, decree, resolve, ordain; to be in favor of, vote for.

**census, us, m.** (*censeo*). A census, enumeration, registration.

**Centrōnes, um, m.** A mountain tribe in Gallia Narbonensis, i. 10.

**centum, num. indecl.** A hundred.

**centūrio, ōnis, m.** (*centūria*). A centurion, the commander of the division of troops called the century. The century consisted originally of one



hundred men, later of sixty. In each legion there were sixty centurions.

**cēpi.** See *Cāpio*.

**cerno**, *ēre, crēvi, crētum*, v. tr. To separate; to distinguish by the senses; to see, perceive; to decide, decree, resolve.

**certāmen**, *inis*, n. (*certo*, to strive). A contest, strife, engagement, battle.

**certe**, adv. (*certus*). Certainly, surely; at least.

**certus**, *a, um*, adj. (*cerno*). Certain, definite, fixed, sure, established; *certiorem facere*, to inform, ii. 2.

**cervus**, *i, m.* 1) A stag. 2) *As a milit. term*: a piece of wood forked like the horns of a stag, a forked stake, vii. 72.

**cespes**, *itis*, m. (*caedo*). A turf or sod.

**cētērus**, *a, um*, adj. [nom. sing. m. not used]. The rest, the remainder, the other.

**Ceutrōnes**, *um*, m. A people of Gallia Belgica, in the region of West Flanders, v. 39.

**Cevenna**, *ae*, m. A mountain chain between the Arverni and the Helvii, now the *Cévennes*, vii. 8, 56.

**Chērūsci**, *ōrum*, m. A Germanic people between the Visurgis (*Weser*) and the Albis (*Elbe*), vi. 10.

**cibārius**, *a, um*, adj. (*cibus*). Pertaining to food, suitable for eating; *cibāria, ōrum*, subs. n. pl.; food, provisions, supplies.

**cibus**, *i, m.* Food, nourishment, provender.

**Cicēro**, *ōnis*, m. *Quintus Tullius*, brother of the famous orator, one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul, v. 24, 38, 52; vi. 36; vii. 90.

**Cimberius**, *i, m.* A leader of the Suebi, i. 37.

**Cimbri**, *ōrum*, m. A warlike people from the north, who, in the latter part of the second century B. C., invaded Southern Europe, and were finally conquered by Gaius Marius 101 B. C., i. 33, 40; ii. 4, 29; vii. 77.

**Cingetōrix**, *tgis*, m. 1) A chief

of the Treviri, thoroughly devoted to Caesar and the Roman cause, v. 3, 56; vi. 8. 2) A chief of the Kentish Britons, v. 22.

**cingo**, *ēre, nzi, nctum*, v. tr. To surround, encompass, enclose, encircle, invest.

**cippus**, *i, m.* A post, sharp stake. **circa**, prep. with acc. Around, about.

**circīnus**, *i, m.* A pair of compasses. **circiter**, adv. and prep. (*circus*, a circle). About, near.

**circūitus**, *us*, m. (*circūmeo*). A going around, circuit, circumference, way around.

**circum** (*circus*, a circle). 1) Adv. Around, about, all around. 2) Prep. with acc. Around, about, in the environs of, near.

**circum-cīdo**, *ēre, cīdi, cīsum*, v. tr. (*caedo*). To cut around; to cut.

**circumcīsus**, *a, um*, part. from *circumcīdo*. Cut around, steep.

**circum-clūdo**, *ēre, si, sum (claudo)*. To shut in, enclose on every side, surround, hem in.

**circum-do**, *dāre, dēdi, dātum*, v. tr. To put, set, or place around; to encompass, encircle.

**circum-dūco**, *ēre, xi, ctum*, v. tr. To lead or draw around.

**circūm-eo**, *īre, īvi or īi, itum*, v. intr. To go around. *Trans.*, to surround, enclose, encompass.

**circum-fundo**, *ēre, fūdi, fūsum*, v. tr. To pour around, to surround; *Pass.*, to collect in multitudes; to flock about or around.

**circum-jicio**, *ēre, jēci, jectum*, v. tr. (*jacio*). To cast, throw, or place around.

**circum-mitto**, *ēre, misi, missum*, v. tr. To send around.

**circum-mūnio**, *īre, īvi, itum*, v. tr. To wall up around, fortify, make secure; to enclose, surround.

**circum-plector**, *i, plexus sum*, v. dep. To embrace, surround, enclose.

**circum-sisto**, *ēre, stēti*, v. tr. and intr. To stand around; to surround

**circum-spicio**, *ĕre, exi, ectum*, v. intr. (*spĕcio*, to look). To look around, gaze about. *Trans.*, to view on all sides; to consider, ponder upon.

**circum-sto**, *āre, stēti*, v. tr. and intr. To stand around; to surround.

**circum-vallo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*vallum*). To surround with a wall; to blockade, invest, encompass.

**circum-vĕhor**, *i, vectus sum*, v. dep. (*vĕho*). To ride around, go around.

**circum-vĕnio**, *ire, vĕni, ventum*, v. tr. To come around, esp. in a hostile manner; to surround, encompass, invest; to deceive, entrap.

**cis**, prep. with acc. On this side of.

**Cis-alpinus**, *a, um*, adj. (*Alpes*). On this side of the Alps, Cisalpine, vi. 1.

**Cis-rhĕnānus**, *a, um*, adj. (*Rhĕnus*). On this side of the Rhine, vi. 2.

**citātus**, *a, um*, part. (*cito, āre*, to put in motion). Driven, urged forward, hastened; quick, rapid.

**citĕrior**, *us*, adj. G. 166 (*cis*). On this side, hither.

**cito**, *citius, citissime*, adv. (*cieo*, to cause to go). Quickly, rapidly.

**citra**, prep. with acc. (*cis*). On this side of.

**citra**, adv. (*cis*). Hither; *ultra citroque*, hither and thither, to and fro, i. 42.

**civis**, *is*, m. and f. A citizen.

**civitas**, *ātis*, f. (*civis*). A body of citizens, state; the privilege of citizenship, citizenship, i. 47.

**clam**, adv. (for *cĕlam*, from *cĕlo*). Secretly, in private.

**clāmīto**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. freq. (*clāmo*, to cry out). To cry out violently, shout aloud.

**clāmōr**, *ōris*, m. (*clāmo*, to cry out). A loud cry, a shout, noise, clamor.

**clandestīnus**, *a, um*, adj. (*clām*). Secret, hidden, concealed, private.

**clārus**, *a, um*, adj. Clear, distinct; plain, loud; renowned, famous.

**classis**, *is*, f. A fleet.

**Claudius**, *i*, m. *Appius*, consul at Rome, 54 B. C. v. 1.

**clando**, *ĕre, si, sum*, v. tr. To close, shut up, enclose; *agmen claudere*, to close the line, bring up the rear, i. 25.

**clāvus**, *i*, m. A nail.

**clĕmentia**, *ae*, f. (*clĕmens*, mild). Moderation, mildness, forbearance, clemency, mercy, kindness.

**cliens**, *entis*, m. and f. (for *cluens*, *clueo*, to hear). A client, dependant, vassal, retainer, subject, i. 31.

**clientĕla**, *ae*, f. (*cliens*). Clientship, protection, alliance.

**clivus**, *i*, m. (*clĭno*, to ascend). A gently ascending height; a hill, eminence, elevation.

**Clōdĭus**, *i*, m. *Publius Pulcher*, a turbulent tribune of the people. He was killed near Rome 52 B. C., in an encounter with his enemy Milo, vii. 1.

**Cnaeus**, better written *Gnaeus*, *i*, m. A Roman praenomen.

**coācervo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*con, acervo*, to heap up). To heap up together; to accumulate, collect in a mass.

**coactus**, *a, um*, part. from *cōgo*.

**coactus**, *us*, m. (*cōgo*). Constraint, compulsion.

**coagmento**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*cōgo*). To join together, connect, fasten together, vii. 23.

**coarto**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*con, arto*, to press). To press together; to press into a small space, vii. 70.

**Cocosātes**, *tum*, m. A people of Aquitania, iii. 27.

**coēgi**. See *Cōgo*.

**coelestis**, *e*, adj. (*coelum*, heaven). Heavenly, celestial. *Subs.* pl., the heavenly beings, the gods, vi. 17.

**coĕmo**, *ĕre, ĕmi, emptum*, v. tr. (*con, ĕmo*). To buy up, purchase.

**coeo**, *ire, ĭvi or ĭi, ĭtum*, v. intr. (*con, eo*). To go or come together; to meet, assemble, collect.

**coepi**, *coeptise*, v. def. G. 297. To begin, commence.

**coeptus**, *a, um*, part. See *Coepi*.

**coerceo**, *ĕre, uā, ĭtum*, v. tr. (*con, arceo*, to shut up). To enclose on all

sides; to restrain, confine; to keep back, check.

**cōgitātio**, *ōnis*, f. (*cōgitō*). Thinking, reflection; design, plan.

**cōgitō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*con*, *agito*). To consider, reflect upon, meditate, weigh; to design, plan, intend.

**cognātio**, *ōnis*, f. (*con*, *nascor*). 1) Relationship. 2) Those who are related, family relatives, kindred; *agnae cognationis*, with numerous relatives, vii. 32.

**cognosco**, *ēre*, *ōvī*, *itum*, v. tr. (*con*, *nosco*). To know; to ascertain, learn, discover; to examine, investigate.

**cōgo**, *ēre*, *ēgi*, *actum*, v. tr. (*con*, *ago*). To drive together, collect, assemble; to force, constrain, compel.

**cōhors**, *tis*, f. A cohort, the tenth part of a legion, consisting of six *centuriae*; *praetoria cohors*, the commander's staff or body-guard. i. 40.

**cōhortatio**, *ōnis*, f. (*cōhortor*). Exhortation, encouragement.

**cōhortor**, *āri*, *ātus sum*, v. dep. (*con*, *hortor*). To exhort, encourage.

**coīre**. See *Coīo*.

**collātus**, *a*, *um*, part. from *confēro*.

**collaudo**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*con*, *laudo*). To praise, commend highly, extol.

**collectus**, *a*, *um*, part. from *colligo*, *ēre*.

**colligo**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*con*, *ligo*, to bind). To bind together, fasten, connect.

**colligo**, *ēre*, *lēgi*, *lectum*, v. tr. (*con*, *lēgo*, to collect). To collect together, assemble; to gain, acquire, vi. 12; *se colligere*, to compose one's self, iii. 6.

**collis**, *is*, m. A hill, high ground.

**collōco**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*con*, *loco*, to place). To lay, put, place; to set up, erect; to station, quarter; to arrange; *nuptum* . . . *collocare*, to give in marriage, i. 18.

**collōquium**, *i*, n. (*collōquor*). Conversation, conference, interview.

**collōquor**, *i*, *cūtus sum*, v. dep. (*con*, *loquor*). To speak with; to converse; to hold a conference or parley.

**cōlo**, *ēre*, *cōlūi*, *cultum*, v. tr. To till, cultivate; to honor, revere, reverence, worship.

**cōlōnia**, *ae*, f. (*cōlōnus*, colonist). Colony, settlement.

**cōlor**, *ōris*, m. The color, complexion, tint.

**combūro**, *ēre*, *bussi*, *bustum*, v. tr. (*con*, *ūro*, to burn). To burn up, consume.

**cōmes**, *itis*, m. and f. (*con*, *eo*). One who goes with another, a companion, comrade, associate.

**cōmītium**, *i*, n. (*con*, *eo*). The comitium, a portion of the Roman Forum. *Plur.*, the assembly held in the comitium for electing magistrates, etc.; hence, election; *proximis comitiis*, at the last election, vii. 67.

**cōmītor**, *āri*, *ātus sum*, v. dep. (*cōmes*). To accompany, attend, follow.

**commeātus**, *us*, m. (*commeo*). 1) A passage, trip, expedition, v. 23. 2) Supplies, provisions, i. 48.

**commēmōro**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*con*, *mēmōro*). To bring to mind, call to mind, remind; to recount, relate.

**commendo**, *āre*, *āri*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*con*, *mando*). To commit to; to intrust, commend.

**commeo**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, v. intr. (*con*, *meo*, to go). To go back and forth, resort to, visit.

**commilito**, *ōnis*, m. Comrade. **commīnus**, adv. (*con*, *mīnus*). In close contest, hand to hand.

**commisūra**, *ae*, f. (*committo*). A joining together; juncture, joint.

**committo**, *ēre*, *mīsi*, *missum*, v. tr. (*con*, *mitto*) 1) To join, connect together, *malis*, vii. 22; *proelium committere*, to join battle, commence battle. 2) To begin, undertake. 3) To commit (as a crime or offence). 4) To intrust, allow, permit, risk.

**Commīus**, *i*, m. A leader of the Atrebatēs, iv. 21, 27, 35; v. 22; vi. 6; vii. 76.

**commōde**, adv. (*commōdus*). Opportunely, seasonably; properly, suitably; easily, without difficulty.

**commōdum**, *i*, *n.* (*commōdus*). Advantage, profit, gain, utility; convenience.

**commōdus**, *a*, *um*, *adj.* (*con*, *mōdus*). Convenient, suitable; profitable; advantageous, useful, favorable, agreeable.

**commōnēfācio**, *ēre*, *fēci*, *factum*, *v. tr.* (*con*, *mōneo*, *fācio*). To remind, admonish, inform.

**commōror**, *āri*, *ātus sum*, *v. dep.* (*con*, *mōror*). To stop, linger, stay, sojourn.

**commōveo**, *ēre*, *mōvi*, *mōtum*, *v. tr.* (*con*, *mōveo*). To move; to affect, excite; to disturb.

**commūnico**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *v. tr.* (*commūnis*). To make common, share with, communicate, impart; *consilia*, to take common counsel, *vi*. 2.

**commūnio**, *ire*, *ivi* or *ii*, *itum*, *v. tr.* (*con*, *mūnio*). To fortify on all sides or strongly; to secure, intrench.

**commūnis**, *e*, *adj.* (*con*, *mūnus*). Common, general, public, ordinary.

**commūtātio**, *ōnis*, *f.* (*commūto*). A changing, change, alternation.

**commūto**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *v. tr.* (*con*, *mūto*). To change entirely, alter; to exchange.

**compāro**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *v. tr.* (*compar*, *alike*). To place in comparison, compare, *i*. 31.

**compāro**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *v. tr.* (*con*, *pāro*). To prepare with zeal, make ready; to procure, acquire, gain.

**compello**, *ēre*, *pūli*, *pulsum*, *v. tr.* (*con*, *pello*). To drive together, collect; to compel, drive, constrain.

**compendium**, *i*, *n.* (*con*, *pendo*). Gain, profit, advantage.

**compērio**, *ire*, *pēri*, *pertum*, *v. tr.* To get a knowledge of, ascertain, learn, discover; *compertum habere*, to have ascertained, *i*. 44; *pro re compertā*, as (for) an established fact, *vii*. 42.

**compertus**, *a*, *um*, *part.* from *compērio*.

**complector**, *i*, *exus sum*, *v. dep.* (*con*, *plecto*, to plait). To embrace, surround, enclose, encircle.

**compleo**, *ēre*, *plēvi*, *plētum* (*con*, *pleo*, to fill). To fill, make full; to complete, fill up; *montem*, to cover, *i*. 24.

**complūres**, *a* and *ia*, *adj.* (*con*, *plus*). Several, many, very many.

**compōno**, *ēre*, *pōsui*, *pōsitum*, *v. tr.* (*con*, *pōno*). To put or place together; to compose, arrange; to build.

**comporto**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *v. tr.* (*con*, *porto*). To bring together, collect, convey.

**comprēhendo**, *ēre*, *di*, *sum*, *v. tr.* (*con*, *prēhendo*). To take hold of, seize, apprehend; to catch, take captive, arrest, *iv*. 27; to lay hold of, to take by the hand, *v*. 31; *ignem*, to take fire, *v*. 43.

**comprōbo**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *v. tr.* (*con*, *prōbo*). To approve fully; to sanction; to justify.

**compulsus**, *a*, *um*, *part.* from *compello*, *ēre*.

**cōnātus**, *us*, *m.*, *cōnātum*, *i*, *n.* (*cōnor*). Attempt, undertaking.

**con-cēdo**, *ēre*, *cessi*, *cessum*, *v. tr.* and *intr.* To go away, retire, withdraw; to yield, grant; to permit, allow, concede.

**con-certo**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *v. tr.* (*certo*, to contend). To match one's self with another in battle; to contend.

**concessus**, *us*, *m.* (*concedo*). Permission, leave.

**con-cīdo**, *ēre*, *cīdi*, *v. intr.* (*cādo*). To fall; to perish.

**con-cīdo**, *ēre*, *cīdi*, *cīsum*, *v. tr.* (*caedo*). To cut to pieces; to cut down, destroy; to divide, intersect.

**concilio**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *v. tr.* (*concilium*). To bring together, unite; to gain the favor of, win, conciliate; to obtain, gain, procure.

**concilium**, *i*, *n.* (*concio*, to collect). An assembly, meeting, council.

**concio**, *ōnis*, *f.* (*concio*, to collect). An assembly, esp. of the people or of an army, meeting, council.

**conciōnor**, *āri*, *ātus sum*, *v. dep.* (*concio*). To harangue, discourse, make a speech.

**con-cípio**, *ēre, cēpi, ceptum*, v. tr. (*cāpio*). To take, receive; to conceive, understand, comprehend.

**concisus**, *a, um*, part. from *con-cido*.

**con-cito**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*cito*, to put in motion). To move violently; to arouse, stir up, incite, instigate, provoke.

**con-clāmo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. intr. (*clāmo*, to cry out). To cry out with a loud voice, shout, call out; *ad arma*, to call to arms.

**con-cludo**, *ēre, si, sum*, v. tr. (*clau-do*). To shut up, confine.

**con-crēpo**, *āre, ui, itum*, v. intr. (*crēpo*, to rattle). To make a noise, make a clatter, vii. 21.

**con-curro**, *ēre, cūcurri* or *curri, cursum*, v. intr. To rush together; to hasten, run to; to engage in fight, charge; to run to assist, i. 48.

**concurso**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. intr. (freq. of *concurro*). To run to and fro, run about.

**concursum**, *us, m.* (*concurro*). A running to and fro; a rushing together, onset, attack; *concursum navium*, collision of vessels, v. 10.

**con-demno**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*damno*). To charge with, accuse of, condemn.

**condicio**, *ōnis, f.* (*con, do*). Condition, situation, state, nature, quality; stipulation, terms, agreement, provisions.

**con-dōno**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To remit punishment; to pardon, excuse.

**Condrūsi**, *ōrum, m.* A people of Gallia Belgica, on the right bank of the Mōsa (*Meuse*), ii. 4; iv. 6; vi. 32.

**con-dūco**, *ēre, xi, ctum*, v. tr. To lead, bring or draw together; to conduct; to collect; to hire, ii. 1.

**Conetodūnus**, *i, m.* A leader of the Carnūtes, vii. 3.

**confectus**, *a, um*, part. from *conficio*.

**con-fercio**, *ire, fersi, fertum* (*far-cio*, to stuff). To press together, crowd.

**con-fēro**, *ferre, contūli, collātum*, v. tr. To bear or bring together, collect, carry; to unite, join; to compare, i. 31; to ascribe, attribute; to defer; *se conferre*, to betake one's self.

**confertus**, *a, um*, part. from *confercio*. Crowded, pressed together, thick, close, dense.

**con-festim**, adv. (*festino*, to hasten). Immediately, speedily, without delay.

**con-ficio**, *ēre, feci, factum*, v. tr. (*fācio*). 1) To prepare, compose, execute, finish, complete, accomplish, bring to pass. 2) To exhaust, weaken, destroy, kill. 3) To collect, procure, furnish, ii. 4.

**con-fīdo**, *ēre, fīsus sum*, v. semi-dep. G. 268, 3; 288 (*fīdo*, to trust). To trust confidently, rely upon, believe, hope, confide in.

**con-fīgo**, *ēre, fīxi, fixum*, v. tr. (*fī-go*, to fix). To fasten together, to join.

**con-fīnis**, *e, adj.* Bordering upon, next to.

**confīnium**, *i, n.* (*confīnis*). Border, limit, frontier.

**con-fīo**. See *Confīt*.

**confirmātio**, *ōnis, f.* (*confirmo*). Confirmation, assurance, word, assertion.

**con-firmo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To establish, render firm, strengthen; to encourage, console; to assure, assert.

**confisus**, *a, um*, part. from *confido*.

**con-fit**, *confīeri*, v. def. G. 297, III. 2. It is done, accomplished.

**con-fīteor**, *ēri, fessus sum*, v. dep. (*fāteor*, to confess.) To confess, admit; to concede, acknowledge.

**confixus**, *a, um*, part. from *configo*.

**con-flāgro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. intr. (*flāgro*, to burn). To burn up, be destroyed by fire.

**conflicto**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (freq. from *configo*). To strike together violently; to struggle with. *Pass.*, to be troubled, harassed, afflicted.

**con-fligo**, *ēre, flizi, fūctum*, v. tr. (*fligo*, to dash against). To strike together. *Intr.*, to be in conflict, fight, engage in combat with.

**confluens**, *entis*, m. (*confluo*). The place where two rivers unite, the confluence.

**con-fluo**, *ēre, xi*, v. intr. To flow together; to flock together.

**con-fūgio**, *ēre, fūgi, fūgitum*, v. intr. To flee for refuge; to have recourse to.

**con-fundo**, *ēre, fūdi, fūsum*, v. tr. To pour or mix together; to unite, join, blend.

**con-gēro**, *ēre, gessi, gestum*, v. tr. To bear, carry, or bring together; to collect, heap up.

**con-grēdior**, *i, gressus sum*, v. dep. (*grādior*, to go). To go, come, or meet with one; to unite with, vi. 5; to fight, contend, engage.

**congressus**, *a, um* part. from *con-grēdior*.

**congressus**, *us*, m. (*congrēdior*). A meeting, a hostile encounter, engagement.

**conjectūra**, *ae, f.* (*conſicio*). Conjecture, supposition, conclusion.

**con-jicio**, *ēre, jēci, jectum*, v. tr. (*jācio*). To cast or throw together; to hurl, send, cast, put; to ascribe, impute; to infer, conjecture.

**conjunctim**, adv. (*conjungo*). Together, jointly, in common.

**con-jungo**, *ēre, xi, ctum*, v. tr. To join together, connect, unite, associate.

**conjūrātio**, *ōnis, f.* (*conjūro*). A conspiracy, plot, combination, confederacy.

**con-jūro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. intr. To swear together; to form a plot or conspiracy, conspire.

**conjux**, *ūgis*, m. and f. (*conjungo*). Husband, wife.

**cōnor**, *āri, ātus sum*, v. dep. To undertake, attempt, try, venture.

**con-quiesco**, *ēre, ēvi, ētum*, v. intr. (*quies*). To be wholly at rest; to take rest, repose.

**con-quīro**, *ēre, quīstvi, quīsitum*,

v. tr. (*quaero*). To seek or search for; to procure, bring together, collect.

**conquīsitus**, *a, um*, part. from *con-quīro*.

**con-sanguīneus**, *a, um*, adj. (*sanguis*). Related by blood, kindred. *Subs.* A kindred, relative.

**con-scendo**, *ēre, di, sum*, v. tr. and intr. (*scando*, to climb). To mount, ascend; to go on board, embark.

**conscientia**, *ae, f.* (*con, scio*). Consciousness, knowledge, feeling; sense.

**con-scisco**, *ēre, scivi, scitum*, v. tr. (*scio*). To approve, decree in common; to adjudge, determine; to appropriate; to *sibi mortem*, to commit suicide.

**conscious**, *a, um*, adj. (*con, scio*). Conscious; privy to, participant in, accomplice, witness of, guilty of.

**con-scribo**, *ēre, scripsi, scriptum*, v. tr. To write together; to write; to enrol, enlist, levy.

**con-sēcro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*sācro*, to hallow). To make sacred; to consecrate.

**con-sector**, *āri, ātus sum*, v. dep. To follow after eagerly, pursue.

**consēcūtus**, *a, um*, part. from *con-sēquor*.

**consensio**, *ōnis, f.* (*consentio*). Agreement, unanimity.

**consensus**, *us*, m. (*consentio*). Agreement, unanimity, consent.

**con-sentio**, *ire, sensi, sensum*, v. intr. To agree, accord, be of the same mind; to conspire, join in a conspiracy.

**con-sēquor**, *i, cūtus sum*, v. dep. To follow, go after, accompany; to pursue; to reach, overtake; to gain, obtain, acquire.

**con-servo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To preserve, keep safe or unharmed; to observe.

**Considius**, *i*, m. *Publius*, an experienced officer in Caesar's army, i. 21, 22.

**con-sīdo**, *ēre, sēdi, sessum*, v. intr. (*sēdeo*, to sit). To sit together, hold sessions, meet; to settle down, take up one's abode; to encamp, take post.

**consilium**, *i*, *n.* (*consūlo*). Deliberation, consultation; plan, purpose, design, intention; wisdom, understanding, judgment, penetration, prudence; a council, council of war.

**con-similis**, *e*, *adj.* Very similar, quite like.

**con-sisto**, *ēre*, *stīti*, *stītum*, *v. intr.* To stand still, remain standing; to take a stand, keep a position; to remain, dwell; to halt, stop, linger, stay; to consist of or in, depend upon.

**con-sōbrinus**, *i*, *m.* (*sōror*). The son of a mother's sister, a cousin.

**con-sōlor**, *āri*, *ātus sum*, *v. dep.* (*sōlor*, to console). To console earnestly, comfort, encourage, cheer, animate.

**con-spectus**, *us*, *m.* (*conspicio*). Look, sight, view, presence.

**con-spicio**, *ēre*, *spexi*, *spectum*, *v. tr.* (*spicio*, to look). To view attentively, observe, see, look at, perceive, behold.

**con-spīcor**, *āri*, *ātus sum*, *v. dep.* (*conspicio*). To get a sight of, see, descry, behold.

**con-spiro**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *v. intr.* (*spiro*, to breathe). To agree together in thoughts or plans; to combine, conspire.

**constanter**, *adv.* (*con*, *sto*). Firmly, steadily; uniformly, constantly.

**constantia**, *ae*, *f.* (*con*, *sto*). Firmness, steadiness; constancy, perseverance, resolution.

**con-sterno**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *v. tr.* (*sterno*, to strew). To alarm, terrify, overwhelm with dismay.

**con-sterno**, *ēre*, *strāvi*, *strātum*, *v. tr.* (*sterno*, to strew). To strew over, to cover by strewing, to spread over.

**con-stīpo**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *v. tr.* (*stīpo*, to press). To press or crowd together.

**con-stītuo**, *ēre*, *ui*, *ūtum*, *v. tr.* (*stātuo*). To put, place, establish; to station, *naves*, *iv.* 24; to post, *praesidia*, *vii.* 7; to set in order; to erect, build, construct, *turres*, *ii.* 12; to arrange, regulate, settle, constitute; to

appoint, *regem*, *iv.* 21; to determine, fix upon, agree upon, *diem*, *i.* 8; to decree, resolve; to levy.

**con-sto**, *āre*, *stīti*, *stātum*, *v. intr.* To stand still, remain firm, remain unchanged; to consist in, depend upon, *in alienā virtute*, *vii.* 84; to continue, exist. *Constat*, *impers.*, it is evident, an acknowledged fact, generally admitted.

**constrātus**, *a*, *um*, *part.* from *con-sterno*, *ēre*.

**con-suesco**, *ēre*, *suēvi*, *suētum*, *v. intr.* (*suesco*, to be wont). To become accustomed, be wont, have the habit.

**consuētudo**, *tnis*, *f.* (*consuesco*). Custom, habit, use, usage; intimacy, intercourse; manner of living.

**consuētus**, *a*, *um*, *part.* from *consuesco*.

**consul**, *ūlis*, *m.* A consul, one of the two highest magistrates at Rome, chosen annually after the expulsion of the kings.

**consulātus**, *us*, *m.* (*consul*). Consulship.

**consūlo**, *ēre*, *ui*, *ūtum*, *v. tr.* and *intr.* To consult, take counsel, deliberate, consider; to consult for, take care for, have regard for.

**consulto**, *adv.* (*consultum*). Designedly, with deliberation, on purpose.

**consulto**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *v. tr.* (*consūlo*). To reflect, consider maturely; to take counsel, deliberate.

**consultum**, *i*, *n.* (*consūlo*). Decree, deliberation, decision.

**con-sūmo**, *ēre*, *sumpsi*, *sumptum*, *v. tr.* To take to one's self; to consume, devour, waste, destroy, use; to pass, spend.

**con-surgo**, *ēre*, *rexi*, *rectum*, *v. intr.* (*surgo*, to rise). To rise together; to arise.

**con-tābūlo**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *v. tr.* (*tābūla*, a board). To cover with boards; to furnish with floorings, to build several stories high.

**contāgio**, *ōnis*, *f.* (*contingo*). A touching, contact.

**con-tāmīno**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*tango*). To defile, pollute, contaminate.

**con-tēgo**, *ēre, tezi, tectum*, v. tr. To cover, cover over, conceal.

**con-temno**, *ēre, tempsi, temptum*, v. tr. (*temno*, to slight). To despise, scorn, esteem lightly, hold in contempt.

**contemptio**, *ōnis*, f. (*contemno*). Contempt, scorn.

**contemptus**, *us*, m. (*contemno*). Contempt, scorn, disdain.

**con-tendo**, *ēre, di, tum*, v. tr. and intr. To stretch vigorously; to exert one's self for, strive for, seek to obtain, make efforts for; to maintain. *Intr.*, to direct one's course to, proceed to, arrive at, march, hasten; to contend with, fight, strive against.

**contentio**, *ōnis*, f. (*contendo*). Contest, exertion, struggle, dispute, controversy.

**con-tentus**, *a, um*, adj. (*tēneo*). Content, satisfied with.

**con-testor**, *āri, ātus sum*, v. dep. (*testis*). To call to witness, invoke.

**con-texo**, *ēre, tezui, textum*, v. tr. (*texo*, to weave). To weave, entwine, join together, unite, connect.

**contigi**. See *Contingo*.

**continens**, *entis*, part. and adj. (*contīneo*). Hanging together, uninterrupted, contiguous, adjoining; continual. *Subs.* (sc. *terra*), the continent, the main-land.

**contīnenter**, adv. (*contīneo*). Continually, uninterruptedly, without cessation.

**continentia**, *ae*, f. (*contīneo*). A holding back; temperance, self-control, moderation.

**con-tīneo**, *ēre, ui, tentum*, v. tr. (*tēneo*). To hold together, bind; to guard, restrain; to bound, confine; to embrace, occupy, enclose; to hold back, check; *se continere*, to restrain one's self; to remain, continue.

**con-tingo**, *ēre, tigi, tactum*, v. tr. (*tango*). To touch, border upon, extend to; to happen, fall to one's lot.

**continuātio**, *ōnis*, f. (*continuo*). Continuance, succession.

**continuo**, adv. (*continuus*). Immediately, directly, without delay.

**continuus**, *a, um*, adj. (*contīneo*). Successive, following one after another, uninterrupted.

**contra**, prep. and adv. 1) Prep. with acc. Over against, opposite to, contrary to, against. 2) Adv. On the contrary, differently, on the other hand; *contra atque*, otherwise than.

**con-trāho**, *ēre, traxi, tractum*, v. tr. To draw together, collect, unite; to make smaller, contract.

**contrārius**, *a, um*, adj. (*contra*). Opposite, opposed, contrary; inimical, hostile, at variance with; *ex contrario*, on the other hand, on the contrary, vii. 30.

**contrōversia**, *ae*, f. (*contra, verto*). Strife, controversy, dispute.

**contāli**. See *Confēro*.

**contūmēlia**, *ae*, f. Abuse, insult, affront, disgrace, ignominy; injury, violence.

**con-vālesco**, *ēre, lui*, v. intr. (*vāleo*). To become strong, gain strength, recover.

**con-vallis**, *is*, f. An enclosed valley, a valley.

**con-vēho**, *ēre, vezi, vectum*, v. tr. To carry, bear, or bring together.

**con-vēnio**, *ire, vēni, ventum*, v. intr. To come together, assemble; to go or come to, arrive; to speak to, address, accost; to be agreed upon, ii. 19. *Convēnit*, impers., it is fit, suitable, proper, agreed upon.

**conventus**, *us*, m. (*convēnio*). A meeting, assembly, court, assizes.

**con-vertō**, *ēre, ti, sum*, v. tr. To turn about, wheel around; to turn back; to change, alter, transform; to turn, direct, iv. 17; *in fugam*, to put to flight, i. 52.

**Convictolitāvis**, *is*, m. A chief of the Aedui, vii. 32, 33, 37, 42, 55, 67.

**con-vinco**, *ēre, vici, victum*, v. tr. To overcome completely; to convict, show clearly, prove.



**con-vōco**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To call together, summon.

**cōrior**, *iri, ortus sum*, v. dep. (*cen, orior*). To rise together; to rise, break out, appear suddenly.

**cōpia**, *ae, f. (con, ops)*. Plenty, abundance, fulness; means, riches; provisions; number, multitude. *Plur., generally*, military forces, troops.

**cōpiōsus**, *a, um, adj. (cōpia)*. Well supplied, rich, well stocked, copiously provided with.

**copūla**, *ae, f.* A grappling-hook, a grapnel.

**cor**, *cordis*, n. The heart; *cordi esse*, to be near the heart, to be dear, pleasing, agreeable.

**cōram**, adv. In person, personally, with one's own eyes.

**cōrium**, *i, n.* Skin, hide, leather.

**cornu**, *us, n.* A horn; trumpet; the wing, flank.

**cōrōna**, *ae, f.* A crown, chaplet; *sub coronā vendere*, to sell as slaves, *i. e.*, with chaplets upon their heads, *iii. 16*; *corona militum*, the line or circle of besiegers, *vii. 72*.

**corpus**, *oris*, n. The body, corpse, person; *totum corpus*, the entire works, *vii. 72*.

**corrīpio**, *ēre, rīpi, reptum*, v. tr. (*con, rāpio*). To seize violently; to plunder; to attack.

**corrumpo**, *ēre, rūpi, ruptum*, v. tr. (*con, rumpo*, to break). To break in pieces; to destroy, damage, injure, lay waste, ruin.

**cortex**, *icis*, m. and f. The bark of a tree.

**cōrus**, *i, m.* The north-west wind.

**Cotta**, *ae, m.* See *Aurunculeius*.

**Cotuātus**, *i, m.* A leader of the Carnutes, *vii. 3*.

**Cotus**, *i, m.* An Aeduan, rival of Convictolitavis, *vii. 32, 33, 39, 67*.

**crassitūdo**, *inis, f. (crassus, thick)*, Thickness.

**Crassus**, *i, m.* 1) *Marcus Licinius*, a triumvir with Caesar and Pompey; he defeated Spartacus and his rebel slaves in Lucania 71 B. C; consul 55

B. C., i. 21; iv. 1. 2) *Publius Licinius*, son of Marcus Crassus, lieutenant in Caesar's army, i. 52; ii. 34; iii. 7, 3, 20, sq. 3) *Marcus Licinius*, son of the triumvir, quaestor in Caesar's army, v. 24, 46; vi. 6.

**crātes**, *is, f.* Wicker-work; a hurdle, fascine, fagot.

**crēber**, *bra, brum*, adj. Frequent, numerous, crowded.

**crēbro**, adv. (*crēber*). Frequently, often.

**crēdo**, *ēre, didi, ditum*, v. tr. To believe, trust, rely upon; to think, imagine; to intrust, commit, consign.

**crēmo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To burn.

**creo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To create, make, produce; to appoint, elect, choose.

**creasco**, *ēre, crēvi, crētum*, v. intr. To grow, increase, augment; to grow into power or influence, i. 20.

**Crētes**, *um, m.* [sing. *Cres, ētis*]. Cretans, inhabitants of the island of Crete, now *Candia*, ii. 7.

**crīmen**, *inis, n. (cerno)*. A charge, accusation; crime, offence, fault.

**crīnis**, *is, m.* The hair.

**Crīognātus**, *i, m.* A chief of the Arverni, vii. 77.

**crūciātus**, *us, m. (crucio, to torment)*. Torment, torture, pain, suffering, anguish.

**crūdēlis**, *e, adj. (crūdus, bloody)*. Cruel, unmerciful.

**crūdēlitas**, *ātis, f. (crūdēlis)*. Cruelty, fierceness, severity, barbarity.

**crūdēlīter**, adv. (*crūdēlis*). In a cruel manner, cruelly.

**crus**, *crūris*, n. The leg, the shin.

**cūbile**, *is, n. (cūbo, to lie down)*. A resting-place, vi. 27.

**culmen**, *inis, n.* Top, summit.

**culpa**, *ae, f.* Fault, guilt; blame, crime.

**cultus**, *us, m. (colo)*. Arrangements for living, manner of life, culture, refinement; dress; worship.

**cum**, prep. with abl. With, together with, among; at the same time with.

**cum**, conj. G. 517. When, as, after, as soon as, while, because, since, although; *cum . . . tum*, while . . . so also, not only . . . but also, both . . . and; *cum primum*, as soon as.

**cunctatio**, *ōnis*, f. (*cunctor*). Delay, lingering.

**cunctor**, *ārī*, *ātus sum*, v. dep. To delay, linger; to hesitate, doubt.

**cunctus**, *a, um*, adj. (for *conjunctus*; *con, jungo*). All united in one whole, all together, all, entire.

**cūneātīm**, adv. (*cūneus*). In the form of a wedge, in masses.

**cūneus**, *i*, m. A wedge, troops marshalled in the form of a wedge.

**cūnicūlus**, *i*, m. 1) A rabbit. 2) A burrow, a passage under ground, a mine.

**cūpide**, adv. (*cūpio*). With zeal, eagerly, earnestly.

**cūpiditas**, *ātis*, f. (*cūptus*). Desire, wish, longing; eagerness, enthusiasm; avarice.

**cūpidus**, *a, um*, adj. (*cūpio*). Desirous, eager, fond of.

**cūpio**, *ēre, tri or ii, itum*, v. tr. To desire, wish, long for; to wish well to, *Helvetiis*, i. 18.

**cur**, adv. Why? wherefore? for what purpose?

**cūra**, *ae*, f. (*quaero*). Care, attention, anxiety, diligence; trouble, solicitude; *sibi curae esse*, to be to him an object of attention, i. 33.

**Curiosolitae**, *ārum*, or **Curiosolites**, *ium*, m. An Armorican people of Gallia Celtica, ii. 34; iii. 7; vii. 75.

**cūro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*cūra*). To care for, attend to, provide for. *With part. in dus*, to order, cause to be done; *pontem faciendum curare*, to cause a bridge to be built, i. 13.

**curro**, *ēre, cūcurri, cursum*, v. intr. To run; to flow.

**currus**, *us*, m. (*curro*). A wagon, car.

**cursus**, *us*, m. (*curro*). Running, speed; course; passage, voyage.

**custodia**, *ae*, f. (*custos*). A watch-

ing, guard, care, custody; *disponere custodias*, to station guards, vii. 27.

**custōdio**, *ire, tvi or ii, itum*, v. tr. (*custos*). To guard, keep watch.

**custos**, *ōdis*, m. and f. A guard, watch, keeper, attendant.

## D.

**Dāci**, *ōrum*, m. The Dacians, the inhabitants of Dacia, comprising modern Transylvania, Moldavia, Wallachia, and upper Hungary, vi. 25.

**damno**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*damnum*). To condemn, doom, sentence.

**damnum**, *i*, n. Loss.

**Dānūvius**, *i*, m. The Danube, vi. 25.

**dē**, prep. with abl. I. OF SPACE: from, away from; *de finibus suis*, from their territory, i. 2. II. OF TIME: directly after, in, by, in the course of, during; *de tertiā vigiliā*, in the third watch, i. 12. III. OF OTHER RELATIONS: from, of, concerning, in regard to, for, on account of, by; *de pace*, for peace, ii. 31; *de numero dierum*, in respect to the number of days, vi. 36; *de improvviso*, unexpectedly, ii. 3.

**dēbeo**, *ēre, tvi, itum*, v. tr. (*dē hābeo*). To have something from some one; hence, to owe, be in debt. *With the inf.*, to be in duty bound; *debeo*, I ought. *Pass.*, to be due.

**dē-cēdo**, *ēre, cessi, cessum*, v. intr. To go from, depart, withdraw, retire, retreat; to shun, avoid; to die.

**dēcem**, num. adj. Ten.

**dē-cerno**, *ēre, crēvi, crētum*, v. tr. To think, judge, conclude; to deliberate, resolve, determine; to decide, pronounce, settle; to decree, vote, appoint; to fight, contend.

**dē-certo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. intr. (*certo*, to contend). To fight, contend, engage.

**dēcensus**, *us*, m. (*dēcēdo*). The withdrawal, going away; *aestus*, ebb of the tide, iii. 13.

**Decētia**, *ae*, f. A town of the Aedui, now *Décise*, vii. 33.

**dē-cīdo**, ēre, *idī*, v. intr. (*cādo*). To fall off.

**Decimus**, *i*, m. A Roman praenomen.

**dēcīmus**, *a, um*, num. adj. (*dēcem*). Tenth.

**dē-clīpio**, ēre, *cēpi*, *ceptum*, v. tr. (*cāpio*). To catch, insnare, entrap, deceive.

**dē-clāro**, āre, *āvi*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*clārus*). To make clear, declare, announce publicly.

**dē-clivis**, *e*, adj. (*clīvus*). Sloping, descending.

**dēclivitas**, *ātis*, f. (*dēclivis*). Descent, declivity.

**dēcrētum**, *i*, n. (*dēcerno*). Decree, decision, resolution.

**dēcrētus**, *a, um*, part. from *dēcerno*.

**dēcūmānus**, *a, um*, adj. (*dēcem*). Of or belonging to the tenth; *porta decumana*, the decuman gate of the camp, so called because in the consular army the tenth cohorts of the legions were stationed near it, the entrance opposite the *porta praetoria*, which was the gate nearest the enemy.

**dēcūrio**, *ōnis*, m. (*dēcūria*). A decurion, the commander of a small body of cavalry (*dēcūria*), originally ten, afterwards more.

**dē-curro**, ēre, *cūcurri*, *cursum*, v. intr. To run down, hasten, march down quickly.

**dē-dēcus**, *ōris*, n. (*dēcus*, honor). Disgrace, dishonor, infamy, shame.

**dēdi**. See *Do*.

**dēdīdī**. See *Dēdo*.

**dēditicius**, *a, um*, adj. and subs. (*dēdo*). Having surrendered; one who has surrendered; a subject.

**dēditio**, *ōnis*, f. (*dēdo*). Surrender, capitulation.

**dēditus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *dēdo*; 2) adj. Devoted, vi. 16.

**dē-do**, ēre, *dīdī*, *ditum*, v. tr. To give up, yield, surrender, deliver; to consign, devote.

**dē-dūco**, ēre, *dūxi*, *ductum*, v. tr. To lead or bring away; to lead or bring down; to convey, conduct, re-

move, withdraw, lead out, bring; to induce, lead, influence; to launch; to conduct home, as a bride, to marry, v. 14.

**de-est**. See *Dēsum*.

**dēfātīgatio**, *ōnis*, f. (*dēfātigo*). Fatigue, weariness, exhaustion.

**dē-fātigo**, āre, *āvi*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*fātigo*, to weary). To make weary, tire out, fatigue, exhaust.

**dēfectio**, *ōnis*, f. (*dēficio*). Defection, desertion, revolt.

**dē-fendo**, ēre, *dī*, *sum*, v. tr. To ward off, repel, keep off; to defend, protect.

**dēfensio**, *ōnis*, f. (*dēfendo*). Defence, protection.

**dēfensor**, *ōris*, m. (*dēfendo*). A defender, protector.

**dē-fēro**, *ferre*, *tūli*, *lātum*, v. tr. To bear or bring away, carry, convey; to tell, inform; to produce, offer, present, bring before, iii. 23; to confer upon, bestow, v. 6.

**dēfessus**, *a, um*, adj. (*dēfētiscor*, to grow weary). Wearied, tired out, fatigued, exhausted.

**dē-ficio**, ēre, *fēci*, *fectum*, v. tr. and intr. (*fācio*). To fail, fall away from, separate from, revolt; to become feeble, grow weak; to perish; to be wanting; *animo deficere*, to become discouraged, vii. 30.

**dē-figo**, ēre, *fixi*, *fixum*, v. tr. (*figo*, to fix). To drive down, fasten, fix, plant.

**dē-finio**, ēre, *fini* or *ii*, *itum*, v. tr. To set bounds to, define, determine, restrict.

**dēfixus**, *a, um*, part. from *dēfigo*.

**dē-fluo**, ēre, *uzi*, *uzum*, v. intr. To flow down, flow, iv. 10.

**dē-fōre** = *dēfūtūrum esse*, v. def. G. 297, III. 2. To be about to be wanting, v. 56.

**dē-formis**, *e*, adj. (*forma*). Misshapen, deformed, ugly, unsightly.

**dē-fūgio**, ēre, *fūgi*, *fūgitum*, v. tr. and intr. To flee away; to shun, avoid.

**dēfūi**. See *Dēsum*.

**deinceps**, adv. (*deinde, cāpio*). One after the other, successively; after, next after.

**de-inde**, adv. Then, afterwards, next.

**dejectus**, *us, m.* (*dejicio*). A depression, declivity, descent.

**de-jicio**, *ēre, jēci, jectum*, v. tr. (*jācio*). To throw down, cast down, dislodge, drive; to precipitate; to destroy, kill; to deprive of, disappoint, *spe*, i. 8.

**dēlātus**, *a, um*, part. from *dēfero*.

**dē-lecto**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*lācio*, to entice). To allure, please, delight. *Pass.*, to delight in, find pleasure in, iv. 2.

**dēlectus**, *us, m.* (*dēligo, ēre*). A choice, selection; a levy of soldiers.

**dēlectus**, *a, um*, part. from *dēligo, ēre*.

**dēleo**, *ēre, ēvi, ētum*, v. tr. To destroy, blot out, overthrow.

**dē-libēro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*libra*, pair of scales). To weigh well in mind; to ponder upon, consider; to determine, resolve; to take counsel, consult.

**dē-libro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*liber*, bark). To take off the bark, to peel, vii. 73.

**dēlictum**, *i, n.* (*dēlinguo*, to fail). A crime, offence, fault.

**dē-ligo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*ligo*, to bind). To bind, tie, fasten.

**dē-ligo**, *ēre, lēgi, lectum*, v. tr. (*lāgo*, to collect). To select, choose; to levy; to detail, γ-11.

**dē-litesco**, *ēre, lītui*, v. intr. (*lāteo*). To hide away, conceal one's self.

**dēmentia**, *ae, f.* (*dē, mens*). Madness, folly, want of reason.

**dē-mēto**, *ēre, messui, messum*, v. tr. To cut down; to reap.

**dē-migro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. intr. (*migro*, to migrate). To move from, remove, go away, depart, withdraw.

**dē-mīnuo**, *ēre, ui, ūtum*, v. tr. (*mīnus*). To diminish, lessen; to take away from, weaken, impair.

**dē-mitto**, *ēre, misi, missum*, v. tr.

To send or thrust down; to let down, let fall; to lower; *se demittere*, to descend, v. 32; *se animo demittere*, to lose courage, vii. 29; *demissa loca*, places lying low, vii. 72.

**dēmo**, *ēre, dempsi, demptum*, v. tr. (*dē, ōmo*). To take off, remove.

**dē-monstro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*monstro*, to show). To point out, show, demonstrate; to name, designate; to declare, state, mention.

**dē-mōror**, *āri, ātus sum*, v. dep. To delay, hinder, detain; to linger, tarry.

**dēmum**, adv. At length, at last, finally.

**dē-nēgo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To deny, refuse.

**dēni**, *ae, a, num.* distrib. (*dēcem*). Ten by ten, every ten, each ten.

**dēnique**, adv. (prob. for *deinque*). And then; at last, at length, finally; in short, in a word, ii. 33.

**densus**, *a, um*, adj. Thick, dense, close, crowded.

**dē-nuntio**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To announce, declare, intimate; to menace, threaten; to command, vi. 10.

**dē-pello**, *ēre, pūli, pulsum*, v. tr. To drive out or away; to remove, repel, dislodge; to ward off, avert.

**dē-perdo**, *ēre, didi, ditum*, v. tr. (*perdo*, to destroy). To lose, forfeit.

**dē-pereo**, *ire, ii*, v. intr. To go to ruin, perish, be lost.

**dē-pōno**, *ēre, pōsi, pōstum*, v. tr. To lay aside, put away; to place, deposit; to lay down, give up.

**dē-pōpūlor**, *āri, ātus sum*, v. dep. To lay waste, ravage, plunder. *Perf. part. with pass. sig.* G. 231, 2, *depulatis agris*, i. 11.

**dē-porto**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To carry off, convey away.

**dē-posco**, *ēre, pōposci*, v. tr. To demand, require, request earnestly.

**dēpōsitus**, *a, um*, part. from *dē-pōno*.

**dēprēcātor**, *ōris, m.* (*dēprēcōr*). An intercessor, mediator.

**dē-prēcōr**, *āri, ātus sum*, v. dep.

(*prēcor*, to pray). To avert by prayer; to pray for deliverance from, *mortem*, vii. 40; to beseech, implore, intercede.

**dē-prēhendo**, *ēre, di, sum*, v. tr. To seize, capture; to discover, find; to surprise.

**dē-prīmo**, *ēre, pressi, pressum*, v. tr. (*prēmo*). To sink; to depress.

**dē-pugno**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. intr. To fight earnestly; to contend.

**dēpulsus**, *a, um*, part. from *dē-pello*.

**dē-rivo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*ri-vus*). To draw off; to convey away.

**dē-rōgo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. 1) To repeal in part. 2) To take away, lessen.

**dē-scendo**, *ēre, di, sum*, v. intr. (*scando*, to climb). To come down, descend, march down; to agree to, resort to, v. 29.

**dē-sēco**, *āre, ui, tum*, v. tr. To cut off.

**dē-sēro**, *ēre, ui, tum*, v. tr. To leave, forsake, abandon, desert.

**dēsertor**, *ōris*, m. (*dēsēro*). A deserter.

**dēsertus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *dēsēro*; 2) adj. Desert, solitary, uninhabited.

**dēsīdēro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To long for, desire; to miss, feel the want of; lose, v. 23.

**dē-sīdia**, *ae*, f. (*sēdeo*, to sit). Idleness, inactivity, slothfulness.

**dē-signo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*signo*, to mark). To mark out, designate, describe; to signify, denote.

**dē-silio**, *ēre, ui* or *ii, sultum*, v. intr. (*salio*, to leap). To leap down; to alight, dismount.

**dē-sisto**, *ēre, stiti, stitum*, v. intr. To leave off, desist, cease.

**despectus**, *a, um*, part. from *dē-spicio*.

**despectus**, *us*, m. (*despicio*). A looking down upon, a view from. *Phur.*, heights, ii. 29.

**despērātio**, *ōnis*, f. (*despēro*). Despair, desperation.

**dē-spēro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. and intr. To despair, lose confidence in, despond; *desperati homines*, desperate men, vii. 3.

**dē-spicio**, *ēre, spexi, spectrum*, v. tr. (*spēcio*, to look). To look down upon, despise, disregard, undervalue.

**dē-spōlio**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To rob, plunder, deprive of.

**dēstīno**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To make fast; to bind to, fasten; to determine, destine; to appoint.

**dēstīti**. See *Dēsisto*.

**dē-stītuo**, *ēre, ui, ūtum*, v. tr. (*stātuo*). To abandon, forsake, not to aid, i. 16.

**dēstrictus**, *a, um*, part. from *dē-stringo*.

**dē-stringo**, *ēre, strinzi, strictum*, v. tr. To strip off; to unsheathe, draw; *gladiis dēstrictis*, with drawn swords, i. 25.

**dē-sum**, *esse, fui*, v. intr. To be wanting, fail, be absent.

**dē-sūper**, adv. From above, above.

**dētērior**, *us*, adj. G. 166. Worse, inferior.

**dē-terreo**, *ēre, ui, ttum*, v. tr. To frighten away, deter; to prevent.

**dē-testor**, *āri, ātus sum*, v. dep. (*testis*). To imprecate, curse.

**dē-tīneo**, *ēre, ui, tentum*, v. tr. (*tēneo*). To keep back; to detain, stop, hinder.

**dē-tracto**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*trāho*). To refuse, decline, avoid.

**detractus**, *a, um*, part. from *dē-trāho*.

**dē-trāho**, *ēre, xi, ctum*, v. tr. To draw off, remove; to take from or away, withdraw.

**dētrīmentōsus**, *a, um*, adj. (*dētrīmentum*). Hurtful, detrimental

**dētrīmentum**, *i, n*. (*dēlēro*, to rub away). Loss, damage, injury, detriment; defeat, overthrow.

**dē-trūdo**, *ēre, si, sum*, v. tr. (*trūdo*, to thrust). To thrust off, remove.

**dētūli**. See *Dēfero*.

**dē-turbo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*turbo*, to disturb). To drive, thrust,

or cast down; to dislodge, drive away.

**de-ūro, ēre, ussi, ustum, v. tr.** To burn up, consume.

**deus, i, m.** A god, deity.

**deustus, a, um, part.** from *deūro*.

**dē-vēho, ēre, xi, ctum, v. tr.** To carry or convey away; to bring, convey, remove.

**dē-vēnio, ire, vēni, ventum, v. intr.** To come from; to go to, arrive at, reach.

**dēvēxus, a, um, adj. (dēvēho).** Inclining downward, sloping, steep.

**dē-vinco, ēre, vici, victum, v. tr.** To conquer completely, subdue, subjugate.

**dē-vōco, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** To call away, call down; to involve; in *dubium*, to hazard, vi. 7.

**dēvōtus, a, um, 1)** part. from *dēvōreo*; **2)** adj. Devoted, attached, faithful. *Subs. pl.* Faithful followers, iii. 22.

**dē-vōveo, ēre, ōvi, ōtum, v. tr.** To vow, devote as an offering, vi. 17; to give up, attach, iii. 22.

**dexter, tēra, tērum, and tra, trum, adj.** Right, on the right; *dextra, ae, f. subs.* (sc. *mānus*), the right hand.

**Diablintes, um, m.** See *Aulerci*.

**dīco, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (dīco, ēre).** To dedicate, consecrate; to devote, give, offer.

**dīco, ēre, dixi, dictum, v. tr.** To say, tell, mention; to speak; to appoint, name; to pronounce, deliver; *causam*, to plead a cause, make a defence, i. 4; *locum colloquio*, to fix upon, appoint, i. 34; *jus*, to administer justice, vi. 23.

**dictio, ōnis, f. (dīco).** A speaking, pleading; *causae dictionis*, for (of) making his defence, i. 4.

**dictum, i, n. (dīco).** Word, saying, command; *dicto audientes esse*, to be obedient, i. 39.

**dī-dūco, ēre, xi, ctum, v. tr.** To draw apart, separate, divide; to distribute, disperse, scatter.

**dies, ei, m. and f. G. 123.** A day;

in *dies*, from day to day, daily; *multo die*, late in the day, i. 22; *diem ex die*, day after day, from day to day, i. 16.

**diffēro, ferre, distūli, dīlātum, v. tr. (dis, fēro).** To carry in different directions; to scatter, disperse; to put off, delay, protract. *Intr.*, to differ.

**difficilis, e, adj. (dis, facilis).** Difficult, troublesome; difficult to pass, impracticable, i. 6.

**difficilliter, difficilius, difficillime, adv. (difficilis).** With difficulty.

**difficultas, ātis, f. (difficilis).** Difficulty, trouble, perplexity.

**diffido, ēre, fīsus sum, v. semidep. G. 283 (dis, fido, to trust).** To distrust, despair of; not to trust in.

**diffundo, ēre, fūdi, fūsum, v. tr. (dis, fundo).** To spread apart, to extend.

**dīgītus, i, m.** Finger; *digitus pollex*, the thumb, iii. 13; an inch, or, more exactly, the sixteenth part of a Roman foot, vii. 73.

**dignitas, ātis, f. (dignus).** Dignity, merit, worth, authority, rank, office, position.

**dignus, a, um, adj.** Worthy, deserving, suitable.

**dii.** See *Deus*.

**dī-jūdico, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** To judge, decide, determine.

**diligenter, adv. (dīlgo).** With care, carefully, attentively, punctually, accurately.

**diligentia, ae, f. (dīlgo).** Carefulness, attentiveness, diligence, punctuality.

**dīlgo, ēre, lexi, lectum, v. tr. (dis, lēgo, to choose).** To value or esteem highly; to love

**dī-mētiōr, iri, mensus sum, v. dep. To measure. Perf. part. with pass. sig., G. 231, 2, opere dimenso, the ground having been measured off, ii. 19.**

**dīmīcātiō, ōnis, f. (dīmīco).** A combat, contest, skirmish, struggle.

**dī-mīco, āre, āvi, ātum, v. intr. (mīco, to brandish).** To fight, struggle, contend, skirmish.

**dimidius**, *a, um*, adj. (*dis, mēdius*). Half. *Dimidium*, *i*, n. The half.

**di-mitto**, *ēre, mīsi, missum*, *v. tr.* To send different ways, send forth, send out; to dismiss, let go, break up; to discharge, release; to abandon, give up, renounce.

**directe**, adv. (*dīrectus*). Directly, entirely; *directe ad perpendicularum*, vertically, perpendicularly, iv. 17.

**directus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *dīrigo*; 2) adj. Straight, direct, upright, perpendicular; level, horizontal.

**dīrigo**, *ēre, rexi, rectum*, *v. tr.* (*dis, rāgo*). To place in a straight line; to arrange, order, dispose, regulate; to set upright, place perpendicularly.

**dīrimo**, *ēre, ēmi, emptum*, *v. tr.* (*dis, ēmo*). To take apart, separate; to break off, interrupt.

**dīrīpio**, *ēre, rīpiui, reptum*, *v. tr.* (*dis, rāpio*). To tear asunder; to lay waste, ravage, plunder, pillage.

**dis, di**, insep. prep. G. 344, 6.

**Dis**, *Dītis*, *m.* Pluto, the god of the infernal regions, vi. 18.

**dis-cēdo**, *ēre, cessi, cessum*, *v. intr.* To go apart; to depart, go away, march from; to leave, set out; to forsake, abandon.

**disceptātor**, *ōris, m.* (*discepto*, to decide). An umpire, judge, arbiter.

**dis-cerno**, *ēre, crēvi, crētum*, *v. tr.* To distinguish.

**discessus**, *us, m.* (*discēdo*). A going asunder, separation; departure, decamping.

**disciplīna**, *ae, f.* (*disco*). Instruction, learning, knowledge, science, discipline, system.

**dis-clūdo**, *ēre, si, sum*, *v. tr.* (*clau-do*). To shut apart, separate, divide; to keep apart, iv. 17.

**disco**, *ēre, didici*, *v. tr.* To learn, study, become acquainted with.

**discrimen**, *inis, n.* (*discerno*). Separation, distinction; the decisive point, the critical moment; peril.

**dis-cūtio**, *ēre, cussi, cussum*, *v. tr.* (*quātio*, to shake). To disperse, remove, clear away, vii. 8.

**disiectus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *dis-jicio*; 2) adj. Scattered, dispersed.

**dis-jicio**, *ēre, jēci, jectum*, *v. tr.* (*jācio*). To throw asunder; to disperse, scatter; to rout, put to flight.

**dis-par**, *āris*, adj. Unlike, dissimilar, different.

**dis-pāro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *v. tr.* To separate, divide.

**dispergo**, *ēre, si, sum*, *v. tr.* (*dis, spargo*, to scatter). To scatter about, disperse, distribute.

**dis-pōno**, *ēre, pōsi, pōsitum*, *v. tr.* To place here and there; to arrange, set in order, station, distribute.

**dispūtatio**, *ōnis, f.* (*dispūto*). An arguing, reasoning, argument, debate, dispute.

**dis-pūto**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *v. tr.* To discuss, debate, argue.

**dissensio**, *ōnis, f.* (*dissentio*). Difference of opinion, disagreement, dissension, discord, strife.

**dis-sentio**, *ēre, sensi, sensum*, *v. intr.* To differ in opinion; to disagree, dissent.

**dis-sēro**, *ēre, sēci, sētum*, *v. tr.* To sow or plant, vii. 73.

**dis-simūlo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *v. tr.* (*similis*). To dissemble, disguise; to hide, conceal.

**dissīpo**, *āre, āvi, ā'um*, *v. tr.* To scatter, disperse.

**dis-suādeo**, *ēre, suāsi, suāsum*, *v. tr.* (*suādeo*, to advise). To dissuade, advise the opposite, oppose.

**dis-tīneo**, *ēre, ui, tentum*, *v. tr.* (*tēneo*). To keep apart; to separate, hold apart; to hinder, prevent, detain.

**di-sto**, *āre, v. intr.* To stand apart, to be distant or apart.

**dis-trāho**, *ēre, xi, ctum*, *v. tr.* To draw asunder; to separate, divide, disjoin.

**dis-trībuo**, *ēre, ui, ūtum*, *v. tr.* To distribute, divide.

**distūli**. See *Diffēro*.

**dītio**, *ōnis, f.* (*do*). Dominion, sway, authority, rule, power, sovereignty.

**dītissimū**. See *Dives*.

**diu**, *dīūius*, *dīūtissime*, adv. (*dies*). For a long time, a long time.

**diurnus**, *a, um*, adj. (*dies*). Belonging to the day, daily, by day.

**dīūtinus**, *a, um*, adj. (*diu*). Of long duration, lasting, long.

**dīūturnitas**, *ātis*, f. (*diu*). Long continuance, length of time.

**dīūturnus**, *a, um*, adj. (*diu*). Of long duration, lasting, long.

**diversus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *dī-vertō*; 2) adj. Turned different ways, separated; unlike, different, remote.

**dives**, *itis*, and **dis**, *dītis*, comp. *dī-veltior* or *dītior*, sup. *dīveltissimus* or *dītissimus*, adj. Rich.

**Divico**, *ōnis*, m. A nobleman of the Helvetii, i. 13, 14.

**dīvido**, *ēre, visi, visum*, v. tr. To divide; to separate.

**divinus**, *a, um*, adj. (*divus*, divine). Divine, godlike.

**Divitiācus**, *i*, m. 1) Brother of Dumnōrix, chief of the Aedui, and friend of Caesar, i. 3, 16, 18, 20, 31, 41; ii. 5, 10, 14; vi. 12; vii. 39. 2) A king of the Suessiones, ii. 4.

**dī-vulgo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*vulgus*). To spread among the people; to publish, make known, divulge.

**dō**, *dāre, dēdi, dātum*, v. tr. To give, give up; to grant, present, offer; to occasion, furnish, bestow; *dare manus*, to yield, v. 31; *in fugam dare*, to put to flight, v. 51.

**dōceo**, *ēre, ui, tum*, v. tr. To teach, instruct, show, indicate, inform, tell.

**dōcūmentum**, *i*, n. (*dōceo*). A lesson, example, warning.

**dōleo**, *ēre, ui, itum*, v. intr. To grieve, deplore, lament, regret.

**dōlor**, *ōris*, m. (*dōleo*). Grief, sorrow, pain, distress, anguish, trouble; vexation, mortification.

**dōlus**, *i*, m. Guile, fraud, deceit, deception, stratagem.

**dōmesticus**, *a, um*, adj. (*dōmus*). Domestic, familiar, private, civil; *dōmesticis copiis*, supplies from their own land, ii. 10.

**dōmīcīlium**, *i*, n. (*dōmus*). A dwelling, habitation, abode, residence.

**dōmīnor**, *ārī, ātus sum*, v. dep. (*dōminus*). To be master; to have dominion, bear rule.

**dōmīnus**, *i*, m. (*dōmus*). Master, proprietor; lord, ruler.

**Dōmītiūs**, *i*, m. *Lūciūs Dōmītiūs Ahenobarbus*, consul at Rome, 54 B. C. v. 1.

**dōmus**, *us* and *i*, f. G. 380, 2, 1); 426, 2. A house, home; *domi*, at home, i. 18; *domum*, homeward, to one's home, ii. 10; *domo*, from home, i. 5.

**dōno**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*dōnum*). To present, bestow, grant, confer, give.

**Donnotaurus**, *i*, m. See *Valēriūs*.

**dōnum**, *i*, n. (*dō*). A gift, present, reward, offering.

**dorsus**, *i*, m., and **dorsum**, *i*, n. The back; *jugi*, the ridge or brow of a hill, vii. 44.

**dōs**, *dōtis*, f. (*dō*). A marriage portion, dowry.

**Druīdes**, *um*, m. The Druids, the priests of the ancient Gauls and Britons, vi. 13, 14, 16, 21.

**Dūbis**, *is*, m. A river of Gallia Celtica, now the *Doubs*, rising in Mt. Jura, and flowing into the Arar (*Saône*), i. 38.

**dūbītātio**, *ōnis*, f. (*dūbīto*). Doubt, uncertainty, hesitation.

**dūbīto**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. intr. (*dūo*). To doubt, hesitate, delay.

**dūbīus**, *a, um*, adj. (*dūo*). Doubtful, uncertain; irresolute, indecisive.

**dūcenti**, *ae, a*, num. adj. (*dūo*, *centum*). Two hundred.

**dūco**, *ēre, duxi, ductum*, v. tr. To lead, conduct, bring, convey, draw; to protract, prolong, i. 38; to consider, think, iv. 30; to reckon, count, vi. 32; to make, construct, vii. 72; *in matrimonium ducere*, to marry, i. 9.

**ductus**, *us*, m. (*dūco*). The lead, generalship, command.

**dum**, conj. While, as long as, until.



**Dumnōrix**, *igis*, m. An Aeduan, brother of Divitiacus, i. 3, 9, 18, sq.; v. 6, 7.

**duo**, *ae, o*, num. adj. Two.

**duō-dēcim**, num. adj. (*dēcem*). Twelve.

**duō-dēcimus**, *a, um*, num. adj. Twelfth.

**duō-dēni**, *ae, a*, num. adj. distrib. Twelve by twelve, every twelve.

**duō-dē-viginti**, num. adj. Eighteen.

**dūplex**, *icis*, adj. (*duo, plūco*, to fold). Twofold, double.

**dūplīco**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*dūplex*). To double, enlarge, increase.

**dūrtia**, *ae, f. (dūrus)*. Hardness.

**dūro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*dūrus*). To harden; to make hardy.

**Durocortōrum**, *i, n.* The capital of the Rēmi, in Gallia Belgica, now Rheims, vi. 44.

**Dūrus**, *i, m.* See *Labērius*.

**dūrus**, *a, um*, adj. Hard, rough; severe, difficult; adverse, laborious; unfortunate, unfavorable.

**dux**, *dūcis*, m. and f. (*dūco*). A leader, commander, general; guide.

## E.

**ē**, or **ex**, prep. with abl. See *Ex*.

**Eburōnes**, *um*, m. A people of Gallia Belgica, between Liège and Aix-la-Chapelle, ii. 4; iv. 6; v. 24, 28, 39; vi. 5, 31, 34, 35, 43.

**Eburovices**, *um*, m. See *Aulerci*.

**ē-dīco**, *ēre, dīxi, dictum*, v. tr. To declare, make known; to order, command.

**ē-disco**, *ēre, didici*, v. tr. To learn, commit to memory.

**ēdītus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *ēdo*; 2) adj. High, elevated, lofty, raised.

**ē-do**, *ēre, didi, dītum*, v. tr. To give out, make known; to exhibit; to inflict upon, i. 31.

**ē-dōceo**, *ēre, ui, tum*, v. tr. To teach thoroughly; to instruct; to inform, make known, tell.

**ē-dūco**, *ēre, xi, ctum*, v. tr. To lead forth, draw out; to march out; to take from; to bring or convey away.

**effarcio**, or **effercio**, *ēre, si, tum*, v. tr. (*ex, farcio*, to cram). To stuff, fill out, fill.

**effēmīno**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*ex, fēmtina*). To make effeminate; to enervate, make delicate.

**effēro**, *ferre, extūli, ēlātum*, v. tr. (*ex, fēro*). To bear or carry out; to bring forth, produce, bear; to lift up, raise, elate; to set forth, publish, divulge, proclaim.

**effīcio**, *ēre, fēci, fectum*, v. tr. (*ex, faciō*). To bring to pass, effect, execute; to make, construct, produce, accomplish; to cause, render, occasion.

**effōdio**, *ēre, fōdi, fossum*, v. tr. (*ex, fodio*). To dig out; to tear out.

**effossus**, *a, um*, part. from *effodio*.

**effūgio**, *ēre, fugi, fūgtum*, v. intr. (*ex, fugio*). To flee away, escape. *Trans.*, to avoid, shun.

**ēgens**, *entis*, 1) part. from *ēgeo*; 2) adj. Needy, in want, very poor.

**ēgi**. See *Ago*.

**ēgeo**, *ēre, ui*, v. intr. To be in need; to be without, lack, be destitute of.

**ēgestas**, *ātis*, f. (*ēgeo*). Want, poverty, need.

**ēgo**, pers. pron. *I*.

**ē-grēdior**, *i, essus sum*, v. dep. (*grādiōr*, to go). To go out from; to march forth, depart from, leave; to disembark, land; to go beyond; to pass out of, i. 44.

**ēgrēgie**, adv. (*ēgrēgius*). Remarkably well, excellently, admirably.

**ēgrēgius**, *a, um*, adj. (*ē, grex*, herd). Distinguished, excellent, admirable, eminent, remarkable.

**ēgressus**, *us*, m. (*ēgrēdior*). Landing, landing-place.

**ējectus**, *a, um*, part. from *ējicio*.

**ē-jicio**, *ēre, jēci, jectum*, v. tr. (*jācio*). To cast out, drive out; to banish, expel; *se ejicere*, to rush out, sally forth, make a sortie, v. 15; *naves in litore ejectae*, stranded, v. 10.

**ejusmōdi**, (*is, mōdus*), G. 186, note.

**Of** that nature, of such a kind, such.  
**ē-lābor**, *i, lapsus sum*, v. dep. To slip away, escape, get clear.

**ēlapsus**, *a, um*, part. from *ēlābor*.

**ēlātus**, *a, um*, part. from *effēro*.

**Elāver**, *ēris*, n. A river in Gaul emptying into the *Liger* (*Loire*), now the *Allier*, vii. 34, 35, 53.

**ēlectus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *ēlġo*; 2) adj. Picked, selected, chosen, choice, excellent.

**ēlġphantus**, *i, m*. The elephant.

**Eleutōti**, *ōrum*, m. A people of Gaul, subject to the *Arverni*, vii. 75.

**ē-licio**, *ēre, ūi, itum*, v. tr. (*lācio*, to allure). To entice out, lure forth, bring out.

**ē-lġo**, *ēre, lġi, lectum*, v. tr. (*lġo*, to choose). To pick out, select, choose.

**Elusātes**, *ium*, m. A Gallic tribe in Aquitania, iii. 27.

**ē-mġgro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. intr. (*mġgro*, to migrate). To remove, depart from; to emigrate.

**ē-mġneo**, *ēre, ūi*, v. intr. (*mġneo*, to hang over). To stand out, project.

**ē-mġnus**, adv. (*mānus*). From afar, from a distance.

**ē-mitto**, *ēre, mġsi, missum*, v. tr. To send out, send forth; to let out, let go; to throw away, cast aside; to throw, cast, hurl, discharge.

**ēmo**, *ēre, ēmi, emptum*, v. tr. To buy, purchase.

**ē-nascor**, *i, nātus sum*, v. dep. To grow out, sprout out, ii. 17.

**ēnim**, conj. For; in fact, indeed.

**ē-nġtor**, *i, nġsus or nġzus sum*, v. dep. To exert one's self.

**ē-nuntio**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To disclose, divulge; to announce, declare, reveal; to express, say.

**eo**, *ire, īvi or īi, itum*, v. intr. To go, march, proceed; to pass.

**eo**, adv. (*is*). To that place, thither, there; to such a degree, to such an extent; to the end, to the purpose; for *iis*, or *in eos*, upon them, i. 42; on that account, *eo quod*, i. 23; *before a comp.*, the, *eo magis*, the more, i. 23.

**ēōdem**, adv. (*idem*). To the same thing, to the same place, to this.

**ēphippiātus**, *a, um*, adj. (*ēphippi-um*). Using housings or saddles, iv. 2.

**ēphippium**, *i, n*. A saddle, housing, iv. 2.

**ēpistōla**, *ae, f*. A letter, an epistle.

**Eporēdōrix**, *igis, m*. 1) A chief of the Aedui, vii. 38, 39, 54, 55, 63, 64, 76. 2) Another Aeduan leader, vii. 67.

**ēpūlae**, *ārum, f*. [sing. *ēpūlum*, *i, n*. G. 143]. Sumptuous entertainments, banquets, feasts, vi. 28.

**ēque** = *ē* or *ex* and *que*.

**ēques**, *itis, m*. (*ēquus*). 1) A rider, a horseman. 2) A soldier serving on horseback, a trooper. *Plur.*, Cavalry. 3) Equites, the order of knights, holding a rank between the Senate and Plebs, iii. 10.

**ēquester**, *tris, tre*, adj. (*ēques*). Belonging to the cavalry, of the horse, equestrian.

**ēquītātus**, *us, m*. (*ēquus*). A body of horsemen, cavalry, horsemen.

**ēquus**, *i, m*. A horse.

**Eratosthēnes**, *is, m*. A distinguished philosopher, and the first systematic geographer, born 276 B. C., in Cyrēne; died 194 B. C., in Alexandria, vi. 24.

**ērectus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *ērġo*; 2) adj. Elevated, high, upright, lofty.

**erga**, prep. with acc. Towards.

**ergo**, conj. Therefore, then.

**ē-rġo**, *ēre, rexi, rectum*, v. tr. (*rġo*). To set up, raise, erect.

**ē-rġpio**, *ēre, rġpi, reptum*, v. tr. (*rġpio*). To snatch out or away; to tear away; to rescue, liberate, free; *se eripere*, to flee, escape, i. 4; *usus navium eripitur*, is taken away, is gone, iii. 14.

**erro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. intr. To wander, stray; to wander from the truth, err, mistake.

**ē-rumpo**, *ēre, rūpi, ruptum*, v. intr. (*rumpo*, to break). To burst forth, break forth; to make a sortie, rush forth.

**ēruptio**, *ōnis*, *f.* (*ērumpto*). A breaking out, a bursting forth; a sortie, a sally.

**essēda**, *ae*, *f.*, or **essēdum**, *i*, *n.* A two-wheeled chariot used by the Gauls and Britons, *iv.* 32.

**essēdārius**, *i*, *m.* (*essēda*). One who fought from a chariot, a soldier in a war chariot.

**Esubii**, *drum*, *m.* A Gallic people in Gallia Celtica, between the Seine and Loire, *v.* 24.

**et**, conj. And, also, even; *et . . . et*, both . . . and, not only . . . but also.

**etiam**, conj. (*et. jam*). And also, furthermore, likewise, besides; even, yet, still, indeed.

**et-si**, conj. Even if, although.

**ē-vādo**, *ēre*, *si*, *sum*, *v.* intr. (*vādo*, to go). To go from, escape.

**ē-vello**, *ēre*, *velli*, *vulsum*, *v.* tr. (*vello*, to pluck). To pull out, tear out.

**ē-vēnio**, *ire*, *vēni*, *ventum*, *v.* intr. To come out; to result, turn out, happen.

**ēventus**, *us*, *m.* (*ēvēnio*). An occurrence, event, result, issue, fate.

**ē-vōco**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *v.* tr. To call out, call forth; to draw, entice; to summon, to invite; to invite to military service; *evocati*, veteran volunteers, *vii.* 65.

**ē-vōlo**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *v.* intr. (*vōlo*, to fly). To fly forth; to rush out, spring forth, sally forth.

**ex** or **ē**, prep. with abl. *E* only before consonants, *ex* before vowels and consonants. I. OF SPACE: out of, from, away from, down from; *ex muro*, on the wall, *lit.*, from the wall, the place from which the action proceeds, *ii.* 30; *ex equis*, on horseback, *i.* 43; *ex vinculis*, in chains, *i.* 4; *ex itinere*, in the midst of their march, *ii.* 6. II. OF TIME: immediately after, directly after, after; *ex eo die*, after that day, *i.* 42; *diem ex die*, day after day, *i.* 16. III. OF OTHER RELATIONS: because, on account of, by, through, according to, of, from, out of; *ex commutatione*

*rerum*, on account of the change, *i.* 14; *ex consuetudine*, according to custom, *i.* 52; *e vestigio*, on the spot, immediately, *iv.* 5; *unus e filiis*, one of the sons, *i.* 26; *ex cortice factis*, made out of bark, *ii.* 33; *soror ex matre*, sister on the mother's side, or by the same mother, *i.* 18.

**exactus**, *a*, *um*, part. from *exigo*.

**ex-āgito**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *v.* tr. To drive out; to disturb, harass, disquiet, vex, annoy.

**exāmīno**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *v.* tr. (*exāmen*, a test). To weigh out, weigh, *v.* 12.

**ex-ānīmo**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *v.* tr. (*ānīma*). To deprive of life, kill, destroy. *Pass.*, to be exhausted, be weakened.

**ex-ardesco**, *ēre*, *arxi*, *arsum*, *v.* intr. (*ardeo*). To kindle, take fire; to be inflamed, break out; to be violently excited, *v.* 4.

**ex-audio**, *ire*, *ivi* or *ii*, *itum*, *v.* tr. To hear from a distance; to hear, perceive, listen to.

**ex-cēdo**, *ēre*, *cessi*, *cessum*, *v.* intr. To go out, go away, depart, withdraw, retire.

**excellō**, *ēre*, *ui*, *v.* intr. To be eminent, surpass, excel.

**excelsus**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*excellō*). High, lofty, elevated.

**excepto**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *v.* tr. (freq. of *excipio*). To take up, *vii.* 47.

**ex-cīdo**, *ēre*, *cidi*, *cisum*, *v.* tr. (*caedo*). To cut or hew down; to demolish, destroy.

**ex-cīpio**, *ēre*, *cēpi*, *ceptum*, *v.* tr. (*cāpio*). To take out; to take up, receive; to incur, meet; to sustain, undergo; to surprise, take captive, capture. *Intr.*, to succeed, follow, *vii.* 88.

**excīto**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *v.* (freq. of *exciteo*, to rouse). To call forth, arouse, excite; to erect, raise, construct, *iii.* 14; to kindle, *vii.* 24; to encourage, animate, incite, stimulate, impel, *iii.* 10.

**ex-clūdo**, *ēre*, *si*, *sum*, *v.* tr. (*claudio*). To shut out, exclude; to prevent, cut off, hinder.

**ex-cōgīto**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To find out by thinking; to contrive, devise; to consider thoroughly.

**ex-crūcio**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*crūcio*, to torture). To torture excessively, torment.

**excūbitor**, *ōris*, m. (*excūbo*). A watch, guard, sentinel.

**ex-cūbo**, *āre, cūbui, cūbitum*, v. intr. (*cūbo*, to lie). To lie out of doors; to be on guard, keep guard; to watch.

**ex-culco**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*calco*, to tramp). To tread down; to make firm by stamping, vii. 73.

**excursio**, *ōnis*, f. (*ex, curro*). An excursion; sally, onset, attack, invasion.

**excūsatio**, *ōnis*, f. (*excūso*). Excuse, apology, defence.

**ex-cūso**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*causa*). To excuse, allege in excuse; to defend.

**exemplum**, *i*, n. (*exīmo*, to take out). An example, warning; kind, manner, way.

**ex-eo**, *ire, iui or ii, itum*, v. intr. To go out or forth, go away, depart, withdraw; to march forth, move out, leave.

**ex-erceo**, *ēre, ui, itum*, v. tr. (*arceo*, to drive off). To exercise, occupy, practise, employ. *Pass.*, to be occupied; to exercise one's self, busy one's self, vii. 77.

**exercitatio**, *ōnis*, f. (*exercito*). Exercise, practice, use.

**exercitatus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *exercito*; 2) adj. Exercised, trained, practised, skilled, versed.

**exercito**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (freq. of *exerceo*). To practise, exercise.

**exercitus**, *us*, m. (*exerceo*). An army, infantry.

**ex-haurio**, *ire, hauri, haustum*, v. tr. (*haurio*, to draw). To draw out; to take away, remove, v. 42.

**ex-igo**, *ēre, ēgi, actum*, v. tr. (*āgo*). To drive out; to complete, finish; to spend, pass; to demand.

**exigue**, adv. (*exiguus*). Scarcely, hardly.

**exiguitas**, *ātis*, f. (*exiguus*). Smallness, small size, scarcity, poverty, shortness, small number, iii. 23.

**exiguus**, *a, um*, adj. (*exigo*). Scanty, small, short, meagre, slight.

**eximius**, *a, um*, adj. (*exīmo*, to take out). Select, distinguished, remarkable, excellent.

**existimatio**, *ōnis*, f. (*existīmo*). Opinion, judgment, belief, reputation, estimation.

**ex-istimo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*aestimo*). To judge, think, suppose, consider, esteem.

**exitus**, *us*, m. (*exeo*). The going out, departure; the issue, result, end, conclusion.

**ex-pedio**, *ire, iui or ii, itum*, v. tr. (*pes*). To free, extricate, disengage; to clear, level, facilitate; to arrange, prepare, make ready; to procure.

**expeditio**, *ōnis*, f. (*expedio*). An excursion, expedition.

**expeditus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *expedio*; 2) adj. Free, easy, unencumbered, unimpeded; without baggage; light-armed, lightly burdened; *iter expeditius*, more practicable, more passable, easier, i. 6.

**ex-pello**, *ēre, pūli, pulsum*, v. tr. To drive out or away; to expel, eject; to remove.

**expērior**, *iri, pertus sum*, v. dep. To try, make trial of; to prove, put to the test; to know by experience; *eventum experiri*, to await the issue, iii. 3.

**expertus**, *a, um*, part. from *expērior*.

**ex-pio**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*pio*, to appease). To atone for, make amends for; to remedy, make good, v. 52.

**ex-pleo**, *ēre, ēvi, ētum*, v. tr. (*pleo*, to fill). To fill up; to complete, make good, finish.

**explōrator**, *ōris*, m. (*explōro*). A spy, scout.

**explōrātus**, *a, um*, part. (*explōro*). Ascertained, established, known, certain, sure, vi. 5.

**explōro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To search out, spy out, examine carefully; to reconnoitre.

**ex-pōno**, *ēre, pōui, pōitum*, v. tr. To put or set out; to set on shore, disembark, iv. 37; to draw up, to marshal, iv. 23; to explain, set forth, vii. 52.

**ex-porto**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To carry out, convey away.

**ex-posco**, *ēre, pōposci*, v. tr. To ask earnestly, request, entreat, implore, demand.

**ex-primo**, *ēre, essi, essum*, v. tr. (*prēmo*). To press out; to force, extort, elicit; to raise up, vii. 22; to express, describe, declare.

**expugnatio**, *ōnis*, f. (*expugno*). The act of taking by storm, storming, assault.

**ex-pugno**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To take by assault; to storm, capture, reduce, subdue.

**ex-qui-ro**, *ēre, sivi, situm*, v. tr. (*quaero*). To seek for; to ascertain; to inquire into, investigate; to ask, iii. 3.

**ex-sēquor**, *i, cūsus sum*, v. dep. To follow, pursue; to follow up, accomplish; to assert, maintain, i. 4.

**ex-sēro**, *ēre, sēruī, sertum*, v. tr. To thrust out; to uncover; *humeris exsertis*, uncovered, bare, vii. 50.

**ex-sisto**, *ēre, stiti, stitum*, v. intr. To stand forth, emerge, appear; to proceed, arise; to be, exist.

**ex-specto**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To look for, await, expect; to desire, long for; to await with fear, to fear; to wait to see, ii. 9.

**ex-spōlio**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To deprive of, strip, rob.

**ex-stinguo**, *ēre, nxi, nctum*, v. tr. (*stinguo*, to extinguish.) To put out, extinguish; to destroy, annihilate.

**ex-sto**, *āre, stiti*, v. intr. To stand out or above; to project, appear, be visible.

**ex-struo**, *ēre, xi, ctum*, v. tr. (*struo*, to pile). To pile or heap up; to raise, construct, erect.

**exsul**, *tilis*, m. and f. (*ex, solum*). An exile.

**exter**, or **extērus**, *a, um* [rare in the sing.], comp. *exterior*, sup. *extrēmus* or *extimus*, adj. (*ex*). On the outside, outer, foreign. *Extrēmus*, the outermost, extreme, last, most remote; *ab extremo agmine*, in the rear, ii. 11.

**ex-terreo**, *ēre, ui, itum*, v. tr. To strike with terror, terrify.

**ex-timesco**, *ēre, mui, v. tr. (timeo)*. To fear, dread, await with fear.

**ex-torqueo**, *ēre, torxi, tortum*, v. tr. (*torqueo*, to turn). To wrest; to obtain by force, extort.

**extra**, 1) adv. Without, outside; 2) prep. with acc. Out of, outside of; contrary to; besides, except.

**ex-trāho**, *ēre, traxi, tractum*, v. tr. To draw out; to protract, prolong; to waste, spend.

**extrēmus**, *a, um*, sup. of *exter*.

**ex-trūdo**, *ēre, trūsi, trusum*, v. tr. (*trūdo*, to thrust). To thrust out; to keep back or out, iii. 12.

**extūli**. See *Effēro*.

**exuo**, *ēre, ui, ūtum*, v. tr. To strip off; to deprive; to despoil; *armis*, to disarm, iii. 6.

**ex-ūro**, *ēre, ussi, ustum*, v. tr. (*ūro*, to burn). To burn up, consume by fire.

**exūtus**, *a, um*, part. from *exuo*.

## F.

**fāber**, *bri*, m. An artisan, artificer, mechanic, smith, workman.

**Fābius**, *i*, m. 1) *Quintus Fābius Maximus*, consul 122 B. C. He conquered the Arverni, Rutēni, and Allobroges, i. 45. 2) *Gāius Fābius Maximus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants, v. 24; vii. 90. 3) *Lūcius Fābius Maximus*, a brave centurion, vii. 47, 50.

**fācile**, *factilius, facillime*, adv. (*facilis*). Easily, without difficulty, readily, well; *non facile*, not safely, iii. 23.

**fācilis**, *e*, adj. (*facio*). Easy to do,

easy, ready; courteous, gentle; prosperous, favorable; *iter multo facilius*, much more practicable, i. 6.

**facinus**, *ōris*, n. (*facio*). A deed, action; a bad deed, crime, daring crime.

**facio**, *ēre*, *fēci*, *factum*, v. tr. and intr. To make or do; to act, commit; to construct, prepare; to cause, render; to furnish, give; *castra*, to pitch a camp, i. 48; *fidem*, to give a pledge, iv. 11; *nilhil reliqui fecerunt*, they left nothing undone, ii. 26.

**factio**, *ōnis*, f. (*facio*). Making, doing; a political party, faction.

**factum**, i, n. (*facio*). A deed, act, operation; conduct, achievement, exploit.

**factus**, a, um, part. from *facio*.

**fācultas**, *ātis*, f. (*facio*). Ability; opportunity, means; abundance, plenty, stock, store; wealth. *Plur.*, property, resources.

**fāgus**, i, f. A beech-tree.

**fallo**, *ēre*, *fēfelli*, *falsum*, v. tr. To deceive, cheat; to disappoint, ii. 10; to escape notice, elude observation.

**falsus**, a, um, adj. (*fallo*). False, untrue, unfounded.

**falx**, *falcis*, f. A sickle, reaping-hook; a military hook used in pulling down walls, iii. 14.

**fāma**, ae, f. Rumor, report; fame, reputation, renown.

**fāmes**, is, f. Hunger, famine.

**fāmilia**, ae, f. (*fāmulus*, a slave). A household, family; servants, vassals, retinue.

**fāmiliāris**, e, adj. (*fāmilia*). Belonging to the family, domestic, private; *rem familiarem*, private property, i. 18. *Subs.*, a familiar acquaintance, friend.

**fāmiliārītas**, *ātis*, f. (*fāmiliāris*). Intimacy, friendship, acquaintance.

**fas**, n. indecl. (*fāri*, to speak). The right, that which accords with the divine law (*jus*, the right by human law); the divine will, right.

**fastigāte**, adv. (*fastigātus*). Sloping, in a sloping position.

**fastigātus**, a, um, 1) part. from *fastigo*; 2) adj. Sloping to a point, sloping down, steep, descending.

**fastigium**, i, n. (*fastigo*). The top, summit, height, eminence; slope, declivity, descent.

**fastigo**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, v. tr. To make pointed; to cause to slope or incline.

**fātum**, i, n. (*fāri*, to speak). What is ordained; fate, destiny.

**fāveo**, *ēre*, *fāvi*, *fautum*, v. intr. To favor; to look with favor upon.

**fax**, *fācis*, f. A torch, firebrand.

**fēlicitas**, *ātis*, f. (*fēlix*, happy). Happiness, felicity, success.

**fēliciter**, adv. (*fēlix*, happy). Happily, auspiciously, successfully.

**fēmēn**, *inis*, n. def. [sing. *fēmēnis*, i, e, pl. *fēmīna*, *ibus*]. The thigh.

**fēmīna**, ae, f. A female, woman, wife.

**fēmur**, *ōris*, n. The thigh.

**fēra**, ae, f. A wild beast.

**fērax**, *ācis*, adj. (*fēro*). Fruitful, productive, fertile.

**fēre**, adv. (*fēro*). Nearly, almost, about; generally; for the most part, in the rule, iii. 18; *non fere*, not usually, vii. 35.

**fēro**, *ferre*, *tūli*, *lātum*, v. tr. To bear, carry, bring; to move, lead; to endure, bear, suffer; to produce; with *se*, to move one's self, to go, hasten; *signa ferre*, to advance the standards, i. e., to march, i. 39; *Rhēnus fertur*, is borne, i. e., flows, iv. 10; *molesto ferre*, to bear it ill, be troubled, ii. 1; to allow, demand, vi. 7; to receive, vi. 4; to say, declare, vi. 17; to offer, furnish, ii. 26; to propose, iv. 11.

**ferrāmentum**, i, n. (*ferrum*). A tool of iron, iron implement, v. 42.

**ferrāria**, ae, f. (*ferrum*). An iron mine.

**ferrēus**, a, um, adj. (*ferrum*). Of iron, iron.

**ferrum**, i, n. Iron; any iron instrument, the sword, javelin.

**fertilis**, e, adj. (*fēro*). Fruitful, productive, fertile.

**fertilitas, ātis, f. (fertilis).** Fertility, fruitfulness, productiveness.

**fērus, a, um, adj.** Wild, rude, uncultivated, barbarous, cruel.

**fervēfācio, ēre, fēcī, factum, v. tr. (ferveo, faciō).** To melt; to heat.

**ferveo, ēre, vi and bui, v. intr.** To glow with heat; to be red hot, v. 43.

**fibūla, ae, f. (figo, to fix).** A clasp, brace, pin.

**fictus, a, um, part. from fingō.**

**fidēlis, e, adj. (fides).** Faithful, true, trustworthy, sure.

**fides, ei, f. (fido, to trust).** Trust, faith, confidence, reliance, belief; security, protection, credit; pledge, promise, word; *fidem dare*, to give a pledge or promise; *fidem servare*, to keep one's word; *in fidem recipere*, to receive under one's protection.

**fidūcia, ae, f. (fido, to trust).** Confidence, reliance, assurance; self-confidence, boldness, courage.

**figūra, ae, f. (fingo).** A form, figure, shape; kind, nature, species.

**filia, ae, f.** Daughter.

**filius, i, m.** Son.

**fingo, ēre, finxi, fictum, v. tr.** To form, fashion, shape, make; to arrange; to devise; *vultum fingere*, to control the countenance, i. 39.

**finio, ire, ixi or ii, itum, v. tr. (finis).** To limit, bound, iv. 16; to determine, compute, vi. 18; to terminate, finish.

**finis, is, m.** Limit, boundary; territory; end, conclusion.

**finitimus, a, um, adj. (finis).** Bordering upon, adjoining, neighboring. *Finitimi, ōrum, m. pl.* Neighbors.

**fio, fieri, factus sum, v. irreg.** To be made, become; to arise, occur; *certior fieri*, to be informed. *Fit, imp.*, it happens.

**firmiter, adv. (firmus).** With firmness, firmly.

**firmitudo, inis, f. (firmus).** Firmness, durability, strength.

**firmo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (firmus).** To strengthen; to establish; to confirm, encourage.

**firmus, a, um, adj.** Firm, steadfast, strong; durable, lasting; valiant.

**fistūca, ae, f.** A rammer, pile-driver, iv. 17.

**Flaccus, i, m.** See *Valerius*.

**flāgīto, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** To solicit earnestly; to importune, demand.

**flamma, ae, f.** Flame, blaze; glow, enthusiasm.

**flecto, ēre, xi, zum, v. tr.** To bend, turn, direct, guide.

**fleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. intr.** To weep, lament.

**flētus, us, m. (fleo).** Weeping, lamentation; *magno fletu*, with many tears, i. 32.

**flo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. intr.** To blow.

**flōrens, entis, adj. (flōreo, to flourish).** Flourishing, prosperous, excellent; influential, vii. 32.

**flos, flōris, m.** Flower.

**fluctus, us, m. (fluo).** Wave, bilow; flood.

**flūmen, inis, n. (fluo).** A river, stream; *flumine secundo*, down or with the stream, vii. 58; *flumine adverso*, up or against the stream, vii. 60.

**fluo, ēre, xi, zum, v. intr.** To flow.

**fōdio, ēre, fodi, fossum, v. tr.** To dig, dig out, dig up.

**foedus, ōris, n.** A league, treaty, compact, alliance.

**fons, fontis, m.** A fountain, source

**fōrem, fōre, = essem, futūrus esse, G. 204, 2.**

**fōris, adv.** Without, out of doors, outside.

**forma, ae, f.** The form, shape, figure, pattern, kind.

**fors, fortis, f. (fēro).** Chance, fortune; *forte*, by chance, by accident.

**fortis, e, adj. (fēro).** Strong; brave, valiant, bold; powerful, mighty.

**fortiter, fortius, fortissime, adv. (fortis).** Bravely, courageously, valiantly, firmly.

**fortitudo, inis, f. (fortis).** Bravery, courage, fortitude.

**fortuito, adv. (fors).** By chance, accidentally.

**fortūna, ae, f. (fors).** Chance, for-

**tune.** *Plur.*, gifts of fortune, property, possessions; fate, lot, destiny.

**fortūnātus**, *a, um, adj.* (*fortūna*). Prosperous, fortunate, happy; well off, rich.

**fōrum**, *i, n.* (*fōris*). A public place, market-place, forum.

**fossa**, *ae, f.* (*fōdio*). A trench, ditch, fosse.

**fōvea**, *ae, f.* A deep pit for taking wild beasts, a pitfall, vi. 28.

**frango**, *ere, frēgi, fractum, v. tr.* To break, shatter; to subdue, weaken; to dishearten, discourage.

**frāter**, *tris, m.* Brother; an honorary title for an ally, i. 33.

**frāternus**, *a, um, adj.* (*frāter*). Brotherly, fraternal.

**fraus**, *fraudis, f.* Deceit, imposition, fraud, treachery.

**frēmītus**, *us, m.* (*frēmo*, to murmur). A murmuring, muttering, a noise, clamor.

**frēquens**, *tis, adj.* Repeated, frequent; in great numbers, numerous, crowded.

**frētus**, *a, um, adj.* Relying upon, depending on, trusting to.

**frigidus**, *a, um, adj.* (*frigus*). Cold.

**frigus**, *ōris, n.* Cold, frost, cold weather.

**frons**, *frontis, f.* The forehead, brow, front; *a fronte*, in front, ii. 25.

**fructuōsus**, *a, um, adj.* (*fructus*). Fruitful, productive.

**fructus**, *us, m.* (*fruo*). The use, employment; profit, fruit, income, advantage; effect, result.

**frūmentārius**, *a, um, adj.* (*frūmentum*). Of or belonging to corn, abounding in provisions; *res frumentaria*, corn, supplies.

**frūmentātio**, *ōnis, f.* (*frūmentor*). A providing of corn, foraging.

**frūmentor**, *āri, ātus sum, v. dep.* (*frūmentum*). To procure corn; to forage.

**frūmentum**, *i, n.* (*fruo*). Corn, grain.

**fruo**, *i, frui* or *fructus sum, v. dep.* To enjoy.

**frustra**, *adv.* Without effect, in vain, to no purpose.

**fūga**, *ae, f.* Flight; *dare, conicere, convertere in fugam*, to put to flight; *fugam petere, capere*, to take to flight, to flee.

**fūgio**, *ere, fūgi, fūgitum, v. tr. and intr.* To flee; to escape, avoid, shun.

**fūgitivus**, *a, um, adj.* (*fūgio*). Fleeing away, fugitive. *Fugitivus, i, m.* A deserter.

**fūgo**, *āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.* To cause to flee, put to flight, rout.

**fūmo**, *āre, āvi, ātum, v. intr.* (*fūmus*). To smoke, emit smoke.

**fūmus**, *i, m.* Smoke.

**funda**, *ae, f.* A sling. *Funda librilis*, a sling or machine for hurling stones a pound in weight, vii. 81. See *Librilis*.

**funditor**, *ōris, m.* (*funda*). One who fights with a sling, a slinger.

**fundo**, *ere, fūdi, fūsum, v. tr.* To pour out; to fuse, cast; to scatter, throw, hurl; to prostrate, vanquish, rout.

**fungor**, *i, functus sum, v. dep.* To perform, execute, discharge.

**fūnis**, *is, m.* A rope, line, cable.

**fūnus**, *ēris, n.* (*fūnis*). A funeral procession, funeral rites, burial.

**fūror**, *ōris, m.* (*fūro*, to rage). Madness, rage.

**furtum**, *i, n.* (*fur*, a thief). Theft.

**fūsilis**, *e, adj.* (*fundo*). Molten, liquid, softened; *fusili ex argillā*, made of softened clay, v. 43.

**Fūsius**, *i, m.* *Gāius Fūsius Cita*, a Roman knight, vii. 3.

**fūtūrus**, *a, um, part.* from *sum*.

## G.

**Gabāli**, *ōrum, m.* A people of Gallia Celtica. The chief town was Anderitum (*Antérieux*), vii. 7, 64, 75.

**Gābinus**, *i, m.* *Aulus*, consul with Piso, 58 B. C., i. 6.

**gaesum**, *i, n.* A Gallic weapon, a heavy javelin.



**Gāius, i, m.** A Roman praenomen.

**Galba, ae, m.** 1) *Servius Sulpicius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants, iii. 1, 3.

2) A king of the *Succsiōnes*, ii. 4, 13.

**gālea, ae, f.** A helmet, usually of leather.

**Gallia, ae, f.** Gaul, the country of the Gauls. 1) *Gallia Cītērior*, or *Cisalpina*, Hither Gaul, or Gaul on this side of the Alps, i. 24, 54; ii. 1; v. 1. 2) *Gallia Ulterior*, or *Transalpina*, Farther Gaul, or Gaul beyond the Alps, embracing modern France, Belgium, Netherlands, the greater part of Switzerland, and the Rhine provinces of Germany, i. 1, 7; vii. 1. Under Caesar, *Gallia Ulterior* was divided into *Gallia Celtica*, *Belgica*, and *Aquitania*, i. 1. Hence the plur. *Galliae*, iv. 20. The *Provincia Romana*, also called *Gallia Narbonēsis* and *Provincia*, was not included in these divisions.

**Gallīcus, a, um, adj.** (*Gallus*). Gallic, belonging to the Gauls.

**gallīna, ae, f.** (*gallus*, a cock). A hen.

**Gallus, a, um, adj.** Gallic. *Gallus*, i, m. A Gaul, an inhabitant of Gaul; in a restricted sense, an inhabitant of *Gallia Belgica*, i. 31; ii. 30.

**Garumna, ae, m.** A river of Gaul, rising in the Pyrenees, and flowing into the Bay of Biscay, now the *Garonne*, i. 1.

**Garumni, ōrum, m.** A people of *Aquitania*, near the sources of the *Garumna* (*Garonne*), iii. 27.

**Gates, ium, m.** A people of *Aquitania*, on the left bank of the *Garumna* (*Garonne*), iii. 27.

**gaudeo, ēre, gāvīsus sum, v.** semi-dep. G. 268, 3. To rejoice; to be glad or pleased.

**gāvīsus, a, um, part.** from *gaudeo*.

**Geidūni, ōrum, m.** A Gallic tribe under the protection of the *Nervii*, v. 39.

**Gēnābensis, is, m.** An inhabitant of *Gēnābum*, vii. 11.

**Gēnābum, i, n.** The chief town

of the *Carnūtes*, in *Gallia Celtica*, on the *Liger* (*Loire*), now *Orléans*, vii. 3, 11, 17, 28.

**gēner, ēri, m.** A son-in-law.

**gēnērātīm, adv.** (*gēnus*). By tribes or nations.

**Genāva, ae, f.** A city of the *Allobroges*, on the border of the *Helvetians*, now *Geneva*, i. 6, 7.

**gens, gentis, f.** A tribe, race, nation; class, kind; a clan embracing several families.

**gēnus, ēris, n.** Birth, descent; race, people; kind, manner, style, nature.

**Gergōvia, ae, f.** 1) A fortified city of the *Arverni*, near *Clermont* in *Auvergne*, vii. 4, 34, 36, sq., 41. 2) A town of the *Boii*, east of the *Liger* (*Loire*), vii. 9.

**Germāni, ōrum, m.** The Germans, inhabitants of Germany, i. 1, 27, 31; iv. 1; vi. 11, 12, 21.

**Germānia, ae, f.** Germany. Ancient Germany was bounded on the north by the German Ocean and the Baltic, on the east by the *Vistula* and the *Sarmatian Mountains*, on the south by the *Danube*, and on the west by the *Rhine* and the German Ocean, iv. 4; vi. 11, 24.

**Germānicus, a, um, adj.** (*Germānia*). Germanic, German, iv. 16.

**Germānus, a, um, adj.** (*Germānia*). German, from Germany, vi. 37; vii. 13.

**gēro, ēre, gessi, gestum, v. tr.** To bear, carry; to administer, manage, carry on, wage; to conduct, perform.

**glādius, i, m.** A sword.

**glans, glandis, f.** An acorn; a ball of lead or clay; ball, bullet.

**glēba, ae, f.** A clod, lump of earth; a piece, lump.

**glōria, ae, f.** Glory, renown, fame, reputation.

**glōrior, āri, ātus sum, v. dep.** (*glōria*). To glory, boast, pride one's self.

**Gobannitio, ōnis, m.** One of the *Arverni*, uncle of *Vercingetōrix*, vii. 4.

**Gnaeus, i, m.** A Roman praenomen.

**Graecus**, *a, um*, adj. Greek, Grecian. *Graecus*, *i, m*. A Greek, Grecian.

**Grāiocēli**, *ōrum*, *m*. A Gallic tribe in the Graian Alps, i. 10.

**grandis**, *e*, adj. Great, large.

**grātia**, *ae, f*. (*grātus*). Favor, esteem, regard, influence, friendship, popularity; gratitude, acknowledgment, return; thanks; *gratias agere*, to give thanks, i. 41; *gratiam referre*, to return a favor, v. 27; *gratiā*, for the sake of, vii. 43.

**grātūlātiō**, *ōnis, f*. (*grātūlor*). A manifestation of joy, rejoicing, congratulation.

**grātūlor**, *āri, ātus sum*, v. dep. (*grātus*). To manifest joy; to congratulate, wish joy; to thank.

**grātus**, *a, um*, adj. Pleasing, acceptable, agreeable; thankful, grateful.

**grāvis**, *e*, adj. Heavy, weighty; important, grave, dignified; violent, unpleasant, severe; oppressive, difficult; *gravis aetas*, advanced age, iii. 16.

**grāvitas**, *ātis, f*. (*grāvis*). Heaviness, weight; importance, power, influence.

**grāviter**, *grāvius, grāvissime*, adv. (*grāvis*). Violently, strongly, severely; unwillingly, with displeasure, seriously.

**grāvo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*grāvis*). To weigh down, oppress. *Pass.*, to be vexed or annoyed, feel displeasure; to be reluctant, hesitate, i. 35.

**Grudii**, *ōrum*, *m*. A people of Gallia Belgica, clients of the Nervii, v. 39.

**gubernātor**, *ōris, m*. (*gubernō*, to steer). A pilot.

**gusto**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To taste, eat, partake of.

## H.

**hābeo**, *ēre, ui, itum*, v. tr. To have, possess, hold, keep; to consider, esteem, regard, know; to make, deliver; *in animo habere*, to have in

mind, to intend; *habere rationem officii*, to have regard to duty, v. 27; *gratiam habere*, to be grateful, vii. 20; *aliter se habere*, to be different, ii. 19.

**haesito**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. intr. (freq. of *haereo*, to stick). To stick fast; to remain fixed, vii. 19.

**hāmus**, *i, m*. A hook.

**harpāgo**, *ōnis, m*. A grappling-hook, grapple.

**Harūdes**, *um, m*. A Germanic people, who dwelt north of Lake Constance, i. 31, 37, 51.

**haud**, adv. Not.

**Helvēticus**, *a, um*, adj. (*Helvētii*). Helvetian, vii. 9.

**Helvētii**, *ōrum, m*. The Helvetians, a Gallic people, whose country, lying between the Rhine, Mount Jura, and the Rhaetian Alps, now forms a part of modern Switzerland, i. 1-25, 26, 29, 30, 40; iv. 10; vi. 25, vii. 75.

**Helvētius**, *a, um*, adj. (*Helvētii*). Helvetian, i. 2, 12.

**Helvii**, *ōrum, m*. A Gallic people in the Provincia, vii. 7, 64.

**Hercynia silva**, *ae, f*. The Hercynian forest, extending, according to Caesar, from the banks of the Rhine on the west to the country of the Dacians on the east, vi. 24, 25.

**hērēditas**, *ātis, f*. (*hēres*, an heir). Inheritance, heirship.

**hibernāculum**, *i, n*. (*hibernus*). Winter-quarters.

**Hibernia**, *ae, f*. Ireland, v. 13.

**hibernus**, *a, um*, adj. (*hiems*). Pertaining to winter, winter. *Hibernus* (sc. *castra*), *ōrum, n*., winter-quarters.

**hic, haec, hoc**, dem. pron. This, it; the latter; such. Abl. *hoc*, on this account, therefore; with *quod*, iii. 4. *With comparatives*, the; *hoc facilius*, the more easily, i. 2.

**hic**, adv. Here, in this place.

**hiēmo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. intr. (*hiems*). To winter; to pass the winter.

**hiems**, *ōnis, f*. Winter, winter time, rainy season, storm.

**hinc**, adv. From this place, hence.

**Hispānia**, *ae, f.* Spain, in Caesar's time divided into two provinces: *Hispānia Citerior*, north of the river Ibērus (*Ebro*), and *Hispānia Ulterior*, south of that river. Hispānia included modern Spain and Portugal, i. 1; iii. 23; v. 1, 13; vii. 55.

**Hispānus**, *a, um, adj.* (*Hispānia*). Spanish.

**hōdie**, *adv.* (*hic, dies*). To-day, this day.

**hōmo**, *tnis, m. and f.* A man, a human being, person.

**hōnestus**, *a, um, adj.* (*honor*). Regarded with honor, respected, distinguished, honored, noble; worthy, respectable, honorable, eminent.

**hōnor**, or **hōnos**, *ōris, m.* Honor, repute, esteem; a post of honor, public office, vii. 57; *honoris causā*, out of respect, ii. 15.

**hōnōrificus**, *a, um, adj.* (*honor, facio*). Honorable, conferring honor, i. 43.

**hōra**, *ae, f.* An hour. G. 645; 645, 2; *hora septima*, the seventh hour, i. e., one o'clock, i. 26.

**horreo**, *ēre, ui, v. tr.* To tremble at, shudder at, i. 32.

**horribilis**, *e, adj.* (*horreo*). Terrible, horrible, dreadful.

**horridus**, *a, um, adj.* (*horreo*). Rough, wild, savage, frightful.

**hortor**, *āri, ātus sum, v. dep.* To incite, instigate; to encourage, exhort.

**hospes**, *tis, m. and f.* A stranger, guest, friend.

**hospitium**, *i, n.* (*hospes*). Friendship, hospitality.

**hostis**, *is, m. and f.* An enemy, a public enemy. *Inimicus*, a private or personal enemy.

**huc**, *adv.* (*hic*). Hither, to this place; to this point, so far.

**hujusmodi** (*hic, modus*). Of this kind, of such a nature, such.

**hūmānitas**, *ātis, f.* (*hūmānus*). Humanity; civilized life, liberal culture, refinement, elegance of manners.

**hūmānus**, *a, um, adj.* (*hōmo*). Hu-

man; of refined culture, polished, cultivated.

**hūmērus**, *i, m.* The shoulder.

**hūmīlis**, *e, adj.* (*hūmus, ground*). Low, humble, poor, weak, insignificant, abject.

**hūmilitas**, *ātis, f.* (*hūmīlis*). Low-ness; insignificance; weakness, feebleness.

## I.

**Ibi**, *adv.* (*is*). There, in that place.

**Iccius**, *i, m.* A nobleman of the Rēmi, ii. 3, 6, 7.

**ictus**, *us, m.* (*ico, to strike*). A blow, stroke, thrust, stab.

**idcirco**, *adv.* (*id, circa*). On that account, for that reason, therefore.

**idem**, *eādem, idem, dem. pron.* (*is, dem*). The same; *eādem ratione*, in the same manner, v. 40; *eādem atque Belgārum*, the same as of the Belgians, ii. 6; *idem . . . et*, the same . . . as.

**Identidem**, *adv.* (*idem-idem*). Repeatedly, often, again and again, at intervals, ii. 19.

**Id-eo**, *adv.* Therefore, on that account.

**Idōneus**, *a, um, adj.* Fit, suitable, meet, proper, convenient; capable, trustworthy, iv. 21.

**Idus**, *uum, f.* The ides, the 15th day of March, May, July, and October; and the 13th of the other months, i. 7. G. 642, 3.

**ignis**, *is, m.* Fire.

**ignōbilis**, *e, adj.* (*in, nōbilis*). Unknown, undistinguished, obscure.

**ignōmīnia**, *ae, f.* (*in, nōmen*). Disgrace, dishonor, ignominy.

**ignōro**, *āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.* (*ignārus, ignorant*). Not to know; to be ignorant of.

**ignōsco**, *ēre, nōvi, nōtum, v. tr. and intr.* (*in, nosco*). To pardon, forgive.

**ignotus**, *a, um, 1)* part. from *ignōsco*; *2)* *adj.* Unknown.

**illatus**, *a, um, part.* from *infēro*.

**ille, illa, illud**, *dem. pron.* That;

he, she, it; *hic* . . . *ille*, this one . . . that one.

**illic**, adv. (*illo-ce*). There, in that place.

**illigo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*in, āgo*, to bind). To bind on, fasten on, attach; to connect, bind.

**illo**, adv. To that place, thither; to that end; *eodem illo pertinere*, to that very purpose, iv. 11.

**illustris**, *e*, adj. (*in, lustro*, to purify). Bright, clear; illustrious, distinguished, honorable; remarkable, important, vii. 3.

**Illyricum**, *i*, n. The country of Illyria, on the Adriatic Sea, extending from the river Arsia (*Arsa*) to the Ceraunian mountains, ii. 35; iii. 7; v. 1.

**Imanuentius**, *i*, m. King of the Trinobantes, v. 20.

**imbēcillitas**, *ātis*, f. (*imbēcillus*, weak). Weakness, feebleness.

**imber**, *bris*, m. A violent rain, a rain-storm, shower.

**Imitor**, *āri, ātus sum*, v. dep. To copy, imitate.

**immānis**, *e*, adj. Immense, enormous, vast.

**immīneo**, *ēre*, v. intr. (*in, mīneo*, to hang over). To project over, to overhang; to be near, vi. 38.

**immitto**, *ēre, misi missum*, v. tr. (*in, mitto*). To send into, throw into; to introduce; to despatch against; *im-misso equitatu*, the cavalry having been sent on, vii. 40; *tribus immis-sis*, beams having been let in, iv. 17.

**immōlo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*in, mōla*, sacrificial meal). To sacrifice, offer in sacrifice.

**immortālis**, *e*, adj. (*in, mortālis*, mortal). Immortal, eternal.

**immūnis**, *e*, adj. (*in, mūnus*). Free or exempt from public service, free from taxation.

**immūnitas**, *ātis*, f. (*immūnis*). Exemption from public service and burdens, immunity.

**impārātus**, *a, um*, adj. (*in, pārātus*). Unprepared, unprovided, not ready.

**impēdimentum**, *i*, n. (*impēdio*). Hindrance, obstacle, impediment. *Plur.*, baggage, luggage of an army.

**impēdio**, *ēre, ēvi or ii, itum*, v. tr. (*in, per*). To entangle; to hinder, detain, obstruct, impede; to render difficult to traverse, vii. 57.

**impēditus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *impēdio*; 2) adj. Entangled, embarrassed, distracted, impeded, hindered, prevented; obstructed, difficult of passage.

**impello**, *ēre, pūli, pulsum*, v. tr. (*in, pello*). To drive against; to urge, impel; to incite, move, persuade, induce.

**impendeo**, *ēre*, v. intr. (*in, pendo*, to hang). To overhang; to be near, impend, threaten.

**impensus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *impendo*, to expend; 2) adj. Great, dear; *impenso pretio*, at great cost, iv. 2.

**impērātor**, *ōris*, m. (*impēro*). A commander-in-chief, general; leader, chief.

**imperātum**, *i*, n. (*impēro*). Command, order.

**imperfectus**, *a, um*, adj. (*in, perficio*). Unfinished, incomplete, imperfect.

**impērītus**, *a, um*, adj. (*in, pērītus*). Inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant, unacquainted with.

**impērīum**, *i*, n. (*impēro*). Command, order, direction; authority, power, sway, dominion; empire, government.

**impēro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*in, pāro*). To command, order; to make a requisition for; to give orders for, demand, i. 7.

**impētro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*in, pātro*, to bring to pass). To accomplish, effect; to obtain, secure, procure; *de salute impetrare*, to obtain terms of safety, v. 36.

**impētus**, *us*, m. (*impēto*, to attack). Attack, assault, onset; violence, fury, force.

**impius**, *a, um*, adj. (*in, pius*, pious). Irreverent, ungodly, impious.

**implico**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, or *ui, itum*, v. tr. (*in, plico*, to fold). To entangle, involve; to interlace, unite closely, vii. 73.

**implōro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*in, plōro*, to cry out). To entreat, beseech, implore.

**impōno**, *ēre, pōnui, pōsitum*, v. tr. (*in, pōno*). To place or put upon; to set on; to put on board, embark; to lay or impose upon; to put, set, station.

**importo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*in, porto*). To bring, carry or convey into; to import.

**imprimis**, adv. (*in, primus*). Especially, principally, in a special degree.

**imprōbus**, *a, um*, adj. (*in, prōbus*, upright). Bad, wicked, depraved, base; seditious, violent; shameless, hold, impudent.

**imprōviso**, adv. (*imprōvisus*). Suddenly, unexpectedly.

**imprōvisus**, *a, um*, adj. (*in, prōtideo*). Unforeseen, unexpected, sudden.

**imprūdēns**, *tis*, adj. (*in, prūdēns*, prudent). Not foreseeing, not anticipating or expecting, unaware, ignorant, inconsiderate, imprudent.

**imprūdētia**, *ae, f.* (*imprūdēns*). Want of foresight, thoughtlessness, imprudence, ignorance.

**impūbes**, *ēris*, adj. (*in, pūbes*). Not having attained to manhood; unmarried, chaste, vi. 21.

**impugno**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*in, pugno*). To attack, assail; to charge.

**impulsus**, *a, um*, part. from *impello*.

**impulsus**, *us, m.* (*impello*). Impulse; instigation, incitement, influence.

**impūne**, adv. (*in, poena*). Without punishment, with impunity.

**impūnitas**, *ātis, f.* (*in, poena*). Exemption from punishment, impunity.

**imus**, *a, um*, adj. sup. of *infērus*.

**in**, prep. with acc. and abl. I. WITH ACCUS., in answer to the question, *Whither?* 1) *Of space*: into, to,

among, against, towards, in. 2) *Of time*: up to, till, into, for. 3) *Of other relations*: on, about, respecting, towards, against, for, as, in, into. II. WITH THE ABL., in answer to the question, *Where?* 1) *Of space*: in, upon, over, among, at, within. 2) *Of time*: in, during, at, in the course of. 3) *Of other relations*: in, on, upon, in the case of.

**inānis**, *e, adj.* Empty; vain, useless, idle.

**incaute**, adv. (*incautus*). Incautiously, inconsiderately.

**in-cautus**, *a, um*, adj. (*cāreo*). Incautious, heedless, off one's guard, vi. 30.

**in-cēdo**, *ēre, cessi, cessum*, v. intr. To move on, advance; to come to, befall, attack, seize.

**incendium**, *i, n.* (*incendo*). A fire, conflagration, burning.

**in-cendo**, *ēre, di, sum*, v. tr. (*can-deo*, to glow). To set fire to, kindle, burn; to inflame, arouse, stir up, excite.

**in-certus**, *a, um*, adj. Uncertain, indefinite, doubtful; unreliable, not sure, not trustworthy.

**in-cido**, *ēre, cidi, cāsum*, v. intr. (*cado*). To fall upon, come upon unexpectedly; to meet; to occur, happen, arise.

**in-cido**, *ēre, cidi, cāsum*, v. tr. (*caedo*). To cut into; to lop, ii. 17.

**in-cipio**, *ēre, cēpi, ceptum*, v. tr. (*cāpio*). To seize upon, lay hold of; to begin, commence; to undertake, attempt.

**in-cito**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*cito*, to move rapidly). To set in motion, urge forward; to incite, spur on, encourage, stimulate, rouse; *incitato equo*, at full speed, iv. 12; *se aestus incitavisset*, had rushed in, iii. 12.

**in-cognitus**, *a, um*, adj. (*cognosco*). Unknown.

**in-cōlo**, *ēre, cōlui, cultum*, v. tr. and intr. To dwell, live; to inhabit.

**in-cōlūmis**, *e, adj.* (*cōlūmis*, safe). Unimpaired, uninjured, safe, entire.

**in-commōde**, adv. Unfortunately.  
**in-commōdum**, *i*, n. Inconvenience, trouble, detriment, injury, misfortune; defeat, loss.

**in-commōdus**, *a, um*, adj. Inconvenient, unfortunate.

**in-crēdibilis**, *e*, adj. (*crēdo*). Incredible, extraordinary, unparalleled.

**in-crēpito**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (freq. of *incrēpo*, to chide). To call out to one; to chide, reprove, rebuke; to insult, taunt.

**in-cumbo**, *ēre, cūbui, cūbitum*, v. intr. (*incūbo*, to lie). To lean upon; to apply one's self to, exert one's self, attend to.

**incursio**, *ōnis*, f. (*in, curro*). A running against, onset, attack, assault; an inroad, invasion.

**incursus**, *us, m*. (*in, curro*). An assault, attack, charge.

**incūso**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*in, causa*). To accuse, find fault with, blame, complain of.

**inde**, adv. (*is*). From that place, thence; after that, thereupon, then.

**indiciū**, *i*, n. (*index*, informer) Information, discovery, disclosure, evidence; proof, indication; *per indicium* = *per indices*, by informers, i. 4.

**in-dīco**, *ēre, dixi, dictum*, v. tr. To declare publicly, proclaim, announce; to appoint, fix, enjoin.

**indictus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *indico*; 2) adj. Unsaid, unheard; *indicta causā*, the cause being unheard, without a hearing, vii. 38.

**indigne**, *indignius, indignissime*, adv. (*indignus*). Undeservedly; dishonorably, shamefully.

**in-dignitas**, *ātis*, f. Unworthiness, shameful conduct; indignity, disgrace, insult.

**in-dignor**, *āri, ātus sum*, v. dep. (*dignus*). To consider unworthy; to be displeased with, be indignant; to disdain.

**in-dignus**, *a, um*, adj. Unworthy, unbecoming, shameful, dishonorable.

**in-diligens**, *tis*, adj. (*dīlīgo*). Careless, negligent.

**in-diligenter**, *diligentius, diligentissime*, adv. Carelessly, negligently.

**in-diligentia**, *ae, f.* (*indilīgens*). Carelessness, negligence.

**indūciae**, *ārum*, f. (*induo*). A cessation of hostilities, a truce, armistice.

**in-dūco**, *ēre, duxi, ductum*, v. tr. To bring in, conduct or lead in; to introduce; to move, excite, influence persuade; to cover, ii. 33.

**indulgentia**, *ae, f.* (*indulgeo*). Indulgence, favor; clemency.

**indulgeo**, *ēre, dulsi, ductum*, v. intr. (*in, dulcis*, sweet). To be indulgent or kind; to favor, show favor to.

**induo**, *ēre, ui, ūtum*, v. tr. To put on; *se induere*, to fall into or upon; to become entangled in, vii. 73.

**industrie**, adv. (*industrius, diligenter*). Diligently, industriously.

**Indutiomārus**, *i*, m. A chief among the Treviri, v. 3, 4, 26, 53, 55, 57, 58.

**in-eo**, *ēre, tri or ii, ttum*, v. tr. To go into, enter; to enter upon, begin; *rationem inire*, to make an estimate, vii. 24; *numerus inire*, to go into an enumeration, to give the number, vii. 76; *gratiam*, to gain favor, vi. 43; *consilium*, to form a design, ii. 33.

**In-ermis**, *e*, or **In-ermus**, *a, um*, adj. (*arma*). Unarmed, defenceless.

**In-ers**, *tis*, adj. (*ars*). Indolent, sluggish, slothful; unmanly.

**in-fāmia**, *ae, f.* (*fāma*). Dishonor, disgrace, infamy.

**in-fans**, *tis*, m. and f. (*fārī*, to speak). A child, an infant.

**in-fectus**, *a, um*, adj. (*fācio*). Not made, unfinished; *infecta re*, without accomplishing their object, vii. 17.

**in-fēro**, *ferre, tūli, illātum*, v. tr. To bear or convey into, throw into; to occasion, cause, produce, inflict; to place upon, vi. 30; *signa inferre*, to advance the standards, i. e., make an attack, ii. 25; *bellum*, to make or wage war, i. 2; *causam*, to assign or present, i. 39.

**infērus**, *a, um*, comp. *inferior*, sup. *infimus* or *imus*, adj. Situated be-

low or underneath, low; *comp.*, lower, inferior; *sup.*, lowest, last, deepest; the lowest part.

**infestus**, *a, um*, adj. Unsafe, insecure; hostile, troublesome, dangerous.

**in-ficio**, *äre, faci, sectum*, v. tr. (*facio*). To stain, color, paint, dye.

**in-fidēlis**, *e*, adj. Unfaithful, faithless, false, treacherous.

**in-figo**, *äre, fxi, fixum*, v. tr. (*figo*, to fix). To fix or fasten in.

**infirmus**, *a, um*, sup. of *infirrus*.

**in-finitus**, *a, um*, adj. (*finis*). Unbounded, boundless, unlimited, infinite, vast.

**infirmitas**, *ätis*, f. (*infirmus*). Weakness, feebleness; want of courage; fickleness, inconstancy, iv. 5.

**in-firmus**, *a, um*, adj. Weak, feeble; *infirmioris animo*, more depressed in spirit, iii. 24.

**in-flecto**, *äre, xi, xum*, v. tr. To bend; to curve.

**in-fluo**, *äre, xi, xum*, v. intr. To flow into, empty into.

**in-födio**, *äre, fodi, fossum*, v. tr. To dig in; to bury in the earth.

**infra**, 1) adv. Underneath, below; *paulo infra*, a little below, i. e., farther south, iv. 36; 2) prep. with acc. Below, under; *infra elephantos*, smaller than elephants, vi. 28.

**in-gens**, *tis*, adj. Vast, enormous, very great, huge.

**in-grätus**, *a, um*, adj. Unwelcome, disagreeable, unpleasant, unacceptable; ungrateful.

**in-grädior**, *i, gressus sum*, v. dep. (*grädior*, to go.) To go into; to enter; to enter upon, begin, engage in.

**Inimicitia**, *ae*, f. (*inimicus*). Enmity, hostility.

**in-imicus**, *a, um*, adj. (*amicus*). Unfriendly, hostile, inimical.

**Iniquitas**, *ätis*, f. (*iniquus*). Unevenness, vii. 45; unfavorable position, iii. 2; difficulty, crisis, ii. 22; injustice, unfairness; *summa iniquitas*, greatest injustice, vii. 19.

**In-Iquus**, *a, um*, adj. (*aequus*). Unequal, uneven; unfavorable, disadvan-

tageous; unjust, unreasonable; difficult, hard.

**initium**, *i, n*. (*ineo*). Beginning, origin, commencement; element; *artificiorum initia*, the elements of the arts, vi. 17.

**in-icio**, *äre, jeci, jectum*, v. tr. (*jacio*). To throw or cast into; to put or lay upon; to inspire, cause, occasion, infuse.

**in-jungo**, *äre, junxi, junctum*, v. tr. To join to, fasten upon; to bring upon, impose.

**in-jüria**, *ae*, f. (*jus*). Injury, wrong, violence, injustice, damage, harm, insult.

**in-jussu**, *m*. [used only in abl. G. 134]. Without the command.

**in-nascor**, *i, natus sum*, v. dep. To be born in; to grow or spring up in.

**in-nätus**, *a, um*, part. from *innascor*. Inborn, innate, natural.

**in-nitor**, *i, nixus sum*, v. dep. To lean upon, rest upon.

**innixus**, *a, um*, part. from *innitor*.

**in-nöcens**, *tis*, adj. Harmless; blameless, innocent.

**innöcentia**, *ae*, f. (*innöcens*). Innocence; uprightness, integrity.

**Inöpia**, *ae*, f. (*in, ops*). Want, scarcity, destitution, vii. 32.

**in-öpinans**, *tis*, adj. (*öpinor*, to expect). Not expecting, unprepared, unawares.

**inquam**, v. def. G. 297. To say.

**in-sciens**, *tis*, adj. (*scio*). Not knowing, unaware, ignorant.

**in-scientia**, *ae*, f. (*insciens*). Want of knowledge, ignorance, inexperience.

**in-scius**, *a, um*, adj. (*scio*). Not knowing, ignorant, unaware.

**in-sëquor**, *i, cütus sum*, v. dep. To follow; to pursue, press upon.

**in-sëro**, *äre, ui, tum*, v. tr. To put in, insert.

**insidiae**, *ärum*, f. (*in, sëdeo*, to sit). An ambush, ambuscade; stratagem, artifice; treachery.

**insidiör**, *äri, ätus sum*, v. dep. (*insidiae*). To lie in ambush, lie in wait, form an ambuscade.

**insigne, is, n.** (*insignis*). A distinctive mark; a badge, mark, sign.

**in-signis, e, adj.** (*signum*). Remarkable, distinguished, prominent, extraordinary, noted, marked.

**in-silio, ire, ui or ii, v. intr.** (*sālio*, to leap). To leap upon, spring upon.

**in-simūlo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** To charge, blame, accuse.

**in-sinuo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** (*sinuo*, to bend). To make one's way into, get into, come among, generally with *se*, iv. 33.

**in-sisto, ēre, stiti, v. intr.** To set foot upon, stand upon, ii. 27; *firmiter insistere*, to get a firm footing, iv. 26; to follow, pursue, adopt, iii. 14; to apply one's self to, vi. 5.

**in-solenter, adv.** (*sōleo*). In an unusual manner; immoderately, haughtily, insolently.

**in-specto, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** To look at, view, behold; *inspectantibus nobis*, before our eyes; *lit.*, we looking on, vii. 25.

**in-stābilis, e, adj.** (*sto*). Unsteady, changeable.

**instar, n. indecl.** Image, likeness; *instar* = *ad instar*, according to the likeness of, like, ii. 17.

**instigo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** To urge on, instigate, incite.

**in-stituo, ēre, ui, ūtum, v. tr.** (*stātuo*). To put or place into; to build, erect, make; to prepare, get, procure; to begin, commence, vii. 70; to undertake; to arrange, form, iii. 24; to institute, establish, vii. 77; to train up, educate, i. 14; to fix upon, iv. 17.

**institūtum, i, n.** (*institutio*). Design, intention, mode of life, habit, observance, custom.

**in-sto, āre, iti, ātum, v. intr.** To stand upon; to draw near, approach, be at hand; to press upon, pursue, threaten.

**instrūmentum, i, n.** (*instruo*). Utensil, tool, instrument, implement; *instrumentum hibernorum*, equipments of their quarters, v. 31.

**in-struo, ēre, xi, ctum, v. tr.** (*struo*,

to build). To build into; to arrange in order, draw up in battle array. *Instructus, a, um, part.* Arranged in order, drawn up; furnished, equipped.

**in-suēfactus, a, um, adj.** (*suesco*, to be wont, *fācio*). Accustomed, habituated, trained.

**in-suētus, a, um, adj.** (*suesco*, to be wont). Unaccustomed, unused to, vii. 30.

**insūla, ae, f.** An island.

**in-sūper, adv.** Above, on the top, from above.

**in-tēger, gra, grum, adj.** (*tango*). Untouched, unimpaired, undiminished; fresh, vigorous, not exhausted; *re integrā*, the thing being untouched, i. e., before anything was done, at the outset, vii. 30; *integri milites*, fresh troops, vii. 41.

**in-tēgo, ēre, xi, ctum, v. tr.** To cover.

**intelligo, ēre, lexi, lectum, v. tr.** (*inter, lego*). To understand, perceive, know, comprehend, observe.

**in-tendo, ēre, di, tum or sum, v. tr.** To stretch out, direct towards; to exert one's self, strive, iii. 26.

**intentus, a, um. 1)** part. from *intendo*; 2) adj. Attentive, intent upon, eager, fixed upon.

**inter, prep. with acc.** 1) *Of space*: between, among, with. 2) *Of time*: during, in the course of.

**inter-cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, v. intr.** To go between, interpose; to be or lie between, i. 39; to exist between, i. 43; to intervene, i. 7.

**inter-cipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, v. tr.** (*cāpio*). To intercept, ii. 27; to capture, seize, v. 39.

**inter-clūdo, ēre, si, sum, v. tr.** (*claudio*). To cut off, separate; to hinder, debar.

**inter-dico, ēre, xi, ctum, v. tr.** To forbid, prohibit, exclude; *aquā atque igni interdicare*, to forbid the use of fire and water, i. e., to proscribe or banish, vi. 44.

**inter-diu, adv.** By day, in the daytime.



**inter-dum**, adv. Sometimes, occasionally, now and then, at times.

**inter-ea**, adv. Meanwhile, in the mean time.

**inter-eo**, *ire, ii, itum*, v. intr. To be lost, perish, go to ruin.

**intēresse**. See *Intersum*.

**inter-ficio**, *ēre, feci, factum*, v. tr. (*facio*). To destroy, kill, slay.

**intērim**, adv. Meanwhile, in the mean time.

**intērior**, *us*; sup. *intimus*, adj. G. 166. Inner, interior.

**intēritus**, *us*, m. (*intēreo*). Destruction, death, ruin.

**inter-jicio**, *ēre, jeci, jectum*, v. tr. (*jacio*). To throw or cast between; to place or put between; *tantulo spatii interjecto*, so little space lying between, i. e., as they were so near, vii. 19; *brevi spatii interjecto*, a short time having intervened, iii. 4.

**inter-mitto**, *ēre, misi, missum*, v. tr. and intr. I. TRANS. 1) To put between, interpose, separate; to leave vacant; *paribus intermissae spatiis*, separated by equal spaces, vii. 23; *intermissa a flumine*, left vacant or undefended, vii. 17. 2) To omit, let pass, neglect; to interrupt, abate; *agricultura*, iv. 1; *flamma*, v. 43; *triduo intermisso*, after the lapse of three days, i. 26. 3) To suspend, make vacant; *intermissis magistratibus*, as the magistracies were vacant, vii. 33. II. INTR. To cease, discontinue; *subeuntes*, ii. 25.

**inter-nēcio**, *ōnis*, f. (*nēco*). A massacre, slaughter, destruction, extermination.

**inter-pello**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*pello* = *loquor*). To interrupt by speaking; to hinder, prevent, disturb.

**inter-pōno**, *ēre, pōsi, pōsitum*, v. tr. To place between, interpose; to urge, adduce, allege, i. 42; to propose, bring forward; to make, excite, iv. 32.

**inter-pres**, *ētis*, m. and f. (*præs*, a surety). An interpreter, mediator.

**interprētor**, *āri, ātus sum*, v. dep. (*interpres*). To interpret, expound, explain.

**inter-rōgo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To ask, question, inquire.

**inter-rumpo**, *ēre, rūpi, ruptum*, v. tr. (*rumpo*, to break). To break off, interrupt; to break down, destroy.

**inter-scindo**, *ēre, tēdi, issum*, v. tr. To tear asunder, cut down, destroy.

**inter-sum**, *esse, fui*, v. intr. To be between, i. 15; to be present, take part in, iv. 16; to attend to, vi. 13. *Interest*, impers., it concerns, is important, ii. 5.

**inter-vallum**, *i*, n. (*vallus*). The space between two palisades; interval, distance.

**inter-vēnio**, *ire, vēni, ventum*, v. intr. To come between; to arrive; to happen, occur.

**interventus**, *us*, m. (*intervēnio*). Intervention, interposition, aid.

**in-texo**, *ēre, xui, xtum*, v. tr. (*texo*, to weave). To weave into; to interweave; to cover.

**in-tōlērānter**, adv. (*tōlōro*). Immoderately, excessively, earnestly.

**intra**, prep. with acc. 1) *Of space*: within, in. 2) *Of time*: within, in, during.

**in-trītus**, *a, um*, adj. (*tēro*, to rub). Not exhausted, not worn out.

**intro**, adv. Within.

**intro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To enter, penetrate, go into.

**intrō-dūco**, *ēre, duxi, ductum*, v. tr. To lead or conduct within; to introduce.

**intro-eo**, *ire, īvi or ii, itum*, v. intr. To go within; to enter.

**introitus**, *us*, m. (*introeo*). Entrance, access.

**intrō-mitto**, *ēre, misi, missum*, v. tr. To let in; to introduce; to send in, cause to enter.

**introrsus**, adv. (for *intro-versus*). On the inside, within, inland, vi. 10.

**intrō-rumpo**, *ēre, rūpi, ruptum*, v. intr. (*rumpo*, to break). To break or burst into; to enter by force, v. 51.

**in-tueor**, *ēri, tuitus sum*, v. dep. To look at; to look down to, i. 32.

**intus**, adv. On the inside, within.

**In-usitātus**, *a, um*, adj. Unusual, uncommon, strange, extraordinary.

**In-ūtilis**, *e*, adj. Unserviceable, useless, unprofitable.

**In-vēnio**, *ire, vēni, ventum*, *v. intr.* To come upon; to find, meet with; to discover, find out.

**inventor**, *ōris*, *m.* (*invēnio*). An inventor, author.

**In-vēterasco**, *ēre, rāvi, rātum*, *v. intr.* (*vētus*). To grow old; to become established, *v.* 41; to settle, *ii.* 1.

**In-vicem**, adv. (*vicis*). In turn, one after the other; one another, each other, mutually.

**In-victus**, *a, um*, adj. (*vinco*). Unconquered, invincible, unconquerable.

**In-video**, *ēre, vidi, visum*, *v. tr.* To look with envy at; to envy.

**In-vīdia**, *ae, f.* (*invideo*). Envy, jealousy, hatred, unpopularity, malice.

**In-violātus**, *a, um*, adj. (*violō*). Inviolable, inviolate, sacred.

**invisus**, *a, um*, part. from *invideo*.

**Invito**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *v. tr.* To invite, summon; to allure, attract, entice.

**Invitus**, *a, um*, adj. Unwilling, reluctant; *se invito*, against his will, *lit.*, he being unwilling, *i.* 8.

**ipse**, *a, um*, dem. pron. (*is, pse*). Himself, herself, itself; he, she, it; just exactly, very, precisely.

**ira**, *ae, f.* Anger, wrath, passion.

**Irācundia**, *ae, f.* (*irācundus*). A hasty temper, anger, rage, passion.

**Irācundus**, *a, um*, adj. (*ira*). Irritable, passionate, irascible.

**irrideo**, *ēre, si, sum*, *v. tr.* and *intr.* (*in, rideo*, to laugh). To laugh at, jeer, ridicule.

**irridicūle**, adv. (*irrideo*). Without wit.

**irrumpo**, *ēre, ūpi, uptum*, *v. intr.* (*in, rumpo*, to break). To break into, rush into; to force one's way into, enter by storm.

**irruptio**, *ōnis, f.* (*irrumpo*). A breaking into, invasion; attack, sortie, *vii.* 70.

**Is, ea, Id**, dem. pron. He, she, it; this, that; such; *eo*, on this account, *i.* 14; *eo, quod*, on this account, because, *i.* 23. *Eo* with the comp. may often be rendered by our def. article *the*.

**iste**, *a, ud*, dem. pron. (*is, te*). This, that, often denoting contempt, *vii.* 77.

**Ita**, adv. (*is*). So, thus, to such a degree, in this manner; *ita ut*, just as, *vii.* 76.

**Itālia**, *ae, f.* Italy, including Gallia Cisalpina, *i.* 10, 40; *ii.* 35; *vi.* 1; *vii.* 1.

**Itā-que**, conj. And so, therefore; accordingly, hence.

**Item**, adv. (*is*). In like manner, likewise, also.

**Iter**, *itinēris, n.* (*eo*). A journey, march; way, route, road; the right of way, *i.* 8.

**Itērum**, adv. Again, a second time; *semel atque iterum*, repeatedly, *i.* 31.

**Itius**, *i, m.* A port in Gaul from which Caesar sailed for his second invasion of Britain; according to Reichard, modern *Wissant*; according to Napoleon III., *Boulogne*, *v.* 2, 5.

**Itūrus**, *a, um*, part. from *eo*.

## J.

**jāceo**, *ēre, ui*, *v. intr.* To lie; to lie dead; to have fallen.

**jācio**, *ēre, jēci, jactum*, *v. tr.* To throw, hurl; to throw up, construct, *ii.* 12.

**jacto**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *v. tr.* (freq. of *jācio*). To throw, cast; to discuss, talk about, *i.* 18; to toss about, *i.* 25.

**jactūra**, *ae, f.* (*jācio*). A throwing away; loss, sacrifice, damage; *magnis jacturis*, with great sacrifices, *vi.* 12.

**jācūlum**, *i, n.* (*jācio*). Javelin, dart.

**jam**, adv. Now, already, indeed, truly; *jam . . . jam*, at one time . . . at another time, now . . . now, *vii.* 59.

**jūba**, *ae*, *f*. The mane.

**jūbeo**, *ēre*, *jussi*, *jussum*, *v. tr.* To command, order, direct, give orders.

**jūdicium**, *i*, *n.* (*jūdex*, a judge). A judgment; trial, *i*. 4; sentence, opinion, decision, *i*. 41; the power of judgment, discernment, choice, purpose, *vi*. 31.

**jūdico**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *v. tr.* (*jus*, *dico*). To pronounce a sentence; to judge, adjudge; to pronounce, declare, *v*. 56; to determine, conclude, resolve, *i*. 40; to consider, think, decide, *i*. 30.

**jūgum**, *i*, *n.* A yoke, *iv*. 33; a yoke as a symbol of submission, formed by two upright spears, supporting a third in a horizontal position; *mittere sub jugum*, to send under the yoke, *i*. 7, 12; the summit of a hill, a height, ridge, *i*. 21, 24.

**jumentum**, *i*, *n.* (for *jūgmentum*, from *jungo*). A beast of burden, draught animal; horse, ox, etc.

**junctūra**, *ae*, *f.* (*jungo*). A joining, junction, joint, union, *iv*. 17.

**jungo**, *ēre*, *junxi*, *junctum*, *v. tr.* To join; to bind or connect together, fasten together.

**jūnior**. See *Jūrēnis*.

**Jūnius**, *i*, *m.* 1) *Quintus*, a Spaniard in the service of Caesar, *v*. 27, 28. 2) *Decimus Jūnius Brūtus*. See *Brūtus*.

**Jūpiter**, *Jōvis*, *m.* Jupiter, the son of Saturn, brother and husband of Juno, the chief god among the Romans, worshipped also by the Gauls, *vi*. 17.

**Jūra**, *ae*, *m.* A chain of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone, *i*. 2, 6, 8.

**jūro**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *v. intr.* To swear, take an oath; to promise under oath.

**jūs**, *jūris*, *n.* Right, law, justice; power, authority; *jus suum*, their rights, *i*. 4; *jus belli*, the right or rule of war, *i*. 36; *jus dicere*, to administer justice, *vi*. 23.

**jus-jūrandum**, *jūrisjūrandi*, *n.* (*jūro*). An oath.

**jussu**, *m.* [used only in the abl.]

(*jūbeo*). By or with the command, by order, *vii*. 3.

**justitia**, *ae*, *f.* (*justus*). Justice, fair dealing, uprightness.

**justus**, *a*, *um*, *adj.* (*jus*). Just, right, fair, proper, appropriate; *justa funera*, appropriate funeral ceremonies, *vi*. 19; sufficient, suitable, *vii*. 23.

**jūvēnis**, *e*, *comp.* *jūnior*, *adj.* Young, youthful. *Jūniōres*, *um*, young men, those capable of military service, from seventeen to forty years of age, *vii*. 1.

**jūventus**, *ūtis*, *f.* (*jūvēnis*). The age of youth, youth; young persons, the youth, young men, *iii*. 16.

**jūvo**, *āre*, *jūvī*, *jūtum*, *v. tr.* To help, aid, assist.

**juxta**, 1) *adv.* Near by, near, by the side of; 2) *prep.* with *acc.* Near to, near.

## L.

**Lābērius**, *i*, *m.* *Quintus Lābērius Dūrus*, a military tribune, *v*. 15.

**Lābiēnus**, *i*, *m.* *Titus Attius Lābiēnus*, one of the ablest and most experienced of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war. In the civil war he deserted to Pompey, and was killed at Munda, *i*. 10, 21, 54; *v*. 57; *vi*. 7; *vii*. 34.

**lābor**, *i*, *lapsus sum*, *v. dep.* To fall, slip down; to fail in duty; to err, mistake, commit a fault, *v*. 3; *hac spe lapsus*, deceived in this hope, *v*. 55.

**lābor**, *ōris*, *m.* Labor, toil, hardship, fatigue, effort, exertion, work.

**lābōro**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *v. intr.* (*lābor*). To toil, labor, exert one's self, strive; to be in distress, difficulty, or danger; to suffer; *animo laborare*, to be solicitous, anxious, *vii*. 31.

**lābrum**, *i*, *n.* A lip; *superius*, the upper lip, *v*. 14; the rim; *ab labris*, at the rim or edge, *vi*. 28; brink, margin, *vii*. 72.

**lac**, *lactis*, *n.* Milk.

**lācesso**, *ēre*, *ivi* or *ii*, *itum*, *v. tr.*

(*lacio*, to entice). To excite, provoke, exasperate; to attack, assail.

**lācrīma**, *ae*, *f*. A tear.

**lācrīmo**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *v*. intr. (*iācrīma*). To shed tears, weep.

**lācus**, *us*, *m*. A lake.

**laedo**, *ēre*, *laesi*, *laesum*, *v*. tr. To strike; to injure, violate, offend, impair, *vi*. 9.

**laetatio**, *ōnis*, *f*. (*laetor*, to rejoice). Rejoicing, joy.

**laetitia**, *ae*, *f*. (*laetus*). Joy, gladness, delight, exultation.

**laetus**, *a*, *um*, *adj*. Joyful, glad, delighted, pleased.

**languide**, *adv*. (*languidus*). Slowly, sluggishly, languidly.

**languidus**, *a*, *um*, *adj*. (*languéo*, to be weak). Faint, weak, sluggish, dull, inactive.

**languor**, *ōris*, *m*. (*languéo*, to be weak). Feebleness, languor, inactivity, weakness, lassitude.

**lāpis**, *idis*, *m*. A stone.

**lāqueus**, *i*, *m*. A noose.

**largior**, *iri*, *itus sum*, *v*. dep. (*largus*, abundant). To give bountifully; to bestow, supply, *vi*. 24; *ad largiendum*, for giving largesses, for bribing, *i*. 18.

**largiter**, *adv*. (*largus*, abundant). Abundantly, largely; *largiter posse*, to have great influence, *i*. 18.

**largitio**, *ōnis*, *f*. (*largior*). A giving freely; bribery, corruption; liberality, generosity, *i*. 9.

**lassitudo**, *inis*, *f*. (*lassus*, weary). Weariness, fatigue, faintness.

**lāte**, *lātius*, *lātissime*, *adv*. (*lātus*). Widely, extensively; *longe lateque*, far and wide, *iv*. 35.

**lātēbra**, *ae*, *f*. (*lātéo*). A hiding-place, lurking-place, covert, retreat.

**lātéo**, *āre*, *ui*, *v*. intr. To be concealed, lie hidden; to lurk; to remain unnoticed, *iii*. 14.

**lātītūdo**, *inis*, *f*. (*lātus*). Breadth, width; extent, size.

**Latovici**, *ōrum*, *m*. A Gallic people, neighbors of the Helvetii, *i*. 28, 29.

**lātro**, *ōnis*, *m*. A robber, bandit, brigand.

**lātrōcīnium**, *i*, *n*. (*lātro*). Robbery, plundering.

**lātus**, *a*, *um*, *adj*. Broad, wide; large, extensive, spacious.

**lātus**, *a*, *um*, *part*. from *fēro*.

**lātus**, *ēris*, *n*. The side; flank, wing of an army.

**laudo**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *v*. tr. (*laus*). To praise, commend.

**laus**, *laudis*, *f*. Praise, glory, renown, fame, commendation, honor, reputation; worth, prowess.

**lāvo**, *āre*, *lāvi*, *lautum*, *lōtum*, *lāvātum*, *v*. tr. To bathe, wash. *Pass.*, to bathe one's self, bathe, *iv*. 1.

**laxo**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *v*. tr. (*laxus*, loose). To extend, stretch out; *manipulos*, to open the ranks, *ii*. 25.

**lectus**, *a*, *um*, *part*. from *lēgo*.

**lēgatio**, *ōnis*, *f*. (*lēgo*, *āre*, to depute). Embassy, legation, deputation; the office of an ambassador; ambassadors.

**lēgātus**, *i*, *m*. (*lēgo*, *āre*, to depute). An ambassador, legate, envoy; lieutenant; *legatus pro praetore*, a lieutenant with proconsular power, *i*. 21.

**lēgio**, *ōnis*, *f*. (*lēgo*, *ēre*). A legion, a body of soldiers consisting of ten cohorts and a division of cavalry. The number of soldiers in a legion was not always the same; in the time of Caesar it was probably about four thousand. The legions were designated by numbers, *prima*, *secunda*, *tertia*, etc. Caesar, in the first year of the Gallic war, had six legions, viz., the seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, and twelfth; and in the second year he added two more, the thirteenth and fourteenth. After the defeat of Sabinus and Cotta, by which the fourteenth was annihilated, he levied two new legions, the fourteenth and fifteenth, and received the first from Pompey. Afterwards the sixth was also added.

**lēgiōnārius**, *a*, *um*, *adj*. (*legio*). Belonging to a legion, legionary.

**lēgo**, *ēre*, *lēgi*, *lectum*, *v*. tr. To

bring together, collect; to choose, select; to read. *Lectus, a, um, part.* Chosen, selected, picked.

**Lemannus, i, m.** The lake of Geneva, i. 2, 8; iii. 1.

**Lemovices, um, m.** 1.) A people of Gallia Celtica, south of the *Bituriges*, vii. 4, 75, 88. 2) One of the Armoric tribes, vii. 75.

**lēnis, e, adj.** Gentle, mild, smooth.

**lēnitas, ātis, f. (lēnis).** Gentleness, softness, smoothness, gentle flow.

**lēniter, adv. (lēnis).** Gently, mildly; gradually, slowly; *lenius*, less violently, v. 17.

**Lēponti, ōrum, m.** A Gallic tribe dwelling among the Alps, iv. 10.

**lēpus, ōris, m.** The hare, v. 12.

**Leuci, ōrum, m.** A people of Gallia Belgica, between the Mediomatrici and the Lingones, i. 40.

**Levāci, ōrum, m.** A people of Gallia Belgica, under the protection of the Nervii, v. 39.

**lēvis, e, adj.** Light; unimportant, trivial, slight; capricious, fickle; inconsiderate, v. 28.

**lēvitas, ātis, f. (lēvis).** Lightness; fickleness, inconstancy, capriciousness, ii. 1.

**lēvo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (lēvis).** To make light, lighten, diminish; to relieve, alleviate; to aid, assist; *hibernis*, to relieve of winter quarters, v. 27.

**lex, lēgis, f.** A law, ordinance, decree.

**Lexovii, ōrum, m.** A people of Gallia Celtica, near the mouth of the Sequāna. Their chief town was Noviomagus, now *Lisieux*, in Normandy, iii. 9, 11, 17, 29; vii. 75.

**libenter, adv. (libens, willing).** Willingly, cheerfully, gladly.

**liber, ēra, ērum, adj.** Free, unrestrained, independent.

**liberālitās, ātis, f. (liber).** Generosity, liberality; kindness, munificence, gifts.

**liberāliter, adv. (liber).** Generously, liberally, kindly, richly, profusely.

**libere, libērius, adv. (liber).** Free-

ly, unreservedly, boldly; *liberius*, too freely, v. 19.

**libēri, ōrum, m.** Children.

**libēro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (liber).** To make free; to liberate, release, extricate.

**libertas, ātis, f. (liber).** Freedom, liberty, lawlessness; unrestrained freedom, iv. 1.

**librilis, e, adj. (libra, a pound).** Weighing a pound. See *Funda librilis*.

**licens, tis, part. from liceor.**

**licentia, ae, f. (licet).** Unrestrained license, lawlessness; want of discipline, presumption, vii. 52.

**liceor, ēri, itus sum, v. dep.** To bid at auction.

**licet, ēre, licuit and licitum est, v. impers.** It is lawful, allowable, permitted; one may or can.

**Liger, ēris, m.** A river in Gaul, now the *Loire*, iii. 9; vii. 5, 11, 55, 56, 59.

**lignatio, ōnis, f. (lignum, wood).** The procuring of wood, fueling, v. 39.

**lignator, ōris, m. (lignum, wood).** One sent to procure wood, a wood-cutter.

**lilium, i, n.** A lily; a military defence in the form of a lily, vii. 73.

**linea, ae, f. (linum).** Line, row.

**Lingones, um, m.** A people of Gallia Celtica, living near the sources of the Mosa (*Meuse*) and the Matrōna (*Marne*), i. 26, 40; iv. 10; vi. 44; vii. 9, 66.

**lingua, ae, f.** The tongue; speech, language.

**lingula, ae, f. (lingua).** A tongue of land.

**linter, tris, f. rarely m.** A small boat, skiff.

**linum, i, n.** Flax, linen.

**lis, litis, f.** Strife, dispute; the subject of dispute; damages, v. i.

**Liscus, i, m.** A supreme magistrate of the Aedui, i. 16, 17.

**Litavicus, i, m.** A nobleman of the Aedui, vii. 37, sq., 54, 57, 67.

**littera, ae, f. (lino, to smear).** A

letter of the alphabet; *litterae, ārum*, letters of the alphabet; an epistle, letter, despatches; *litteras publicas*, public documents, v. 47.

**litus, ōris**, n. The sea-shore, sea-side, coast.

**lōcus**, i, m., plur. *lōci* and *lōca*, m. and n. A place, spot, region, locality, position; occasion, opportunity; *eodem loco habere*, to regard in the same situation, i. 26; *loco obsidum*, as hostages, v. 5; condition, rank, station, ii. 26; *in eum locum*, to such a pass, vi. 43.

**longe**, adv. (*longus*). At a distance, far off; far away; widely, greatly, far; *longe abesse*, to be of no avail, i. 36; *longe lateque*, far and wide, iv. 35.

**longinquus**, a, um, adj. (*longus*). Long, long continuing, v. 29; far distant, remote, iv. 27.

**longitūdo**, inis, f. (*longus*). Length.

**longūrius**, i, m. (*longus*). A long pole.

**longus**, a, um, adj. Long, distant; of long duration.

**lōquor**, i, cūtus sum, v. dep. To speak, say, tell, declare.

**lōrica**, ae, f. A coat of mail, cuirass, corselet; breastwork, parapet, v. 40.

**Lucanius**, i, m. *Quintus*, a Roman centurion, v. 35.

**Lūcius**, i, m. A Roman praenomen.

**Lucterius**, i, m. A Gaul, one of the Cadurci, whom Caesar sent against the Rutēni, vii. 5, 7, 8.

**Lugotōrix**, tgis, m. A chief and noble of the Britons, v. 22.

**lūna**, ae, f. The moon, worshipped as a goddess by the Germans, vi. 21.

**Lūtētia**, ae, f. A town of the Parisii, on an island of the Sequāna (*Seine*); later Parisii, now *Paris*, vi. 3; vii. 57, 58.

**lūtum**, i, n. Mud, mire, vii. 24.

**lux**, lūcis, f. Light, daylight; *sub lucem*, towards daybreak, vii. 83.

**luxūria**, ae, f. (*luxus*, excess). Extravagance, luxury, excess.

## M.

**mācēria**, ae, f. A wall, enclosure. **māchinātio**, ōnis, f. (*machinor*, to contrive). Machine, engine.

**Magetōbria**, better written **Ad-magetobriga**, ae, f. A town in Gaul, probably near the *Saône*, i. 81. **māgis**, maxime, adv. (*major*). More, in a higher degree, rather.

**māgistrātus**, us, m. (*māgister*, a master). A magisterial office, magistracy; a magistrate, officer, public functionary.

**magnificus**, a, um, adj. (*magnus*, *fācio*). Splendid, magnificent.

**magnitūdo**, inis, f. (*magnus*). Greatness, size, magnitude; *animi*, greatness of soul, ii. 27.

**magnōpēre**, adv. (*magno*, *ōpēre*). Very much, greatly, exceedingly.

**magnus**, a, um, comp. *major*, sup. *maximus*, adj. Great, large, much; important; mighty, powerful. *Major*, *maximus*, with or without *natu*, older, elder; oldest, eldest, ii. 13. *Majōres*, forefathers, ancestors.

**majestas**, ātis, f. (*majus*). Greatness, dignity, majesty.

**major**, comp. of *magnus*.

**mālācia**, ae, f. A calm at sea, a calm, iii. 15.

**māle**, pejus, pessime, adv. (*mālus*). Badly, ill; unsuccessfully, unfortunately.

**mālēficium**, i, n. (*māle*, *fācio*). An evil deed; mischief, damage, harm.

**Mallius**, i, m. *Lūcius*, proconsul of Gallia Ulterior during the war with Sertorius, 78 B. C., iii. 20.

**mālo**, malle, mālui, v. irr. G. 293. (*māgis*, *vōlo*). To choose rather, prefer.

**mālum**, i, n. (*mālus*). An evil, misfortune, calamity.

**mālus**, a, um, comp. *pejor*, sup. *pessimus*, adj. Bad, evil, injurious, destructive.

**mālus**, i, m. A mast; a long pole; *turrium*, the uprights, vii. 22.

**mandātum**, *i. n.* (*mando*). A charge, order, commission; injunction, command.

**mando**, *āre, āri, ātum*, *v. tr.* (*in, mānum, do*). To commit to one's charge; to commission; to order, command, bid; *fugae sese mandare*, to betake one's self to flight, *i. 12*.

**Mandubii**, *ōrum*, *m.* A people of Gallia Celtica, within the limits of the Aedui, on the borders of the Lingones. Their chief town was Alésia, now *Alise*, *vii. 68, 71, 78*.

**Mandubratius**, *i. m.* A chief of the Trinobantes, in Britain, *v. 20, 22*.

**māne**, *adv.* In the morning, early in the morning.

**māneo**, *ēre, si, sum*, *v. intr.* To remain, stay; to continue; to last; to abide by; *in eo manere*, to adhere to that, *i. 36*.

**mānīpūlaris**, *ē, adj.* (*mānīpūlus*). Belonging to a maniple or company; *manipulares*, soldiers of the same company, comrades, *vii. 47*.

**mānīpūlus**, *i. m.* (*mānus, plēnus*). A handful; a company of soldiers, a maniple, so called from the wisp (handful) of grass which originally served as the standard of the company. Each maniple consisted of two centuries, and three maniples formed a cohort.

**mansuēfio**, *fiēri, factus sum*, *v. pass.* (*mansuētus, tame, fio*). To be tamed.

**mansuētudo**, *inis, f.* (*mansuētus, tame*). Mildness, gentleness, clemency.

**mānus**, *us, f.* A hand; art; power, grasp; an armed body, force, band; *per manus*, from hand to hand, *vii. 25*; *in manibus nostris*, within our reach, close at hand, *ii. 19*; *dare manus*, to yield, *v. 31*.

**Marcōmanni**, *ōrum*, *m.* A Germanic people, between the Rhine and the Danube, *i. 51*.

**Marcus**, *i. m.* A Roman praenomen.

**māre**, *is, n.* The sea.

**mārītīmus**, *a, um, adj.* (*māre*). Maritime; bordering upon the sea, lying on the sea-coast, *ii. 34*.

**Mārius**, *i. m.* *Gāius*, a celebrated Roman general. He conquered Jugurtha, defeated the Cimbri and Teutones, and waged the civil war against Sulla, *i. 40*.

**Mars**, *Martis, m.* The god of war, *vi. 17*; war, battle; *aequo Marte*, in equal battle, *i. e.*, with equal prospect of success, *vii. 19*.

**mās**, *māris, m.* A male.

**matāra**, *ae, f.* (a Celtic word). A javelin, pike.

**māter**, *tris, f.* A mother, matron.

**mātēria**, *ae, f.*, and **mātēries**, *ēi, f.* (*māter*). Material; timber for building, timber, beams.

**mātērior**, *āri, v. dep.* (*mātēria*). To fell or procure timber.

**Matisco**, *ōnis, f.* A town of the Aedui, on the Arar (*Saône*), now *Maccon*, *vii. 90*.

**mātrīmōnium**, *i. n.* (*māter*). Marriage, matrimony, wedlock; *in matrimonium ducere*, to marry, *i. 9*; *dare in matrimonium*, to give in marriage, *i. 3*.

**Mātrōna**, *ae, m.* A river in Gallia Celtica, now the *Marne*, *i. 1*.

**mātūre**, *mātūrius, mātūrime, adv.* (*mātūrus*). Seasonably; soon, speedily, quickly, rapidly.

**mātūresco**, *ēre, ūri, v. intr.* (*mātūrus*). To become ripe; to ripen.

**mātūro**, *āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. and intr.* (*mātūrus*). To hasten; to make haste.

**mātūrus**, *a, um, adj.* Ripe, mature; early, *iv. 20*; seasonable, timely; proper, suitable.

**maxīme**, *adv.*, *sup. of māgis*. Very greatly; especially, principally, mainly.

**maxīmus**, *a, um, adj.*, *sup. of magnus*.

**Maxīmus**, *i. m.* See *Fābius*.

**mēdeor**, *ēri, v. dep.* To remedy, heal; to relieve, provide against.

**mēdiōcris**, *e, adj.* (*mēdius*). Middling, moderate, ordinary.

**mēdiōcritēr**, adv. (*mēdiōcris*). In an ordinary degree, moderately.

**Mediomatrici**, *ōrum*, and **Mediomatricēs**, *um*, m. A people of Gallia Belgica, between the *Vosges* and the *Rhenus* (*Rhine*). *Divodūrum* (*Metz*) was their capital, iv. 10; vii. 75.

**mēditerrāneus**, *a, um*, adj. (*mēdius, terra*). Midland, inland, remote from the sea, v. 12.

**mēdius**, *a, um*, adj. In the middle or midst, in the middle of, intervening; *media nox*, midnight, ii. 7.

**Meldi**, *ōrum*, m., or **Meldae**, *arum*, m. A people of Gallia Celtica, on the *Marne*, in the vicinity of the modern *Meaux*, v. 5.

**mēlior**, comp. of *bōnus*.

**mēlius**, comp. of *bene*.

**Melodūnum**, *i*, n. A town of Gallia Celtica, on the right bank of the *Seine*, in the country of the *Senōnes*, now *Mekun*, vii. 58, 60, 61.

**membrum**, *i*, n. A member, limb.

**mēmīni**, *isse*, v. def. G. 297, I. To remember, recollect, bear in mind.

**mēmōr**, *ōris*, adj. Mindful.

**mēmōria**, *ae, f.* (*mēmōr*). Memory, recollection, remembrance; the period of recollection, memory, time.

**Menapii**, *ōrum*, m. A people of Gallia Belgica between the *Meuse* and the *Scheldt*, ii. 4; iii. 9, 28; iv. 4, 22, 38; vi. 2, 5, 6, 9, 33.

**mendācium**, *i*, n. (*mendax*, lying). A falsehood.

**mens**, *mentis, f.* The mind, soul, disposition; the intellectual faculties, understanding, reason, judgment, discernment.

**mensis**, *is*, m. A month.

**mensūra**, *ae, f.* (*mētiōr*). Measure, measurement; *ex aquā mensuris*, by means of the clepsydra, or water measure, v. 13.

**mentio**, *ōnis, f.* (*mēmīni*). A mentioning, mention.

**mercātor**, *ōris*, m. (*mercor*, to traffic). A trader, merchant.

**mercātūra**, *ae, f.* (*mercor*, to traffic). Trade, traffic, commerce.

**merces**, *ēdis, f.* (*mēreo*). Hire, pay, wages, reward.

**Mercūrius**, *i*, m. Mercury, the son of Jupiter and *Māia*, the god of eloquence and trade, the bestower of prosperity, and the messenger of the gods, vi. 17.

**mēreo**, *ēre, ui, itum, v. tr.*, also

**mēreor**, *ēri, itus sum, v. dep.* To deserve, merit, be worthy of; to earn, gain, acquire; *optime meritos*, best deserving, i. 45; to serve, vii. 16.

**mēridiānus**, *a, um*, adj. (*mēridies*). Of or belonging to midday, noon.

**mēridies**, *ēi, m.* (*mēdius, dies*). Midday, noon; the south, v. 13.

**mērīto**, adv. (*mēritum*). According to desert, deservedly, justly.

**mērītum**, *i*, n. (*mēreor*). Desert, merit, service; favor, kindness, benefit.

**Messāla**, *ae, m.* *Marcus Valērius Messāla*, consul with *Marcus Pāpius Piso*, 61 B. C., i. 2, 35.

**mētiōr**, *iri, mensus sum, v. dep.* To measure, deal out, distribute.

**mēto**, *ēre, messui, messum, v. tr.* To reap, mow; to harvest, iv. 32.

**Mettius**, *i*, m. *Marcus*, a friend of *Ariovistus*, i. 47, 53.

**mētus**, *us*, m. Fear, dread, terror; *metu territare*, to put in fear, terrify, v. 6.

**meus**, *a, um*, poss. pron. (*ēgo, mei*). My, mine.

**mīles**, *itis*, m. and f. A soldier, private; infantry, v. 10.

**militāris**, *e*, adj. (*mīles*). Of or belonging to a soldier, military, soldier-like, warlike.

**militia**, *ae, f.* (*mīles*). Military service, warfare; *militiae vacationem*, exemption from military duty, vi. 14.

**mille**, subs. and adj. G. 178. A thousand. Plur. *mīlia, ium*, subs.; *millepassum*, i. 25; *mīlia passum*, or *mīlia* alone, Roman miles, i. 2; iv. 14.

**Mīnerva**, *ae, f.* The goddess of wisdom and the arts, vi. 17.

**mīnime**, adv., sup. of *pārum*. Least of all, least, by no means; *minime*



*saepe*, i. e., *rarissime*, very seldom, i. 1.

**minimus**, *a, um*, adj., sup. of *parvus*. Least, smallest; *quam minimum spatii*, the least possible time, iii. 19.

**minor**, *us*, adj., comp. of *parvus*. Smaller, less.

**Minūcius**, *i, m.* *Lūcius Minūcius Bāsilus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants, vi. 29; vii. 90.

**minuo**, *ēre, ui, ūtum*, v. tr. (*mīnor*), To make less, diminish, lessen; to weaken, impair; to adjust, settle. *Intr.*, to become less; *minuente aestu*, at the ebbing of the tide, iii. 12.

**minus**, adv., comp. of *pārum*. Less; not; *si id minus retlet*, if he did not wish this, i. 47; *minus dubitationis*, less hesitation, i. 14. G. 397, 3.

**mīror**, *ārī, ātus sum*, v. dep. To wonder or marvel at; to be astonished at.

**mīrus**, *a, um*, adj. Wonderful, marvellous; extraordinary.

**mīser**, *ēra, ērum*, adj. Wretched, pitiable, unfortunate, lamentable.

**mīserīcordia**, *ae, f.* (*mīserēo*, to pity, *cōy*). Pity, compassion, mercy, clemency.

**mīserōr**, *ārī, ātus sum*, v. dep. (*mīser*). To lament, bewail, deplore; to commiserate, pity.

**missus**, *us, m.* (*mitto*). A sending, despatching; *missu Caesaris*, by commission from Caesar, i. e., sent by Caesar, v. 27.

**mite**, *mītiūs, mītissime*, adv. (*mītis*, mild). Gently, mildly, in a friendly manner.

**mitto**, *ēre, mīsi, missum*, v. tr. To send, despatch; to cast, discharge, hurl; to let go, release.

**mōbilis**, *e, adj.* (for *mōvibilis*, from *mōveo*). Easy to be moved; changeable, inconstant, fickle.

**mōbilitas**, *ātis, f.* (*mōbilis*). Movableness; agility, rapidity, speed, iv. 33; inconstancy, fickleness, ii. 1.

**mōbilit̄er**, adv. (*mōbilis*). Rapidly, quickly, readily.

**mōdēior**, *ārī, ātus sum*, v. dep.

(*mōdus*). To manage, regulate, govern, direct.

**mōdestia**, *ae, f.* (*mōdestus*, modest). Moderation, modesty, ready obedience.

**mōdo**, adv. (*mōdus*). Only, but; just, even, merely; *impetum modo*, even an attack, vi. 8; *non modo . . . sed etiam*, not only . . . but also; *modo . . . modo*, now . . . now, sometimes . . . sometimes.

**mōdus**, *i, m.* The measure, extent, quantity; manner, way, mode, style.

**moenia**, *ium, n. plur.* (*mūnio*). Defensive walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, the walls of a town.

**moestus**, *a, um*, adj. (*moereo*, to grieve). Mournful, sad, downcast.

**mōles**, *is, f.* A huge, massive structure; a dike, dam, mole, iii. 12.

**mōleste**, adv. (*mōlestus*, troublesome). With trouble or difficulty; *ferre*, to take it ill, be annoyed, ii. 1.

**mōlimentum**, *i, n.* (*mōlior*, to strive). A great exertion, i. 34.

**mōlītus**, *a, um*, part. from *mōio*.

**mollīo**, *īre, īvi, ītum*, v. tr. (*mollis*). To soften; to make gentle.

**mollis**, *e, adj.* (for *mōbilis*). Gentle, easy, not steep; weak, feeble.

**mollit̄ies**, *ēi, f.* (*mollis*). Effeminacy, weakness, irresolution.

**mōlo**, *ēre, uī, ītum*, v. tr. (*mōla*, a millstone). To grind.

**mōmentum**, *i, n.* (for *mōvimentum*, *mōveo*). Weight, importance, influence.

**Mōna**, *ae, f.* An island near Britain, probably the Isle of Man, v. 13.

**mōneo**, *ēre, uī, ītum*, v. tr. To admonish, advise, warn; to instruct, counsel.

**mons**, *montis, m.* A mountain; *summus mons*, the top of the mountain, i. 22.

**mōra**, *ae, f.* A delay, hinderance, obstacle.

**morbus**, *i, m.* A sickness, disease, illness.

**Mōrīni**, *ōrum, m.* A people of Gallia Belgica, near the Channel. They

occupied the coast from Boulogne northward, perhaps as far as Dunkirk, ii. 4; iii. 9, 28; iv. 21, 22, 37, 38; v. 24; vii. 75, 76.

**mōrior**, *i* and *iri*, *mortuus sum*, *v. dep.* To die.

**Moritasgus**, *i*, *m.* Brother of Carvarinus, chief of the Senones, *v.* 54.

**mōror**, *āri*, *ātus sum*, *v. dep.* (*mōra*, delay). To tarry, remain; to retard, detain, hinder, delay.

**mors**, *mortis*, *f.* (*mōrior*). Death.

**mos**, *mōris*, *m.* Manner, custom, usage, character, practice.

**Mōsa**, *ae*, *m.* A river in Gallia Belgica, now the *Meuse*, iv. 9, 10, 12, 15; v. 24; vi. 33.

**mōtus**, *us*, *m.* (*mōreo*). A movement; a political movement, tumult, commotion.

**mōveo**, *ēre*, *mōvi*, *mōtum*, *v. tr.* To move, set in motion; to excite, affect, influence; *castra movere*, to break up, remove, decamp.

**mūlier**, *ēris*, *f.* A woman, wife.

**mūlio**, *ōnis*, *m.* (*mūlus*). A mule-driver, muleteer.

**multitūdo**, *inis*, *f.* (*multus*). A great number, multitude, crowd; the common people, populace.

**multo**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *v. tr.* (*multa*, a fine). To punish; to fine; to take away, vii. 54.

**multo**, *abl.* of *multus*. By far, much.

**multum**, *adv.* (*multus*). Much, very, greatly, especially; *non ita multum*, not so very long, v. 47.

**multus**, *a*, *um*, *comp.* *plus*, *sup.* *plurimus*, *adj.* Much, many, numerous, frequent; *multum aestatis*, a great part of the summer, v. 22; *ad multam noctem*, late into the night, i. 26; *multo die*, the day being far advanced, i. 22.

**mūlus**, *i*, *m.* A mule.

**Mūnātius**, *i*, *m.* *Lūcius Mūnātius Plancus*, a lieutenant of Caesar, v. 24, 25.

**mundus**, *i*, *m.* The world, universe.

**mūnimentum**, *i*, *n.* (*mūnio*). A defence, fortification, protection.

**mūnio**, *tre*, *ivi* or *ii*, *itum*, *v. tr.* To fortify, defend by a wall; to protect, cover, secure.

**mūnitio**, *ōnis*, *f.* (*mūnio*). A fortifying, protecting; fortification, protection; rampart, intrenchment, walls, works of defence.

**mūnitus**, *a*, *um*, *l*) part. from *mūnio*; 2) *adj.* Fortified, protected; secure, defended.

**mūnus**, *ēris*, *n.* Service, office, function; favor, present, gift.

**mūrālis**, *e*, *adj.* (*mūrus*). Pertaining to a wall, mural.

**mūrus**, *i*, *m.* A wall, rampart.

**musculus**, *i*, *m.* (*dim.* from *mus*, a mouse). A little mouse; *in milit. lang.*, a shed, mantelet, vii. 84.

**mūtilus**, *a*, *um*, *adj.* Maimed, broken, mutilated; *mutilae cornibus*, with mutilated horns, vi. 27.

**mūto**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *v. tr.* (for *mōvito*, *mōreo*). To change, alter; to avoid, vii. 45.

## N.

**nactus**, *a*, *um*, part. from *nanciscor*.

**nam**, *conj.* For.

**Namēius**, *i*, *m.* A distinguished Helvetian, i. 7.

**namque** (a strengthened form for *nam*), *conj.* For.

**nanciscor**, *i*, *nactus sum*, *v. dep.* To get, obtain, acquire; to meet with, find.

**Nannētes**, *um*, *m.* A people of Gallia Celtica, near modern *Nantes*, iii. 9.

**Nantuātes**, *ium* or *um*, *m.* A people of Gallia Narbonensis, at the foot of the Alps, north-east of the Allobroges, iii. 1, 6; iv. 10.

**Narbo**, *ōnis*, *m.* A town in Gaul, from which Gallia Narbonensis takes its name, now *Narbonne*, iii. 20; vii. 7.

**nascor**, *i*, *nātus sum*, *v. dep.* To be born, arise, proceed; to take its or-

igin, start from; to be produced, be found, v. 12.

**Nasua**, *ae*, m. A brother of Cimberius, and a leader of the Suëbi, i. 37.

**nātālis**, *e*, adj. (*nascor*). Pertaining to birth; *dies*, the birthday, vi. 18.

**nātio**, *ōnis*, f. (*nascor*). A race of people, nation, people.

**nātivus**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*nātus*). Produced by nature, natural, vi. 10.

**nātu**, m., only in the abl. (*nascor*). Birth; *maiores natu*, the elders, ii. 13.

**nātūra**, *ae*, f. (*nascor*). Nature; the natural disposition, character, inclination.

**nātus**, *a*, *um*, part. from *nascor*.

**nauta**, *ae*, m. (*nāvita*, *nāvis*). A sailor.

**nauticus**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*nauta*). Of or belonging to sailors, nautical.

**nāvālis**, *e*, adj. (*nāvis*). Of or belonging to ships, naval.

**nāvicūla**, *ae*, f. (dim. of *nāvis*). A little boat, skiff.

**nāvigātio**, *ōnis*, f. (*nāvigo*). Sailing, navigation; a voyage by sea.

**nāvigium**, *i*, n. (*nāvigo*). A vessel, ship; *vectorium*, a transport, v. 8.

**nāvigo**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, v. intr. (*nāvis*, *āgo*). To sail, go by ship, navigate.

**nāvis**, *is*, f. A ship, vessel; *navis longa*, a ship of war; *oneraria*, a transport ship; *actuaria*, a light galley, v. 1.

**nāvo**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*nātus*, active). To perform vigorously, or with zeal, ii. 25.

**nē**, adv. and conj. Not, so that not, lest, in order that not; *ne* . . . *quidem*, not even.

**nē**, inter. particle, enclitic. Whether; *ne* . . . *ne*, whether . . . or, vii. 14.

**nec**, conj. See *Nēque*.

**necessārio**, adv. (*necessārius*). By necessity, of necessity, necessarily.

**necessārius**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*nēcesse*). Necessary, needful, indispensable; unavoidable, critical, pressing. *Subs.*, a relative, kinsman, friend, i. 11.

**nēcesse**, adj. indecl. (*nē*, *cādo*).

Necessary, unavoidable, indispensable.

**nēcessitas**, *ātis*, f. (*nēcesse*). Necessity, need, compulsion, constraint.

**nēcessitudo**, *inis*, f. (*nēcesse*). A close personal relationship, intimacy, friendship, alliance, i. 43.

**nec-ne**, adv. Or not, i. 50.

**nēco**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*nex*). To kill, put to death.

**nēcūbi**, conj. (*nē*, *ālicubi*, some where). That nowhere, lest anywhere.

**nēfārius**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*nēfas*). Impious, abominable, wicked.

**nē-fas**, n. indecl. Contrary to divine law, criminal, sinful. *Subs.*, a crime, sin, vii. 40.

**neglīgo**, *ēre*, *exi*, *ectum*, v. tr. (*nec*, *lēgo*). Not to heed; to neglect, disregard, slight.

**nēgo**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, v. tr. and intr. (*ne*, *āio*, to say). To refuse, deny, v. 6; to say no or not, declare not, i. 8.

**nēgōtior**, *āri*, *ātus sum*, v. dep. (*nēgōtium*). To trade, traffic, carry on business.

**nēgōtium**, *i*, n. (*nec*, *ōtium*). Business, occupation, affair; difficulty, trouble, labor.

**Nēmētes**, *um*, m. A Germanic people of Gallia Belgica, on the left bank of the Rhine, in the vicinity of Speyer, duchy of Baden, i. 51; vi. 25.

**nēmo**, *inis*, m. and f. G. 457, 2 (*nē*, *hōmo*). No one, nobody.

**nē-quāquam**, adv. By no means, not at all.

**nē-que**, or *nec*, conj. and adv. And not, also not, but not; *neque* . . . *neque*, *nec* . . . *nec*, neither . . . nor.

**nē-quidem**. See *Nē*.

**nē-quidquam**, adv. In vain, to no purpose, without reason, ii. 27.

**nē-quis**. See *Quis*.

**Nervicus**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*Nervii*). Of the Nervii, Nervian, iii. 5.

**Nervii**, *ōrum*, m. A powerful and warlike people of Gallia Belgica, between the Sabis (*Sambre*) and the Scaldis (*Scheldt*), ii. 4, 15-19, 23, 28, 29; v. 24, 38-42.

**nervus**, *i*, *m*. A nerve, sinew, muscle; force, power, strength.

**neuter**, *tra*, *trum*, gen. *neutrūs*, adj. (*nē*, *ūter*). Neither (of two). *Neutrī*, plur., neither (of two parties).

**nē-ve**, or *neu*, conj. And not, nor.

**nex**, *nēcis*, *f*. A violent death, murder, slaughter, death.

**nihil**, *n*, indecl. Nothing; not, in no respect, not at all.

**nihilō**, (abl. of *nihilum*), adv. In no respect; *nihilō secius*, none the less, the less in no respect, *i*. 49; *nihilō minus*, nevertheless, *i*. 5.

**nimis**, adv. Too much, very much, very; *non nimis firmo*, not very strong, *vii*. 36.

**nimius**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*nimis*). Beyond measure, excessive, too great, too much.

**nī-si**, conj. If not, unless; except.

**Nitiobriges**, *um*, *m*. A people of Gallia Celtica, on the right bank of the Garumna (*Garonne*). Their chief town was Aginum, now *Agen*, *vii*. 7, 31, 46, 75.

**nītor**, *i*, *nīsus* or *nīsus sum*, *v*. dep. To rest upon, rely upon; to exert one's self, strive, endeavor, attempt.

**nix**, *nīvis*, *f*. Snow.

**nōbīlis**, *e*, adj. (for *noscībīlis*, *nosco*). Known, distinguished, noted; high-born, of noble birth, noble.

**nōbīlitas**, *ātis*, *f*. (*nōbīlis*). Celebrity, renown; noble birth, rank; the nobility, nobles, *i*. 2, 31.

**nōcens**, *tis*, adj. (*nōceo*). Hurtful, injurious. *Nōcentes*, *ium*, the guilty, *vi*. 9.

**nōceo**, *āre*, *ui*, *itum*, *v*. intr. To harm, hurt, injure.

**noctu**, *f*, only in abl. (*nox*). By night, in the night.

**nocturnus**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*nox*). By night, nightly, in the night.

**nōdus**, *i*, *m*. A knot; a knob or node on a joint, *vi*. 27.

**nōlo**, *nolle*, *nōlui*, *v*. irreg. *G*. 293. (*non*, *vōlo*). To be unwilling; not to wish; to refuse, object.

**nōmen**, *īnis*, *n*. (*nosco*). A name,

title, designation; *suo nomine*, on his own account, on personal grounds, *i*. 18; pretence, excuse; *obsidum nomine*, as hostages, *iii*. 2.

**nōmīnātim**, adv. (*nōmīno*). By name, expressly.

**nōmīno**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *v*. tr. (*nōmen*). To name, call by name, mention.

**nōn**, adv. Not, no.

**nōnāginta**, num. adj. Ninety.

**non-dum**, adv. Not yet.

**non-nīhil**, adv. Somewhat. *Subs.*, something.

**non-nullus**, *a*, *um*, adj. Some, a few, several.

**non-nunquam**, adv. Sometimes, at times.

**nōnus**, *a*, *um*, num. adj. (*nōvem*). The ninth.

**Nōrēia**, *ae*, *f*. The capital of the Taurisci, in Noricum, now *Neumarkt* in Styria, *i*. 5.

**Noricus**, *a*, *um*, adj. Noric, pertaining to Noricum, *i*. 5, 53.

**nosco**, *ēre*, *nōvī*, *nōtum*, *v*. tr. To know, learn, understand, become acquainted with.

**nostr**, *tra*, *trum*, poss. pron. (*nos*). Our, ours.

**nostri**, *ōrum*, subs. Our troops, our men.

**nōtītia**, *ae*, *f*. (*nōtus*). Knowledge, acquaintance.

**nōtus**, *a*, *um*, part. and adj. (*nosco*). Known, familiar, manifest.

**nōvem**, num. adj. indecl. Nine.

**Noviodūnum**, *i*, *n*. 1) A town of the Aedui, on the east side of the *Loire*, now *Nevers*, *vii*. 55. 2) A town of the Bituriges, in Gallia Celtica, now *Neuvy sur Baranjon*, or, according to others, *Nouan*, *vii*. 12, 14. 3) A town of the Suessiones in Gallia Belgica, now *Soissons*, *ii*. 12.

**nōvītas**, *ātis*, *f*. (*nōvus*). Newness, novelty, strangeness.

**nōvus**, *a*, *um*, adj. New, strange, uncommon; fresh, recent. Sup., *novissimus*, *a*, *um*, the newest, *i. e.*, latest, last; *agmen novissimum*, the rear.

**nox, noctis, f.** Night; *multā nocte*, late in the night, iii. 26.

**noxia, ae, f.** (*nōceo*). Fault, offence, crime, vi. 16.

**nūbo, ēre, psi, ptum, v. intr.** To veil one's self; to marry (of the bride), i. 18.

**nūdo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** (*nū-dus*). To make bare, uncover, expose; to deprive, strip.

**nūdus, a, um, adj.** Naked, uncovered; unprotected, exposed.

**nullus, a, um, adj.** G. 151. (*nē, ullus*). Not any, no, none, without any.

**num, interrog. particle.** Whether.

**nūmen, tnis, n.** (*nūo*, to nod). The divine will, power.

**nūmērus, i, m.** A number; rank, position, vi. 13; crowd, multitude.

**Nūmīda, ae, m.** A Numidian, ii. 7, 10, 24.

**nummus, i, m.** A piece of money, a coin.

**nunc, adv.** Now, at present.

**nunquam, adv.** (*nē, unquam*). Never, at no time.

**nuntio, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** (*nuntius*). To announce, report, make known; to inform.

**nuntius, i, m.** A messenger, courier; message, news, tidings; an order.

**nūper, adv.** (*nōviper*, from *nōvus*). Newly, recently, not long ago.

**nūtus, us, m.** (*nūo*, to nod). A nod, will, pleasure, command.

## O.

**ōb, prep. with acc.** On account of, in consideration of, for.

**ōb-aerātus, a, um, adj.** (*aes*). Involved in debt. *Subs.*, debtor.

**ob-dūco, ēre, duxi, ductum, v. tr.** To lead or draw before; to dig, make, *fossam*, ii. 8.

**ōb-eo, ire, īvi or ii, itum, v. intr.** To go to or around; to perform, execute, do, accomplish; *omnia per se*, to perform all things personally, v. 33.

**ōbītus, us, m.** (*ōbeo*). Downfall, destruction, death.

**objectus, a, um, l** part. from *objicio*; 2) adj. Lying before or opposite, v. 13; thrown up, vi. 10; interposed, lying in the way, vi. 37.

**ob-jicio, ēre, jēci, jectum, v. tr.** (*jācio*). To throw, place, or set against; to place in the way, offer, present, vii. 59; to expose, i. 47; to throw up, oppose, i. 26.

**oblātus, a, um, part.** from *offero*.

**oblique, adv.** (*obliquus*). Obliquely, in a slanting direction, iv. 17.

**obliquus, a, um, adj.** Slanting oblique, running in an oblique direction, vii. 73.

**oblīviscor, i, oblitus sum, v. dep.** To forget; to lose all recollection of.

**ob-sēcro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** (*ēcer*, sacred). To implore, beseech; to entreat, conjure, supplicate.

**obsequētia, ae, f.** (*ob, sequor*). Compliance, obsequiousness.

**ob-servo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** To watch, mark, notice; to attend to, observe, regard, obey, v. 35.

**obses, tdis, m. and f.** (*ob, sēdeo*, to sit). A hostage, surety, pledge.

**obsessio, ōnis, f.** (*obsideo*). A siege.

**ob-sīdeo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, v. tr.** (*sēdeo*, to sit). To sit down before, besiege, invest, blockade.

**obsīdio, ōnis, f.** (*obsideo*). A siege, investment, blockade; oppression, iv. 19.

**ob-signo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** (*signo*, to mark). To seal; to sign and seal.

**ob-sisto, ēre, stīti, stitum, v. intr.** To set one's self against; to oppose, resist, withstand.

**obstināte, adv.** Firmly, resolutely.

**ob-stringo, ēre, inxi, ictum, v. tr.** (*stringo*, to bind). To bind, tie, fetter; to lay under obligation; to pledge.

**ob-struo, ēre, xi, ctum, v. tr.** (*struo*, to pile up). To build before or against; to block up; to barricade.

**ob-tempĕro**, *āre, āvi, ātum, v. intr.* To comply with, conform to, submit to, obey.

**ob-testor**, *āri, ātus sum, v. dep. (testis)*. To implore by calling the gods to witness; to beseech, entreat, supplicate.

**ob-tineo**, *āre, ui, tentum, v. tr. (tēneo)*. To hold, possess, maintain; *causam*, vii. 37; to gain, acquire, obtain.

**obtūli**. See *Offĕro*.

**ob-vĕnio**, *ire, vēni, ventum, v. intr.* To come before; to meet; to occur, happen.

**ob-viam**, adv. In the way, towards, against; *obviam proficisci*, to go to meet, vii. 12.

**occāsio**, *ōnis, f. (occido)*. An occasion, opportunity; favorable moment.

**occāsus**, *us, m. (occido)*. A going down, setting; the quarter in which the sun sets, the west, i. 1.

**occidens**, *tis*, part. from *occido*. Going down, setting; *occidens sol*, the setting sun, the west, v. 13.

**occido**, *ĕre, cidi, cāsum, v. intr. (ob, cado)*. To fall or go down; to set; to perish, die, be lost, vi. 37.

**occido**, *ĕre, cidi, cisum, v. tr. (ob, caedo)*. To cut down, kill, slay.

**occultatio**, *ōnis, f. (occulto)*. Concealment.

**occulte**, adv. (*occultus*). Secretly, privately.

**occulto**, *āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (freq. of occulto, to hide)*. To hide, conceal, secrete.

**occultus**, *a, um, part. and adj. (occulto, to hide)*. Hidden, concealed, secret.

**occūpātio**, *ōnis, f. (occūpo)*. Business, employment, affairs, occupation.

**occūpo**, *āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (ob, ōpio)*. To take possession of, seize, occupy; to invade, attack; to engage, employ, busy.

**occurro**, *ĕre, curri and cūcurri, sursum, v. intr. (ob, curro)*. To run to meet; to meet, come to, go to; to op-

pose, counteract; to occur, present itself, vii. 85.

**occurso**, *āre, āvi, ātum, v. intr. (freq. of occorro)*. To rush against, attack.

**ōceānus**, *i, m.* The ocean.

**Ocĕlum**, *i, n.* A town of Gallia Cisalpina, modern *Usseau*, in Piedmont, i. 10.

**ōcius**, adv. comp. of *ōctiter* (rare). Quickly, speedily, v. 44.

**octāvus**, *a, um, num. adj. (octo)*. The eighth.

**octingenti**, *ae, a, num. adj. (octo, centum)*. Eight hundred.

**octo**, num. adj. indecl. Eight.

**octō-dĕcim**, num. adj. indecl. (*dĕcem*). Eighteen.

**Octodŭrus**, *i, m.* A town of the Verāgri, in Gallia Narbonensis, now *Martigny*, iii. 1.

**octōgiuta**, num. adj. Eighty.

**octōni**, *ae, a, num. adj.* Eight each, eight by eight.

**ōcŭlus**, *i, m.* An eye; the sight, presence.

**ōdi**, *ōdisse, v. def. G. 297*. To hate, detest.

**ōdium**, *i, n. (ōdi)*. Hatred, animosity; enmity, displeasure.

**offendo**, *ĕre, di, sum, v. tr.* To offend, err, give offence; to hurt, harm, wound, i. 19.

**offensio**, *ōnis, f. (offendo)*. An offence, harm; displeasure, aversion.

**offĕro**, *offerre, obtūli, oblātum, v. tr. (ob, fĕro)*. To bring before, present, offer, ii. 21; to confer, vi. 42; with *se*, to expose one's self, encounter, meet.

**offĭcium**, *i, n. (ob, fĕcio)*. A service, kindness, favor; subjection, obedience, allegiance; office, employment, business, duty.

**Olovico**, *ōnis, m.* A king of the Nitiobriges, vii. 31.

**ōmitto**, *ĕre, misi, missum, v. tr. (ob, mitto)*. To let go, let fall; to lay aside, not to use, vii. 88; to neglect, disregard, ii. 17.

**omnino**, adv. (*omnis*). Altogether,

at all, entirely, wholly, utterly; in general, generally; in all, only, i. 6.

**omnis, e, adj.** All, every, the whole; of every kind, v. 6.

**ōnērārius, a, um, adj.** (*onus*). Of a burden, that carries freight; *navis*, a transport ship, iv. 22.

**ōnēro, āre, āri, ātum, v. tr.** (*onus*). To load, freight.

**ōnus, ōris, n.** A load, burden, freight, cargo; weight, size, ii. 30; trouble, difficulty.

**ōpera, ae, f.** Pains, exertion, labor; care, attention; *operam dare*, to bestow care, give attention, take pains, vii. 9; aid, service, means, agency, v. 25.

**ōpinio, ōnis, f.** (*optinor*, to think). Opinion, supposition, belief, conjecture; *opinio timoris*, the impression of fear, iii. 17; reputation, repute, fame, vi. 24.

**oportet, ēre, uit, v. impers.** (*opus*). It is necessary, needful, proper, becoming; one must, ought.

**oppidānus, a, um, adj.** (*oppidum*). Belonging to the town. *Subs.*, m. pl., the inhabitants of the town, citizens, ii. 7.

**oppidum, i, n.** A town, a walled town; any fortified place, as a wood, forest, etc., v. 21.

**oppōno, ēre, pōtūi, pōsitum, v. tr.** (*ob, pōno*). To set or place against; to oppose, place opposite.

**opportūne, adv.** (*opportūnus*). Fitly, seasonably, at a proper time, timely.

**opportūnitas, ātis, f.** (*opportūnus*). Fitness, convenience; favorable situation, *loci*, iii. 12; favorable opportunity or moment, *temporis*, vi. 29; advantage; *nisi opportunitate aliquā datā*, unless some advantage offered itself, iii. 17.

**opportūnus, a, um, adj.** (*ob, portus*, before the port). Fit, meet, seasonable, convenient, suitable, advantageous, favorable.

**oppōsitus, a, um, part.** from *oppōno*.

**oppressus, a, um, part.** from *opprimo*.

**opprīmo, ēre, essi, essum, v. tr.** (*ob, prēmo*). To press against, press down; to oppress, overpower, crush; to surprise, fall upon, seize.

**oppugnatio, ōnis, f.** (*oppugno*). A storming, assaulting; assault, siege.

**oppugno, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** (*ob, pugno*). To fight against; to attack, assault, besiege, storm.

**ops, ōpis, f.** [nom., dat., and voc. sing. not used]. Power, strength; aid, assistance, help. *Plur.*, means, wealth, resources; authority, influence.

**optātus, a, um, adj.** (*opto*, to wish). Wished, desired, agreeable, pleasant, dear.

**optime, adv.**, sup. of *bene*. Best, most excellently, in the best manner, very well.

**optimus, a, um, adj.**, sup. of *bonus*. Very good, best, most excellent.

**opus, ōris, n.** Work, labor; art, v. 9; a military work or structure, a military engine; a deed, action, performance; *quanto opere*, how greatly, how much.

**opus, n. indecl.** Need, necessity; *opus est*, it is necessary.

**ōra, ae, f.** The margin, coast, border; *maritima*, the sea-coast, iii. 8.

**ōratio, ōnis, f.** (*ōro*). A speaking, speech, language, harangue, words.

**ōrator, ōris, m.** (*ōro*). A speaker, messenger, envoy, iv. 27.

**orbis, is, m.** A circle; a circle formed by soldiers, iv. 37; *orbis terrarum*, the world, the earth, vii. 29.

**Orcynia, ae, f.** (sc. *silva*). A Greek name for Hercynia, vi. 24.

**ordo, ōris, m.** A row or series, order; a line or rank of soldiers; rank, class, degree; regularity, order, method; *primi ordines*, the captains of the first companies, v. 30.

**Orgetōrix, tgis, m.** A chief of the Helvētīi, i. 2, 3, 4, 9, 28.

**ōrior, iri, ortus sum, v. dep.** To rise, to take its rise, originate; to

**arise**, begin ; to spring from, be born, descend.

**ornāmentum**, *i*, n. (*orno*). An ornament, decoration, distinction, honor, *i*. 44.

**ornātus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *orno* ; 2) adj. Furnished; equipped, fitted out.

**orno**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To fit out, furnish, equip ; to adorn, honor, distinguish.

**ōro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To speak, beseech, entreat, implore, pray.

**ortus**, *us*, m. (*ōrior*). The rising.

**os**, *ōris*, n. The mouth ; the face, countenance.

**Osismi**, *ōrum*, m. A people in the north-western portion of Gallia Celtica, *ii*. 34 ; *iii*. 9 ; *vii*. 75.

**ostendo**, *ēre, di, sum* and *tum*, v. tr. (*ob, tendo*). To show, disclose, exhibit, manifest ; to tell, declare, make known, say.

**ostentatio**, *ōnis*, f. (*ostento*). A show, display ; idle show, vain display, ostentation ; pretence, deception.

**ostento**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (freq. of *ostendo*). To show frequently, exhibit ; to display, make a show of, make a demonstration.

**ōtium**, *i*, n. Leisure, rest, repose, quiet.

**ōvum**, *i*, n. An egg.

## P.

**pābūlātiō**, *ōnis*, f. (*pābūlor*). Foraging, collecting fodder.

**pābūlātor**, *ōris*, m. (*pābūlor*). One who seeks fodder, a forager.

**pābūlor**, *āri, ātus sum*, v. dep. (*pābūlum*). To seek fodder ; to forage.

**pābūlum**, *i*, n. (*pasco*, to feed). Food for cattle, fodder, provender.

**pācātus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *pāco* ; 2) adj. Pacified, peaceful ; subdued, reduced to subjection ; quiet, calm.

**pāco**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*pax*). To bring into a state of peace and tranquillity ; to pacify ; to subdue.

**pactum**, *i*, n. (*paciscor*, to make a bargain). An agreement, compact ; manner, way, *vii*. 83.

**Pādus**, *i*, m. The Po, a river in upper Italy, *v*. 24.

**Paemāni**, *ōrum*, m. A Germanic tribe of Gallia Belgica, *ii*. 4.

**paene** or **pēne**, adv. Almost, nearly.

**pāgus**, *i*, m. A district, canton.

**pālam**, adv. Openly, publicly, before the people.

**palma**, *ae*, f. The palm of the hand.

**pālus**, *ūd'is*, f. A marsh, swamp, morass.

**pāluster**, *tris, tre*, adj. (*pālus*). Marshy, swampy.

**pando**, *ēre, pandi, pansum* or *passum*, v. tr. To spread out, extend, stretch out ; *passis manibus*, with outstretched hands, *i*. 51 ; *passus capillus*, dishevelled hair, *vii*. 48.

**pār**, *pāris*, adj. Equal, like, similar, a match for, *i*. 40 ; with *ut, atque, ac*, the same . . . as, like . . . as, *i*. 28.

**pārātus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *pāro* ; 2) adj. Prepared, equipped, provided, furnished ; ready, willing.

**parce**, adv. (*parcus*, frugal). Sparingly, frugally.

**parco**, *ēre, pēperci* or *parsi, parctum* or *parsum*, v. intr. (*parcus*, frugal). To be frugal or sparing ; to spare, not to injure ; to preserve.

**pārens**, *tis*, m. and f. (*pārio*). A father or mother, parent.

**pārento**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*pārens*). To make offerings in honor of the dead ; to avenge, *vii*. 17.

**pāreo**, *ēre, ui, itum*, v. intr. To obey, comply with, submit to.

**pārio**, *ēre, pēperi, partum*, v. tr. To bring forth, bear ; to gain, acquire, procure ; to accomplish, occasion.

**Pārisii**, *ōrum*, m. A people of Gallia Celtica ; their chief town was Lutētia, now *Paris*, *vi*. 3 ; *vii*. 4, 34, 57, 75.

**pāro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To prepare, provide, furnish ; to make



preparations for, get ready for, iii. 9; to determine, intend, vii. 71; to procure, get, acquire, i. 31; to purchase, obtain, iv. 2.

**pars, tis, f.** A part, portion, share; place, direction, region; party, side; *ex parte*, partly, in some degree, vi. 34; *unā ex parte . . . ex alterā*, on the one side . . . on the other, i. 2; *omnibus partibus*, on all sides, everywhere, v. 15.

**partim, adv. (pars).** Partly, in part.

**partio, ire, tri or ii, itum, v. tr., or partior, tri, itus sum, v. dep. (pars).** To share, divide, distribute.

**partitus, a, um, part.** from *partio*, or *partior*, with a pass. sig.

**partus, a, um, part.** from *pārio*.

**pārum, minus, minime, adv. (parvus).** Little, too little, not enough.

**parvulus, a, um, adj. (parvus).** Very small, slight; unimportant; very young; *ab parvulis*, from early childhood, vi. 21.

**parvus, a, um, comp. minor, sup. minimus, adj.** Small, slight, insignificant, unimportant.

**passim, adv. (passus, pando).** Here and there, in all directions.

**passus, a, um, part.** from *pando* and *pātor*.

**passus, us, m. (pando).** A step, a pace; a pace as a measure of length, consisting of five Roman feet; *mille passus*, a Roman mile.

**pātēfācio, ēre, fēci, factum, v. tr. (pāteo, fācio).** To throw open; to open; to make known, disclose, bring to light.

**pātēfio, fieri, factus sum, v. pass. of pātēfācio.**

**pātens, tis, i) part.** of *pāteo*; 2) adj. Open, unobstructed, passable, accessible.

**pāteo, ēre, ui, v. intr.** To be open, be passable; to stretch out, extend.

**pāter, tris, m.** A father, sire. *Plur.*, fathers, forefathers, ancestors.

**pātienter, adv. (pātor).** Patiently, with submission.

**pātientia, ae, f. (pātor).** Patience, endurance; patient endurance, vi. 24.

**pātor, i, passus sum, v. dep.** To suffer, support, bear, endure; to allow, permit.

**pātrius, a, um, adj. (pāter).** Fatherly, ancestral.

**pātrōnus, i, m. (pāter).** A protector, defender, patron.

**pātruus, i, m. (pāter).** A father's brother, uncle.

**pauci, ae, a, adj.** [rare in sing.]. Few, not many.

**paucitas, ātis, f. (pauci).** A small number, fewness, scarcity.

**paulātum, adv. (paulum).** Little by little, gradually, by degrees.

**paulisper, adv. (paulum, per).** For a little while, for a short time.

**paulo, adv. (prop. abl. of paulus).** A little, somewhat.

**paulūlum, adv. (paulus).** A little, a very little.

**paulum, adv. (paulus).** A little, somewhat.

**paulus, a, um, adj.** Little, small; *post paulum*, soon after, vii. 50.

**pax, pācis, f.** peace; tranquillity, quiet.

**pecco, āre, āvi, ātum, v. intr.** To transgress, offend, do injustice.

**pectus, ōris, n.** The breast.

**pēcūnia, ae, f. (pēcus).** Property riches; money, a sum of money.

**pēcus, ōris, n.** Cattle, a herd; *pecus, ūdis*, a single head of cattle.

**pēdālis, e, adj. (pes).** A foot in length, breadth, or thickness.

**pēdes, tīs, m. (pes).** A foot-soldier, infantry, foot.

**pēdester, tris, tre, adj. (pes).** On foot; *copiae*, infantry, ii. 17; on land, by land, *itinerā*, iii. 9.

**pēditātus, us, m. (pēdes).** Infantry, foot.

**Pēdius, i, m.** *Quintus*, a lieutenant in Caesar's army, ii. 2, 11.

**pejor, us, adj., comp. of māius.** Worse.

**pejus, adv. comp. of māle.** Worse.

**pellis, is, f.** A skin, hide; a tent for soldiers (covered with skins); *sub pellibus*, in tents, in the camp, iii. 29.

**pello, ěre, pĕpŭli, pulsum, v. tr.** To drive out or away; to expel; to rout, drive back, discomfit; to overpower, conquer.

**pendo, ěre, pĕpendi, pensum, v. tr.** To weigh out; to pay, pay out; *pœnas*, to suffer punishment, vi. 9.

**penes, prep. with acc.** With, in the possession of, in the power of; *penes eos*, in their hands, vii. 21.

**pĕnitus, adv.** Deeply, far within, into the inmost part, vi. 10.

**per, prep. with the acc.** Through. I. OF SPACE: through, over, through the midst of; *ire per fines*, to go through the territory, i. 6. II. OF TIME: during, through, throughout, for the space of. III. OF OTHER RELATIONS: 1) *Means*: through, by means of, by; *per eos*, through them, i. 4. 2) *Manner*: with, by, in the manner of; *per causam*, under the pretence, vii. 9. 3) *Cause*: on account of, for the sake of, for; *per aetatem*, on account of age, ii. 16.

**pĕr-ĕgo, ěre, ĕgi, actum, v. tr.** To carry through, go through with; to execute, complete, accomplish, close, end, finish.

**pĕr-angustus, a, um, adj.** Very narrow.

**per-cĭpio, ěre, cĕpi, ceptum, v. tr. (cĕpio).** To take fully, receive, acquire, obtain; to perceive, learn, hear, hear of.

**percontatio, ōnis, f. (percontor, to inquire).** An asking, inquiry, question.

**per-curro, ěre, cŭcurri or curri, cursum, v. intr.** To run along, iv. 33; to run through, traverse.

**percussus, a, um, part. from percutio.**

**per-cŭtio, ěre, cussi, cussum, v. tr. (quĕtio, to smite).** To strike through; to slay, kill, v. 44.

**per-disco, ěre, didici, v. tr.** To learn thoroughly, get by heart, vi. 14.

**perditus, a, um, adj. (perdo, to ruin).** Lost, abandoned, bad, ruined.

**per-dŭco, ěre, xi, ctum, v. tr.** To lead, bring, or conduct through; to convey, lead, bring; to continue, prolong, v. 31; to persuade, win, vii. 4; to carry, construct, i. 8.

**pĕrendinus, a, um, adj.** After tomorrow; *dies*, v. 30.

**pĕr-eo, ěre, ěri or ii, itum, v. intr.** To pass away; to perish, be destroyed, be lost.

**pĕr-ĕquĭto, ěre, āri, ātum, v. intr. (ĕquus).** To ride through; to ride around, iv. 33.

**pĕr-exĭguus, a, um, adj.** Very small, very little.

**per-fĕcĭlis, e, adj.** Very easy.

**per-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lĕtum, v. tr.** To bear or carry through; to bring, convey; to endure, suffer, undergo, bear, i. 32; to report, spread abroad, make current, ii. 35.

**per-ficio, ěre, feci, factum, v. tr. (fĕcio).** To finish, execute, achieve, perform, complete; to bring to pass, cause, effect, i. 9.

**per-fidia, ae, f. (fides).** Faithlessness, dishonesty, treachery, perfidy.

**per-fringo, ěre, frĕgi, fra-tum, v. tr. (frango).** To break through, burst through, force one's way through.

**per-fŭga, ae, m. (perfŭgio).** A deserter.

**per-fŭgio, ěre, fŭgi, fŭgitum, v. intr.** To flee to a place for refuge; to take refuge; to go over, desert.

**perfŭgium, i, n. (perfŭgio).** A place of refuge, a shelter.

**pergo, ěre, perrezi, perrectum, v. intr. (per, rĕgo).** To go on, continue, proceed, advance.

**pĕricŭlŭtor, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. (pĕricŭlum).** To make a trial of; to try, attempt; to hazard, venture; to be in peril, be exposed to danger, vi. 34.

**pĕricŭlŭsus, a, um, adj. (pĕricŭlum).** Full of danger, dangerous, perilous, hazardous.

**pēricūlum**, *i*, *n*. A trial, attempt, experiment; risk, danger, peril, hazard.

**pēritus**, *a, um*, *adj*. Experienced, skilled, acquainted with.

**perlātus**, *a, um*, *part*. from *perfēro*.

**perlectus**, *a, um*, *part*. from *perlāgo*.

**per-lēgo**, *ēre, lēgi, lectum*, *v. tr*. To read through; to read.

**per-luo**, *ēre, ui, ūtum*, *v. tr*. (*luo*, to wash). To wash one's self, bathe.

**per-magnus**, *a, um*, *adj*. Very great.

**per-māneo**, *ēre, mansi, mansum*, *v. intr*. To remain to the end; to stay, continue, endure, persist.

**per-misceo**, *ēre, cui, stum* or *xtum*, *v. tr*. (*misceo*, to mix). To mix or mingle together; to confuse.

**per-mitto**, *ēre, misi, missum*, *v. tr*. To send through, cast, hurl; to give up, concede, surrender; to intrust, commit, *v. 3*; to allow, suffer, permit, *i. 35*.

**permixtus**, *a, um*, *part*. from *permisceo*.

**permōtus**, *a, um*, *part*. from *permōveo*.

**per-mōveo**, *ēre, mōvi, mōtum*, *v. tr*. To move deeply, stir up, excite; to induce, influence, persuade, prevail upon; to arouse, affect.

**per-mulceo**, *ēre, si, sum* or *ctum*, *v. tr*. (*mulceo*, to soothe). To soothe, appease, calm.

**permulsus**, *a, um*, *part*. from *permulceo*.

**perniciēs**, *ēi*, *f*. (*per, nēco*). Destruction, ruin, disaster, calamity.

**per-pauci**, *ae, a*, *adj. plur*. Very few.

**perpendicūlum**, *i*, *n*. (*per, pendō*). A plummet, plumb-line; *ad perpendiculum*, perpendicularly, *iv. 17*.

**per-pētor**, *i, pessus sum*, *v. dep*. (*pātor*). To suffer patiently; to endure, bear.

**perpētuo**, *adv*. (*perpētuis*). Constantly, uninterruptedly, perpetually, ever, always.

**per-pētuis**, *a, um*, *adj*. (*pāto*). Constant, uninterrupted, perpetual, continual, continuous; *perpetuā vitā*, during his whole life, *i. 40*; *in perpetuum*, forever, *iv. 34*.

**per-quīro**, *ēre, sici, sītum*, *v. tr*. (*quaero*). To make diligent search for; to inquire after, ascertain, *vi. 9*.

**per-rumpo**, *ēre, rūpi, ruptum*, *v. tr*. (*rumpo*, to break). To break through, force one's way through; to break, demolish, *vii. 23*.

**per-scribo**, *ēre, psi, ptum*, *v. tr*. To write out, describe, report.

**per-sēquor**, *i, sēcūtus sum*, *v. dep*. To follow perseveringly; to pursue, press upon; to proceed against, punish; to avenge; to perform, execute, accomplish.

**per-sēvēro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *v. intr*. (*sēvērus*, stern). To persist, remain firm, persevere.

**per-solvo**, *ēre, solvi, solūtum*, *v. tr*. To release or discharge completely; to pay, pay out; *poenas*, to suffer punishment, *i. 12*.

**per-spicio**, *ēre, exi, ectum*, *v. tr*. (*spicio*, to look). To see or look through; to examine, inspect; to perceive, observe, behold, ascertain.

**per-sto**, *āre, itī, ātum*, *v. intr*. To stand firmly; to remain firm, persist.

**per-suādeo**, *ēre, si, sum*, *v. tr*. (*suādeo*, to advise). To convince, persuade, prevail upon; to inculcate, teach, *vi. 14*; *sibi persuasum habere*, to be convinced, *iii. 2*.

**per-terreo**, *ēre, ui, itum*, *v. tr*. To frighten greatly; to terrify.

**per-timesco**, *ēre, mui*, *v. inch*. (*timeo*). To become greatly alarmed; to fear greatly.

**pertinācia**, *ae, f*. (*pertinax*, obstinate). Obstinacy, pertinacity.

**per-tineo**, *ēre, ui*, *v. intr*. (*tēneo*). To stretch out; to extend to; to aim at, tend; to pertain to, concern, relate, belong to.

**pertūli**. See *Perfēro*.

**perturbatio**, *ōnis, f*. (*perturbo*). Confusion, disorder, disturbance.

**per-turbo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*turbo*, to disturb). To throw into confusion or disorder; to confuse, disturb, discompose, embarrass.

**per-vāgor**, *āri, ātus sum*, v. dep. To wander through, roam around, rove about.

**per-vēnio**, *ire, tēni, ventum*, v. intr. To come to, arrive at, reach; *ad eum pars . . . pervenit*, to him comes a part, i. e., he receives a part, vi. 19.

**pes, pēdis**, m. The foot; a foot (as a measure); *pedem referre*, to retreat, iv. 25; *pedibus*, by land, iii. 12; *ad pedes desilire*, to dismount, iv. 12.

**pēto**, *ēre, iri or ii, itum*, v. tr. To repair to; to attack, assail; to aim at, seek, ask, demand, solicit; to seek to obtain, strive after; *go to*, direct one's course to.

**Petrōcōrii**, *ōrum*, m. A people of Gallia Celtica, vii. 75.

**Petrōnius**, *i*, m. Marcus, a centurion of the eighth Roman legion, vii. 50.

**Petrosidius**, *i*, m. Lūcius, a standard-bearer of the army under Cotta and Sabinus, v. 37.

**phālanx, gis**, f. A phalanx, a band of soldiers drawn up in close order, a compact mass of troops, i. 24.

**Pictōnes**, *um*, m. A people of Gallia Celtica on the south of the Liger (*Loire*), iii. 11; vii. 4, 75.

**piētas, ātis**, f. (*pious*, dutiful). Dutiful conduct, piety, devotion; loyalty, patriotism.

**pīlum**, *i, n*. The heavy javelin of the Roman infantry, javelin, dart.

**pīlus**, *i, m*. (*pīlum*). A manipule of the *triarii*, who formed the third division or line in the Roman legion; *primus pīlus*, the first manipule; *primi pīli centurio*, the centurion of the first manipule, i. e., the chief centurion of the legion, iii. 5.

**pinna, ae**, f. A feather; a pinnae, parapet, battlement, v. 40.

**Pirustae, ārum**, m. A people of Illyricum, v. 1.

**piscis, is**, m. A fish.

**Pīso, ōnis**, m. 1) Lūcius Calpurnius Pīso, a lieutenant of the consul Lūcius Cassius Longinus, who was defeated and slain by the Tigurini, 107 B. C., i. 12. 2) Lūcius Calpurnius Pīso, father-in-law of Caesar, consul 58 B. C., i. 6, 12. 3) Marcus Pūpius Pīso Calpurniānus, consul 61 B. C., i. 2, 35. 4) Pīso, an Aquitanian, iv. 12.

**pīx, pīcis**, f. Pitch.

**plāceo**, *ēre, ui, itum*, v. intr. To please, be acceptable to, satisfy; to seem good, be resolved on, be ordered, be decided, vii. 15.

**plācīde**, adv. (*plāceo*). Calmly, gently, quietly.

**plāco**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To appease, reconcile, propitiate.

**Plancus, i**, m. See *Mūnātius*.

**plāne**, adv. (*plānus*). Plainly, clearly, distinctly; entirely, completely, vi. 43.

**plāntities, ēi**, f. (*plānus*). Level ground, a plain.

**plānus, a, um**, adj. Flat, level, even, smooth.

**plēbes, ēi**, f., or **plebs, plēbis**, f. The commons or common people, as opposed to the patricians, senators, &c.; the multitude, populace.

**plēne**, adv. (*plēnus*). Fully, entirely, completely.

**plēnus, a, um**, adj. Full, entire, complete, whole.

**plērumque**, adv. (*plērusque*). For the most part, mostly, commonly, very often.

**plērusque, āque, umque**, adj. [rare in the sing.], plur. *plērique, aequē, āque*, the most, very many, a great part.

**Plēumoxii, ōrum**, m. A people of Gallia Belgica, under the rule of the Nervii, v. 39.

**plumbum, i, n**. Lead; *plumbum album*, tin, v. 12.

**plūrimum**, adv., sup. of *multum*. Very much, especially, exceedingly.

**plūrimus, a, um**, adj. sup. of *multus* [rare in sing.]; plur., *plūrimi, ae, a*, the most, the greatest number, very

many; *quam plurimi*, as many as possible, v. 11.

**plus**, adv., comp. of *multum*. More.

**plus**, *plūris*, adj., comp. of *multus*. More. *Plur.*, several, more.

**plūteus**, *i*, m. A breastwork, parapet, vii. 25.

**pōcūlum**, *i*, n. A drinking-cup, bowl, goblet.

**poena**, *ae*, f. A fine, punishment, penalty, satisfaction, expiation.

**poenitet**, *ēre*, *uit*, v. impers. It causes regret, makes repent. G. 409.

**pollex**, *tcis*, m. The thumb.

**polliceor**, *ēri*, *ītus sum*, v. dep. To promise, offer.

**pollicitatio**, *ōnis*, f. (*polliceor*). A promise, offer.

**Pompēius**, *i*, m. 1) *Gnaeus Pompēius Magnus*, the celebrated Roman general and conqueror, born 106 B. C. With Caesar and Crassus he formed the first triumvirate, but soon afterwards became involved in a struggle for supreme power. After his defeat by Caesar, at Pharsalia, he fled to Egypt, where he was murdered by the command of Ptolemy, 48 B. C., vi. 1; vii. 6. 2) *Gnaeus Pompēius*, an interpreter in the service of Titūrius, v. 36.

**pondus**, *ēris*, n. (*pendo*). Weight, burden.

**pōno**, *ēre*, *pōsui*, *pōsitum*, v. tr. To put or place; to set, lay; *castra*, to pitch a camp, encamp; to erect, make, build; to take off, lay aside, *arma*, iv. 37; to regard, consider; *pro certo*, to regard as certain, vii. 5; to station, *post*, *praesidium*, ii. 5.

**pons**, *pontis*, m. A bridge.

**pōposci** See *Posco*.

**pōpūlātiō**, *ōnis*, f. (*pōpūlor*). A laying waste, ravaging, pillaging, i. 15.

**pōpūlor**, *āri*, *ātus sum*, v. dep. (*pōpūlus*). To ravage, lay waste, pillage, depopulate, devastate.

**pōpūlus**, *i*, m. A people, nation, multitude.

**porrectus**, *a*, *um*, part. from *porrigo*.

**porrigo**, *ēre*, *rezi*, *rectum*, v. tr. (*pro*, *rēgo*). To stretch out, reach out, extend; to offer.

**porro**, adv. Furthermore, moreover.

**porta**, *ae*, f. A gate, entrance, passage; *decumāna porta*, see *Decumānus*.

**porto**, *āre*, *āri*, *ātum*, v. tr. To carry, convey, transport, bring, bear.

**portōrium**, *i*, n. (*porto*). A tax or duty on goods imported or exported, toll, impost.

**portus**, *us*, m. A harbor, port.

**posco**, *ēre*, *pōposci*. To ask for, demand, require, importune, entreat.

**pōsitus**, *a*, *um*, 1) part. from *pōno*; 2) adj. Situated, placed, lying.

**possessio**, *ōnis*, f. (*possideo*). A possessing, possession; property, estate.

**possideo**, *ēre*, *sēdi*, *sessum*, v. tr. (*pōtis*, able, *sēdeo*). To hold, possess, occupy.

**possum**, *posse*, *pōtui*, v. irr. (*pōtis*, able, *sum*). To be able, to have influence or power; to avail, be able to accomplish; *largiter posse*, to have great influence, i. 18; *plurimum posse*, to be very powerful, have very great influence, i. 3, 9.

**post**, adv. After, afterwards.

**post**, prep. with acc. After. 1) *Of space*: behind, next to, after; *post legiones*, behind the legions, ii. 19. 2) *Of time*: after, since; *paulo post mediam noctem*, a little after midnight, iv. 36.

**post-ea**, adv. Afterwards, after this, later.

**post-eā-quam**, adv. After that, after.

**postērus**, *a*, *um*, comp. *posterior*, sup. *postremus* and *postimus*, adj. (*post*). Coming after, following, next, ensuing, *postero die*, on the following day, i. 15; *postēri, ōrum*, coming generations, descendants, posterity, vii. 77.

**post-pōno**, *ēre*, *pōsi*, *pōsitum*, v. tr. To put after, esteem less, disregard, neglect.

**post-quam**, conj. After that, after, as soon as, when.

**postrēmo**, adv. (*postrēmus*). At last, finally.

**postrēmus**, *a, um*, adj., sup. of *postērus*. The last, in the rear, hindmost.

**postrīdie**, adv. (*postēro, die*). On the following day, the day after; *postrīdie ejus diei* (a pleonasm), on the day after this day, i. 23.

**postulātum**, *i, n.* (*postūlo*). A demand, request.

**postūlo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*posco*). To demand, ask, request.

**pōtens**, *tis*, adj. (*possum*). Able, powerful, influential, mighty, strong.

**pōtentātus**, *us, m.* (*pōtens*). Power, might, dominion, rule.

**pōtentia**, *ae, f.* (*pōtens*). Power, ability, might, influence, authority, political power.

**pōtestas**, *ātis, f.* (*possum*). Ability, power, legal power, right, i. 16; in *potestate ejus*, in his power, *i. e.*, subject to him, i. 32; opportunity, privilege, i. 40; leave, permission, iv. 11.

**pōtior**, *iri, itus sum*, v. dep. (*pōtis*, able). To become master of, acquire, gain, get, obtain.

**pōtius**, comp.; sup. *pōtissime* and *pōtissimum*, adv. Rather, in preference, sooner.

**prae**, prep. with abl. Before; in comparison with, ii. 30; for, on account of, because of, by reason of, vii. 44.

**prae-ācūtus**, *a, um*, adj. Sharpened at the end, sharpened, pointed.

**praebeo**, *ēre, ui, itum*, v. tr. (*prae, habeo*). To hold forth, reach out; to offer, extend, present; to show, exhibit; to give, furnish, supply, afford.

**prae-cāveo**, *ēre, cāvi, cautum*, v. intr. To be on the guard against, take precautions.

**prae-cēdo**, *ēre, cessi, cessum*, v. intr. To go before; to surpass, excel, be superior to.

**praeceps**, *ceptis*, adj. (*prae, cēptus*). Head foremost, headlong; has-

ty, precipitate; precipitous, steep, iv. 33.

**praeceptum**, *i, n.* (*praecipere*). An order, direction, command; advice, counsel, precept.

**prae-cīpio**, *ēre, ēpi, eptum*, v. tr. (*cāpio*). To take beforehand, obtain in advance; to suspect, vii. 9; to give orders; to advise, direct, instruct.

**prae-cīpito**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*praeeptus*). To throw or cast headlong; *se in flumen*, to plunge (cast one's self) into the river, iv. 15.

**praecipue**, adv. (*praecipuus*). Especially, principally, chiefly.

**praecipuus**, *a, um*, adj. (*praecipio*). Particular, especial, extraordinary, peculiar.

**prae-clūdo**, *ēre, si, sum*, v. tr. (*claudio*). To shut up, close, block up.

**praeco**, *ōnis, m.* A herald.

**Praeconinus**, *i, m.* See *Valerius*.

**prae-curro**, *ēre, cūcurri* or *curri, cursum*, v. intr. To run before, hasten on before; to surpass, excel, outstrip.

**praeda**, *ae, f.* Property taken in war, booty, plunder, spoil.

**prae-dīco**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To make known in public; to proclaim, declare, say, tell, affirm, report, iv. 31; to vaunt, boast, i. 44.

**praedor**, *āri, ātus sum*, v. dep. (*praeda*). To make booty, rob, plunder, ravage.

**prae-dūco**, *ēre, duxi, ductum*, v. tr. To draw before; to make or construct before; *murum*, vii. 46.

**praefectus**, *i, m.* (*praeficio*). An overseer, leader, commander; *praefectus equitum*, a commander of the cavalry, iii. 26.

**prae-fēro**, *ferre, tūli, lātum*, v. tr. To bear before; to prefer, choose rather, esteem more; *se militibus praeferre*, to place one's self in front of the soldiers, ii. 27.

**prae-ficio**, *ēre, feci, factum*, v. tr. (*fācio*). To set over; to place in authority over, appoint to the command of, i. 52.

**prae-figo**, *ĕre, xi, xum*, v. tr. (*figo*, to fix). To set up in front.

**praesui**. See *Praesum*.

**prae-mĕtuo**, *ĕre, ui*, v. intr. (*mĕtus*). To fear beforehand; to be anxious about.

**prae-mitto**, *ĕre, misi, missum*, v. tr. To send before; to send in advance.

**praemium**, *i*, n. (*prae*). Profit, advantage; reward, distinction.

**prae-occŭpo**, *ĕre, ŏci, ŏtum*, v. tr. To occupy beforehand, take possession of, preoccupy.

**prae-opto**, *ĕre, ŏvi, ŏtum*, v. tr. (*opto*, to wish). To choose rather, desire rather; to prefer.

**prae-pāro**, *ĕre, ŏri, ŏtum*, v. tr. To make ready beforehand; to prepare.

**prae-pōno**, *ĕre, pōui, pōitum*, v. tr. To put or set before; to place in command of, appoint over.

**prae-rumpo**, *ĕre, rūpi, ruptum*, v. tr. (*rumpo*, to break). To break off in front; to break off, tear away.

**prae-ruptus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *prae-rumpo*; 2) adj. Broken or torn off, abrupt, steep, rugged, craggy.

**prae-scribo**, *ĕre, psi, ptum*, v. tr. To write before; to direct, order, dictate, appoint, command, prescribe.

**praescriptum**, *i*, n. (*praescribo*). Order, direction, instruction, command; *ad alterius praescriptum*, at the dictation of another, i. 36.

**praesens**, *entis*, adj. (*praesum*). Present, in person; *se praesente*, in his presence, i. 53.

**praesentia**, *ae, f.* (*praesens*). The present; *animi*, presence of mind, courage, firmness, v. 43.

**prae-sentio**, *ire, sensi, sensum*, v. tr. To feel or perceive beforehand; to foresee, observe.

**prae-sēpio**, *ire, psi, ptum*, v. tr. (*sēpio*, to hedge in). To block up, barricade.

**praesertim**, adv. (*prae, sĕro*). Especially, particularly, chiefly.

**praesidium**, *i*, n. (*prae, sĕdeo*). A defence, protection, help, support, aid,

security; a guard, garrison; convoy, escort; fortification, post, station, intrenchment, camp.

**praesto**, adv. (*prae, sto*). Present, at hand, ready; *praesto fuissent*, had met, v. 26.

**prae-sto**, *ĕre, stiti, stitum*, v. tr. and intr. To stand before; to surpass, excel, be superior to; to discharge, accomplish, perform; to show, exhibit, evince, manifest. *Praestul*, impers., it is better, iv. 14.

**prae-sum**, *esse, fui*, v. intr. To be before, be in command of; to have the charge of, preside over.

**praeter**, prep. with acc. (*prae*). Past, by, beyond, i. 48; except, besides, iv. 1; together with, in addition to, i. 43; contrary to, against, iii. 3.

**praetĕr-ea**, adv. Besides, beyond this, moreover.

**praetĕr-eo**, *ire, iui or ii, itum*, v. tr. and intr. To go or pass by; to omit, pass over, neglect.

**praetĕritus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *praetĕreo*; 2) adj. Past, gone by, departed.

**praeter-mitto**, *ĕre, misi, missum*, v. tr. To let go; to let pass, iv. 13; to pass over, omit, make no mention of, vii. 25.

**praeter-quam**, adv. Beyond, besides, except.

**praeter-vĕhor**, *i, vectus sum*, v. dep. To ride by or past, to sail.

**praetor**, *ōris*, m. A praetor, an officer next in rank to the consul; a commander, general.

**praetōrius**, *a, um*, adj. (*praetor*). Relating to the praetor, praetorian.

**prae-ūro**, *ĕre, ussi, ustum*, v. tr. (*ūro*, to burn). To burn at the end.

**prae-verto**, *ĕre, ti, sum*, v. tr. To be beforehand, anticipate; to give attention to, vii. 33.

**prāvus**, *a, um*, adj. Wrong, wicked, bad, unjust, depraved.

**prĕces**, *um*, f. pl. [rare in sing., but *prĕci, prĕcem*, and *prĕce* occur]. Requests, prayers, entreaties, imprecations, vi. 31.

**prēhendo**, or **prendo**, *ēre*, *dī*, *sum*, v. tr. To seize, lay hold of, grasp.

**prēmo**, *ēre*, *pressi*, *pressum*, v. tr. To press, press hard upon, crowd, pursue closely, vii. 19; to press down; to burden, load; to oppress, harass, annoy, vi. 13; *re frumentariā premi*, to be distressed for supplies, v. 28.

**prendo**. See *Prēhendo*.

**prētium**, *i*, n. Worth, value, price.

**prex**. See *Præces*.

**pridie**, adv. (*priōri*, *die*). On the day before.

**primipilus**, *i*, m. (*primus*, *pīlus*) The chief centurion, ii. 25.

**primo**, adv. (*primus*). At first, in the first place.

**primum**, adv. (*primus*). At first, in the first place, in the beginning; with *ut*, *ubi*, *cum*, as soon as, ii. 2: *quam primum*, as soon as possible, i. 40.

**primus**, *a*, *um*, adj., sup. of *prior*. The first, the first part of, the beginning of; the foremost, principal, most influential, ii. 3; *primum agmen*, the van, i. 15; *primā luce*, at daybreak, i. 22.

**princeps**, *ip̄is*, adj. and subs. m. and f. (*primus*, *cāpio*). The first in order or rank, chief, the most eminent; leader, chief, head, author.

**principatus**, *us*, m. (*princeps*). The first place, the chief position; rule, sovereignty, dominion.

**prior**, *us*, gen. *ōris*, adj., comp. (sup. *primus*). Former, previous; *priores*, those in front, ii. 11.

**pristinus**, *a*, *um*, adj. Former, early, primitive, original; *pristini diei*, of the preceding day, iv. 14.

**prius**, adv. Before, sooner, previously.

**prius-quam**, adv. Before, sooner than.

**privātim**, adv. (*privātus*). As a private citizen, for one's self; in private, privately.

**privātus**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*prīro*, to deprive). Belonging to an individual,

private. *Subs.*, a private citizen, one who holds no public office, vi. 13.

**pro**, prep. with abl. Before, in front of; *pro castris*, before the camp, i. 51; for, for the advantage of, for the protection of, in behalf of, ii. 14; in proportion to, in comparison with, according to, v. 27; as, for; *pro perfugā*, as a deserter, iii. 18; on account of, by reason of.

**prōbo**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*prōbus*, upright). To test, examine; to approve, be satisfied with; to prove, show, demonstrate, i. 3.

**prō-cēdo**, *ēre*, *cessi*, *cessum*, v. intr. To go forth, proceed, advance.

**Proculus**, *i*, m. See *Valērius*.

**prō-clino**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*clīno*, to incline). To bend forward. *Prōclinātus*, *a*, *um*, part., verging to consummation, tending to ruin, vii. 42.

**prō-consul**, *ūlis*, m. A proconsul, a military governor or commander, invested with the power of consul, iii. 20.

**prōcul**, adv. (*prōcello*, to drive away). Afar off, in the distance, from afar.

**prō-cumbo**, *ēre*, *cūbui*, *cūbitum*, v. intr. To fall forward; to sink or bend down; to lie down, be beaten down, vi. 43.

**prō-cūro**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, v. tr. To take care of, look after, attend to.

**prō-curro**, *ēre*, *cūcurri* or *curri*, *cursum*, v. intr. To run forth, hasten forth, rush forward.

**prōdeo**, *ēre*, *īci* or *īi*, *itum*, v. intr. (*pro*, *eo*). To go forward, advance, proceed, march forward.

**prōdītio**, *ōnis*, f. (*prōdo*). Betrayal, treachery, treason.

**prōdītor**, *ōris*, m. (*prōdo*). A traitor.

**prō-do**, *ēre*, *dīdī*, *dītum*, v. tr. To give forth, publish, divulge, make known; to hand down, transmit, bequeath; to give up, betray, surrender, abandon.

**prō-dūco**, *ēre*, *duxi*, *ductum*, v. tr. To lead forth, bring out; to stretch



out, lengthen, extend, prolong, protract, iv. 30.

**proelior**, *āri*, *ātus sum*, v. dep. (*proelium*). To join battle; to engage, fight, contend.

**proelium**, *i*, n. A battle, combat, engagement.

**prōfectio**, *ōnis*, f. (*prōficiscor*). A going away, departure, march.

**prōfecto**, adv. (*prō*, *facto*). Actually, certainly, in truth, assuredly.

**prōfectus**, *a*, *um*, part. from *prōficio*.

**prōfectus**, *a*, *um*, part. from *prōficiscor*.

**prōfēro**, *ferre*, *tūli*, *lātum*, v. tr. To bear forth, bring out, produce, bring forward.

**prōficio**, *ēre*, *fēci*, *fectum*, v. tr. and intr. (*fācio*). To make progress, advance; to accomplish, effect, obtain.

**prōficiscor**, *i*, *prōfectus sum*, v. dep. (*fācio*). To put one's self forward; to set out, go, march, travel, depart, proceed.

**prōfiteor**, *ēri*, *fessus sum*, v. dep. (*fāteor*). To declare publicly, confess openly, acknowledge, avow; to profess; to offer freely, propose voluntarily, promise.

**pro-fligo**, *āre*, *āri*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*fligo*, to strike). To strike to the ground; to overthrow, conquer, defeat, overcome, rout, destroy.

**pro-fluo**, *ēre*, *xi*, *xum*, v. intr. To flow forth; to issue.

**prō-fūgio**, *ēre*, *fūgi*, *fūgitum*, v. intr. To flee before or from; to flee, escape; to take refuge, flee for refuge.

**prōfui** See *Prōvum*.

**pro-gnātus**, *a*, *um*, adj. Born, descended, sprung from.

**prō-grēdior**, *i*, *gressus sum*, v. dep. (*grādior*, to go). To go forward, advance, proceed.

**prō-hibeo**, *ēre*, *ui*, *itum*, v. tr. (*hābeo*). To hold back, check, restrain, prevent, debar, keep from; *itinere exercitum*, to check the march of the

army, i. 10; to save from, protect, preserve, v. 21.

**pro-inde**, adv. Hence, therefore, accordingly.

**prō-jicio**, *ēre*, *jēci*, *jectum*, v. tr. (*jācio*). To throw forth; to cast away, give up, renounce, reject; to fling away, lay down; *se projicere ad pedes*, to throw one's self at the feet, i. 27 31; *se ex navi*, to leap from the ship iv. 25.

**prōlātus**, *a*, *um*, part. from *prōfēro*.

**prōmīnens**, *entis*, part. (*prōmīneo*).

Leaning forward, projecting, vii. 47.

**prō-mīneo**, *ēre*, *ui*, v. intr. (*mīneo*, to project). To reach out, project.

**prōmiscue**, adv. (*prō*, *misceo*, to mix). In common, promiscuously.

**prō-mitto**, *ēre*, *misi*, *missum*, v. tr.

To promise; to let go; to let grow; *capillo promisso*, with long hair, v. 14.

**prōmontōrium**, *i*, n. (*prō*, *mons*).

A headland, promontory.

**prō-mōveo**, *ēre*, *mōvi*, *mōtum*, v. tr. To move forward, advance, push on, cause to advance.

**promptus**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*prōmo*, to bring forward). Ready, quick, active.

**prōne**, adv. (*prōnus*, inclined). In an inclined position, sloping downwards, iv. 17.

**prō-nuntio**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, v. tr. To make known publicly; to proclaim, announce, tell, narrate, pronounce, report.

**prōpe**, *prōpius*, *proxime*, adv. Near, close to, beside; nearly, almost, v. 20; recently, lately, i. 24.

**prōpe**, prep. with acc. Near, near by, i. 22.

**prō-pello**, *ēre*, *pūli*, *pulsum*, v. tr. To drive forward, urge on; to put to flight, rout, i. 15.

**prōpēro**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, v. intr. (*prōpērus*, quick). To hasten, make haste.

**prōpinquitas**, *ātis*, f. (*prōpinquus*). Nearness, vicinity, proximity; relationship, ii. 4.

**prōpinquus**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*prōpe*). Near, neighboring; near at hand, *dis*,

iv. 36; nearly related, akin. *Subs.*, a relative, kinsman, kinswoman, i. 18.

**prōpior**, *ius*, gen. *ōris*, sup. *proximus*. Nearer. For sup. see *Proximus*.

**prōpius**, adv. See *Prōpe*.

**prō-pōno**, *ēre, pōsui, pōsitum*, v. tr. To set forth, expose to view, present, display; to make known, represent, declare, tell, explain, relate; to propose, promise, offer, *praemia*, v. 40; *animo proponere*, to purpose, intend, vii. 47.

**prōpōsitus**, *a, um*, part. from *prō-pōno*.

**proprius**, *a, um*, adj. Peculiar, one's own, *finis*, vi. 22. *Proprium*, *i*, n. *subs.*, a special characteristic, peculiarity, *proprium virtutis*, vi. 23.

**propter**, prep. with acc. On account of, by reason of.

**proptēr-ea**, adv. Therefore, for that reason, on that account; *proptēr-ea quod*, because that, because.

**prō-pugnātor**, *ōris*, m. (*pugno*). A defender.

**prō-pugno**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To fight for; to rush out to battle, make sorties, v. 9; to contend in defence of, to defend one's self.

**prōpūli**. See *Prōpello*.

**prōpulso**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*prōpello*). To drive back, keep off, ward off.

**prōra**, *ae, f.* The fore-part of a ship, the prow.

**prō-ruo**, *ēre, rui, rūtum*, v. tr. (*ruo*, to rush down). To tear down, demolish.

**prō-sēquor**, *i, cūtus sum*, v. dep. To follow, accompany, attend; to pursue; *oratione prosequi*, to address, ii. 5.

**prospectus**, *us, m.* (*prospicio*). Prospect, sight, view; *in prospectu*, in sight, v. 10.

**pro-spicio**, *ēre, ezi, ectum*, v. tr. (*spicio*, to look). To look forward; to provide for, take care of, consult for.

**pro-sterno**, *ēre, strāvi, strātum*, v. tr. (*sterno*, to stretch out). To prostrate, overthrow, destroy.

**prō-sum**, *prodesse, prōfui*, v. intr.

To be useful, be of service; to benefit, profit, avail, conduce.

**prō-tēgo**, *ēre, zi, ctum*, v. tr. To cover before or in front; to defend, protect.

**prō-terreo**, *ēre, ui, itum*, v. tr. To frighten away; to terrify.

**prōtinus**, adv. (*prō, tēnus*, as far as). Right on, continuously; immediately, directly, forthwith, instantly.

**prō-turbo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*turbo*, to confuse). To drive forward, repulse, rout, ii. 19.

**prōvectus**, *a, um*, part. from *prō-vēho*.

**prō-vēho**, *ēre, vezi, vectum*, v. tr. To carry forward; to bear or drive away.

**prō-vēnio**, *ire, tēni, ventum*, v. intr. To come forth, grow, thrive, turn out, v. 24.

**prōventus**, *us, m.* (*prōcēnio*). A coming forth, issue, consequence, result, success, good fortune.

**prō-video**, *ēre, vidi, risum*, v. tr. To see before one's self; to discern; to make provision for, provide for, take care of.

**prōvincia**, *ae, f.* (*prō, vinco*). A province, a conquered territory under a military governor; *in provinciam redigere*, to reduce to a province, i. 45. See *Provincia*, under *Gallia*.

**prōvinciālis**, *e, adj.* (*prōvincia*). Relating to a province, provincial.

**prō-volo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. intr. (*volo*, to fly). To fly forth, rush out.

**proxime**, adv., sup. of *prōpe*. Very near, very recently, last.

**proximus**, *a, um*, adj., sup. of *prōpior*. Nearest, next, i. 1; following, ensuing, i. 40; previous, last, i. 44; *iter*, the shortest, i. 10.

**prūdētia**, *ae, f.* (*prō, video*). Sagacity, foresight, wisdom, prudence, discretion.

**Ptianiī**, *ōrum*, m. A people of Aquitania, in the region of *Pau*, iii. 27.

**pūbes**, or **pūber**, *ēris*, adj. Grown up, of ripe age, adult. *Pūbēres*, *um*, m. pl., adults, men, v. 56.

**publice**, adv. (*publicus*). By public authority, in the name or in behalf of the state; *publice esse laudem*, in a national point of view, iv. 3; *polliceri*, in the name of the state, i. 16.

**publico**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*publicus*). To make public property; to confiscate.

**publicus**, *a*, *um*, adj. (for *pōpūlicus*, from *pōpūlus*). Of or belonging to the state, public, common. *Publicus*, *i*, *m.*, a public officer, magistrate; *publicum*, *i*, *n.*, a public place, vi. 18; *in publicum*, publicly, before the people, vi. 28.

**Publius**, *i*, *m.* A Roman praenomen.

**pūdet**, *ēre*, *uit*, or *pūditum est*, v. impers. To be ashamed.

**pūdor**, *ōris*, *m.* (*pūdet*). The feeling of shame, respect, regard; a cause for shame, disgrace, ignominy.

**puer**, *ēri*, *m.* A boy, child; *a pueris*, from childhood, iv. 1.

**puērilis**, *e*, adj. (*puer*). Boyish, childish, youthful.

**pugna**, *ae*, *f.* (*pugno*). A battle, combat, contest, action, engagement.

**pugno**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, v. intr. To fight, contend, give battle, engage.

**pulcher**, *chra*, *chrum*; comp. *pulchrior*, sup. *pulcherrimus*, G. 163, 1, adj. Beautiful, noble, excellent, glorious, honorable.

**Pulſio**, *ōnis*, *m.* *Titus*, a centurion of distinguished bravery, v. 44.

**pulsus**, *a*, *um*, part. from *pello*.

**pulsus**, *us*, *m.* (*pello*). A striking, beating, stroke; *remorum*, the stroke of the oars, rowing, iii. 13.

**pulvis**, *ēris*, *m.* Dust.

**puppis**, *is*, *f.* The stern of a ship.

**pargo**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*pūrus*, pure, *āgo*). To excuse, justify, exculpate.

**pūto**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, v. tr. To think, believe; to consider, esteem, account; to decide, judge.

**Pyrenaeus**, *a*, *um*, adj. Pyrenean; *montes*, the Pyrenees, i. 1.

## Q.

**quā**, adv. (abl. of *qui*, sc. *parte*). In which place, where, on which side; also for *per quos*, *unde*, etc., v. 46.

**quādrāgēni**, *ae*, *a*, num. adj. Forty each.

**quādrāginta**, num. adj. (*quattuor* or). Forty.

**quādringenti**, *ae*, *a*, num. adj. (*quattuor*, *centum*). Four hundred.

**quaero**, *ēre*, *sivi*, *situm*, v. tr. To seek, search for, procure, obtain; to ask, inquire, demand; to examine into, investigate.

**quaestio**, *ōnis*, *f.* (*quaero*). A seeking, inquiring; an inquiry, question; a judicial inquiry, a public investigation, vi. 19.

**quaestor**, *ōris*, *m.* (*quaero*). Quaestor, a Roman officer intrusted with the care of the public money, a paymaster, treasurer, with the rank of *legatus*.

**quaestus**, *us*, *m.* (*quaero*). A gaining, gain, acquisition.

**quālis**, *e*, adj. (*quis*). Of what sort or kind, of what nature; as, such as.

**quam**, adv. (*qui*). In what manner, how; as, than. *With the superlative*: possible, as possible; *quam maximus*, the greatest possible, i. 3; *quam primum*, as soon as possible, i. 40.

**quam-diu**, adv. How long, as long as.

**quam-ōb-rem**, adv. For which reason; on which account, wherefore.

**quam-vis**, adv. As much as you wish, however much, however, very.

**quando**, adv. When; *si quando*, if ever.

**quantōpēre**, adv. (*quantus*, *opus*) How greatly, how much.

**quantus**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*quam*). How great, how much; *quantum boni*, how much good, i. 40. With or without *tantus*, as, such as, as great as, as much as, ii. 11. With comparatives, *quanto* . . . *tanto*, the . . . the, v. 45.

**quantus-vis**, *avis*, *umvis*, adj. However great, ever so great.

**quā-re**, adv. From what cause, wherefore, why; for which reason, wherefore, therefore; that, so that.

**quartus**, *a, um*, num. adj. (*quatuor*). Fourth.

**quāsi**, adv. As if, just as if, as it were, as though.

**quattuor**, num. adj. Four.

**quattuor-dēcim**, num. adj. (*dē-cim*). Fourteen.

**que**, conj. [always enclitic, *i. e.*, appended to another word]. And; *que . . . que*; *que . . . et*, both . . . and.

**quē-m-ad-mōdum**, adv. In what manner, how.

**quēror**, *i*, *questus sum*, *v. dep.* To complain, lament, bewail.

**qui, quae, quod**, rel. pron. Who, which, what, that; *ut qui*, as one who, like one who. *Qui* is often used for *is*, *i. 11, 12*; for *qualis*, *ii. 4*; for *is qui*, *vi. 11*; for *ut is*, *i. 15*; for *quum is* or *quippe qui*, *v. 4*. See *G. 445, 1-9; 453*.

**qui-cumque, quaecumque, quodcumque**, indef. pron. Whoever, whichever, whatever, whatsoever, every possible, all.

**quidam, quaedam, quoddam** or **quiddam**, indef. pron. Certain, a certain one, some one, somebody, something.


**quidem**, conj. Indeed, truly, at least, certainly; *ne . . . quidem*, not even.

**quies, ētis**, *f.* Rest, quiet, repose.

**quiētus**, *a, um*, adj. (*quies*). At rest, calm, quiet, peaceful, undisturbed.

**quin**, conj. (*qui, ne*). That not, but that, that; *quin etiam*, nay even, moreover, *i. 17*. After *nemo, nullus*, etc., that not, which not, *v. 53*.

**quinam**. See *Quinam*.

**quincunx, uncis**, *m.* (*quinque, uncia*, a twelfth). Fiftewelfths, the five spots on dice; *in quincuncem*, arranged in oblique lines or rows, thus, , *vii. 73*.

**quindēcim**, num. adj. (*quinque, dēcim*). Fifteen.

**quingenti, ae, a**, num. adj. (*quinque, centum*). Five hundred.

**quīni, ae, a**, num. adj. distrib. (*quinque*). Five each, every five.

**quingūāginta**, num. adj. (*quinque*). Fifty.

**quinque**, num. adj. Five.

**quintus, a, um**, num. adj. (*quinque*). The fifth.

**Quintus, i**, *m.* A Roman praenomen.

**quis, quae, quid** [used substantively]; **qui, quae** or **qua, quod** [used adjectively]. 1) interr. g. pron. Who? which? what? *Quid* in exclamations, what! how! in inquiries often, why? wherefore? *i. 47*. 2) indef. pron [usually after *ne, si, nisi*]. Any, some, any one, some one, anything, something.

**quis-nam, quaenam, quidnam**, interrog. pron.; *quinam, quaenam, quodnam*, when used adjectively. Who? which? what? what pray? *ii. 30*.

**quis-piam, quae-piam, quod-piam**, or **quid-piam**, indef. pron. Any, some, any one, some one, anything, something.

**quis-quam, quaequam, quidquam** or **quicquam**, indef. pron. Any, some, any one, anything.

**quis-que, quaeque, quodque** or **quid-que**, indef. pron. Whoever it be, each, every, whatever, any, all.

**quis-quis, quaequae, quidquid, quicquid**, and **quodquod**, indef. pron. Whoever, whosoever, whatever, whatsoever, every one, each, every, all.

**quī-vis, quaevis, quidvis**, and **quodvis**, indef. pron. Who or what you please, any whatever, any one, anything, every one, everything.

**quō**, adv. (*abl.*, from *qui*). Where, *iv. 1*; wherein, *vi. 11*; to which, whither, *ii. 16*; after *si*, to any place, anywhere, *i. 48*; to what end, or for what purpose, wherefore, why, on which account, how far, to what degree. With comparatives, *quo . . . eo*, the . . . the. *Conj.* That, in order that, that by this means; *quo minus* or *quominus*, that not, from, with the subj. after verbs of hindering, preventing, etc.

**quo-ad**, adv. So long as, as far as; until, till.

**quod**, conj. (*qui*). That, in that; because; in so far as, i. 35; as touching that, as to this; now; *quod si*, now if, but if; *quod ni*, but if not.

**quō-mīnus**. See *Quo*.

**quōniam**, conj. (*quom = cum, jam*). Since now, because, whereas, since.

**quōque**, conj. Also, likewise.

**quōquo**, adv. (*quisquis*). To whatever place, whithersoever.

**quōquōversum**, or **-versus**, adv. (*quisquis, vortor*). In every direction, every way, on all sides.

**quōt**, indecl. adj. How many, as many as.

**quōt-annis**, adv. (*annus*). Every year, yearly.

**quōtidiānus**, *a, um*, adj. (*quōtīdie*). Daily, every day; usual, ordinary.

**quōtīdie**, adv. (*quōt, dies*). Daily, every day.

**quōties**, adv. (*quōt*). How often, how many times.

## R.

**rādix**, *icis*, f. A root; the lower part of an object, the foot or base of a hill, mountain, etc.

**rādo**, *ēre, rāsi, rāsum*, v tr. To shave, v. 14.

**rāmus**, *i*, m. A branch, bough, twig; a branch of a stag's antlers, vi. 26.

**rāpīditas**, *ātis*, f. (*rāpidus*, swift). Swiftmess, velocity, rapidity.

**rāpīna**, *ae*, f. (*rāpio*, to seize). Robbery, plundering, pillage.

**rārus**, *a, um*, adj. Far apart, scattered about, dispersed, single; *rari propugnabant*, made sorties in small detachments or squads, v. 9; *raros milites*, soldiers in small squads, vii. 45.

**rātio**, *ōnis*, f. (*reor*, to think). A reckoning, account, calculation, computation; transaction, affair, vi. 14; respect, regard, concern, consideration, care, v. 27, vii. 71, 75; judgment,

understanding, reason, i. 40, vii. 16, 21; plan, method, conduct, direction, vi. 33, vii. 63; manner, nature, sort, kind, i. 42; science, knowledge, iv. 1; motive, ground, reason, i. 28.

**rātis**, *is*, f. A raft, a float.

**Raurici**, *drum*, m. A Gallic people who dwelt on the Rhine, neighbors of the Helvetii and of the Tulingi; their chief town was Augusta Rauricōrum, modern *Augst*, near Bâle, i. 5, 29; vi. 25; vii. 75.

**rē** or **rēd**, insep. prep. G. 344, 6.

**rēbellio**, *ōnis*, f. (*rē, bellum*). A renewal of war, a revolt, rebellion.

**Rebīlus**, *i*, m. *Gāius Caninius Rebīlus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants, vii. 83, 90.

**rē-cēdo**, *ēre, cessi, cessum*, v. intr. To go back, retreat, withdraw, depart, retire.

**rēcens**, *tis*, adj. New, recent; not exhausted by fatigue, fresh, vigorous.

**rē-censeo**, *ēre, ui, itum* or *um*, v. tr. To count over, enumerate, review.

**rēceptācūlum**, *i*, n. (*rē, cāpio*). A place of shelter, a lurking-place, retreat.

**rēceptus**, *us*, m. (*rēctpio*). A drawing back, a retreat, a falling back; a place of retreat, refuge, vi. 9; *receptui canere*, to sound or give the signal for a retreat, or for a halt, vii. 47.

**rēceptus**, *a, um*, part. from *rēctpio*.

**rēcensus**, *us*, m. (*rēcēdo*). A going back, retreat; an opportunity to retreat, v. 43.

**rē-cīdo**, *ēre, cīdi, cāsum*, v. intr. (*rē, cādo*). To fall back, recoil, fall upon, light upon; to occur, vii. 1.

**rē-cīpio**, *ēre, cēpi, ceptum*, v. tr. (*cāpio*). To take back, get back, regain, recover; to receive, accept, admit, allow, vii. 26; *se recipere*, to be-take one's self, withdraw, retire; to recover, collect one's self, *se ex terrore*, ii. 12; *in fidem recipere*, to take under one's protection, ii. 15; *suos incolumes*, to bring off, rescue, vii. 12.

**rē-cīto**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*cīto*, to call out). To read aloud, v. 48.

**rē-clīno**, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. To lean back, recline.

**recte**, adv. (*rectus*). In a straight line; rightly, correctly, well, duly, properly.

**rectus**, a, um, adj. (*rēgo*). Straight, direct; *rectā regione*, in a straight line, vii. 46.

**rē-cūpēro**, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (*cūpio*). To regain, recover.

**rē-cūso**, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (*causa*). To refuse, reject, decline, object.

**red-do**, ēre, didi, dātum, v. tr. To give back, restore, return; to give up, yield, relinquish; to make, cause, render.

**rēdemptus**, a, um, part. from *rēdēmo*.

**rēd-eo**, īre, īvi or īi, itum, v. intr. To go back, turn back, return; to be brought or reduced, v. 48, vi. 11; to descend, ii. 8.

**rēd-īgo**, ēre, ēgi, actum, v. tr. (*āgo*). To drive or bring back; to restore; to reduce, render, make; to constrain, force, compel.

**rēd-īmo**, āre, ēmi, emptum, v. tr. (*ēmo*). To buy back; to ransom, release, redeem; to buy up, to undertake by contract, to farm, i. 18; to procure, purchase, i. 37, 44.

**rēd-intēgro**, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (*intēger*). To make whole again; to renew, restore, recruit, refresh, revive.

**rēditio**, ōnis, f. (*rēdeo*). A going or coming back, a return.

**rēdītus**, us, m. (*rēdeo*). A return.

**Redōnes**, um, m. A people of Gallia Celtica, in the neighborhood of the modern Rennes, in Brittany, ii. 34; vii. 75.

**rē-dūco**, ēre, duxi, ductum, v. tr. To lead or conduct back; to bring back, convey back; to draw back, remove.

**rē-fēro**, ferre, tūli, lātum, v. tr. To bear back, bring back, i. 29; to bring, convey, carry; to restore, return, pay back, i. 35; to report, announce, refer; *pedem referre*, to retreat, withdraw.

**rē-ficio**, ēre, feci, factum, v. tr. (*fācio*). To make again or anew; to re-

store, repair, rebuild; to invigorate, refresh, cause to rest, iii. 5; vii. 32.

**rēfractus**, a, um, part. from *rēfringo*.

**rē-fringo**, ēre, frāgi, fractum, v. tr. (*frango*). To break open, destroy; to check, lessen, repress, vii. 56.

**rē-fūgio**, ēre, fūgi, fūgitum, v. intr. To flee back, run away, escape; to retreat, go back, recede.

**Rēginus**, i, m. See *Antistius*.

**rēgio**, ōnis, f. (*rēgo*). Direction, line, vi. 25; *e regione*, in the opposite direction, over against, opposite, vii. 25, 35; a boundary; a region, district, territory, country; *regio agri*, tract of land, vii. 13.

**rēgius**, a, um, adj. (*rex*). Royal, regal, kingly.

**regno**, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (*regnum*). To have royal power; to rule, reign, govern, be king.

**regnum**, i, n. (*rex*). Kingly government, royal power; kingdom, dominion, sovereignty.

**rēgo**, ēre, xi, ctum, v. tr. To keep straight; to guide, conduct, direct; to sway, control, govern.

**rē-grēdior**, i, gressus sum, v. dep. (*grādior*, to go). To go back, return.

**rējectus**, a, um, part. from *rējicio*.

**re-jicio**, ēre, jēci, jectum, v. tr. (*jācio*). To throw back, cast or hurl back, i. 46; to throw away, fling down, i. 52; to force back, drive back, repel, i. 24, ii. 33; to reject, cast off.

**rē-languesco**, ēre, gui, v. intr. To grow languid or faint; to become enfeebled.

**rēlātus**, a, um, part. from *rēfēro*.

**rē-lēgo**, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (*lēgo*, āre, to depute). To send back or away; to remove.

**rēlictus**, a, um, part. from *rēlinquo*.

**rēligio**, ōnis, f. Reverence for the gods, piety, religion. *Plur.*, religious matters, the doctrines and usages of religion, vi. 13; religious obligations, v. 6; religious observances, vi. 16; superstitious alarms, vi. 37.

**rē-linquo**, ēre, liqui, lictum, v. tr.

(*linquo*, to leave). To leave behind; to abandon; to omit, leave.

**rēliquiae**, *ārum*, f. pl. (*rēliquus*). The remains, remnant, rest.

**rēliquus**, *a, um*, adj. (*rēlinquo*). Remaining, the rest; future, subsequent, i. 20, iii. 16; the remainder of, the rest of. *Rēliquum*, i, n., the remainder, the rest; *nihil est reliqui*, there is nothing left, i. 11.

**rē-māneo**, *āre, mansi, mansum*, v. intr. To remain behind, stay; to continue, hold out, last, vii. 35.

**rēmex**, *tgis*, m. (*rēmus, āgo*). A rower.

**Rēmi**, *ōrum*, m. A people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was Durocorturum, now *Rheims*, ii. 3, sq.; iii. 11; v. 3, 24, 53; vi. 4, 12, etc.

**rēmigo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*rēmus, āgo*). To row.

**rē-mīgro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. intr. (*mīgro*, to remove). To remove back, go back, return.

**rēmīniscor**, *i*, v. dep. To recall to mind, recollect, remember.

**rēmīssus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *rēmitto*; 2) adj. Relaxed, not rigid or hard, gentle, mild; *remissiora frigora*, less severe, v. 12.

**rē-mitto**, *ēre, mīsi, missum*, v. tr. To send back, despatch back; to hurl back, ii. 27; to slacken, relax, relieve, impair, abate, v. 49; to give up, surrender, sacrifice, i. 44; to give back, resign, vii. 20.

**rē-mollesco**, *ēre, v. intr. (mollis)*. To become soft again; to become enervated, iv. 2.

**rē-mōtus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *rē-moveo*; 2) adj. Distant, remote, afar off.

**rē-mōveo**, *ēre, mōvi, mōtum*, v. tr. To move back, remove, withdraw, take away.

**rē-mūnēror**, *āri, ātus sum*, v. dep. (*mūnus*). To repay, recompense, reward.

**rēmus**, *i*, m. An oar.

**Rēmus**, *i*, m. One of the Remi.

**rēno**, *ōnis*, m. A reindeer.

**rē-nōvo**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*nōvus*). To renew, revive.

**rē-nuntio**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To bring or carry back word; to report, announce, declare, proclaim; to declare elected, vii. 33.

**rē-pello**, *ēre, pūli, pulsum*, v. tr. To drive back, repel, repulse, remove; to disappoint, *a spe*, v. 42.

**rēpente**, adv. (*rēpens*, sudden). Suddenly, unexpectedly.

**rēpentinus**, *a, um*, adj. (*rēpens*, sudden). Sudden, unexpected, unlooked for.

**rē-pērio**, *ēre, pēri, pertum*, v. tr. (*pērio*). To procure or find again; to find, meet with; to discover, ascertain, learn, perceive; to obtain, find out, invent, devise, vi. 13.

**rēpertus**, *a, um*, part. from *rēpērio*.

**rē-pōto**, *ēre, īci, itum*, v. tr. To demand back, ask again; *poenas repetere*, to demand satisfaction, i. 30.

**rē-pleo**, *ēre, ēvi, ētum*, v. tr. To fill again; to supply.

**rē-porto**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. To bring back, convey back.

**rē-posco**, *ēre, v. tr.* To demand back, ask for.

**rē-praesento**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*praesens*). To bring before; to do or perform without delay, not to defer, i. 40.

**rē-prēhendo**, *ēre, di, sum*, v. tr. To check or restrain; to blame, censure, reprove, rebuke, find fault with.

**rēpressus**, *a, um*, part. from *rēprimo*.

**rē-prīmo**, *ēre, pressi, pressum*, v. tr. (*primo*). To press back, keep back, check, restrain, hinder, prevent.

**rē-pūdio**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. tr. (*pūdet*). To reject, refuse, decline, i. 40.

**rē-pugno**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, v. intr. To fight against, contend against, oppose; to be contrary to; to be inconsistent or incompatible, i. 19.

**rēpūli**. See *Rēpello*.

**rēpulsus**, *a, um*, part. from *rēpello*.  
**rē-quiō**, *ēre, sivi, situm*, v. tr. (*quaero*). To seek again; to look af

ner, search for, ask for, to require, demand, vi. 34; to miss, look for in vain, vii. 63.

**res, rei, f.** A thing, object, matter; affair, event, occurrence; cause, reason, ground; benefit, profit, advantage; act, measure; *res militaris*, military matters, the art of warfare; *res frumentaria*, provisions; *res divina*, matters of religion; *res publica*, the common weal, the state, the republic; *res familiaris*, private property.

**rē-sarcio, ire, si, sartum, v. tr.** (*sarcio*, to mend). To mend again; to repair, restore, vi. 1.

**rē-scindo, ēre, scīdi, scissum, v. tr.** To cut or break down; to destroy, tear down.

**rē-scisco, ēre, sci or ii, scitum, v. tr.** (*scio*). To learn, find out, ascertain.

**rē-scribo, ēre, scripsi, scriptum, v. tr.** To write or enroll again; *ad equum rescribere*, to transfer to the cavalry, i. 42.

**rē-servo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** To keep back, reserve; to preserve, retain, vii. 89.

**rē-sideo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, v. intr.** (*sēdeo*, to sit.) To be left, to remain.

**rē-sido, ēre, sēdi, sessum, v. intr.** (*sido*, to settle). To settle down; to become calm, be appeased, vii. 64.

**rēsistens, tis, 1)** part. from *rēsisto*; 2) adj. Resisting, opposing, unyielding, firm, resolute, persevering, iii. 19.

**rē-sisto, ēre, stīti, stitum, v. intr.** To remain behind, make a halt, vii. 35; to withstand, resist, oppose, hold out against; *a Cottā resistitur*, opposition is made by Cotta, v. 30.

**rē-spicio, ēre, exi, ectum, v. tr.** (*spēcio*, to look). To look back, look behind; to have a care for; to regard, have respect to, consider, be mindful of, vii. 77.

**rē-spondeo, ēre, di, sum, v. tr.** (*spondeo*, to promise). To promise in return; to reply, answer.

**responsum, i, n. (respondeo).** An answer, a reply.

**res publica, rei publicae, f.** The republic, state, commonwealth, government; public affairs, public business.

**rē-spuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, v. tr.** (*spuo*, to spit). To spit out; to reject, spurn, refuse, i. 42.

**restinctus, a, um, part.** from *restinguo*.

**rē-stinguo, ēre, nxi, nctum, v. tr.** (*stinguo*, to extinguish). To extinguish, put out, quench.

**restiti.** See *Rēsisto*.

**rē-stituo, ēre, ui, ūtum, v. tr. (stī-tuo).** To place back, replace; to build again, repair, renew; to reinstate, i. 18; to give back, restore, i. 53.

**restitūtus, a, um, part.** from *restituo*.

**rētentus, a, um, part.** from *rētīneo*.

**rē-tīneo, ēre, ui, tentum, v. tr. (tēneo).** To hold back, detain, hinder, prevent; to retain, keep, preserve; to maintain, hold, vii. 21; to check, restrain.

**rē-trāho, ēre, xi, ctum, v. tr.** To draw back, bring back, recover, v. 7.

**rētūli.** See *Rēfēro*.

**rē-vello, ēre, velli, culsum, v. tr. (vello, to pluck).** To tear away, to tear up, to pull up or away, i. 52.

**rēversus, a, um, part.** from *rēverto*.

**rē-verto, ēre, ti, sum, v. intr. and rēvertor, i, sus sum, v. dep.** To turn back, come back, return. *Rēvertor* supplies the tenses of the present system and the part. *rēversus*.

**rē-vincio, ēre, vinxi, vinctum, v. tr.** To bind, tie, fasten; to bind or fasten firmly.

**rēvinctus, a, um, part.** from *rēvincio*.

**rē-vōco, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** To call back, recall, withdraw.

**rex, regis, m. (rēgo).** A king, sovereign, monarch.

**rhēda, ae, f.** A four-wheeled carriage of the Gauls, a travelling carriage.

**Rhēnus, i, m.** The river Rhine, i. 1, 2; iv. 10, 15, sq.; vi. 9, etc.



**Rhōdānus**, *i*, m. A river in Gaul, now the *Rhone*, i. 1, 2, 6, 8, 10, 12, etc.  
**ripa**, *ae*, f. The bank of a river.  
**rivus**, *i*, m. A brook, rivulet.  
**rōbur**, *ōris*, n. A very hard kind of oak, iii. 13; strength, power.

**rōgo**, *āre*, *āci*, *ātum*, v. tr. To ask, demand, request, beg, solicit; to inquire; in *milit. ling.*, to administer the military oath, to enlist, vi. 1.

**Rōma**, *ae*, f. Rome, i. 31; vi. 12.

**Rōmānus**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*Rōma*). Roman. **Rōmānus**, *i*, m., a Roman.

**Roscius**, *i*, m. *Lūcius Roscius Fabātus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants, v. 24, 53.

**rostrum**, *i*, n. (*rōdo*, to gnaw). The beak or bill of a bird; the beak of a ship.

**rōta**, *ae*, f. A wheel.

**rūbus**, *i*, m. A bramble-bush, bramble.

**Rūfus**, *i*, m. See *Sulpicius*.

**rūmor**, *ōris*, m. A rumor, report, common talk, hearsay.

**rūpes**, *is*, f. A rock, cliff.

**rursus**, adv. (contr. from *rētorsus*). Turned back; again, anew, in turn; backwards, back.

**Rūtēni**, *ōrum*, m. A people of Gallia Celtica, partly in the limits of the Roman province, hence called *Rūtēni provinciāles*. Their chief town was Segodūnum, now *Rhodes*, i. 45; vii. 5, 7, 75, 90.

**Rūtillus**, *i*, m. See *Semprōnius*.

## S.

**Sābinus**, *i*, m. See *Titūrius*.

**Sabis**, *is*, m. A river in Gallia Belgica, now the *Sambre*, ii. 16, 18.

**sācerdos**, *ōtis*, m. and f. (*sācer*, sacred). A priest or priestess.

**sācrāmentum**, *i*, n. (*sācer*, sacred). An oath, the military oath, vi. 1.

**sācrificium**, *i*, n. (*sācer*, sacred, *fācio*). A sacrifice.

**saepe**, *saepius*, *saeπισsime*, adv.

Often, frequently, many times; *minime saepe*, very seldom, very rarely.

**saepe-nūmēro**, adv. Oftentimes, frequently, time and again.

**saevio**, *ire*, *iri* or *ii*, *itum*, v. intr. (*saevus*, cruel). To be fierce or furious; to blow violently, iii. 13.

**sāgitta**, *ae*, f. An arrow.

**sāgittārius**, *i*, m. (*sāgitta*). An archer, bowman.

**sāgūlum**, *i*, n. (dim. of *sāgum*, a mantle). A small military cloak, v. 42.

**saltus**, *us*, m. (*sālio*, to leap). A pass, defile; a pass through a forest or woody ravine, vii. 19.

**sālus**, *ūtis*, f. (*salvus*, safe). Safety, security, health, welfare, prosperity, preservation, deliverance.

**Sāmārōbriva**, *ae*, f. A city of the Ambiani, in Gallia Belgica, now *Amiens*, v. 24, 47, 53.

**sancio**, *ire*, *ari*, *actum* and *netum*, v. tr. To render sacred or inviolable; to sanction, ordain, confirm, ratify.

**sanctus**, *a*, *um*, 1) part. from *sancio*; 2) adj. Sacred, holy, inviolable.

**sanguis**, *inis*, m. Blood.

**sānitas**, *ātis*, f. (*sānus*). Soundness of bodily health; soundness of mind, good sense, reason, discretion, sanity, i. 42.

**sāno**, *āre*, *āci*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*sānus*). To heal, cure, restore, remedy; to repair, obviate, vii. 29.

**Santōnes**, *um*; **Santōni**, *ōrum*, m. A people of Gallia Celtica. Their chief town was Mediolānum, now *Saintes*, i. 10, 11; iii. 11; vii. 75.

**sānus**, *a*, *um*, adj. Sound, sensible, discreet, reasonable; *pro sano facere*, to act like a sane or sober-minded man, v. 7.

**sanxi**. See *Sancio*.

**sāpio**, *āre*, *iri* and *ii*, v. intr. To have a taste of; to understand, know, v. 30.

**sarcīna**, *ae*, f. (*sarcio*, to mend). A bundle, burden, pack; the baggage which each soldier carried; *sub sarcinis exercitus*, an army encumbered with packs or baggage, ii. 17.

**sarcio**, *īre, si, tum*, v. tr. To mend, repair, make good, compensate for.

**sarmentum**, *i*, n. (*sarpo*, to trim). Twigs, brushwood, fascines, usually plur., iii. 18.

**sātis**, adv. Enough, sufficiently, quite, pretty, tolerably, well enough; *satis esse causae*, to be a sufficient reason, i. 19; *satis habebat*, deemed it sufficient, was contented, i. 15.

**sātis-fācio**, *ēre, fāci, factum*, v. intr. To give satisfaction; to satisfy, i. 14, v. 1; to make excuse, apologize; to excuse one's self, justify one's self, i. 41; v. 54.

**sātisfactio**, *ōnis*, f. (*sātisfācio*). Satisfaction, amends, reparation, excuse, justification, apology.

**sātus**, *a, um*, part. from *sāro*.

**saucius**, *a, um*, adj. Wounded.

**saxum**, *i*, n. A rock, a large stone.

**scāla**, *ae*, f. (*scando*, to climb). A ladder, scaling ladder.

**Scaldia**, *is*, m. A river in Gallia Belgica, now the *Scheldt*, vi. 33.

**scāpha**, *ae*, f. A skiff, bark, iv. 26.

**scēlērātus**, *a, um*, adj. (*scēlus*). Bad, impious, wicked, accursed, infamous; vicious, flagitious. *Subs.*, a wretch, miscreant.

**scēlus**, *ēris*, n. An evil deed, a wicked or heinous action, crime, enormity, villany, guilt.

**scienter**, *scientius, scientissime* adv. (*scio*). Knowingly, wisely, skillfully, expertly, vii. 22.

**scientia**, *ae*, f. (*scio*). Knowledge, skill, expertness, science.

**scientius**. See *Scienter*.

**scindo**, *ēre, scīdi, scissum*, v. tr. To cut, tear, or rend asunder; to tear up, break in pieces; to destroy, demolish, iii. 5; v. 51.

**scio**, *īre, scīvi* or *scīi, scītum*, v. tr. To know, understand.

**scōpūlus**, *i*, m. A high rock, a cliff.

**scorpio**, *ōnis*, m. A military engine for throwing darts, stones, and other missiles, a scorpion, vii. 25.

**scribo**, *ēre, psi, ptum*, v. tr. To

write, write down; to communicate by writing.

**scrōbis**, *is*, m. and f. A ditch, trench, hole, pit.

**scūtum**, *i*, n. An oblong shield, buckler.

**se**. See *Sui*.

**sēcūs**, adv., comp. of *sēcus*. Less, otherwise, differently; *nihilo secius*, none the less, nevertheless, notwithstanding.

**sēco**, *āre, cui, ctum*, v. tr. To cut, cut off; to mow, cut down, vii. 14.

**sēcērēto**, adv. (*sēcerno*, to separate).

Apart, separately; in secret, secretly.

**sectio**, *ōnis*, f. (*sēco*). A distribution by auction of captured or confiscated goods; booty, spoils, ii. 33.

**sector**, *ārī, ātus sum*, v. dep. (freq. of *sēquor*). To follow after, pursue; to seek, strive to obtain, vi. 35.

**sectūra**, *ae*, f. (*sēco*). A cutting; a place where anything is cut or dug; *aerariae secturae*, copper mines, iii. 21.

**sē-cum**. See *Sui*.

**sēcundum**, prep. with acc. (*sēcundus*). Following after; 1) *Of space*: along, by, near, close to; 2) *Of time*: next, after, immediately after; 3) *Fig.*, according to, after, *secundum naturam fluminis*, iv. 17.

**sēcundus**, *a, um*, adj. (*sēquor*). Following, next; the second; *secundo flumine*, down the river, vii. 58; favorable, successful, fortunate, prosperous, *ventus*, iv. 23; *proelium*, iii. 1; *secundiores res*, more favorable circumstances, greater prosperity.

**sēcūris**, *is*, f. (*sēco*). A hatchet, an axe; Roman authority, power, sovereignty, *as the axe in the fasces was the symbol of Roman power*, vii. 77.

**sēcūtus**, *a, um*, part. from *sēquor*.

**sed**, conj. But yet, nevertheless; now; *non solum . . . sed etiam*, not only . . . but also.

**sēdēcim**, num. adj. (*sex, dēcem*). Sixteen.

**sēdes**, *is*, f. (*sēdeo*, to sit). A seat, dwelling-place, residence, habitation, abode, home, settlement.

**sēditio, ōnis, f. (sine, tlio, eo).** A going aside; an insurrection, dissension, civil discord, strife, sedition.

**sēditiosus, a, um, adj. (seditio).** Full of discord, factious, turbulent, seditious, treasonable.

**Nedulius, i, m.** A leader of the Lemovices, vii. 88.

**Sedūni, ōrum, m.** A people of Gallia Celtica. Their chief town was Sedoni, now *Sitten* (*Sion*), lii. 1, 2, 7.

**Sedusii, ōrum, m.** A Germanic people, between the *Maine* and *Neckar*, i. 51.

**sēges, etis, f.** A field of grain, corn-field, vi. 36; standing grain, growing corn, crop.

**Segni, ōrum, m.** A people of Gallia Belgica, between the *Eburones* and the *Treviri*, vi. 32.

**Segōnax, ctis, m.** A king of Kent, v. 22.

**Segontiāci, ōrum, m.** A people dwelling in the southern part of Britain, v. 21.

**Segusiāvi, ōrum, m.** A people of Gallia Celtica. Their chief town was *Lugdunum*, now *Lyons*, i. 10; vii. 64, 75.

**sēmel, adv.** Once; *semel atque iterum*, once and again, repeatedly, i. 31.

**sēmentis, is, f. (sēro).** A sowing.

**sēmīta, ae, f.** A narrow way, a foot-path.

**semper, adv.** Always, continually.

**Semprōnius, i, m.** *Marcus Semprōnius Rāttius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants, vii. 90.

**sēnātor, ōris, m. (sēnex).** A senator.

**sēnātus, us, m. (sēnex).** The senate, the highest council of a state or city, the Roman senate.

**sēnātus-consultum, i, n.** A decree or act of the senate.

**sēnex, gen. sēnis, comp. sēnior, adj.** Old, aged. *Subs.*, an old man, i. 29.

**sēni, ae, a, num. adj. distrib.** Every six, six by six, six each.

**Sēnōnes, um, m.** A people of Gallia Celtica. Their chief town was

*Agendicum*, now *Sens*, ii. 2; v. 54, 56; vi. 2, 3, 5, 44; vii. 4, 11, 34, 56, 58, 75.

**sententia, ae, f. (sentio).** An opinion, thought; purpose, intention, determination, design; decision, judgment, resolution; sentence, vi 44.

**sentio, ĩre, nsi, nsum, v. tr.** To discern by the senses; to perceive, feel, observe, notice, hear, find out, ascertain, learn; to think, judge, suppose, imagine, believe.

**sentis, is, m.** A brier, bramble, ii. 17.

**sēpārātīm, adv. (sēpāro).** Apart, separately.

**sēpāro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (sē, for sine, pāro).** To sever, separate, divide, disjoin.

**sēpes, is, f.** A hedge.

**septem, num. adj. indecl.** Seven.

**septem-triōnes, um, m. pl.** The seven stars that form the constellation called the *Wain*, or the *Great Bear*; the *Little Bear*; the north pole, the north.

**septīmus, a, um, num. adj. ord. (septem).** The seventh.

**septingenti, ae, a, num. adj. (septem, centum).** Seven hundred.

**septuaginta, num. adj. indecl.** Seventy.

**sēpultūra, ae, f. (sēpēlio, to bury).** Burial, interment.

**Sēquāna, ae, m.** A river in Gaul, now the *Seine*, i. 1; vii. 57, 58.

**Sēquāni, ōrum, m.** A people of Gallia Belgica, between the *Saōne* and the *Jura*. Their chief town was *Vesontio*, now *Besancon*, i. 1, sq., 31 sq.; vi. 12; vii. 66, 75, 90.

**Sēquānus, a, um, adj.** Of or belonging to the *Sequāni*, *Sequanian*.

**sēquor, i, cūtus sum, v. dep.** To follow, accompany, attend; to pursue, seek to gain, follow up, aim at, attain.

**sermo, ōnis, m. (sēro).** Discourse, conversation, talk, speech, interview.

**sēro, sērius, sēriissime, adv. (sērus, late).** Late, too late.

**sēro, ĩre, sēvi, sātum, v. tr.** To sow, plant.

**Sertorius**, *i*, m. *Quintus*, a Roman general who served under Marius, and after his death continued the war in Spain against Sulla. He was treacherously murdered by Perpenna, 72 B. C., iii. 23.

**servilis**, *e*, adj. (*servus*). Of or pertaining to a slave, servile; *tumultus*, the servile insurrection (under Spartacus), i. 40; *in servilem modum*, like slaves, vi. 19.

**servio**, *ire*, *ivi* or *ii*, *itum*, v. intr. (*servus*). To serve, be a slave to, be subservient to; to pay attention to, give heed to, busy one's self with.

**servitus**, *utis*, f. (*servus*). Slavery, bondage, servitude.

**Servius**, *i*, m. A Roman praenomen.

**servo**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, v. tr. To save, keep; to preserve, maintain; to observe, mind, heed; to hold, guard, watch; *fidem servare*, to keep one's word, vi. 36.

**servus**, *i*, m. A slave, bondman, servant.

**sese**. See *Sui*.

**sesquipedālis**, *e*, adj. (*sesqui*, one half more, *pes*). Of a foot and a half; a foot and a half thick, iv. 17.

**Sesuvii**, *orum*, m.; more correctly written **Esubli**, which see, ii. 34.

**seu**, conj. (*sive*). Whether.

**sēvēritas**, *ātis*, f. (*sēvērus*, severe). Harshness, rigor, severity.

**sē-vōco**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, v. tr. To call apart; to draw aside, v. 6.

**sebum**, *i*, n. Fat, tallow.

**sex**, num. adj. indecl. Six.

**sexaginta**, num. adj. indecl. (*sex*). Sixty.

**sexcenti**, *ae*, *a*, num. adj. (*sex*, *centum*). Six hundred.

**sexdecim**, or **sedecim**, num. adj. indecl. Sixteen.

**Sextius**, *i*, m. 1) *Titus*, a lieutenant in Caesar's army, vi. 1; vii. 49, 51, 90. 2) *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a brave centurion in Caesar's army, ii. 25; iii. 5; vi. 38.

**si**, conj. If, if perchance, if indeed;

whether; *si minus*, for *si non*, i. 47 ii. 9; *si quando*, if ever, when once, iii. 12.

**sibi**. See *Sui*.

**Sibuzātes**, *um*, m. A people of Aquitania, in the vicinity of *Saubusse* or *Sobusse*, between *Dax* and *Bayonne*, iii. 27.

**sic**, adv. So, thus, in such a manner; *sic . . . ut*, so . . . as; *ut . . . sic*, so . . . that, i. 38; ii. 32.

**siccitas**, *ātis*, f. (*siccus*, dry). Dryness; drought, dry weather.

**sic-ut** or **sic-ūti**, adv. Just as, as if, as it were.

**sīdus**, *eris*, n. A constellation, star.

**Sigambri**, *orum*, m. A Germanic people between the river *Sieg* and the *Lippe*, iv. 16, 18; vi. 35.

**signifer**, *eri*, m. (*signum*, *fēro*). A standard-bearer.

**significatio**, *ōnis*, f. (*significo*). Intimation, declaration, notice, warning; meaning, import, sense.

**significo**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*signum*, *fācio*). To give or convey an intimation; to signify, indicate, show, declare.

**signum**, *i*, n. A sign, mark, token; *in milit. lang.*, a signal for battle; a standard, ensign; *signa subsequi*, to follow the standard, keep in order of battle, iv. 26; *ab signis discedere*, to desert the standards, leave the ranks, v. 16, 33; *signa ferre*, to advance the standards, march; *signa convertere*, to wheel, face about; *signa inferre*, to make an attack, advance to the attack.

**Silānus**, *i*, m. *Marcus Junius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants, vi. i.

**silentium**, *i*, n. (*stileo*, to be silent). Stillness, silence, quiet.

**Silius**, *i*, m. *Titus*, a military tribune under Caesar, iii. 7, 8.

**silva**, *ae*, f. A wood, forest.

**silvestris**, *e*, adj. (*silva*). Woody, overgrown with woods.

**similis**, *e*, adj. Resembling, like, similar.

**similitudo**, *tnis*, f. (*similis*). Likeness, resemblance, similarity.

**simul**, adv. Together, at once, at the same time; *simul* . . . *simul*, partly . . . partly, iv. 13; *simul ac* or *atque*, as soon as.

**simulācrum**, *i*, n. (*simūlo*). An image, likeness, figure, effigy, statue.

**simulatio**, *ōnis*, f. (*simūlo*). An assumed appearance, a false show; pretence, deceit, disguise, seeming, color.

**simūlo**, *āre*, *āci*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*simūls*). To feign, pretend, assume the appearance of, counterfeit.

**simultas**, *ātis*, f. (*simūlo*). Secret enmity, resentment, hatred, animosity; jealousy, rivalry.

**sin**, conj. But if, if however.

**sincere**, adv. (*sincērus*, pure). Up-rightly, honestly, frankly, sincerely, candidly, plainly, without disguise.

**sine**, prep. with abl. Without.

**singillatim**, adv. (*singūlū*). One by one, singly, severally.

**singūlaris**, *e*, adj. (*singūlū*). One only, alone of its kind; singular, unique, matchless, extraordinary, remarkable, unparalleled.

**singūli**, *ae*, *a*, adj. One to each, separate, single, individual, each, every.

**sinister**, *tra*, *trum*, adj. Left, on the left hand or side; unlucky, unfavorable, adverse; *sub sinistra* (sc. *parte*), on the left, v. 8.

**sinistrorsus**, adv. (for *sinistroversus*; *sinister*, *verto*). Towards the left side; to the left, vi. 25.

**sino**, *ēre*, *siri*, *situm*, v. tr. To let, permit, allow, suffer, iv. 2.

**sī-quando**, adv. If ever, if at any time.

**sī-quis**, and **sī qui**, **sī qua**, **sī quod**, and **sī quid**, indef. pron. If any one, if any, whoever, whatever.

**sisto**, *ēre*, *stīti*, *stātum*, v. tr. and intr. To place, set; to stop, stand still.

**situs**, *us*, m. (*sīno*). Situation, position, locality, site.

**sī-ve**, conj. Or if, and if, or; whether; *sive* . . . *sive*, be it that . . . or that, if . . . or if, whether . . . or.

**sōcer**, *ēri*, m. A father-in-law.

**sōciētas**, *ātis*, f. (*sōcius*). Fellowship, union, communion, society; a political league, alliance, confederacy, vi. 2.

**sōcius**, *a*, *um*, adj. Participating in, sharing, joining; united, allied, associated. *Sōcius*, *i*, m., an ally, confederate; companion, associate.

**sol**, *sōlis*, m. The sun.

**sōlācium**, *i*, n. (*sōlor*, to console). Comfort, relief, solace, consolation, vii. 15.

**soldurii**, *ōrum*, m. (a Celtic word). The retainers or vassals of a chieftain, iii. 22. See *Dēvōtus*.

**sōleo**, *ēre*, *itūsum*, v. semi-dep. G. 268, 3. To be accustomed, be wont.

**sōlertia**, *ae*, f. (*sōlers*, skilled). Skill, shrewdness, adroitness, expertness, dexterity, quickness of mind, ingenuity.

**sōlītūdo**, *tnis*, f. (*sōlus*). Loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, desert, wilderness, iv. 18; vi. 23.

**sollicito**, *āre*, *āci*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*solus* = *tōtus*, *cio*). To move violently; to stir up, rouse, instigate, incite, provoke, tempt; to urge to rebellion; to induce, persuade, iii. 8.

**sollicitūdo**, *tnis*, f. (*sollicito*). Disquiet, anxiety, care, concern, solicitude.

**sōlum**, *i*, n. The ground, bottom, base; soil, land, country, region.

**sōlum**, adv. (*sōlus*). Only.

**sōlus**, *a*, *um*, gen. *sōlūs*, adj. Only, alone, single, sole, merely.

**solvere**, *ēre*, *solvi*, *sōlūtum*, v. tr. To loose, untie, unbind; in *naut. lang.*, to loose the vessel from shore; to weigh anchor, sail away, set sail, put to sea.

**sōnitus**, *us*, m. (*sōno*, to sound). A noise, sound.

**Sontiātes**, *um* m. A people of Aquitania in the neighborhood of modern *Sōs*, iii. 20, 21.

**sōnus**, *i*, m. Noise, sound.

**sōror**, *ōris*, f. A sister; *soror ex matre*, a sister on the mother's side, half-sister, i. 18.

**sors, sortis, f. (sēro).** A lot, fate, destiny, fortune, chance.

**spātium, i, n.** Space, distance, extent; a space of time, period, interval; leisure, opportunity.

**spēcies, ēi, f. (spēcio, to look).** A seeing, look, sight; the appearance, shape, form, figure; show, semblance, pretence, cloak, color; *ad speciem*, for the sake of appearances, for show, i. 51; *in speciem*, for a pretext, v. 51; *summa species*, the full appearance, vi. 27.

**specto, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (freq. of spēcio, to look).** To look at, gaze at, watch, observe; *of localities*: to look, face, lie, be situated towards; to regard, respect, care for, have in view; to await, seek, expect, look for.

**spēcūlātor, ōris, m. (spēcūlor).** A spy, scout, messenger.

**spēcūlātōrius, a, um, adj. (spēcūlor).** Of or belonging to spies or scouts; *navigia*, spy-boats, vessels of observation, iv. 26.

**spēcūlor, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. (spēcio, to look).** To spy out, watch, explore, observe; to reconnoitre.

**spēro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** To hope, trust, expect, look for, long for.

**spes, ēi, f.** Hope, expectation.

**spīritus, us, m. (spīro, to breathe).** A breath; spirit, soul; a haughty spirit, pride, arrogance, lofty airs.

**spōlio, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (spōlium, spoil).** To strip, rob, plunder, pillage; to deprive, despoil.

**sponte, abl., gen. spontis, from obs. spons, f.** Of free will, of one's own accord, voluntarily, willingly, freely; by one's self, without the aid of others.

**stābīlio, īre, īri, ītum, v. tr. (stābīlis, firm).** To make firm, fix, make steadfast, vii. 73.

**stābīlitas, ātis, f. (stābīlis, firm).** Firmness, stability, steadfastness.

**stātīm, adv. (sto).** On the spot, forthwith, straightway, immediately.

**stātio, ōnis, f. (sto).** A standing, station; *in milit. lang.*, a post, station, guard; *in statione esse*, to be on

guard, iv. 32. *Plur.*, sentries, sentinels, outposts, pickets, guards.

**stātuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, v. tr. (stātus, from sto).** To put, place, set, establish; to fix, decide, determine, conclude; *gravius statuere*, to pass too severe a sentence, i. 20; to hold, believe, consider, think, i. 11, 42.

**stātūra, ae, f. (sto).** Height, stature, ii. 30.

**stātus, us, m. (sto).** Standing, position; condition, situation, state, posture.

**stīmūlus, i, m.** A pointed instrument, a pointed stake concealed beneath the surface of the ground to repel hostile troops, a spur, vii. 73, 82.

**stipendiārius, a, um, adj. (stipendium).** Liable to impost, tributary.

**stipendium, i, n. (stips, contribution, pendo).** A tax, impost, tribute; pay, dues.

**stipes, itis, m.** A stake, post, trunk of a tree, vii. 73.

**stirps, stirpis, f.** The trunk of a tree; a stem, stock, race, family, lineage, vi. 34.

**sto, āre, stēti, stātum, v. intr.** To stand, remain standing, stand firm; to persevere, persist; to abide by, continue in, stand to, vi. 13.

**strāmentum, i, n. (sterno, to strew).** Straw, thatch; covering, pack-saddle, vii. 45.

**strēpitus, us, m. (strēpo, to make a noise).** A noise, rattling, rustling, rumbling, clattering; confusion, tumult.

**stūdeo, ēre, ui, v. intr.** To be eager or zealous, apply one's self to, attend to, cultivate; to devote one's self to, pay particular attention to; to accustom one's self to, inure one's self to, vi. 21; to be eager for, desire, wish, strive for.

**stūdiōse, adv. (stūdium).** Eagerly, zealously, carefully, attentively, vi. 28.

**stūdium, i, n. (stūdeo).** Assiduity, zeal, eagerness; fondness, inclination, desire; attachment, devotion, good will, i. 19; exertion, pursuit, endeavor.

**stultitia**, *ae, f.* (*stultus*, foolish). Folly, foolishness, simplicity.

**sub**, prep. with acc. and abl. Under. I. WITH THE ACC., in answer to the question, *Whither?* 1) *Of space*: under, below, beneath, to, near by, close to, up to; *sub jugum mittere*, under the yoke, i. 7, 12. 2) *Of time*: towards, about; *sub vesperum*, towards evening, ii. 33. II. WITH THE ABL., in answer to the question, *Where?* 1) *Of space*: under, below, beneath; *sub sarcinis*, under their packs, ii. 17; at the foot of, by, near, before; *sub monte*, at the foot of the mountain, i. 21. 2) *Of time*: in, within, during, on.

**sūbactus**, *a, um*, part. from *sūbigo*.

**sūbdōlus**, *a, um*, adj. (*dōlus*, guile). Crafty, cunning, deceitful, vii. 31.

**sūbdūco**, *ēre, zi, ctum, v. tr.* To draw from under; to draw or pull up; in *naut. lang.*, to draw or haul up, iv. 29; in *milit. lang.*, to draw off from one position to another, to withdraw, remove, take away, i. 22.

**sūbductio**, *ōnis, f.* (*sūbdūco*). The act of hauling up, a hauling ashore, drawing to land, v. 1.

**sūb-eo**, *ēre, tri or ii, itum, v. intr. and tr.* To go under, come under, i. 36, vii. 85; to advance or proceed to, draw near, come up; to undergo, submit to, sustain, endure, suffer, encounter, i. 5; vii. 78.

**sūbesse**. See *Subsum*.

**sūb-igo**, *ēre, āgi, actum, v. tr. (āgo)*. To drive under; to put down, conquer, subjugate, compel, constrain, reduce, vii. 77.

**sūbito**, adv. (*sūbitus*). Quickly, suddenly, speedily, on a sudden.

**sūbitus**, *a, um*, adj. (*sūbeo*). Sudden, unexpected.

**subjectus**, *a, um*, part. from *sub-jicio*.

**sūb-jicio**, *ēre, jēci, jectum, v. tr. (jācio)*. To throw or cast from beneath, i. 26; to place under, iv. 17; to make subject, to subject, vii. 1, 77; to be exposed to; to encounter, iv. 36.

**sublātus**, *a, um*, 1) part. from *tollo*; 2) adj. Proud, haughty; elated.

**sub-lēvo**, *āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.* To raise up from beneath; to raise up, hold up, support, i. 48; to sustain, assist, help, relieve, aid, i. 16; to lessen, ease, lighten, alleviate, vi. 32.

**sublica**, *ae, f.* A stake, a pile, iv. 17.

**sub-luo**, *ēre, lui, lūtum, v. tr. (luo, to wash)*. To wash beneath; to flow along the base of, to wash, vii. 69.

**sub-ministro**, *āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.* To furnish, supply, afford, give.

**sub-mitto**, *ēre, misi, missum, v. tr.* To send below or from below; to place or put under; to send or despatch secretly; to send, ii. 6, 25; iv. 26; to send to the assistance of, send to aid, v. 58.

**submōtus**, *a, um*, part. from *sub-mōveo*.

**sub-mōveo**, *ēre, mōvi, mōtum, v. tr.* To send or drive away, remove, drive back, displace.

**sub-ruo**, *ēre, rui, rūtum, v. tr. (ruo, to dig)*. To dig under; to undermine; to tear down, demolish, overthrow.

**sub-sēquor**, *i, cūtus sum, v. dep.* To follow close after, follow immediately, come after.

**sub-sidium**, *i, n.* (*sēdeo*, to sit). The body of troops stationed in reserve in the third line of battle; hence, a body of reserves, auxiliary forces; support, aid, assistance, help, protection, relief; resources, means of help, remedy, iv. 31.

**sub-sido**, *ēre, sēdi, sessum, v. intr. (sido, to settle)*. To settle down; to establish one's self; to remain, abide, stay.

**sub-sisto**, *ēre, stiti, v. intr.* To stand still; to make a halt, i. 15; to hold fast, stand, hold out, v. 10.

**sub-sum**, *esse, fui, v. intr.* To be under; to be near or at hand, be close to; to approach, iii. 27.

**sub-trāho**, *ēre, zi, ctum, v. tr.* To draw away from beneath; to remove,

carry off, take away by stealth; to withdraw.

**subvectio, ōnis, f. (subvēho).** Conveyance, means of transport, vii. 10.

**sub-vēho, ēre, vaxi, rectum, v. tr.** To bring up; to convey, transport, i. 16.

**sub-vēnio, ire, vēni, ventum, v. intr.** To come up; to come to one's assistance; to aid, assist, relieve, succor.

**succēdo, ēre, essi, essum, v. intr. and tr. (sub, cēdo).** To go under; to go towards, approach, march on, advance, i. 24; ii. 6; to follow, come after, take the place of, v. 16; to follow after (in time), succeed; to be successful, prosper, go on well, vii. 26.

**succendo, ēre, di, sum, v. tr. (sub, cando [not in use], to light).** To set on fire from below; to set on fire, burn.

**succensus, a, um, part. from succendo.**

**successus, us, m. (succēdo).** A coming up; an approach from below, approach, ii. 20.

**succido, ēre, cidi, cisum, v. tr. (sub, caedo).** To fell, cut down; to mow down, iv. 19.

**succisus, a, um, part. from succido.**

**succumbo, ēre, cūbui, cūbitum, v. intr. (sub, cumbo, to lie).** To lie down under, sink down under; to yield, be overcome, vii. 86.

**succurro, ēre, cūcurri and curri, cursum, v. intr. (sub, curro).** To run under; to run to one's assistance; to help, aid, assist, succor.

**sūdes, is, f. A stake, a pile.**

**sūdor, ōris, m. (sūdo, to sweat).** Sweat; exertion, toil, severe labor, fatigue.

**Suessiōnes, um, m. A people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was Noviodōnum or Augusta Suessiōnum, now Soissons, ii. 3, 4, 12, 13.**

**Suēbi, ōrum, m. A widely extended nation of Germany. Their name still appears in the word Suabia, i. 37, 51, 54; iv. 1, 3, 4, 7, 8, 19; vi. 9, 10, 29.**

**Suēbus, a, um, adj. Belonging to the Suēbi; Suebian.**

**sufficio, ēre, fēci, factum, v. intr. (sub, fācio).** To hold out, be sufficient, vii. 20.

**suffodio, ēre, fōdi, fossum, v. tr. (sub, fōdio, to stab).** To stab or pierce underneath; to stab in the belly, iv. 12.

**suffossus, a, um, part. from suffodio.**

**suffrāgium, i, n. (sub, frango).** Voting; a vote, voice, suffrage, vi. 13.

**suggestus, us, m. (sub, gēro).** An elevated place, a raised place to speak from, a platform, stage, tribune, vi. 3.

**sui, pers. pron. Of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves. As the subject of an inf. it may be rendered, that he, she, they, etc. Sese is a reduplicated form for se. Cum, when used with se, is appended to it — secum.**

**Sulla, ae, m. Lūcius Cornēlius, the dictator, and a bitter opponent of Marius, i. 21.**

**Sulpicius, i, m. Publius Sulpicius Rūfus, a lieutenant in Caesar's army, iv. 22; vii. 90.**

**sum, esse, fui, v. intr. To be, exist, be present, stay, abide. With a predicate genitive, to pertain, belong, be the part, property, nature, mark, sign, duty, custom of. With two datives, to serve, afford, contribute. With the dative of possessor, to have; mihi est in animo, I have in mind, I intend, purpose, i. 7. With the predicate abl., to possess, be of, have, i. 6, 39.**

**summa, ae, f. (sc. res). The sum, the aggregate, the whole; summa exercitus, the whole of the army, the army as a whole, vi. 34; in summā, in the whole, in the mass, vi. 11; summa omnium rerum, the chief power, vi. 11; summa belli, the conduct of the whole war, i. 41; summa imperii, the chief command, ii. 23.**

**summus, a, um, sup. of sup̄erus. adj. The highest, greatest, very great, supreme; most important, consummate; the top of, the summit of, i. 22; vi. 26.**



**sūmo, ēre, sumpsi, sumptum, v. tr.** (*sub, ēmo = accipio*). To take, take away; to take to one's self, assume, arrogate, i. 33; ii. 4; to undertake, enter upon, iii. 14; *supplicium de aliquo*, to inflict punishment upon one.

**sumptuosus, a, um, adj. (sumptus).** Attended with great expense, expensive, costly, vi. 19.

**sumptus, us, m. (sūmo).** Expense, cost, charge.

**sumptus, a, um, part. from sūmo.**

**sūper, prep. with acc. or abl.** Upon, above, over. *With the acc.* in answer to the question *Whither?* *With the abl.* in answer to the question *Where?*

**sūperbe, adv. (sūper).** Proudly, haughtily, arrogantly, i. 31.

**sūperfui.** See *Sūpersum*.

**sūpĕrior, us, adj., comp. of sūpĕrus (sūper).** I. OF SPACE: higher, upper, that is above. II. OF TIME: previous, earlier, former, past, preceding. III. OF OTHER RELATIONS: more distinguished, greater, superior, stronger, more powerful; *superiorem pugnā esse*, to be superior in battle, to be victorious, vii. 80.

**sūpĕro, āre, āri, ātum, v. tr. and intr. (sūper).** To go over, overtop; to surpass, excel, exceed, outstrip; to overcome, conquer, subdue; to prevail, v. 31; to be left over, remain; to survive, outlive, vi. 19.

**sūper-sēdeo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, v. tr. (sēdeo, to sit).** To sit upon or above; to be superior to; to forbear, abstain from, desist from, *proelio*, ii. 8.

**sūper-sum, esse, fui, v. intr.** To be over and above, be left, remain; to survive, i. 26; ii. 27.

**sūpĕrus, a, um, comp. sūpĕrior, sup. sūpĕrmus or summus, adj. (sūper).** Being above or over; upper.

**suppĕto, ēre, īci or ii, ītum, v. intr. (sub, pĕto).** To be at hand, be present, be in store, i. 3, 16.

**supplĕmentum, i, n. (suppleo, to fill up).** A filling up, a making up, recruiting; a body of supplies, reinforcements, vii. 7.

**supplex, icis, adj. (sub, plūco, to bend).** Humbly beseeching, entreating, imploring; suppliant, ii. 28.

**supplicatio, ōnis, f. (supplex).** A religious solemnity, a religious festival or rejoicing, thanksgiving, ii. 35; iv. 38.

**suppliciter, adv. (supplex).** Imploringly, humbly, submissively.

**supplicium, i, n. (supplex).** A kneeling down (to receive punishment); hence, punishment, torture, penalty, torment, pain, distress.

**supporto, āre, āvi, ātum, γ. tr. (sub, porto).** To carry, bring, or convey to, i. 39, 48.

**supra, 1) adv. (for sūpĕrā, sc. pĕrte).** Above, previously, before; 2) prep. with acc., a) *Of space*: over, above, iv. 17; b) *Of time*: = *ante*, before, vi. 19.

**susceptus, a, um, part. from suscipio.**

**suscipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, v. tr. (sub, cāpio).** To take or lift up, sustain; to undertake, take upon one's self, i. 3, 9; to enter upon, begin, engage in, i. 16.

**suspectus, a, um, adj. (suspcio, to suspect).** Distrusted, suspected; an object of suspicion, v. 54.

**suspĕctus, a, um, part. from suspicor.**

**suspĕcio, ōnis, f. (suspcior).** Suspicion, distrust; ground of suspicion, an appearance, indication, i. 19, 39.

**suspĕcor, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. (suspcio, ēre, to suspect.)** To suspect, distrust, mistrust; to surmise, apprehend, believe.

**sustento, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (freq. of sustineo).** To hold up, sustain, support, maintain, ii. 14; to endure, suffer, hold out, withstand, bear, ii. 6; v. 39.

**sustineo, ēre, ui, tentum, v. tr. (sursum, tĕneo).** To hold up, sustain, support; *se*, to hold himself up, stand alone, ii. 25; to take upon one's self, bear, endure, i. 31; to hold out against, check, retard, withstand; to hold in,

hold back, check, iv. 33. *Intrans.*, to hold out, make a stand, ii. 6.

**suus**, *a, um*, poss. pron. (*sui*). His, her, its, or their own; one's own; his, her, its, their. *Sui*, subs. pl. m., one's friends, soldiers, party, etc. *Sua*, subs. pl. n., one's property, effects, possessions, etc.

## T.

**tābernācūlum**, *i, n.* (*tāberna*, a hut). A tent.

**tābula**, *ae, f.* A board; writing tablet, muster roll, i. 29.

**tābulātum**, *i, n.* (*tābula*). Board-work, flooring, floor, story, vi. 29.

**tāceo**, *ēre, ui, itum, v. tr.* and *intr.* To keep silent, pass over in silence, i. 17; to be silent, say nothing, i. 17.

**tācitus**, *a, um, adj.* (*tāceo*). Silent, mute, saying nothing, i. 32.

**tālea**, *ae, f.* A rod, stick, piece of wood, vii. 73; long rods; thin bars, v. 12.

**tālis**, *e, adj.* Such, of such a kind, of such a nature, quality, character, etc.; like.

**tam**, *adv.* So, so far, so very, to such a degree.

**tāmen**, *conj.* Notwithstanding, nevertheless, however; yet, still; at least, i. 32, 40.

**Tāmēsis**, *is, m.* The river Thames, v. 11, 18.

**tāmetsi**, *conj.* (*tāmen, etsi*). Notwithstanding, although, though; with *tamen* following, i. 30.

**tandem**, *adv.* (*tam, dēmum*). At last, at length, finally, i. 25; *in interrog. clauses*, pray, pray now, then; *quid tandem*, what pray? what then? i. 40.

**tango**, *ēre, tēgi, tactum, v. tr.* To touch, border on, be contiguous to, v. 3.

**tantōpēre**, *adv.* (*tantus, opus*). So greatly, so very much; written also *tanto opere*, i. 31; vii. 52.

**tantūlus**, *a, um, adj.* (dim. of *tantus*). So little, so much, so trifling, so insignificant, ii. 30.

**tantum**, *adv.* (*tantus*). So far, so much, so very; only so much, only so far, only, merely, but, ii. 8; *non tantum . . . sed etiam*, not only . . . but also.

**tantum-mōdo**, *adv.* Only, but, merely. iii. 5.

**tantun-dem**, *adv.* (*tantus*). So much, so far, just so far, vii. 72.

**tantus**, *a, um, adj.* (*tam*). Of such size or measure, so great, so large, so numerous, i. 15; so mighty, so powerful, iii. 11; such, so small, so trivial, so slight, vi. 35; *tanti esse*, to be of so great value, i. 20; *tanto* with comparatives, by so much, so much the, the, v. 45. *Tanto opere*, see *Tantopere*.

**Tarbelli**, *ōrum, m.* A people on the coast of Aquitania and in the lower part of the basin of the *Adour*. Their chief town was *Aquae Tarbellicae*, now *Dax*, iii. 27.

**tarde**, *adv.* (*tardus*). Slowly, tardily, iv. 23.

**tardius**. See *Tarde*.

**tardo**, *āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.* (*tardus*). To delay, check, stop, hinder, retard, impede.

**tardus**, *a, um, adj.* Slow, sluggish, tardy, ii. 25.

**Tarusātes**, *ium, m.* A people of Aquitania, in the neighborhood of the *Tarbelli*, iii. 23, 27.

**Tasgetius**, *i, m.* A chief of the *Carnutes*, v. 25, 29.

**taurus**, *i, m.* A bull, vi. 28.

**Taximagūlus**, *i, m.* A king of the *Britons*, in *Kent*, v. 22.

**taxus**, *i, f.* The yew-tree, vi. 31.

**Tectosāges**, *um, m.* See *Volcae*.

**tectum**, *i, n.* (*tēgo*). A roof, i. 36; house, dwelling, abode; shelter, cover, quarters.

**tectus**, *a, um, part.* from *tēgo*.

**tēgimentum**, *i, n.* (*tēgo*). A covering, vi. 21; covering (made of leather) for shields, ii. 21.

**tēgo**, *ēre, tēxi, tectum, v. tr.* To

cover, v. 43; to hide, conceal, vii. 45; to defend, protect.

**tēlum**, *i*, *n*. A weapon used for fighting at a distance, a missile, dart, spear, javelin.

**tēmērārius**, *a, um*, *adj.* (*tēmēre*). Rash, thoughtless, headlong, inconsiderate, imprudent, i. 31.

**tēmēre**, *adv.* Rashly, inconsiderately, heedlessly, thoughtlessly, without reason, i. 40; easily, readily, iv. 20.

**tēmēritas**, *ātis*, *f.* (*tēmēre*). Rashness, heedlessness, indiscretion, foolhardiness, temerity, vii. 42, 52.

**tēmo**, *ōnis*, *m*. A beam, pole of a chariot, iv. 33.

**tempērāntia**, *ae*, *f.* (*tempēro*). Moderation, sobriety, self-control, discreteness, i. 19.

**tempērātus**, *a, um*, 1) *part.* from *tempēro*; 2) *adj.* Moderate, temperate, mild, v. 12.

**tempēro**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *v. tr.* and *intr.* (*tempus*). To temper, moderate, restrain; to forbear, keep one's self from, govern one's self, abstain from, i. 7, 33.

**tempestas**, *ātis*, *f.* (*tempus*). A space of time, a period, season; weather, state of the weather, iv. 23; a storm, stormy weather, unfavorable weather, iii. 12.

**tempus**, *ōris*, *n*. A portion or period of time, time; *in reliquum tempus*, for the remaining time, for the future, i. 20; iii. 16; *ad hoc tempus*, up to this time, ii. 17; a critical moment, condition, circumstances, i. 16; the fitting time, the proper period, ii. 21.

**Tenctēri**, *ōrum*, *m*. A Germanic people on the Rhine between the *Ruhr* and the *Sieg*, iv. 1, 4, 16, 18; v. 55; vi. 35.

**tendo**, *ēre, tēlendi, tensum* and *tentum*, *v. tr.* To stretch, stretch out, extend, ii. 13; to set up tents, encamp, vi. 37; to travel, march.

**tēnēbrae**, *ārum*, *f.* Darkness, obscurity, vii. 81.

**tēneo**, *ēre, ui, tum*, *v. tr.* To hold,

have, possess, occupy, preserve, keep; to hold firm, iv. 17; *se tenere*, to keep one's self, to remain, i. 40, 49; to maintain, defend, keep possession of; to hold back, delay, hinder; to bind, pledge, i. 31.

**tēner**, *ēra, ērum*, *adj.* Soft, tender, delicate; of tender age, young, ii. 17.

**tento**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *v. tr.* (freq. of *tendo*). To try, prove, put to the test, i. 14, 36; to try to gain, to tamper with, vi. 2; to make an attack upon, try to carry, attempt to gain, vii. 73.

**tēnuis**, *e*, *adj.* Thin, slender, slight; little, trifling, poor, mean, vi. 35; weak, poor, delicate, feeble, v. 40.

**tēnuitas**, *ātis*, *f.* (*tēnuis*). Slimness, thinness; poverty, scanty resources, vii. 17.

**tēnuiter**, *adv.* (*tēnuis*). Slightly, lightly, iii. 13.

**ter**, *num.* *adj.* Three times, i. 53.

**tēres**, *ētis*, *adj.* (*tēro*, to rub). Tapering, rounded off, vii. 73.

**tergum**, *i*, *n*. The back; *terga vertere*, to turn the back, i. e., to take flight, to flee; *ab tergo*, in the rear, vii. 87; *post tergum*, behind the back, in the rear.

**terni**, *ae, a*, *num.* *adj.* distrib. (*tres*). Three by three, every three, three each, iii. 15; *terna millia*, vii. 75. G. 174, 2, 2).

**terra**, *ae, f.* The earth; *orbis terrarum*, the globe, the world, vii. 29; the land (in opp. to the sea), v. 13; the country, region, district, i. 30.

**Terrasidius**, *i*, *m*. *Titus*, a military tribune in Caesar's army, iii. 7, 8.

**terrēnus**, *a, um*, *adj.* (*terra*). Of earth, earthy, i. 43.

**terreo**, *ēre, ui, itum*, *v. tr.* To frighten, alarm, terrify, inspire with dread; to frighten away, deter, vii. 49.

**terrīto**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *v. tr.* (freq. of *terreo*). To put in great terror; to alarm greatly, frighten, affright.

**terror**, *ōris*, *m.* (*terreo*). Fear, terror, alarm, dread, apprehension.

**tertio**, *adv.* (*tertius*). For the third time.

**tertius**, *a, um*, num. adj. ord. (*ter*). The third.

**testāmentum**, *i, n.* (*testis*). The last will or testament, a will, i. 39.

**testimōnium**, *i, n.* (*testis*). Witness, evidence, testimony, i. 44; proof, vi. 28.

**testis**, *is, m.* and *f.* A witness.

**testūdo**, *inis, f.* (*testa*, a shell). A tortoise; in *milit. lang.*, a covering, shelter, formed by the shields close-locked over the heads of the soldiers, to protect them against missiles from above, ii. 6; v. 9; a shed or covering made of wood, to protect besiegers, v. 43.

**Teutomātus**, *i, m.* Son of Ollovico, king of the Nitiobriges, vii. 31, 46.

**Teutōni**, *ōrum*, and **Teutōnes**, *um, m.* A Germanic people who dwelt on the shores of the Baltic. In conjunction with the Cimbri they invaded Southern Europe near the close of the second century B. C., i. 33, 40; ii. 4, 29; vii. 77.

**texi**. See *Tēgo*.

**tignum**, *i, n.* (*tāgo*). Building material; a stick of timber, beam, log, iv. 17.

**Tigurīni**, *ōrum, m.* One of the four Helvetic tribes mentioned by Caesar. They probably dwelt in the neighborhood of Lake Morat in the canton of *Vaud* or *Pays de Vaud*, i. 12.

**Tigurīnus**, *a, um, adj.* Of or belonging to the Tigurini, i. 12.

**timeo**, *ēre, ui, v. tr.* and *intr.* To fear, be afraid of, dread; to be afraid, be in fear; with *ne* followed by the subj., to fear that or lest, ii. 26; with *ut* and the subj., to fear that not, i. 39; to be anxious or apprehensive, v. 57.

**timide**, *adv.* (*timidus*). Fearfully, timidly, iii. 25.

**timidus**, *a, um, adj.* (*timeo*). Fearful, timid, afraid, cowardly.

**timor**, *ōris, m.* (*timeo*). Fear, timidity, dread, alarm, anxiety, apprehension.

**Titūrius**, *i, m.* *Quintus Titūrius*

*Sabinus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants, ii. 5, 9, 10; iii. 11, 17, 18, 19; iv. 22, 38; v. 24, 26, 27, sq.; vi. 1, 32, 37.

**Titus**, *i, m.* A Roman praenomen. **tōlōro**, *āre, āri, ātum, v. tr.* To bear, endure, support, sustain, i. 28; to hold out, vii. 71; to maintain, nourish, preserve, vii. 77.

**tollo**, *ēre, sustūli, sublātum, v. tr.* To lift up, raise; *ancoris sublatis*, having weighed anchor, iv. 23; *clamorem*, to raise a shout, vii. 81; *tolli*, *pass.*, to be elated, i. 15; v. 38; to take away, remove, convey away, iv. 28; vi. 17; to interrupt, break off, i. 42; to destroy, cut off, take away, i. 5.

**Tōlōsa**, *ae, f.* A town of Gallia Narbonēnsis, now *Toulouse*, on the *Garonne*, iii. 20.

**Tōlōsātes**, *ium, m.* The inhabitants of Tōlōsa, i. 10; vii. 7.

**tormentum**, *i, n.* (*torqueo*, to twist). An engine for hurling missiles, ii. 8; iv. 25; a cord, rope, vii. 22; an instrument of torture; suffering, pain, torture, vi. 19.

**torreo**, *ēre, ui, tostum, v. tr.* To roast, scorch, burn, v. 43.

**tōt**, *indecl. adj.* So many.

**tōt-Idem**, *indecl. adj.* Just so many, as many.

**tōtus**, *a, um, gen. tōtius*, G. 151, *adj.* The whole, all, entire; the whole of; *naves totae factae ex robore*, made entirely of oak, iii. 13.

**trabs**, or **trābes**, *is, f.* A beam, timber, ii. 29.

**tractus**, *a, um, part.* from *trāho*.

**trādītus**, *a, um, part.* from *trādo*.

**trādo**, *ēre, dīdi, dītum, v. tr.* (*trans*, *do*). To give up, surrender, deliver, hand over; to pass along, vii. 25; to commit, intrust, confide (for protection, guidance, etc.), v. 25; to deliver over, give up (for punishment in war, etc.), i. 27, 28; ii. 13; to yield, grant, i. 44; vi. 8; to teach, propound, propose, vi. 14; to hand down to posterity, transmit.

**trāgūla**, *ae, f.* A pointed missile, javelin, dart.

**trāho, ěre, xi, ctum, v. tr.** To draw or drag along; to drag away.

**trajectus, us, m. (transjicio).** A crossing or passing over, passage, iv. 21.

**trāno, āre, āvi, ātum, v. intr. (trans, no, to swim).** To swim over, cross by swimming, i. 53.

**tranquillitas, ātis, f. (tranquillus, calm.)** Quiet, stillness, rest, calmness; a calm, iii. 15.

**trans, prep. with acc.** Across, over, beyond, on the farther side of.

**Trans-alpinus, a, um, adj.** Situated or lying beyond the Alps, Trans-alpine, vii. 1, 6.

**transcendo, ěre, di, sum, v. intr. (trans, scando, to climb).** To climb or pass over; to get into or over by climbing, iii. 15.

**trans-dūco, ěre, duxi, ductum, v. tr.** To lead, bring, or convey from one place to another; to lead across, transfer, bring over, convey across, lead through, transport.

**trans-eo, ěre, ivi or ii, itum, v. intr.** To go or pass over, to cross, go beyond; to go through, march through; *of time*: to pass away, pass by, elapse, iii. 2.

**trans-fĕro, ferre, tŕŕi, lātum, v. tr.** To bear or carry over or across; to transfer, convey over.

**trans-figo, ěre, fixi, fixum, v. tr. (figo, to fix).** To thrust or pierce through, transfix.

**trans-fŕodio, ěre, fŕŕdi, fossum, v. tr.** To thrust or run through; to pierce through, transfix, vii. 82.

**trans-grĕdiŕ, i, gressus sum, v. dep. (grādiŕ, to go).** To go or pass over; to cross, ii. 19.

**transgressus, a, um, part. from transgrĕdiŕ.**

**transĭtus, us, m. (transeo).** A going over, passing over, crossing; a passage.

**transjĕctus, a, um, part. from transjicio.**

**trans-jĭcio, ěre, jĕci, jectum, v. tr. (jācio).** To throw or cast across; to

convey across; to thrust through, transfix, stab through, pierce.

**translātus, a, um, part. from transfĕro.**

**trans-mārinus, a, um, adj. (māre).** Beyond the sea, foreign, transmarine, vi. 24.

**transmissus, us, m. (transmitto).** A passage, v. 13.

**transmissus, a, um, part. from transmitto.**

**trans-mitto, ěre, misi, missum, v. tr.** To send over or across, vii. 61.

**trans-porto, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** To carry from one place to another; to transport, bring, carry, or convey over.

**Trans-rhĕnānus, a, um, adj. (Rhĕnus).** On the other side of the Rhine, v. 2. *Subs., pl.* those living beyond the Rhine, iv. 16; vi. 5.

**transtrum, i, n.** A cross-beam, a cross-timber, iii. 13.

**transversus, a, um, adj. (trans, verto).** Turned across, athwart, cross-wise, transverse, ii. 8.

**Trĕbius, i, m.** *Marcus Trĕbius Gallus*, a military tribune in Caesar's army, iii. 7, 8.

**Trebŕnius, i, m.** 1) *Gāius*, a Roman knight, vi. 40. 2) *Gāius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants, v. 17, 24; vi. 33; vii. 11, 81.

**trĕcenti, ae, a, num. adj. (tres, centum).** Three hundred.

**trĕdĕcim, num. adj. indecl. (tres, dĕcem).** Thirteen.

**trĕpĭdo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. intr. (trĕpĭdus, alarmed).** To hurry about in a state of alarm; to be in confusion, be greatly agitated, tremble with fear, v. 33; *totis trepidatur castris*, the whole camp is thrown into confusion, vi. 37.

**tres, tria, num. adj.** Three.

**Trĕvir, iri, m.** One of the Treviri, v. 26.

**Trĕvĭri, ŕrum, m.** A people of Gallia Belgica, who occupied a large tract of country between the Mŕsa (*Meuse*) and the Rhĕnus (*Rhine*). Their chief town was *Augusta Trevirŕrum*, now

**Trier**, i. 37; iii. 11; iv. 6, 10; v. 2, *sq.*, 24, 47, 53; vi. 2, *sq.*, 5, *sq.*, 8, 29, 32, 44; vii. 63.

**Tribocci**, *ōrum*, m. A Germanic people in Gallia Belgica, in the vicinity of modern *Strasburg*, i. 51; iv. 10.

**tribūnus**, *i*, m. (*tribus*, a tribe). A tribune, prop. one who presides over a tribe; *tribunus militum*, a tribune of the soldiers, a military tribune. Each legion had six of these officers, who commanded in turn, each two months at a time, i. 39; iii. 5.

**tribuo**, *ōre*, *ui*, *ūtum*, v. tr. To impart, assign, give, distribute, present; to show, render, pay, manifest, v. 7; to grant, concede, allow, vi. 1; to ascribe, attribute, i. 13; vii. 53.

**tribus**. See *Tres*.

**tribūtum**, *i*, n. (*tribuo*). Tax, impost; tribute, vi. 14.

**triduum**, *i*, n. (*tres*, *dies*). The space of three days, three days, i. 26.

**triennium**, *i*, n. (*tres*, *annus*). The space of three years, three years, iv. 4.

**trigēsīmus**, *a*, *um*, num. adj. ord. Thirtieth.

**triginta**, num. adj. indecl. Thirty.

**trīni**, *ae*, *a*, num. adj. distr. (*tres*). Three by three, every three; three.

**Trinobantes**, *ium*, m. A people of Britain, in modern *Essex*, v. 20, 21.

**tripartito**, adv. (*tres*, *partior*). In three divisions, v. 10.

**triplex**, *icis*, adj. (*tres*, *plūco*, to fold). Threefold, triple, i. 24.

**triquētrus**, *a*, *um*, adj. Three-cornered, triangular, v. 13.

**tristis**, *e*, adj. Sad, sorrowful, dejected.

**tristitia**, *ae*, f. (*tristis*). Sadness, dejection, sorrow.

**truncus**, *i*, m. A trunk or stock of a tree.

**tu**, *tui*, pers. pron. Thou.

**tūba**, *ae*, f. A trumpet.

**tueor**, *ēri*, *tutus* or *tūtus sum*, v. dep. To see, look at, gaze at; to care for, maintain, preserve, defend, protect, vi. 34.

**tūli**. See *Fēro*.

**Tulingi**, *ōrum*, m. A Germanic or Gallic people in Southern Germany or the northern part of Helvetia, i. 5, 25, 28, 29.

**Tullius**, *i*, m. See *Cicero*.

**Tullus**, *i*, m. See *Volūtiū*.

**tum**, adv. Then, at that time; thereupon, moreover, furthermore; next, in the next place; and also; *tum demum*, then at length; *cum . . . tum etiam*, not only . . . but especially.

**tūmultuor**, *āri*, *ātus sum*, v. dep. (*tūmultus*). To make a disturbance; to be in great uproar; to be in great tumult, vii. 61.

**tūmultuōse**, adv. (*tūmultus*). With bustle or confusion, in great tumult, vii. 45.

**tūmultus**, *us*, m. (*tūmeo*, to swell). An uproar, bustle, disturbance, violent commotion; *tumultus servilis*, an insurrection of the slaves, i. 40.

**tūmulus**, *i*, m. (*tūmeo*, to swell). A raised heap of earth, mound, hillock.

**tunc**, adv. (*tum*, *ce*). Then, at that time.

**turma**, *ae*, f. A division, squadron, a troop of horsemen of about thirty men, iv. 33.

**Tūrōnes**, *um*, and **Tūrōni**, *ōrum*, m. A people of Gallia Celtica, in the neighborhood of *Tours*, ii. 35; vii. 4, 75.

**turpis**, *e*, adj. Ugly, unsightly; unseemly; shameful, base, disgraceful, infamous, dishonorable.

**turpiter**, adv. (*turpis*). In an unseemly manner, shamefully, basely, dishonorably, disgracefully.

**turpītudo**, *tudis*, f. (*turpis*). Disgrace, shame.

**turris**, *is*, f. 1) A tower. 2) A military tower for defence, used in protecting bridges, camps, etc. 3) A military tower for attack, used in sieges and assaults. This was a high movable tower of wood, from the middle of which a bridge could be let down on the enemy's walls. It was stationed on the *agger*, and could be moved forward, as it stood on

wheels or rollers. Missiles were discharged from the upper stories, ii. 30; iii. 21.

**tūto, tūtius, adv. (tūtus).** Safely, securely, without danger, in safety.

**tūtus, a, um, adj. (tueor).** Safe, secure; free from danger, protected.

**tuus, a, um, poss. pron. (tu).** Thy, thine.

## U.

**ubi, adv.** Where, in which place; when, after; as soon as, as; *ubi primum*, as soon as, iv. 12.

**ubi-cumque, adv.** Wherever, vii. 3.

**Ubii, ōrum, m.** A people of Germany, on the right bank of the Lower Rhine, in the vicinity of Cologne, i. 61; iv. 3, 8, 11, 16, 19; vi. 9, 10, 29.

**ubique, adv.** Anywhere, everywhere.

**ulciscor, ci, ultus sum, v. dep.** To avenge one's self upon, take vengeance on; to punish, chastise.

**ullus, a, um, gen. u/lius, G. 151, adj.** Any, any one.

**ultērior, us, gen. ōris, sup. ultimus, G. 166, adj. (ultra).** Farther, on the farther side, beyond; the more remote, vi. 2.

**ultimus, a, um, adj., sup. of ultērior.** The farthest, most distant, iii. 27; iv. 16; the last, v. 43.

**ultra, adv. and prep. with acc.** Beyond, farther, on the farther side of, past.

**ultra, adv.** To the farther side, beyond, on the other side; *ultra citroque*, backwards and forwards, to and fro, hither and thither; besides, moreover, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, i. 42.

**ultus, a, um, part. from ulciscor.**

**ululātus, us, m. (ulūlo, to howl).** A howling, yelling; cries, shouts, v. 37.

**ūna, adv. (ūnus).** At the same time, together with, ii. 17; usually in connection with *cum*, i. 5, 17.

**unde, adv.** From which place,

whence; often instead of *e quo, e quibus*, etc., i. 28; iii. 14.

**undēcim, num. adj. indecl. (ūnus, decem).** Eleven.

**undēcimus, a, um, num. adj. ord. (undēcim).** Eleventh.

**undēquadrāginta, num. adj. indecl. (ūnus, de, quadrāginta).** Thirty-nine, vii. 87.

**undique, adv. (unde, que).** From all parts, on all sides, everywhere.

**Unelli, more properly written Venelli, ōrum, m.** An Armoric people of Gallia Celtica, in the peninsula of Cotentin, Normandy, ii. 34; iii. 11, etc.  
**ūniversus, a, um, adj. (ūnus, verito).** All, all taken collectively, whole, entire.

**unquam, adv. (ūnus, quam).** At any time, ever.

**ūnus, a, um, num. adj. G. 151.** One; one and the same; only, alone, merely; some one, a; *ad unum omnes*, all to a man, v. 37; the same; *uno tempore*, at the same time, ii. 19, 20; *unā aestate*, in the same summer, i. 54.

**urbānus, a, um, adj. (urbs).** Of or relating to a city, esp. to Rome; *urbanae res*, affairs at Rome, vii. 6; *urbano motu*, disturbance in Rome, vii. 1.

**urbs, urbis, f.** A city, vii. 15; the city of Rome, i. 7; vi. 1.

**urgeo, ōre, ursi, v. tr.** To press upon, oppress; to drive, push back, press hard, ii. 25.

**ūrus, i, m.** A kind of wild ox, the European bison, vi. 28.

**Usipētes, um, m.** A people of Germany, on the Rhine and the northern bank of the Lippe, iv. 1, 4, 16, 18; vi. 35.

**ūsītātus, a, um, adj. (ūsitor, ūtor).** Familiar, customary, common, vii. 22.

**usque, adv.** Even, as far as.

**ūsus, a, um, part. from ūtor.**

**ūsus, us, m. (ūtor).** Use, practice, skill, experience; advantage, benefit, profit, i. 30, 38, 50; iii. 14; need, necessity; *usus est*, there is need, it is necessary, it becomes requisite, iv. 2; *usu venire*, to occur, happen, come to pass, vii. 9.

**ut**, or **ūti**, adv. As, just as, like, i. 16, 22; ii. 1; inasmuch as, as, iii. 8; v. 43; *ut qui*, as one who, like one who, v. 31; *of time*: when, as, after; *ut semel*, as soon as, when once, i. 31. *Conj.*, that, in order that, ii. 1, 9; so that, so as to; though, although, iii. 9; *after verbs of fearing*: that not, G. 498, III. note 1.

**ūter**, *tra*, *trum*, gen. *utrius*, G. 181, adj. Which of the two, which, i. 12; with *uter* or *neuter*, the other, v. 44.

**ūter-que**, *trāque*, *trumque*, G. 181, 4, adj. Each one of the two, both, each; *uterque utriusque in conspectu*, each in sight of the other, vii. 35; *in utramque partem*, in either direction, in either case, v. 29.

**ūti**. See *Ūt*.

**ūtilis**, *e*, adj. (*ūtor*). Useful, beneficial, advantageous, serviceable, profitable.

**ūtilitas**, *ātis*, f. (*ūtilis*). Usefulness, profit, advantage, service, benefit.

**ūtor**, *i*, *ūsus sum*, v. dep. To use, make use of, avail one's self of, employ, exercise, manage; to practise, adopt, show, manifest, cherish, have, i. 46; ii. 28.

**utrimque**, adv. (*uterque*). From or on both sides, on each side, i. 50.

**utrum**, adv. (*ūter*). Whether; in double questions followed by *an* or *necne*, G. 353, 1; i. 40, 50.

**uxor**, *ōris*, f. A wife, spouse.

## V.

**vācātio**, *ōnis*, f. (*vāco*). Exemption from duty, freedom from service, immunity, vi. 14.

**vāco**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, v. intr. To be unoccupied, to be uninhabited, i. 28; to lie waste, be uncultivated, iv. 3.

**vācuus**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*vāco*). Empty, free from, stripped of, destitute of, vacant.

**vādum**, *i*, n. A ford; shallow place, shoal; iii. 13.

**vāgīna**, *ae*, f. A scabbard or sheath, v. 44.

**vāgor**, *āri*, *ātus sum*, v. dep. (*vāgus*, roaming). To wander about, stroll, roam around, i. 2.

**Vāhālis**, *is*, m. The Waal, the left arm of the Rhine, iv. 10.

**vāleo**, *ēre*, *ui*, v. intr. To be strong or powerful, have strength or force; to avail, have weight or influence, be effectual.

**Vālērius**, *i*, m. 1) *Gāius Valērius Flaccus*, a pro-prætor or governor of Gallia, 83 B. C., i. 47. 2) *Lūcius Valērius Præconinus*, a Roman commander in Gaul before Caesar's time, iii. 20. 3) *Gāius Valērius Cabūrus*, a Gaul who had been presented with the rights of Roman citizenship, i. 47; vii. 65. 4) *Gāius Valērius Procillus*, son of the preceding, a distinguished Gaul, and confidential friend of Caesar, i. 19, 47, 53. 5) *Gāius Valērius Donotaurus*, a brother of the preceding, vii. 65.

**Valetiācus**, *i*, m. A distinguished Aeduan, brother of Cotus, vii. 32.

**vālētūdo**, *inis*, f. (*vāleo*). The state or condition of the body, health (good or bad); *quum tenuissimā valetudine esset*, although he was in very feeble health, v. 40.

**valles**, or **vallis**, *is*, f. A valley, vale.

**vallum**, *i*, n. (*valhus*). A wall or rampart of earth, set with palisades, a wall of circumvallation, rampart, intrenchment, i. 26; ii. 5.

**vallus**, *i*, m. A stake, palisade, vii. 73.

**Vangiōnes**, *um*, m. A Germanic people on the Rhine, near modern Worms, i. 51.

**vāriētās**, *ātis*, f. (*vārius*). Diversity, variety, difference.

**vārius**, *a*, *um*, adj. Diverse, manifold, various, changing, varying, ii. 22.

**vasto**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*vastus*). To lay waste, devastate, ravage, destroy.



**vastus**, *a, um*, adj. Vast, immense, enormous, very large.

**vaticinatio**, *ōnis*, f. (*vaticinor*, to foretell). A foretelling, a prophetic response, i. 50.

**ve**, enclitic particle (*vel*). Or.

**vectigal**, *ālīs*, n. (*vectus*, *vāho*). A tax, toll, impost; revenue, income.

**vectigālis**, *e*, adj. (*vectigal*). Taxable, tributary, iii. 8.

**vectōrius**, *a, um*, adj. (*vāho*). Suitable for carrying burdens; *vectorium navigium*, a transport ship, v. 8.

**vēhementer**, *vēhementius*, *vēhementissime*, adv. (*vēhemens*, violent). Violently, forcibly; exceedingly, very much, strongly, i. 37.

**vēho**, *ere*, *vezi*, *vectum*, v. tr. To carry, convey.

**vel**, conj. Or, or indeed; even; *vel* . . . *vel*, either . . . or.

**Velanius**, *i*, m. *Quintus*, a military tribune in Caesar's army, iii. 7, 8.

**vēlim**. See *Volo*.

**Vellaunodūnum**, *i*, n. A town of the Senōnes in Gallia Celtica, vii. 11, 14.

**Vellāvi**, *ōrum*, m. A people of Gallia Celtica, in modern *Vélay*, dependants of the Arverni, vii. 75.

**Velocasses**, *ium*, m. A people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was Rotomāgus, now *Rouen*, ii. 4; vii. 75.

**vēlōcissime**. See *Vēlōctiter*.

**vēlōcitas**, *ātis*, f. (*vēlox*). Swift-ness, rapidity, speed, velocity.

**vēlōctiter**, *vēlōcius*, *vēlōcissime*, adv. (*vēlox*). Rapidly, quickly.

**vēlox**, *ōcis*, adj. (*vēlum*). Swift, quick, rapid, i. 48.

**vēlum**, *i*, n. (for *vēhūlum*, from *vēho*). A sail.

**vēl-ut**, adv. As, just as, as though; *velut si*, just as if, i. 32.

**vēnatio**, *ōnis*, f. (*vēnor*, to hunt). Hunting, the chase.

**vēnātor**, *ōris*, m. (*vēnor*, to hunt). A hunter.

**vendo**, *ere*, *dīdī*, *dātum*, v. tr. (*vēnum*, a sale, *do*). To sell, expose for sale, ii. 33.

**Vēnēti**, *ōrum*, m. An Armoric people of Gallia Celtica, ii. 34; iii. 7, 8, 9, 11, etc.

**Venelli**, *ōrum*, m. See *Unelli*.

**Vēnētia**, *ae*, f. The country of the Veneti, in Gallia Celtica, iii. 9.

**Vēnēticus**, *a, um*, adj. (*Vēnētia*). Of or pertaining to the Veneti, Venetian, iii. 18; iv. 21.

**vēnia**, *ae*, f. Indulgence, favor, kindness, forbearance, forgiveness, pardon.

**vēnio**, *ire*, *vēni*, *ventum*, v. intr. To come, arrive at; to come into, enter into, fall into; to occur, happen; *in spem venire*, to indulge, cherish the hope; *in fidem ac potestatem venire*, to submit to one's protection and power, i. e., to make an unconditional surrender, ii. 13. Caesar often uses the pass. impers. construction, *ubi eo ventum est*, i. 43.

**ventito**, *āre*, *āri*, *ātum*, v. intr. (freq. of *vēnio*). To come often, resort to frequently, iv. 3.

**ventus**, *i*, m. The wind; *quo ventus ferebat*, where the wind was blowing, iii. 15; *vento se dare*, to run before the wind, iii. 13.

**ver**, *vēris*, n. The spring.

**Verāgri**, *ōrum*, m. A people of Gallia Belgica, on the Pennine Alps, near the borders of Italy, perhaps in the valley of the *Drance*, iii. 1, 2.

**Verbigēnus**, *i*, m. One of the four cantons of Helvetia, i. 27.

**verbum**, *i*, n. A word. *Plur.*, words, expression, language, discourse, conversation.

**Vercassivellaunus**, *i*, m. A chief of the Arverni, cousin of Vercingetōrix, vii. 76, 83, 85, 88.

**Vercingetōrix**, *igis*, m. One of the Arverni, son of Celtillus, and commander of the Gauls, vii. 4, 8, 9, 12, 14, sq., 20, 28, etc., 89.

**vēreor**, *eri*, *itū sum*, v. dep. To stand in awe of; to respect; to fear, dread, be afraid of.

**vergo**, *ere*, —, v. intr. To incline, turn towards, tend; to lie, be situated towards, i. 1; ii. 18.

**Vergobrētus**, *i*, m. (a Celtic word). The title of the chief magistrate among the Aedui, i. 16.

**vērissimilis**, *e*, adj. (*vērus*, *similis*). Probable, likely, iii. 13.

**vērītus**, *a*, *um*, part. from *vēreor*.

**vēro**, adv. and conj. (*vērus*). In truth, truly, assuredly, in fact; but in fact, but indeed, however.

**Veromandui**, *ōrum*, m. A people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was Augusta Veromanduōrum, now St. Quentin, on the Somme, ii. 4, 16, 23.

**verso**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, v. tr. (freq. of *verto*). To turn often; to place in violent motion; *sic fortuna utrumque versavit*, fortune so directed or treated each in turn, v. 44.

**versor**, *ārī*, *ātus sum*, v. dep. (*verso*). To move about in a place; to frequent, dwell, live, be; to occupy one's self with, be engaged in, be busy.

**versus**, *us*, m. (*verto*). A verse, line.

**versus**, adv. (*verto*). Towards; in connection with a prep., *ad oceanum versus*, towards the ocean, vi. 33.

**Vertico**, *ōnis*, m. One of the Nervi, v. 45, 49.

**verto**, *ēre*, *tī*, *sum*, v. tr. and intr. To turn, turn around or about; *terga vertere*, to turn one's back, take to flight, flee. *Intr.*, to change, turn around.

**Verudoctius**, *i*, m. A messenger of the Helvetii, sent to Caesar, i. 7.

**vērus**, *a*, *um*, adj. True, actual, real, i. 18; right, reasonable, consistent, iv. 8.

**vērūtum**, *i*, n. (*vēru*, a spit). A dart, javelin, v. 44.

**Vesontio**, *ōnis*, m. A town of the S. quāni, in Gallia Belgica, now Besançon, i. 38, 39.

**vesper**, *ēris*, and **vespērus**, *i*, m. The evening star; the evening; *sub vesperum*, towards evening, ii. 33.

**vester**, *tra*, *trum*, poss. pron. (*vos*). Your, yours.

**vestigium**, *i*, n. A footstep, footprint, track, trace, vi. 27; spot, place, iv. 2; moment, point, iv. 5; *e vestigio*, on the spot, forthwith.

**vestio**, *īre*, *īvi* or *īi*, *ītum*, v. tr. (*vestis*). To clothe; to cover over, vii. 23.

**vestis**, *is*, f. Clothing, garments.

**vestitus**, *us*, m. (*vestio*). Clothing, dress, garment.

**vētērānus**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*vētus*). Old, tried, practised, veteran.

**vēto**, *āre*, *ui*, *ītum*, v. tr. To forbid, not to permit; to prohibit, prevent.

**vētus**, *ēris*, adj. Old, long standing, ancient.

**vexillum**, *i*, n. (*vēho*). A military ensign, standard, flag, vi. 36; a large banner or flag placed on the general's tent as a signal to prepare for action, ii. 20. See 78.

**vexo**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, v. tr. (freq. of *vēho*). To disturb, annoy, vex, trouble, molest, harass.

**via**, *ae*, f. A way, road, passage; a march, journey; a passage or lane in a camp, v. 49.

**viātor**, *ōris*, m. (*via*). A traveller.

**vīcēni**, *ae*, *a*, num. adj. distrib. (*vīginti*). Twenty each, twenty.

**vīcēsīmus**, *a*, *um*, num. adj. ord. (*vīginti*). Twent'eth.

**vīcies**, num. adv. (*vīginti*). Twenty times, v. 13.

**vīcīnitas**, *ātis*, f. (*vīcīnus*, near.) The nearness, neighborhood, proximity; *concrete*, the neighbors, vi. 34.

**vīcis**, gen.; from obs. *vix*, f. Succession, change; *in vicem*, by turn, alternately, one after the other.

**victīma**, *ae*, f. (*vīco*, to bind.) A beast for sacrifice, sacrifice, victim, vi. 16.

**victor**, *ōris*, m. (*vinco*). A conqueror. *Adj.*, victorious, i. 31; vii. 20.

**victōria**, *ae*, f. (*victor*). Victory.

**victus**, *us*, m. (*vīco*). That which supports life, sustenance, provisions, nourishment, vi. 22; the way of life, mode of living, i. 31.

**victus**, *a*, *um*, part. from *vinco*.

**vīcus**, *i*, m. A village, hamlet.

**video, āre, vidi, visum, v. tr.** To see, behold, observe, look at, perceive; to understand, comprehend, learn.

**videor, ēri, rīsus sum, v. pass. and dep.** To be seen; to seem, appear; to seem good, seem proper or convenient, v. 36.

**Vienna, ae, f.** A town of the Allobroges, in Gallia Narbonensis, now Vienne, vii. 9.

**vigilia, ae, f. (vīgil, a watch).** A keeping awake, wakefulness, sleeplessness, v. 31; a watching, watch, guard; the time of keeping guard or watch. The Romans divided the night, i. e., from sunset to sunrise, into four *vigiliae*, which varied in length according to the season of the year; the third watch began at midnight, i. 12, 40.

**viginti, num. adj. indecl.** Twenty.  
**vīmen, īnis, n. (vīeo, to bind).** A twig, a plant branch or vine, osier.

**vincio, tre, nxi, nctum, v. tr.** To bind, i. 53.

**vinco, āre, vici, victum, v. tr. and intr.** To conquer, gain the victory, prove superior to, subdue, vanquish, overcome; to prevail, have one's will or way, v. 30.

**vinctus, a, um, part. from vincio.**  
**vinculum, ī, n. (vincio).** A bond, fetters; *in vincula conjicere*, to throw into prison, iii. 9; *ex vinculis*, in chains, i. 4.

**vindicō, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (vim, d'co).** To lay claim to; to demand, assert, maintain, vii. 76; to free, liberate, deliver, restore; *Galliam in libertatem vindicare*, to set Gaul free, vii. 1; to avenge, revenge, punish, take vengeance upon, *in aliquem*, iii. 16.

**vineā, ae, f.** A kind of shed or mantlet, built like an arbor, for sheltering or protecting soldiers in their work, ii. 12, 30.

**vīnum, ī, n.** Wine.

**viōlo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (vis).** To treat with violence; to injure, do violence to; to harm, vi. 23; to devastate, lay waste, vi. 32.

**vir, riri, m.** A man; husband; a man of distinction, courage, or honor.

**vīres, ium.** See *Vis*.

**virgo, īnis, f. (vīreo, to flourish).** A maid, maiden, virgin.

**virgultum, ī, n.** Bush, brushwood, iii. 18.

**Viridomārus, ī, m.** A chief of the Aedui, vii. 38, 39, 40, 54, 55, 63, 76.

**Viridōvix, īcis, m.** A chief of the Unelli, iii. 17, 18.

**vīritim, adv. (vir).** Man by man, to each one separately, vii. 71.

**virtus, ūtis, f. (vir).** Manliness; strength, power; courage, valor, bravery; goodness, worth, merit; excellence; energy, vigor, fortitude.

**vis, īs, f.** Power, strength, force; violence, hostile strength; vigor, energy; effect, influence, iv. 17; multitude, quantity, vi. 36; plur., *vīres, ium*, power, strength, might, force, i. 53.

**visus, a, um, part. from video.**

**vīta, ae, f. (for victa, from vīeo).** Life.

**vīto, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.** To shun, avoid, seek to escape; to escape, evade.

**vītrum, ī, n.** A plant used for dyeing blue, woad, v. 14.

**vīvo, āre, vīzi, victum, v. intr.** To live; to subsist on, nourish one's self with, support life, live upon, iv. 1, 10.

**vīvus, a, um, adj. (vīeo).** Living, alive.

**vix, adv.** With difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely.

**Vocātes, ium, m.** A people of Aquitania, south of the Garumna (*Garonne*), iii. 23, 27.

**vōco, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (vox).** To call, summon, call upon; to invite, incite, summon, demand, vii. 32; to name, denominate, v. 21.

**Vocontii, ōrum, m.** A people of Gallia Narbonensis, between the rivers Isāra (*Isère*) and Druentia (*Durance*), in the south-eastern part of Dauphiné, i. 10.

**Voctio, ōnis, m.** A king of Noricum, i. 53.

**Volcae**, *ārum*, m. A numerous people of Gallia Narbonensis or Provincia, divided into, 1) *Volcae Arecomici*, from the Rhone to Narbo; chief town Nemausus, now *Nîmes*, vii. 7, 64; 2) *Volcae Tectosages*, from Narbo to the Pyrenees; chief town Tolosa, now *Toulouse*, vi. 24.

**Volcatius**, *i*, m. *Gāius Volcatius Tullus*, a young man to whom Caesar intrusted the guard of his bridge over the Rhine, vi. 29.

**vōlo**, *velle*, *vōlūi*, v. irreg. To wish, desire; to purpose, intend, be disposed.

**vōluntārius**, *a*, *um*, adj. (*vōlo*). Voluntary, willing. *Subs.*, a volunteer, v. 56.

**vōluntas**, *ātis*, f. (*vōlo*). Will, wish, choice, desire, inclination; consent, concurrence, approbation; good will, favor, affection.

**vōluptas**, *ātis*, f. (*vōlo*). Satisfaction, pleasure, joy, delight.

**Volusēnus**, *i*. *Gāius Volusēnus Quadrātus*, a military tribune, afterwards commander of the cavalry in Caesar's army, iii. 5; iv. 21, 23; vi. 41.

**Vorēnus**, *i*, m. *Lūcius*, a brave centurion in Caesar's army, v. 44.

**Vōsēgus**, *i*, m. A chain of mountains in Gaul, now the *Vosges*, iv. 10.

**vōveo**, *ēre*, *vōvi*, *vōtūm*, v. tr. To vow; to promise solemnly, vi. 16.

**vox**, *vōcis*, f. A voice, sound, call, cry; word, i. 32. *Plur.*, expressions, reports, sayings, language, words, i. 39.

**Vulcānus**, *i*, m. Vulcan, the son of Jupiter and Juno; the god of fire, vi. 21.

**vulgo**, adv. (*vulgus*). Generally, everywhere, universally, here and there, i. 39.

**vulgus**, *i*, n., rarely m. The great mass, the multitude, the common people; a crowd, throng.

**vulnērātus**, *a*, *um*, part. from *vulnēro*. Wounded, v. 40.

**vulnēro**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, v. tr. (*vulnus*). To wound, hurt, injure.

**vulnus**, *eris*, n. A wound, an injury.

**vultus**, *us*, m. An expression of countenance, the looks, air, mien, aspect, features; *vultum fingere*, to control or command the countenance, i. 39.



# Harkness's Standard Latin Grammar.

FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

By **ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph.D., LL.D.,**

PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

---

This is a complete, philosophical, and attractive work. Facts are presented in clear and simple language. The work has been pronounced "a model for perspicuity of statement and clearness of arrangement." It is characterized by great accuracy of statement. It is a Grammar of the Latin Language based upon the facts of that language. The facts and laws of the language are all presented in the light of the latest and best grammatical studies, including comparative grammar.

It practically embraces three works in one.

The present edition is the result of a thorough and complete revision of that of 1874. To a large extent it is a new and independent work, yet the paradigms, rules of construction, and in general all parts intended for recitation, have been only slightly changed. The aim of the work in its present form is threefold:

1. To be a clear, simple, and convenient elementary Latin Grammar, giving the essentials for that use in distinctive type, and in the form best adapted to the end.

2. To be an adequate and trustworthy grammar for the advanced student—a complete grammar of the Latin language, for the use of critical students of every grade of scholarship.

3. To be a practical introduction to the broader fields of philology and modern linguistic research with references to the latest and best authorities upon the numerous questions which arise in such study.

**Price, \$1.12.**

---

*A copy of the above book will be mailed, postpaid, to any address, on receipt of price. Full descriptive circulars sent on application.*

**AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY,**

**NEW YORK      ∴      CINCINNATI      ∴      CHICAGO.**  
[\*82]

# Harkness's Series of Preparatory Latin Text-Books.

By **ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph.D., LL.D.,**  
PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

## LATIN GRAMMAR.

Standard Edition of 1887. 12mo, cloth. 430 pages . \$1.12

For schools and colleges. This is a complete, philosophical, and attractive work. It presents a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the language, exhibiting not only the grammatical forms and constructions, but also those vital principles which underlie, control, and explain them.

## EASY METHOD FOR BEGINNERS IN LATIN.

12mo, cloth. 348 pages . \$1.20

This volume is not a mere companion to the Grammar, but a practical guide for the pupil in the work of reading and writing Latin. It approaches the language on its practical side. The very first lesson, without a word of grammar, introduces the learner to complete Latin sentences, with verb, subject, and object. Thus, at the very outset, he finds himself already using the language. He is not only reading Latin, but actually writing it.

## FIRST YEAR IN LATIN.

Complete Course. 12mo, cloth. 332 pages . \$1.12

An outline of Latin Grammar and progressive exercises in reading and writing Latin, with frequent practice in reading at sight. This volume contains a series of simple exercises progressively arranged, and designed to lead the way directly to connected discourse, together with numerous exercises and passages intended for practice in sight reading and composition exercise.

## LATIN EXERCISES FOR THE FIRST YEAR.

12mo, cloth. 268 pages . \$1.00

A course of progressive exercises in reading and writing Latin, with frequent practice in reading at sight, intended as a companion to Harkness's Latin Grammar.

## NEW LATIN READER.

12mo, cloth. 227 pages . 87 cents

With exercises in Latin composition, intended as a companion to the author's Latin Grammar. With references, suggestions, notes, and vocabularies.

The "New Reader" differs from the "Reader" in several respects. The first parts of the two books are wholly different. The New has in this part alternating exercises in translation both ways from one language into the other, with numbered references to the "Grammar" at every step.

## INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK.

12mo, cloth. 162 pages . 87 cents

Intended as an elementary drill book on the inflections and principles of the language. This work gives a distinct outline of the whole grammar.

## INTRODUCTION TO LATIN COMPOSITION.

12mo, cloth. 306 pages . \$1.05

For schools and colleges. Part I. Elementary Exercises, intended as a companion to the Reader. Part II. Latin Syntax. Part III. Elements of Latin style, with special reference to idioms and synonyms.

*Copies of the above books will be mailed, postpaid, to any address, on receipt of price. Full descriptive circulars sent on application.*

**AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY,**

NEW YORK .: CINCINNATI .: CHICAGO.  
[\*83]





7



## *ANCIENT LANGUAGES.*

<b>Bartholomew's Graded Lessons in Latin.....</b>	<b>\$0 80</b>
Latin Grammar.....	90
<b>Daniell's Short Sentences for Writing Latin.....</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>Gates's Latin Word Building.....</b>	<b>84</b>
<b>Harkness's Arnold's First Latin Book.....</b>	<b>1 05</b>
Easy Method for Beginners in Latin.....	1 20
First Year in Latin, Complete Course.....	1 12
Latin Exercises for the First Year.....	1 00
Introductory Latin Book.....	87
Elements of Latin Grammar.....	87
Latin Grammar. New Standard Edition.....	1 12
Latin Grammar. Old Edition.....	1 05
Introduction to Latin Composition.....	1 05
The same. Part II.....	75
<b>Harper and Burgess's Inductive Latin Method.....</b>	<b>1 00</b>
<b>Holbrook's (Irene) First Latin Lessons.....</b>	<b>50</b>

## **LATIN TEXTS AND READERS.**

<b>Bartholomew's Caesar's Gallic War. With Vocabulary.....</b>	<b>90</b>
<b>Butler and Sturgus's Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline.....</b>	<b>1 22</b>
<b>Crosby's Quintus Curtius Rufus.....</b>	<b>1 05</b>
<b>Frieze's Quintilian. Tenth and Twelfth Books. With Notes,</b>	<b>1 20</b>
Vergil's <i>Æneid</i> . Complete. With Notes and Dictionary..	1 30
Six Books of <i>Æneid</i> , <i>Georgics</i> , and <i>Bucolics</i> . With Notes and Dictionary.....	1 30
Vergil. Complete Works. Notes and Dictionary.....	1 60
<b>Hanson's Preparatory Latin Prose Book. With Vocabulary,</b>	<b>2 00</b>
Cicero's Orations and Letters. With Vocabulary.....	1 20
<b>Harkness's New Latin Reader.....</b>	<b>87</b>
Second Latin Book and Reader.....	87
Latin Reader. With Exercises.....	1 05
Cæsar's Commentaries. New Pictorial Edition.....	1 20

## ANCIENT LANGUAGES.

<b>Harkness's</b> <i>Cæsar's Commentaries</i> .....	\$1 05
Cicero's Orations. With Notes and Dictionary .....	1 22
Course in <i>Cæsar</i> , <i>Sallust</i> , and <i>Cicero</i> . (Preparatory) .....	1 00
<i>Sallust's Catiline</i> . With Notes and Vocabulary.....	90
Military System of the Romans.....	20
<b>Harper and Tolman's</b> <i>Cæsar's Gallic War</i> . With Notes and Dictionary.....	1 20
<b>Herbermann's</b> <i>Sallust's Jugurthine War</i> .....	1 12
<b>Lincoln's</b> <i>Horace</i> . With Notes.....	1 22
<i>Livy</i> . With Notes.....	1 22
<i>Ovid</i> . With Notes and Vocabulary.....	1 22
<b>Lindsay's</b> <i>Cornelius Nepos</i> . With Notes and Vocabulary... ..	1 22
<i>Cornelius Nepos</i> for Sight Reading.....	1 00
<i>Satires of Juvenal</i> .....	1 00
<b>Lord's</b> (John K.) <i>Cicero's Laelius de Amicitia</i> .....	72
<b>Searing's</b> <i>Virgil. The Æneid, Bucolics, and Georgics</i> . With Vocabulary .....	1 60
<i>Virgil's Æneid</i> . Six Books. With Vocabulary.....	1 40
. The same. Books I, II, and VI, with Vocabulary....	1 25
<b>Sewall's</b> <i>Latin Speaker</i> .....	80
<b>Thacher's</b> <i>Cicero de Officiis</i> .....	87
<b>Tyler's</b> <i>Histories of Tacitus</i> .....	1 22
<i>Germania and Agricola of Tacitus</i> .....	87

---

*Copies of these books will be sent to any address, postage-paid, on receipt of price. Full price-list mailed on application.*

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY, Publishers,  
NEW YORK,     . . .     CINCINNATI,     . . .     CHICAGO.





22









**This book is under no circumstances to be  
taken from the Building**

JUL 20 1916	MAY 26 1917
AUG - 2 1915	
AUG 9 1915	
OCT 23 1916	
OCT 28 1916	
	MAY 29 1917
9 1915	
NOV 28 1916	
JAN 11 1916	MAY 14 1917
OCT 18 1916	SEP 24 1916
JAN 22 1917	DEC 15 1916
	DEC 15 1916

form 410

80 NOV 7 1916

